

THE EXPERT'S VOICE® IN .NET



# Illustrated C# 2010

*C# illustrated clearly, concisely, and visually*

*Written and Illustrated by*

**Daniel M. Solis**



Apress®



# Illustrated C# 2010



Daniel M. Solis

Apress®

## **Illustrated C# 2010**

Copyright © 2010 by Daniel M. Solis

All rights reserved. No part of this work may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the copyright owner and the publisher.

ISBN-13 (pbk): 978-1-4302-3282-7

ISBN-13 (electronic): 978-1-4302-3283-4

Printed and bound in the United States of America 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

President and Publisher: Paul Manning

Lead Editor: Ewan Buckingham

Development Editor: Matthew Moodie

Editorial Board: Steve Anglin, Mark Beckner, Ewan Buckingham, Gary Cornell, Jonathan Gennick, Jonathan Hassell, Michelle Lowman, Matthew Moodie, Duncan Parkes, Jeffrey Pepper, Frank Pohlmann, Douglas Pundick, Ben Renow-Clarke, Dominic Shakeshaft, Matt Wade, Tom Welsh

Coordinating Editor: Jennifer L. Blackwell

Copy Editor: Kim Wimpsett

Compositor: Mary Sudul

Indexer: BIM Indexing & Proofreading Services

Artist: Daniel Solis

Cover Designer: Anna Ishchenko

Distributed to the book trade worldwide by Springer Science+Business Media, LLC.,  
233 Spring Street, 6th Floor, New York, NY 10013. Phone 1-800-SPRINGER, fax (201) 348-4505,  
e-mail [orders-ny@springer-sbm.com](mailto:orders-ny@springer-sbm.com), or visit [www.springeronline.com](http://www.springeronline.com).

For information on translations, please e-mail [rights@apress.com](mailto:rights@apress.com), or visit [www.apress.com](http://www.apress.com).

Apress and friends of ED books may be purchased in bulk for academic, corporate, or promotional use. eBook versions and licenses are also available for most titles. For more information, reference our Special Bulk Sales—eBook Licensing web page at [www.apress.com/info/bulksales](http://www.apress.com/info/bulksales).

The information in this book is distributed on an “as is” basis, without warranty. Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this work, neither the author(s) nor Apress shall have any liability to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damage caused or alleged to be caused directly or indirectly by the information contained in this work.

The source code for this book is available to readers at [www.apress.com](http://www.apress.com).

*I would like to dedicate this book to  
Sian; to my parents, Sal and Amy;  
and to Sue.*

# Contents at a Glance

<b>Contents.....</b>	<b>v</b>
<b>About the Author .....</b>	<b>xxi</b>
<b>Acknowledgments .....</b>	<b>xxvi</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>xxvii</b>
<b>    Chapter 1: C# and the .NET Framework .....</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>    Chapter 2: Overview of C# Programming.....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>    Chapter 3: Types, Storage, and Variables.....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>    Chapter 4: Classes: The Basics .....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>    Chapter 5: Methods.....</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>    Chapter 6: More About Classes.....</b>	<b>109</b>
<b>    Chapter 7: Classes and Inheritance .....</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>    Chapter 8: Expressions and Operators.....</b>	<b>201</b>
<b>    Chapter 9: Statements .....</b>	<b>239</b>
<b>    Chapter 10: Namespaces and Assemblies.....</b>	<b>269</b>
<b>    Chapter 11: Exceptions .....</b>	<b>297</b>
<b>    Chapter 12: Structs .....</b>	<b>317</b>
<b>    Chapter 13: Enumerations .....</b>	<b>327</b>
<b>    Chapter 14: Arrays .....</b>	<b>341</b>
<b>    Chapter 15: Delegates .....</b>	<b>369</b>
<b>    Chapter 16: Events .....</b>	<b>391</b>
<b>    Chapter 17: Interfaces .....</b>	<b>409</b>
<b>    Chapter 18: Conversions .....</b>	<b>435</b>
<b>    Chapter 19: Generics.....</b>	<b>465</b>
<b>    Chapter 20: Enumerators and Iterators .....</b>	<b>505</b>
<b>    Chapter 21: Introduction to LINQ .....</b>	<b>537</b>
<b>    Chapter 22: Introduction to Asynchronous Programming .....</b>	<b>595</b>
<b>    Chapter 23: Preprocessor Directives .....</b>	<b>627</b>
<b>    Chapter 24: Reflection and Attributes.....</b>	<b>639</b>
<b>    Chapter 25: Other Topics .....</b>	<b>663</b>
<b>    Index .....</b>	<b>693</b>

# Contents

<b>Contents at a Glance.....</b>	<b>iv</b>
<b>About the Author .....</b>	<b>xxi</b>
<b>Acknowledgments .....</b>	<b>xxvi</b>
<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>xxvii</b>
<b>■ Chapter 1: C# and the .NET Framework .....</b>	<b>1</b>
Before .NET .....	2
Windows Programming in the Late 1990s.....	2
Goals for the Next-Generation Platform Services .....	2
Enter Microsoft .NET .....	2
Components of the .NET Framework.....	3
An Improved Programming Environment.....	4
Compiling to the Common Intermediate Language .....	7
Compiling to Native Code and Execution .....	8
Overview of Compilation and Execution .....	9
The Common Language Runtime.....	10
The Common Language Infrastructure .....	11
Important Parts of the CLI.....	12
Review of the Acronyms .....	13
<b>■ Chapter 2: Overview of C# Programming.....</b>	<b>15</b>
A Simple C# Program.....	16
More About SimpleProgram.....	17
Identifiers and Keywords .....	18

Naming Conventions.....	19
Keywords.....	20
Main: The Starting Point of a Program.....	21
Whitespace .....	21
Statements .....	22
Simple Statements .....	22
Blocks .....	22
Text Output from a Program .....	23
Write .....	23
WriteLine.....	24
The Format String.....	25
Multiple Markers and Values .....	26
Comments: Annotating the Code .....	27
More About Comments .....	28
Documentation Comments .....	28
Summary of Comment Types .....	29
<b>Chapter 3: Types, Storage, and Variables .....</b>	<b>31</b>
A C# Program Is a Set of Type Declarations .....	32
A Type Is a Template .....	33
Instantiating a Type .....	33
Data Members and Function Members.....	34
Types of Members .....	34
Predefined Types .....	35
More About the Predefined Types .....	36
User-Defined Types .....	38
The Stack and the Heap.....	39
The Stack.....	39
The Heap .....	40

<b>Value Types and Reference Types .....</b>	<b>41</b>
Storing Members of a Reference Type Object.....	41
Categorizing the C# Types.....	42
<b>Variables .....</b>	<b>43</b>
Variable Declarations.....	43
Multiple-Variable Declarations .....	45
Using the Value of a Variable.....	45
<b>Static Typing and the dynamic Keyword .....</b>	<b>45</b>
<b>Nullable Types .....</b>	<b>46</b>
Creating a Nullable Type .....	46
Assigning to a Nullable Type .....	48
<b>■ Chapter 4: Classes: The Basics .....</b>	<b>49</b>
<b>Overview of Classes .....</b>	<b>50</b>
A Class Is an Active Data Structure .....	50
<b>Programs and Classes: A Quick Example .....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>Declaring a Class .....</b>	<b>52</b>
<b>Class Members .....</b>	<b>53</b>
Fields .....	53
Methods.....	55
<b>Creating Variables and Instances of a Class.....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Allocating Memory for the Data .....</b>	<b>57</b>
Combining the Steps .....	58
<b>Instance Members .....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>Access Modifiers .....</b>	<b>60</b>
Private and Public Access .....	60
<b>Accessing Members from Inside the Class.....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>Accessing Members from Outside the Class .....</b>	<b>64</b>
<b>Putting It All Together .....</b>	<b>65</b>

<b>■ Chapter 5: Methods.....</b>	<b>67</b>
The Structure of a Method.....	68
Code Execution in the Method Body .....	69
Local Variables .....	70
Type Inference and the var Keyword.....	71
Local Variables Inside Nested Blocks.....	72
Local Constants .....	73
Flow of Control .....	74
Method Invocations .....	75
Return Values .....	76
The Return Statement and Void Methods.....	78
Parameters .....	80
Formal Parameters.....	80
Actual Parameters.....	81
Value Parameters .....	83
Reference Parameters.....	86
Output Parameters.....	89
Parameter Arrays.....	92
Method Invocation .....	93
Arrays As Actual Parameters.....	96
Summary of Parameter Types .....	96
Method Overloading.....	97
Named Parameters.....	98
Optional Parameters .....	100
Stack Frames.....	104
Recursion.....	106
<b>■ Chapter 6: More About Classes.....</b>	<b>109</b>
Class Members .....	110
Order of Member Modifiers .....	110

<b>Instance Class Members .....</b>	<b>112</b>
<b>    Static Fields .....</b>	<b>113</b>
<b>        Accessing Static Members from Outside the Class .....</b>	<b>114</b>
Example of a Static Field.....	114
Lifetimes of Static Members .....	115
<b>    Static Function Members.....</b>	<b>116</b>
<b>    Other Static Class Member Types.....</b>	<b>117</b>
<b>    Member Constants.....</b>	<b>118</b>
Constants Are Like Statics.....	119
<b>Properties .....</b>	<b>121</b>
Property Declarations and Accessors.....	122
A Property Example .....	123
Using a Property .....	124
Properties and Associated Fields .....	125
Performing Other Calculations.....	127
Read-Only and Write-Only Properties.....	128
An Example of a Computed, Read-Only Property .....	129
Example of Properties and Databases.....	130
Properties vs. Public Fields .....	130
Automatically Implemented Properties .....	131
Static Properties .....	132
<b>Instance Constructors.....</b>	<b>133</b>
Constructors with Parameters.....	134
Default Constructors.....	135
<b>Static Constructors .....</b>	<b>136</b>
Example of a Static Constructor .....	137
Accessibility of Constructors .....	137
<b>Object Initializers .....</b>	<b>138</b>
<b>Destructors .....</b>	<b>140</b>
Calling the Destructor .....	141
The Standard Dispose Pattern.....	143

<b>Comparing Constructors and Destructors . . . . .</b>	<b>144</b>
<b>The readonly Modifier . . . . .</b>	<b>145</b>
<b>The this Keyword . . . . .</b>	<b>147</b>
<b>Indexers . . . . .</b>	<b>148</b>
What Is an Indexer? . . . . .	149
Indexers and Properties . . . . .	149
Declaring an Indexer . . . . .	150
The Indexer set Accessor . . . . .	151
The Indexer get Accessor . . . . .	152
More About Indexers . . . . .	152
Declaring the Indexer for the Employee Example . . . . .	153
Another Indexer Example . . . . .	154
Indexer Overloading . . . . .	155
<b>Access Modifiers on Accessors . . . . .</b>	<b>156</b>
<b>Partial Classes and Partial Types . . . . .</b>	<b>157</b>
Partial Methods . . . . .	159
<b>Chapter 7: Classes and Inheritance . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>Class Inheritance . . . . .</b>	<b>162</b>
<b>Accessing the Inherited Members . . . . .</b>	<b>163</b>
All Classes Are Derived from Class object . . . . .	164
<b>Hiding Members of a Base Class . . . . .</b>	<b>165</b>
<b>Base Access . . . . .</b>	<b>167</b>
<b>Using References to a Base Class . . . . .</b>	<b>168</b>
Virtual and Override Methods . . . . .	170
Overriding a Method Marked override . . . . .	172
Overriding Other Member Types . . . . .	175
<b>Constructor Execution . . . . .</b>	<b>176</b>
Constructor Initializers . . . . .	178
Class Access Modifiers . . . . .	181

Inheritance Between Assemblies .....	182
Member Access Modifiers .....	184
Regions Accessing a Member .....	185
Public Member Accessibility .....	186
Private Member Accessibility .....	186
Protected Member Accessibility .....	187
Internal Member Accessibility .....	187
Protected Internal Member Accessibility .....	188
Summary of Member Access Modifiers .....	188
Abstract Members .....	190
Abstract Classes .....	192
Example of an Abstract Class and an Abstract Method .....	193
Another Example of an Abstract Class .....	194
Sealed Classes.....	195
Static Classes .....	196
Extension Methods .....	197
<b>    Chapter 8: Expressions and Operators.....</b>	<b>201</b>
Expressions .....	202
Literals .....	203
Integer Literals.....	204
Real Literals.....	205
Character Literals .....	206
String Literals .....	207
Order of Evaluation .....	209
Precedence.....	209
Associativity .....	210
Simple Arithmetic Operators .....	212
The Remainder Operator.....	213

<b>Relational and Equality Comparison Operators .....</b>	<b>214</b>
Comparison and Equality Operations .....	215
<b>Increment and Decrement Operators .....</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>Conditional Logical Operators.....</b>	<b>219</b>
<b>Logical Operators.....</b>	<b>221</b>
<b>Shift Operators.....</b>	<b>223</b>
<b>Assignment Operators .....</b>	<b>225</b>
Compound Assignment.....	226
<b>The Conditional Operator .....</b>	<b>227</b>
<b>Unary Arithmetic Operators .....</b>	<b>229</b>
<b>User-Defined Type Conversions.....</b>	<b>230</b>
Explicit Conversion and the Cast Operator .....	232
<b>Operator Overloading.....</b>	<b>233</b>
Restrictions on Operator Overloading.....	234
Example of Operator Overloading .....	235
<b>The typeof Operator .....</b>	<b>236</b>
<b>Other Operators .....</b>	<b>238</b>
<b>■ Chapter 9: Statements .....</b>	<b>239</b>
<b>What Are Statements? .....</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>Expression Statements .....</b>	<b>241</b>
<b>Flow-of-Control Statements .....</b>	<b>242</b>
<b>The if Statement .....</b>	<b>243</b>
<b>The if . . . else Statement.....</b>	<b>244</b>
<b>The switch Statement.....</b>	<b>245</b>
A Switch Example.....	247
More on the switch Statement .....	248
Switch Labels .....	249
<b>The while Loop .....</b>	<b>250</b>

The do Loop .....	251
The for Loop.....	253
The Scope of Variables in a for Statement .....	255
Multiple Expressions in the Initializer and Iteration Expression .....	256
Jump Statements .....	257
The break Statement .....	257
The continue Statement .....	258
Labeled Statements .....	259
Labels .....	259
The Scope of Labeled Statements.....	260
The goto Statement .....	261
The goto Statement Inside a switch Statement.....	261
The using Statement.....	262
Packaging Use of the Resource.....	263
Example of the using Statement .....	264
Multiple Resources and Nesting.....	265
Another Form of the using Statement .....	266
Other Statements.....	267
<b>■ Chapter 10: Namespaces and Assemblies .....</b>	<b>269</b>
Referencing Other Assemblies .....	270
The mscorlib Library.....	273
Namespaces .....	275
Namespace Names.....	279
More About Namespaces .....	280
Namespaces Spread Across Files .....	281
Nesting Namespaces.....	282
The using Directives .....	283
The using Namespace Directive .....	283
The using Alias Directive .....	284

The Structure of an Assembly .....	285
The Identity of an Assembly .....	287
Strongly Named Assemblies.....	289
Creating a Strongly Named Assembly .....	290
Private Deployment of an Assembly .....	291
Shared Assemblies and the GAC .....	292
Installing Assemblies into the GAC.....	292
Side-by-Side Execution in the GAC.....	293
Configuration Files.....	294
Delayed Signing.....	295
<b>■ Chapter 11: Exceptions .....</b>	<b>297</b>
What Are Exceptions?.....	298
The try Statement.....	299
Handling the Exception.....	300
The Exception Classes .....	301
The catch Clause .....	303
Examples Using Specific catch Clauses .....	304
The catch Clauses Section.....	305
The finally Block .....	306
Finding a Handler for an Exception.....	307
Searching Further .....	308
General Algorithm.....	309
Example of Searching Down the Call Stack .....	310
Throwing Exceptions .....	313
Throwing Without an Exception Object.....	314
<b>■ Chapter 12: Structs .....</b>	<b>317</b>
What Are Structs?.....	318
Structs Are Value Types.....	319

Assigning to a Struct .....	320
Constructors and Destructors .....	321
Instance Constructors.....	321
Static Constructors .....	323
Summary of Constructors and Destructors .....	323
Field Initializers Are Not Allowed .....	324
Structs Are Sealed .....	324
Boxing and Unboxing .....	324
Structs As Return Values and Parameters.....	325
Additional Information About Structs.....	325
<b>Chapter 13: Enumerations .....</b>	<b>327</b>
Enumerations.....	328
Setting the Underlying Type and Explicit Values .....	330
Implicit Member Numbering.....	331
Bit Flags.....	332
The Flags Attribute .....	335
Example Using Bit Flags .....	337
More About Enums .....	339
<b>Chapter 14: Arrays .....</b>	<b>341</b>
Arrays .....	342
Definitions .....	342
Important Details .....	342
Types of Arrays .....	343
An Array As an Object.....	344
One-Dimensional and Rectangular Arrays.....	345
Declaring a One-Dimensional Array or a Rectangular Array .....	345
Instantiating a One-Dimensional or Rectangular Array .....	346
Accessing Array Elements .....	347

<b>Initializing an Array .....</b>	<b>348</b>
Explicit Initialization of One-Dimensional Arrays.....	348
Explicit Initialization of Rectangular Arrays.....	349
Syntax Points for Initializing Rectangular Arrays.....	349
Shortcut Syntax .....	350
Implicitly Typed Arrays .....	351
Putting It All Together .....	352
<b>Jagged Arrays.....</b>	<b>353</b>
Declaring a Jagged Array .....	354
Shortcut Instantiation .....	354
Instantiating a Jagged Array .....	355
Subarrays in Jagged Arrays .....	356
<b>Comparing Rectangular and Jagged Arrays .....</b>	<b>357</b>
<b>The foreach Statement .....</b>	<b>358</b>
The Iteration Variable Is Read-Only .....	360
The foreach Statement with Multidimensional Arrays .....	361
<b>Array Covariance .....</b>	<b>363</b>
<b>Useful Inherited Array Members .....</b>	<b>364</b>
The Clone Method.....	366
<b>Comparing Array Types .....</b>	<b>368</b>
<b>■ Chapter 15: Delegates .....</b>	<b>369</b>
What Is a Delegate? .....	370
Declaring the Delegate Type.....	372
Creating the Delegate Object.....	373
Assigning Delegates .....	375
Combining Delegates.....	376
Adding Methods to Delegates .....	377
Removing Methods from a Delegate .....	378
Invoking a Delegate .....	379

Delegate Example .....	380
Invoking Delegates with Return Values .....	381
Invoking Delegates with Reference Parameters.....	382
Anonymous Methods .....	383
Using Anonymous Methods .....	383
Syntax of Anonymous Methods .....	384
Scope of Variables and Parameters .....	386
Lambda Expressions.....	388
<b>Chapter 16: Events .....</b>	<b>391</b>
Events Are Like Delegates .....	392
An Event Has a Private Delegate .....	393
Overview of Source Code Components.....	394
Declaring an Event.....	395
An Event Is a Member.....	396
The Delegate Type and EventHandler.....	396
Raising an Event.....	397
Subscribing to an Event.....	398
Removing Event Handlers.....	400
Standard Event Usage .....	401
Using the EventArgs Class.....	401
Passing Data by Extending EventArgs.....	402
Using the Custom Delegate .....	403
The MyTimerClass Code .....	406
Event Accessors .....	408
<b>Chapter 17: Interfaces .....</b>	<b>409</b>
What Is an Interface? .....	410
Example Using the IComparable Interface .....	411
Declaring an Interface .....	414

<b>Implementing an Interface.....</b>	<b>416</b>
Example with a Simple Interface.....	417
<b>An Interface Is a Reference Type.....</b>	<b>418</b>
<b>Using the as Operator with Interfaces .....</b>	<b>420</b>
<b>Implementing Multiple Interfaces.....</b>	<b>421</b>
<b>Implementing Interfaces with Duplicate Members.....</b>	<b>422</b>
<b>References to Multiple Interfaces.....</b>	<b>424</b>
<b>An Inherited Member As an Implementation .....</b>	<b>426</b>
<b>Explicit Interface Member Implementations .....</b>	<b>427</b>
Accessing Explicit Interface Member Implementations .....	430
<b>Interfaces Can Inherit Interfaces .....</b>	<b>431</b>
Example of Different Classes Implementing an Interface .....	432
<b>Chapter 18: Conversions.....</b>	<b>435</b>
<b>What Are Conversions?.....</b>	<b>436</b>
<b>Implicit Conversions .....</b>	<b>437</b>
<b>Explicit Conversions and Casting.....</b>	<b>438</b>
Casting.....	439
<b>Types of Conversions.....</b>	<b>440</b>
<b>Numeric Conversions.....</b>	<b>440</b>
Implicit Numeric Conversions.....	441
Overflow Checking Context .....	442
Explicit Numeric Conversions .....	444
<b>Reference Conversions .....</b>	<b>448</b>
Implicit Reference Conversions .....	449
Explicit Reference Conversions .....	451
Valid Explicit Reference Conversions .....	452
<b>Boxing Conversions .....</b>	<b>454</b>
<b>Boxing Creates a Copy.....</b>	<b>455</b>

Unboxing Conversions .....	456
The Unboxing Conversions .....	457
User-Defined Conversions .....	458
Constraints on User-Defined Conversions .....	458
Example of a User-Defined Conversion .....	459
Evaluating User-Defined Conversions .....	461
Example of a Multistep User-Defined Conversion .....	461
The is Operator .....	463
The as Operator .....	464
<b>■ Chapter 19: Generics.....</b>	<b>465</b>
What Are Generics? .....	466
A Stack Example.....	466
Generics in C#.....	468
Continuing with the Stack Example.....	469
Generic Classes .....	470
Declaring a Generic Class.....	471
Creating a Constructed Type .....	472
Creating Variables and Instances .....	473
The Stack Example Using Generics .....	475
Comparing the Generic and Nongeneric Stack.....	477
Constraints on Type Parameters.....	478
Where Clauses.....	479
Constraint Types and Order .....	480
Generic Methods.....	481
Declaring a Generic Method .....	482
Invoking a Generic Method .....	483
Example of a Generic Method.....	485
Extension Methods with Generic Classes .....	486
Generic Structs .....	487

<b>Generic Delegates.....</b>	<b>488</b>
Another Generic Delegate Example .....	490
<b>Generic Interfaces.....</b>	<b>491</b>
An Example Using Generic Interfaces.....	492
Generic Interface Implementations Must Be Unique .....	493
<b>Covariance and Contravariance in Generics .....</b>	<b>494</b>
Covariance and Contravariance in Interfaces.....	500
More About Variance .....	502
<b>Chapter 20: Enumerators and Iterators .....</b>	<b>505</b>
<b>Enumerators and Enumerable Types.....</b>	<b>506</b>
Using the foreach Statement.....	506
Types of Enumerators.....	507
<b>Using the IEnumerator Interface.....</b>	<b>508</b>
Declaring an IEnumerator Enumerator .....	511
<b>The IEnumerable Interface.....</b>	<b>513</b>
Example Using IEnumerable and IEnumerator .....	514
<b>The Noninterface Enumerator.....</b>	<b>516</b>
<b>The Generic Enumeration Interfaces .....</b>	<b>518</b>
<b>The IEnumerator&lt;T&gt; Interface .....</b>	<b>519</b>
<b>The IEnumerable&lt;T&gt; Interface.....</b>	<b>522</b>
<b>Iterators .....</b>	<b>524</b>
Iterator Blocks .....	525
Using an Iterator to Create an Enumerator .....	526
Using an Iterator to Create an Enumerable .....	528
<b>Common Iterator Patterns .....</b>	<b>530</b>
<b>Producing Enumerables and Enumerators .....</b>	<b>531</b>
<b>Producing Multiple Enumerables .....</b>	<b>532</b>
<b>Producing Multiple Enumerators .....</b>	<b>534</b>
<b>Behind the Scenes with Iterators .....</b>	<b>536</b>

<b>■ Chapter 21: Introduction to LINQ .....</b>	<b>537</b>
What Is LINQ? .....	538
LINQ Providers .....	539
Anonymous Types .....	540
Query Syntax and Method Syntax.....	542
Query Variables.....	544
The Structure of Query Expressions .....	546
The from Clause .....	547
The join Clause .....	549
What Is a Join? .....	550
The from . . . let . . . where Section in the Query Body.....	553
The orderby Clause.....	557
The select . . . group Clause .....	558
Anonymous Types in Queries .....	560
The group Clause.....	561
Query Continuation.....	563
The Standard Query Operators .....	564
Signatures of the Standard Query Operators.....	567
Delegates As Parameters .....	569
The LINQ Predefined Delegate Types .....	571
Example Using a Delegate Parameter .....	572
Example Using a Lambda Expression Parameter .....	573
LINQ to XML .....	575
Markup Languages.....	575
XML Basics .....	576
The XML Classes .....	578
Using Values from the XML Tree .....	581
Working with XML Attributes.....	586
Other Types of Nodes .....	590
Using LINQ Queries with LINQ to XML .....	592

<b>■ Chapter 22: Introduction to Asynchronous Programming .....</b>	<b>595</b>
Processes, Threads, and Asynchronous Programming .....	596
Multithreading Considerations .....	597
The Complexity of Multithreading.....	598
Parallel Loops .....	599
The BackgroundWorker Class.....	602
Example Code Using the BackgroundWorker Class.....	606
Example of the BackgroundWorker Class in a WPF Program.....	610
Asynchronous Programming Patterns .....	613
BeginInvoke and EndInvoke.....	614
The Wait-Until-Done Pattern.....	616
The AsyncCallback Class .....	617
The Polling Pattern .....	618
The Callback Pattern .....	620
Timers.....	624
<b>■ Chapter 23: Preprocessor Directives .....</b>	<b>627</b>
What Are Preprocessor Directives? .....	628
General Rules.....	628
The #define and #undef Directives .....	630
Conditional Compilation.....	631
The Conditional Compilation Constructs.....	632
Diagnostic Directives .....	635
Line Number Directives .....	636
Region Directives.....	637
The #pragma warning Directive .....	638
<b>■ Chapter 24: Reflection and Attributes.....</b>	<b>639</b>
Metadata and Reflection.....	640
The Type Class.....	640

Getting a Type Object .....	642
What Is an Attribute? .....	645
Applying an Attribute .....	646
Predefined, Reserved Attributes .....	647
The Obsolete Attribute .....	647
The Conditional Attribute .....	648
Predefined Attributes.....	650
More About Applying Attributes .....	651
Multiple Attributes.....	651
Other Types of Targets .....	652
Global Attributes .....	653
Custom Attributes .....	654
Declaring a Custom Attribute .....	654
Using Attribute Constructors .....	655
Specifying the Constructor .....	655
Using the Constructor .....	656
Positional and Named Parameters in Constructors .....	657
Restricting the Usage of an Attribute .....	658
Suggested Practices for Custom Attributes.....	660
Accessing an Attribute.....	661
Using the IsDefined Method .....	661
Using the GetCustomAttributes Method .....	662
<b>Chapter 25: Other Topics .....</b>	<b>663</b>
Overview .....	664
Strings .....	664
Using Class StringBuilder .....	666
Formatting Numeric Strings .....	667
Parsing Strings to Data Values .....	672

<b>More About the Nullable Types.....</b>	<b>674</b>
The Null Coalescing Operator .....	676
Using Nullable User-Defined Types .....	677
<b>Method Main.....</b>	<b>679</b>
Accessibility of Main.....	680
<b>Documentation Comments .....</b>	<b>681</b>
Inserting Documentation Comments .....	682
Using Other XML Tags .....	683
<b>Nested Types .....</b>	<b>684</b>
Example of a Nested Class .....	685
Visibility and Nested Types.....	686
<b>Interoperating with COM.....</b>	<b>689</b>
<b>Index.....</b>	<b>693</b>

# About the Author



■ **Dan Solis** holds a Bachelor of Arts degree with majors in biology and English. He initially worked in research on the structure of bi- and tri-metal crystals, until he found that he enjoyed programming much more than working in a lab. He also holds a Master of Science degree in computer science from the University of California at Santa Barbara, where he concentrated on programming languages and compiler design.

Dan has been programming professionally for more than 20 years, with more than half that time working as a consultant and contract programmer, including several projects for Microsoft Consulting Services. His consulting projects have ranged from programs for mutual fund analysis and supply chain management to systems for missile tracking. He has also taught courses on various programming languages, Windows programming, UNIX internals, and a number of other topics, in both the United States and Europe.

Dan's first programming language was C, but he soon became intrigued by the journal articles about a new language being developed called "C with Classes." Eventually that language was renamed C++ and released to the world. He began using C++ as soon as he could get access to a compiler, and he eventually started teaching training seminars on the language as well as continuing to code.

With the advent of C#, .NET, and WPF, he has moved on to enjoying the myriad advantages of the new platform and has been working with them enthusiastically ever since.

# Acknowledgments

I want to thank Sian for supporting and encouraging me on a daily basis, and I want to thank my parents and brothers and sisters for their continued love and support.

I also want to express my gratitude to the people at Apress who have worked with me to bring this book to fruition. I really appreciate that they understood and appreciated what I was trying to do and worked with me to achieve it. Thanks to all of you.

# Introduction

The purpose of this book is to teach you the fundamentals and mechanics of the C# programming language. Most books teach programming primarily using text. That's great for novels, but many of the important concepts of programming languages can best be understood through a combination of words, figures, and tables.

Many of us think visually, and figures and tables can help clarify and crystallize our understanding of a concept. In several years of teaching programming languages, I have found that the pictures I drew on the whiteboards were the things that most quickly helped the students understand the concepts I was trying to convey. Illustrations alone, however, are not sufficient to explain a programming language and platform. The goal of this book is to find the best combination of words and illustrations to give you a thorough understanding of the language and to allow the book to serve as a reference resource as well.

This book is written for anyone who wants an introduction to the C# programming language—from the novice to the seasoned programmer. For those just getting started in programming, I've included the basics. For seasoned programmers, the content is laid out succinctly, in a form that allows you to go directly to the information required without having to wade through oceans of words. For both sets of programmers, the content itself is presented graphically, in a form that should make the language easy to learn.

You can download the source code for all the book's example programs from the Apress web site—[apress.com](http://apress.com). And although I can't answer specific questions about your code, you can contact me with suggestions or feedback at [dansolis@sbcglobal.net](mailto:dansolis@sbcglobal.net). You can also visit my web site—[illustratedcsharp.com](http://illustratedcsharp.com). Finally, if you're interested in learning to program using Windows Presentation Foundation, please take a look at my book—*Illustrated WPF*, which uses the same style and approach as this book.

I hope this book makes learning C# an enjoyable experience for you! Take care.

Dan Solis



## CHAPTER 1



# C# and the .NET Framework

- Before .NET
- Enter Microsoft .NET
- Compiling to the Common Intermediate Language
- Compiling to Native Code and Execution
- The Common Language Runtime
- The Common Language Infrastructure
- Review of the Acronyms

## Before .NET

The C# programming language was designed for developing programs for Microsoft's .NET Framework. This chapter gives a brief look at where .NET came from and its basic architecture. To start off, let's get the name right: C# is pronounced "see sharp."<sup>1</sup>

### Windows Programming in the Late 1990s

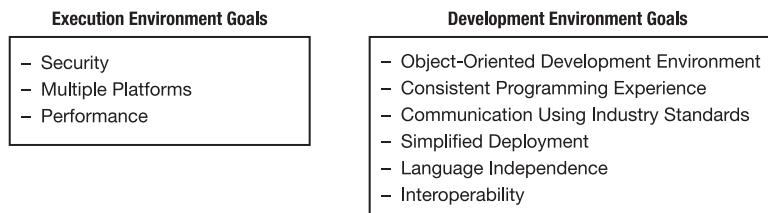
In the late 1990s, Windows programming using the Microsoft platform had fractured into a number of branches. Most programmers were using Visual Basic (VB), C, or C++. Some C and C++ programmers were using the raw Win32 API, but most were using the Microsoft Foundation Classes (MFC). Others had moved to the Component Object Model (COM).

All these technologies had their own problems. The raw Win32 API was not object-oriented, and using it required a lot more work than MFC. MFC was object-oriented but was inconsistent and getting old. COM, although conceptually simple, was complex in its actual coding and required lots of ugly, inelegant plumbing.

Another shortcoming of all these programming technologies was that they were aimed primarily at developing code for the desktop rather than the Internet. At the time, programming for the Web was an afterthought and seemed very different from coding for the desktop.

### Goals for the Next-Generation Platform Services

What we really needed was a new start—an integrated, object-oriented development framework that would bring consistency and elegance back to programming. To meet this need, Microsoft set out to develop a code execution environment and a code development environment that met these goals. Figure 1-1 lists these goals.



**Figure 1-1.** *Goals for the next-generation platform*

## Enter Microsoft .NET

In 2002, Microsoft released the first version of the .NET Framework, which promised to address the old problems and meet the goals for the next-generation systems. The .NET Framework is a much more consistent and object-oriented environment than either the MFC or COM programming technology. Some of its features include the following:

<sup>1</sup> I was once interviewed for a contract C# position when the Human Resources interviewer asked me how much experience I'd had programming in "see pound" (instead of "see sharp")! It took me a moment to realize what he was talking about.

- *Multiple platforms:* The system runs on a broad range of computers, from servers and desktop machines to PDAs and cell phones.
- *Industry standards:* The system uses industry-standard communication protocols, such as XML, HTTP, SOAP, and WSDL.
- *Security:* The system can provide a much safer execution environment, even in the presence of code obtained from suspect sources.

## Components of the .NET Framework

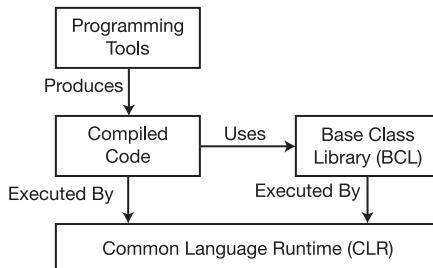
The .NET Framework consists of three components, as shown in Figure 1-2. The execution environment is called the Common Language Runtime (CLR). The CLR manages program execution at run time, including the following:

- Memory management
- Code safety verification
- Code execution, thread management, and exception handling
- Garbage collection

The programming tools include everything you need for coding and debugging, including the following:

- The Visual Studio integrated development environment
- .NET-compliant compilers (e.g., C#, VB .NET, JScript, F#, IronRuby, and managed C++)
- Debuggers
- Web development server-side technologies, such as ASP.NET or WCF

The Base Class Library (BCL) is a large class library used by the .NET Framework and available for you to use in your programs as well.



**Figure 1-2.** Components of the .NET Framework

## An Improved Programming Environment

The .NET Framework offers programmers considerable improvements over previous Windows programming environments. The following sections give a brief overview of its features and their benefits.

### Object-Oriented Development Environment

The CLR, the BCL, and C# are designed to be thoroughly object-oriented and act as a well-integrated environment.

The system provides a consistent, object-oriented model of programming for both local programs and distributed systems. It also provides a software development interface for desktop application programming, mobile application programming, and web development, consistent across a broad range of targets, from servers to cell phones.

### Automatic Garbage Collection

The CLR has a service called the garbage collector (GC), which automatically manages memory for you.

- The GC automatically removes objects from memory that your program will no longer access.
- The GC relieves programmers of tasks they have traditionally had to perform, such as deallocating memory and hunting for memory leaks. This is a huge improvement, since hunting for memory leaks can be difficult and time-consuming.

### Interoperability

The .NET Framework was designed for interoperability between different .NET languages, the operating system or Win32 DLLs, and COM.

- .NET language interoperability allows software modules written using different .NET languages to interact seamlessly.
  - A program written in one .NET language can use and even inherit from a class written in another .NET language, as long as certain rules are followed.
  - Because of its ability to easily integrate modules produced in different programming languages, the .NET Framework is sometimes described as *language-agnostic*.

- .NET provides a feature called *platform invoke (P/Invoke)*, which allows code written for .NET to call and use code not written for .NET. It can use raw C functions imported from standard Win32 DLLs, such as the Windows APIs.
- The .NET Framework also allows interoperability with COM. The .NET Framework software components can call COM components and COM components can call .NET components as if they were COM components themselves.

## No COM Required

The .NET Framework frees the programmer from the COM legacy. As a C# programmer, you don't need to use COM and therefore don't need any of the following:

- *The IUnknown interface*: In COM, all objects must implement interface `IUnknown`. In contrast, all .NET objects derive from a single class called `object`. Interface programming is still an important part of .NET, but it's no longer the central theme.
- *Type libraries*: In COM, type information is kept in type libraries as `.tlb` files, which are separate from the executable code. In .NET, a program's type information is kept bundled with the code in the program file.
- *Reference counting*: In COM, the programmer had to keep track of the number of references to an object to make sure it wasn't deleted at the wrong time. In .NET, the GC keeps track of references and removes objects only when appropriate.
- *HRESULT*: COM used the `HRESULT` data type to return runtime error codes. .NET doesn't use `HRESULTs`. Instead, all unexpected runtime errors produce exceptions.
- *The registry*: COM applications had to be registered in the system registry, which holds information about the configurations of the operating system and applications. .NET applications don't need to use the registry. This simplifies the installation and removal of programs. (However, there is something similar called the *global assembly cache*, which I'll cover in Chapter 10.)

Although the amount of COM code that's currently being written is fairly small, there's still quite a number of COM components in systems currently being used, and C# programmers sometimes need to write code that interfaces with those components. C# 4.0 introduces several new features that make that task easier.

## Simplified Deployment

Deploying programs written for the .NET Framework can be much easier than it was before, for the following reasons:

- The fact that .NET programs don't need to be registered with the registry means that in the simplest case, a program just needs to be copied to the target machine and it's ready to run.
- .NET offers a feature called *side-by-side execution*, which allows different versions of a DLL to exist on the same machine. This means that every executable can have access to the version of the DLL for which it was built.

## Type Safety

The CLR checks and ensures the type safety of parameters and other data objects—even between components written in different programming languages.

## The Base Class Library

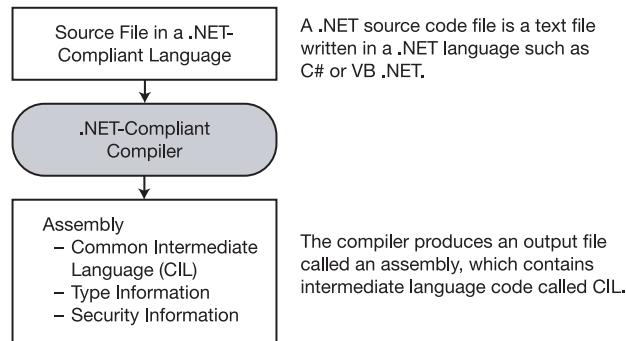
The .NET Framework supplies an extensive base class library, called, not surprisingly, the *Base Class Library (BCL)*. (It's also sometimes called the Framework Class Library—FCL). You can use this extensive set of available code when writing your own programs. Some of the categories are the following:

- *General base classes*: Classes that provide you with an extremely powerful set of tools for a wide range of programming tasks, such as file manipulation, string manipulation, security, and encryption
- *Collection classes*: Classes that implement lists, dictionaries, hash tables, and bit arrays
- *Threading and synchronization classes*: Classes for building multithreaded programs
- *XML classes*: Classes for creating, reading, and manipulating XML documents

# Compiling to the Common Intermediate Language

The compiler for a .NET language takes a source code file and produces an output file called an assembly. Figure 1-3 illustrates the process.

- An assembly is either an executable or a DLL.
- The code in an assembly isn't native machine code but an intermediate language called the *Common Intermediate Language (CIL)*.
- An assembly, among other things, contains the following items:
  - The program's CIL
  - Metadata about the types used in the program
  - Metadata about references to other assemblies



**Figure 1-3.** The compilation process

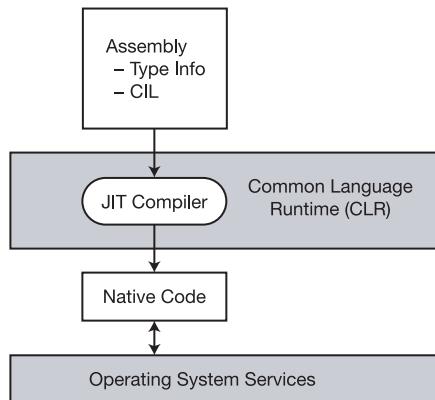
The acronym for the intermediate language has changed over time, and different references use different terms. Two other terms for the CIL that you might encounter are Intermediate Language (IL) and Microsoft Intermediate Language (MSIL). These terms were frequently used during .NET's initial development and early documentation.

## Compiling to Native Code and Execution

The program's CIL isn't compiled to native machine code until it's called to run. At run time, the CLR performs the following steps, as shown in Figure 1-4:

- It checks the assembly's security characteristics.
- It allocates space in memory.
- It sends the assembly's executable code to the just-in-time (JIT) compiler, which compiles portions of it to native code.

The executable code in the assembly is compiled by the JIT compiler only as it's needed. It's then cached in case it's needed for execution again later in the program. Using this process means that code that isn't called during execution isn't compiled to native code, and code that *is* called need only be compiled once.



**Figure 1-4.** Compilation to native code occurs at run time

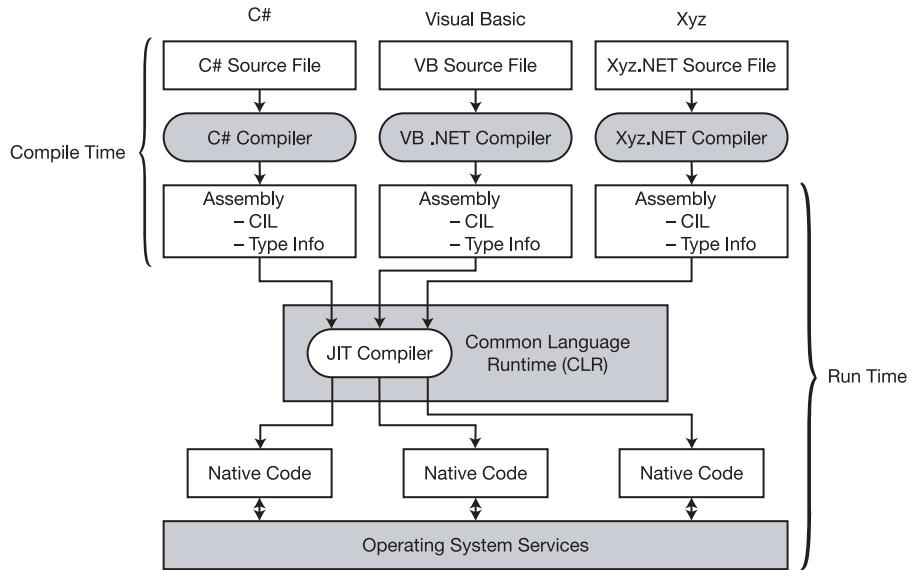
Once the CIL is compiled to native code, the CLR manages it as it runs, performing such tasks as releasing orphaned memory, checking array bounds, checking parameter types, and managing exceptions. This brings up two important terms:

- *Managed code*: Code written for the .NET Framework is called *managed code* and needs the CLR.
- *Unmanaged code*: Code that doesn't run under the control of the CLR, such as Win32 C/C++ DLLs, is called *unmanaged code*.

Microsoft also supplies a tool called the *Native Image Generator*, or *Ngen*, which takes an assembly and produces native code for the current processor. Code that's been run through Ngen avoids the JIT compilation process at run time.

## Overview of Compilation and Execution

The same compilation and execution process is followed regardless of the language of the original source files. Figure 1-5 illustrates the entire compilation and run-time processes for three programs written in different languages.

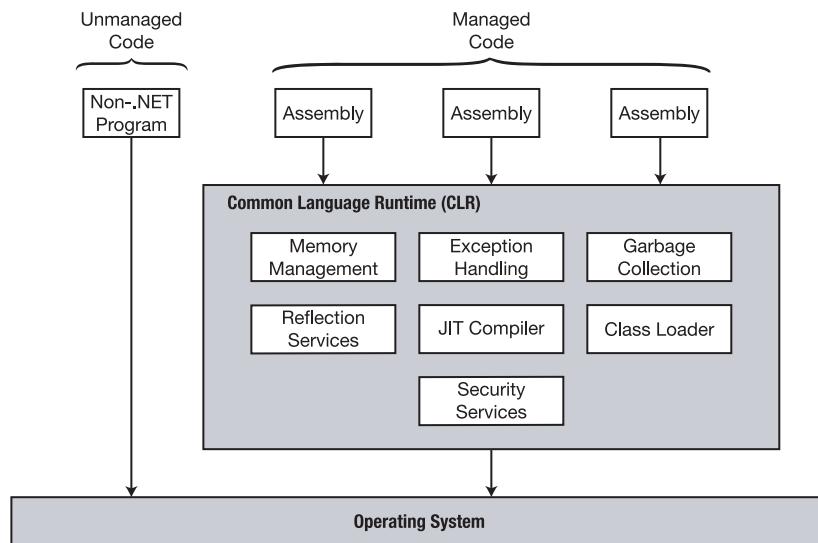


**Figure 1-5.** Overview of the compile-time and runtime processes

# The Common Language Runtime

The core component of the .NET Framework is the CLR, which sits on top of the operating system and manages program execution, as shown in Figure 1-6. The CLR also provides the following services:

- Automatic garbage collection
- Security and authentication
- Extensive programming functionality through access to the BCL—including functionality such as web services and data services



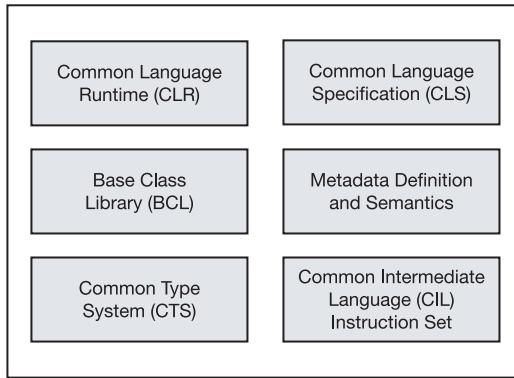
**Figure 1-6.** Overview of the CLR

# The Common Language Infrastructure

Every programming language has a set of intrinsic types representing such objects as integers, floating-point numbers, characters, and so on. Historically, the characteristics of these types have varied from one programming language to another and from platform to platform. For example, the number of bits constituting an integer has varied widely depending on the language and platform.

This lack of uniformity, however, makes it difficult if we want programs to play well with other programs and libraries written in different languages. To have order and cooperation, there must be a set of standards.

The Common Language Infrastructure (CLI) is a set of standards that ties all the components of the .NET Framework into a cohesive, consistent system. It lays out the concepts and architecture of the system and specifies the rules and conventions to which all the software must adhere. Figure 1-7 shows the components of the CLI.



The CLI is a set of specifications that lays out the architecture, rules, and conventions of the system.

**Figure 1-7.** Components of the CLI

Both the CLI and C# have been approved as open international standard specifications by Ecma International. (The name “Ecma” used to be an acronym for the European Computer Manufacturers Association, but it’s now just a word in itself.) Ecma members include Microsoft, IBM, Hewlett-Packard, Adobe, and many other corporations associated with computers and consumer electronics.

## Important Parts of the CLI

Although most programmers don't need to know the details of the CLI specifications, you should at least be familiar with the meaning and purpose of the Common Type System and the Common Language Specification.

### Common Type System (CTS)

The *Common Type System (CTS)* defines the characteristics of the types that must be used in managed code. Some important aspects of the CTS are the following:

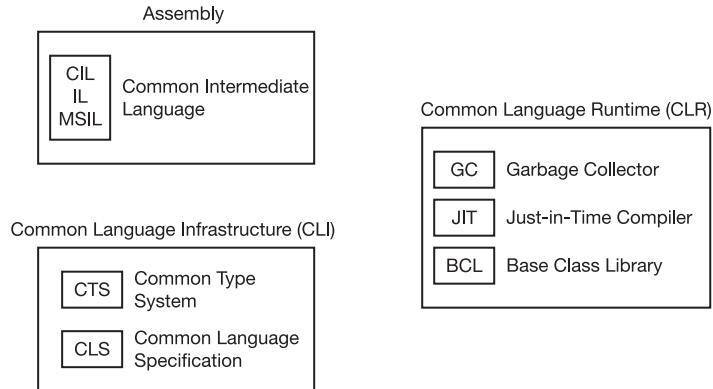
- The CTS defines a rich set of intrinsic types, with fixed, specific characteristics for each type.
- The types provided by a .NET-compliant programming language generally map to some specific subset of this defined set of intrinsic types.
- One of the most important characteristics of the CTS is that *all* types are derived from a common base class—called `object`.

### Common Language Specification (CLS)

The *Common Language Specification (CLS)* specifies the rules, properties, and behaviors of a .NET-compliant programming language. The topics include data types, class construction, and parameter passing.

# Review of the Acronyms

This chapter has covered a lot of .NET acronyms, so Figure 1-8 will help you keep them straight.



**Figure 1-8.** The .NET acronyms



## CHAPTER 2



# Overview of C# Programming

- A Simple C# Program
- Identifiers and Keywords
- Main: The Starting Point of a Program
- Whitespace
- Statements
- Text Output from a Program
- Comments: Annotating the Code

# A Simple C# Program

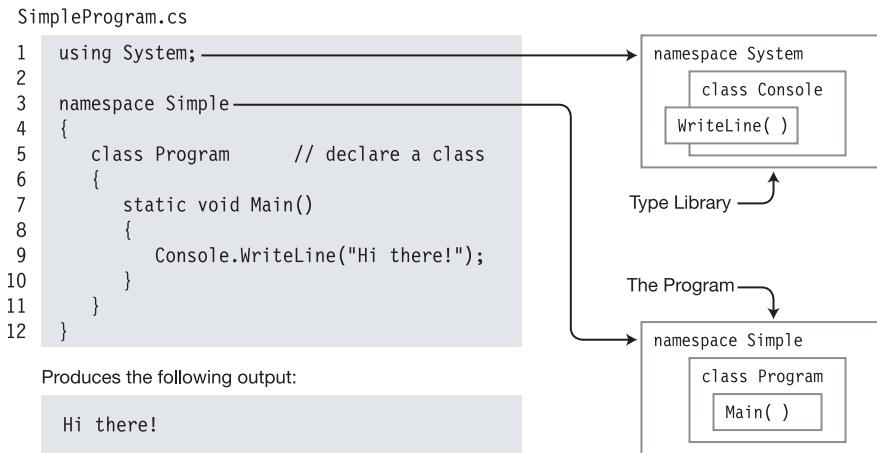
This chapter lays the groundwork for studying C#. Since I'll use code samples extensively throughout the text, I first need to show you what a C# program looks like and what its various parts mean.

I'll start by demonstrating a simple program and explaining its components one by one. This will introduce a range of topics, from the structure of a C# program to the method of producing program output to the screen.

With these source code preliminaries out of the way, I can then use code samples freely throughout the rest of the text. So, unlike the following chapters, where one or two topics are covered in detail, this chapter touches on many topics with only a minimum of explanation.

Let's start by looking at a simple C# program. The complete program source is shown in the top, shaded area in Figure 2-1. As shown, the code is contained in a text file called `SimpleProgram.cs`. As you read through it, don't worry about understanding all the details. Table 2-1 gives a line-by-line description of the code.

- When the code is compiled and executed, it displays the string "Hi there!" in a window on the screen.
- Line 5 contains two contiguous slash characters. These characters—and everything following them on the line—are ignored by the compiler. This is called a *single-line comment*.



**Figure 2-1.** The `SimpleProgram` program

**Table 2-1.** The SimpleProgram Program, Line by Line

Line Number	Description
Line 1	Tells the compiler that this program uses types from the System namespace.
Line 3	Declares a new namespace, called Simple. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The new namespace starts at the open curly brace on line 4 and extends through the matching curly brace on line 12.</li> <li>Any types declared within this section are members of the namespace.</li> </ul>
Line 5	Declares a new class type, called Program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any members declared between the matching curly braces on lines 6 and 11 are members that make up this class.</li> </ul>
Line 7	Declares a method called Main as a member of class Program. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>In this program, Main is the only member of the Program class.</li> <li>Main is a special function used by the compiler as the starting point of the program</li> </ul>
Line 9	Contains only a single, simple statement; this line constitutes the body of Main. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Simple statements are terminated by a semicolon.</li> <li>This statement uses a class called Console, in namespace System, to print out the message to a window on the screen</li> <li>Without the using statement in line 1, the compiler wouldn't have known where to look for class Console.</li> </ul>

## More About SimpleProgram

A C# program consists of one or more type declarations. Much of this book is spent explaining the different types that you can create and use in your programs. The types in a program can be declared in any order. In the SimpleProgram example, only a class type is declared.

A *namespace* is a set of type declarations associated with a name. SimpleProgram uses two namespaces. It creates a new namespace called Simple, in which it declares its type (class Program), and uses the Console class defined in a namespace called System.

To compile the program, you can use Visual Studio or the command-line compiler. To use the command-line compiler, in its simplest form, use the following command in a command window:

```
csc SimpleProgram.cs
```

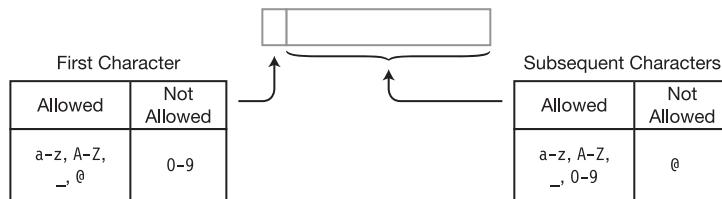
In this command, `csc` is the name of the command-line compiler, and `SimpleProgram.cs` is the name of the source file.

## Identifiers and Keywords

*Identifiers* are character strings used to name things such as variables, methods, parameters, and a host of other programming constructs that will be covered later.

You can create self-documenting identifiers by concatenating meaningful words into a single descriptive name, using uppercase and lowercase letters (e.g., `CardDeck`, `PlayersHand`, `FirstName`, `SocialSecurityNum`). Certain characters are allowed or disallowed at certain positions in an identifier. Figure 2-2 illustrates these rules.

- The alphabetic and underscore characters (a through z, A through Z, and `_`) are allowed at any position.
- Digits are not allowed in the first position but are allowed everywhere else.
- The `@` character is allowed in the first position of an identifier but not anywhere else. The use of the `@` character, although allowed, is discouraged for general use.



**Figure 2-2.** Characters allowed in identifiers

Identifiers are case-sensitive. For instance, the variable names `myVar` and `MyVar` are different identifiers. It's generally a bad idea, however, to have identifiers that differ only in the case of some of the letters, because they're easily confused.

As an example, in the following code snippet, the variable declarations are all valid and declare different integer variables. But using such similar names will make coding more error-prone and debugging more difficult. Those debugging your code at some later time will not be pleased.

```
// Valid syntactically, but don't do this!
int totalCycleCount;
int TotalCycleCount;
int TotalcycleCount;
```

# Naming Conventions

The *C# Language Specification* suggests that certain casing conventions be used in creating identifiers. Table 2-2 summarizes the suggested guidelines for casing.

For most type identifiers, the Pascal casing style is recommended. In this style, each of the words combined to make an identifier is capitalized—for example, FirstName and LastName.

**Table 2-2. Recommended Identifier Naming Styles**

Style Name	Description	Recommended Use	Examples
Pascal casing	Each word in the identifier is capitalized.	Use for type names and member names.	CardDeck, DealersHand
Camel casing	Each word in the identifier, except the first, is capitalized.	Use for local variables and method parameters.	totalCycleCount, randomSeedParam
Uppercase	The identifier is composed of all uppercase letters.	Use only for abbreviations.	IO, DMA, XML

Although these are the suggested guidelines, many organizations use other conventions—particularly in the naming of member fields, which I'll introduce in the next chapter. Two of the common conventions are the following:

- Begin a field name with an underscore: \_highTemp, \_lowTemp
- Begin a field name with m\_: m\_highTemp, m\_lowTemp

Both of these methods have the advantage of showing you immediately that these identifiers are field names. These forms also allow Visual Studio's IntelliSense feature to group all the fields together in the pop-ups.

## Keywords

*Keywords* are the character string tokens used to define the C# language. Table 2-3 gives a complete list of the C# keywords.

Some important things to know about keywords are the following:

- Keywords cannot be used as variable names or any other form of identifier, unless prefaced with the @ character.
- All C# keywords consist entirely of lowercase letters. (.NET type names, however, use Pascal casing.)

**Table 2-3.** The C# Keywords

abstract	const	extern	int	out	short	typeof
as	continue	false	interface	override	sizeof	uint
base	decimal	finally	internal	params	stackalloc	ulong
bool	default	fixed	is	private	static	unchecked
break	delegate	float	lock	protected	string	unsafe
Byte	do	for	long	public	struct	ushort
case	double	foreach	namespace	readonly	switch	using
catch	else	goto	new	ref	this	virtual
char	enum	if	null	return	throw	void
checked	event	implicit	object	sbyte	true	volatile
class	explicit	in	operator	sealed	try	while

*Contextual keywords* are identifiers that act as keywords only in certain language constructs. In those positions, they have particular meanings; but unlike keywords, which cannot ever be used as identifiers, contextual keywords can be used as identifiers in other parts of the code. Table 2-4 contains the list of contextual keywords.

**Table 2-4.** The C# Contextual Keywords

add	ascending	by	descending	dynamic	equals	from
get	global	group	into	join	let	on
orderby	partial	remove	select	set	value	var
where	yield					

## Main: The Starting Point of a Program

Every C# program must have one class with a method (function) called `Main`. In the `SimpleProgram` program shown previously, it was declared in a class called `Program`.

- The starting point of execution of every C# program is at the first instruction in `Main`.
- The name `Main` must be capitalized.
- The simplest form of `Main` is the following:

```
static void Main( )
{
    Statements
}
```

## Whitespace

*Whitespace* in a program refers to characters that do not have a visible output character. Whitespace in source code is ignored by the compiler, but is used by the programmer to make the code clearer and easier to read. Some of the whitespace characters include the following:

- Space
- Tab
- New line
- Carriage return

For example, the following code fragments are treated exactly the same by the compiler in spite of their differences in appearance.

```
// Nicely formatted
Main()
{
    Console.WriteLine("Hi, there!");
}

// Just concatenated
Main(){Console.WriteLine("Hi, there!");}
```

# Statements

The statements in C# are very similar to those of C and C++. This section introduces the general form of statements; the specific statement forms are covered in Chapter 9.

## Simple Statements

A *statement* is a source code instruction describing a type or telling the program to perform an action.

- A *simple statement* is *terminated* by a semicolon.

For example, the following code is a sequence of two simple statements. The first statement defines an integer variable named `var1` and initializes its value to 5. The second statement prints the value of variable `var1` to a window on the screen.

```
int var1 = 5;
System.Console.WriteLine("The value of var1 is {0}", var1);
```

## Blocks

A *block* is a sequence of zero or more statements enclosed by a matching set of curly braces; it acts as a single syntactic statement.

You can create a block from the set of two statements in the preceding example by enclosing the statements in matching curly braces, as shown in the following code:

```
{
    int var1 = 5;
    System.Console.WriteLine("The value of var1 is {0}", var1);
}
```

Some important things to know about blocks are the following:

- You can use a block whenever the syntax requires a statement but the action you need requires more than one simple statement.
- Certain program constructs *require* blocks. In these constructs, you cannot substitute a simple statement for the block.
- Although a simple statement is terminated by a semicolon, a block is not followed by a semicolon. (Actually, the compiler will *allow* it—but it's not good style.)

```
{
    Terminating semicolon
    ↓
    int var2 = 5;
    System.Console.WriteLine("The value of var1 is {0}", var1);
}
↑ No terminating semicolon
```

# Text Output from a Program

A *console window* is a simple command prompt window that allows a program to display text and receive input from the keyboard. The BCL supplies a class called `Console` (in the `System` namespace), which contains methods for inputting and outputting data to a console window.

## Write

`Write` is a member of the `Console` class. It sends a text string to the program's console window. In its simplest form, `Write` sends a literal string of text to the window. The string must be enclosed in quotation marks—double quotes, not single quotes.

The following line of code shows an example of using the `Write` member:

```
Console.WriteLine("This is trivial text.");  
                             ↑  
                             Output string
```

This code produces the following output in the console window:

---

```
This is trivial text.
```

---

Another example is the following code, which sends three literal strings to the program's console window:

```
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text1. ");  
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text2. ");  
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text3. ");
```

This code produces the output that follows. Notice that `Write` does not append a newline character after a string, so the output of the three statements runs together on a single line.

```
This is text1. This is text2. This is text3.  
                     ↑                     ↑                     ↑  
                     First             Second             Third  
                     statement      statement      statement
```

## WriteLine

`WriteLine` is another member of `Console`, which performs the same functions as `Write` but appends a newline character to the end of each output string.

For example, if you use the preceding code, substituting `WriteLine` for `Write`, the output is on separate lines:

```
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text 1.");
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text 2.");
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text 3.");
```

This code produces the following output in the console window:

---

```
This is text 1.
This is text 2.
This is text 3.
```

---

# The Format String

The general form of the `Write` and `WriteLine` statements takes more than a single parameter.

- If there is more than a single parameter, the parameters are separated by commas.
- The first parameter must always be a string and is called the *format string*.
- The format string can contain *substitution markers*.
  - A substitution marker marks the position in the format string where a value should be substituted in the output string.
  - It consists of an integer enclosed in a set of matching curly braces. The integer is the numeric position of the substitution value to be used.
- The parameters following the format string are called *substitution values*. These substitution values are numbered, starting at 0.

The syntax is as follows:

```
Console.WriteLine( FormatString, SubVal0, SubVal1, SubVal2, ... );
```

For example, the following statement has two substitution markers, numbered 0 and 1, and two substitution values, whose values are 3 and 6, respectively.

```
Substitution markers  
↓ ↓  
Console.WriteLine("Two sample integers are {0} and {1}.", 3, 6);  
↑ ↑  
Format string      Substitution values
```

This code produces the following output on the screen:

---

```
Two sample integers are 3 and 6.
```

---

## Multiple Markers and Values

In C#, you can use any number of markers and any number of values.

- The values can be used in any order.
- The values can be substituted any number of times in the format string.

For example, the following statement uses three markers and only two values. Notice that value 1 is used before value 0 and that value 1 is used twice.

```
Console.WriteLine("Three integers are {1}, {0} and {1}.", 3, 6);
```

This code displays the following on the screen:

---

```
Three integers are 6, 3 and 6.
```

---

A marker must not attempt to reference a value at a position beyond the length of the list of substitution values. If it does, it will *not produce a compile error* but a runtime error (called an *exception*).

For example, in the following statement there are two substitution values, with positions 0 and 1. The second marker, however, references position 2—which does not exist. This will produce a runtime error.

```
Position 0   Position 1  
↓           ↓  
Console.WriteLine("Two integers are {0} and {2}.", 3, 6);    // Error!  
          ↑  
There is no position 2 value.
```

## Comments: Annotating the Code

You've already seen single-line comments, so here I'll discuss the second type of inline comments—*delimited comments*—and mention a third type called *documentation comments*.

- Delimited comments have a two-character start marker and a two-character end marker.
- Text between the matching markers is ignored by the compiler.
- Delimited comments can span any number of lines.

For example, the following code shows a delimited comment spanning multiple lines.

```
↓ Beginning of comment spanning multiple lines
/*
    This text is ignored by the compiler.
    Unlike single-line comments, delimited comments
    like this one can span multiple lines.
*/
↑ End of comment
```

A delimited comment can also span just part of a line. For example, the following statement shows text commented out of the middle of a line. The result is the declaration of a single variable, var2.

```
Beginning of comment
↓
int /*var 1,*/ var2;
↑
End of comment
```

---

■ **Note** Single-line and delimited comments behave in C# just like they do in C and C++.

---

## More About Comments

There are several other important things you need to know about comments:

- Nested delimited comments are not allowed. Only one comment can be in effect at a time. If you attempt to nest comments, the comment that starts first is in effect until the end of its scope.
- The scope for particularly comment types is as follows:
  - For single-line comments, the comment is in effect until the end of the current line.
  - For delimited comments, the comment is in effect until the *first* end delimiter is encountered.

The following attempts at comments are incorrect:

```
↓ Opens the comment
/* This is an attempt at a nested comment.
   /* ← Ignored because it's inside a comment
      Inner comment
   */ ← Closes the comment because it's the first end delimiter encountered
*/ ← Syntax error because it has no opening delimiter

↓ Opens the comment           ↓ Ignored because it's inside a comment
// Single-line comment    /* Nested comment?
   */ ← Incorrect because it has no opening delimiter
```

## Documentation Comments

C# also provides a third type of comment: the *documentation comment*. Documentation comments contain XML text that can be used to produce program documentation. Comments of this type look like single-line comments, except that they have three contiguous slashes rather than two. I'll cover documentation comments in Chapter 25.

The following code shows the form of documentation comments:

```
/// <summary>
/// This class does...
/// </summary>
class Program
{
    ...
}
```

## Summary of Comment Types

*Inline comments* are sections of text that are ignored by the compiler but are included in the code to document it. Programmers insert comments into their code to explain and document it. Table 2-5 summarizes the comment types.

**Table 2-5. Comment Types**

Type	Start	End	Description
Single-line	//		The text from the beginning marker to the end of the current line is ignored by the compiler.
Delimited	/*	*/	The text between the start and end markers is ignored by the compiler.
Documentation	///		Comments of this type contain XML text that is meant to be used by a tool to produce program documentation.





# Types, Storage, and Variables

- A C# Program Is a Set of Type Declarations
- A Type Is a Template
- Instantiating a Type
- Data Members and Function Members
- Predefined Types
- User-Defined Types
- The Stack and the Heap
- Value Types and Reference Types
- Variables
- Static Typing and the dynamic Keyword
- Nullable Types

## A C# Program Is a Set of Type Declarations

If you were to broadly characterize the source code of C and C++ programs, you might say that a C program is a set of functions and data types and that a C++ program is a set of functions and classes. A C# program, however, is a set of type declarations.

- The source code of a C# program or DLL is a set of one or more type declarations.
- For an executable, one of the types declared must be a class that includes a method called `Main`.
- A *namespace* is a way of grouping a related set of type declarations and giving the group a name. Since your program is a related set of type declarations, you will generally declare your program type inside a namespace you create.

For example, the following code shows a program that consists of three type declarations. The three types are declared inside a new namespace called `MyProgram`.

```
namespace MyProgram          // Create a new namespace.  
{  
    DeclarationOfTypeA      // Declare a type.  
  
    DeclarationOfTypeB      // Declare a type.  
  
    class C                 // Declare a type.  
    {  
        static void Main()  
        {  
            ...  
        }  
    }  
}
```

Namespaces are covered in more detail in Chapter 10.

# A Type Is a Template

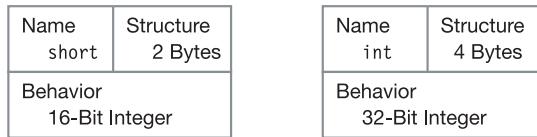
Since a C# program is just a set of type declarations, learning C# consists of learning how to create and use types. So, the first thing you need to do is to look at what a type is.

You can start by thinking of a type as a *template* for creating data structures. It isn't the data structure itself, but it specifies the characteristics of objects constructed from the template.

A type is defined by the following elements:

- A name
- A data structure to contain its data members
- Behaviors and constraints

For example, Figure 3-1 illustrates the components of two types: `short` and `int`.



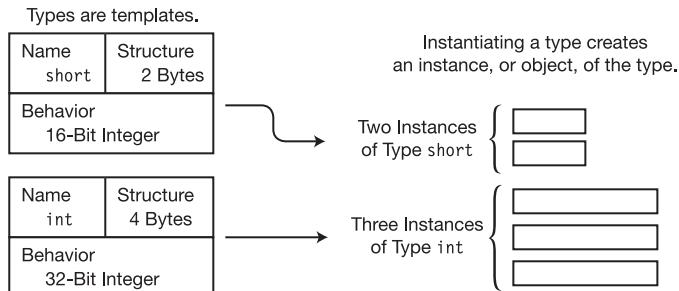
**Figure 3-1.** A type is a template.

## Instantiating a Type

Creating an actual object from the type's template is called *instantiating* the type.

- The object created by instantiating a type is called either an *object* of the type or an *instance* of the type. The terms are interchangeable.
- Every data item in a C# program is an instance of some type—a type either provided by the language, provided by the BCL or another library, or defined by the programmer.

Figure 3-2 illustrates the instantiation of objects of two predefined types.



**Figure 3-2.** Instantiating a type creates an instance.

# Data Members and Function Members

Some types, such as short, int, and long, are called *simple types* and can store only a single data item.

Other types can store multiple data items. An *array*, for example, is a type that can store multiple items of the same type. The individual items are called *elements* and are referenced by a number, called an *index*. Chapter 14 describes arrays in detail.

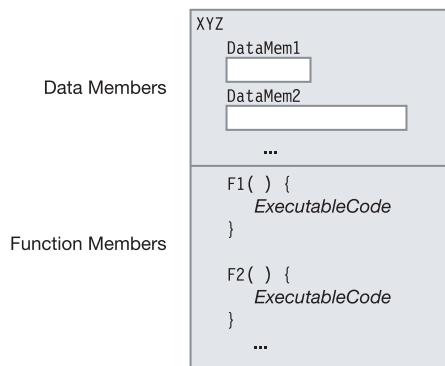
## Types of Members

Other types, however, can contain data items of many different types. The individual elements in these types are called *members*, and, unlike arrays, in which each member is referred to by a number, these members have distinct names.

There are two types of members: data members and function members.

- *Data members* store data that is relevant to the object of the class or to the class as a whole.
- *Function members* execute code. Function members define how the type can act.

For example, Figure 3-3 shows some of the data members and function members of type XYZ. It contains two data members and two function members.



**Figure 3-3.** Types specify data members and function members.

# Predefined Types

C# provides 16 predefined types, which are shown in Figure 3-4 and listed in Tables 3-1 and 3-2. They include 13 simple types and 3 nonsimple types.

The names of all the predefined types consist of *all lowercase* characters. The predefined simple types include the following:

- Eleven numeric types, including the following:
  - Various lengths of signed and unsigned integer types.
  - Floating-point types—`float` and `double`.
  - A high-precision decimal type called `decimal`. Unlike `float` and `double`, type `decimal` can represent decimal fractional numbers exactly. It's often used for monetary calculations.
- A Unicode character type, called `char`.
- A Boolean type, called `bool`. Type `bool` represents Boolean values and must be one of two values—either `true` or `false`.

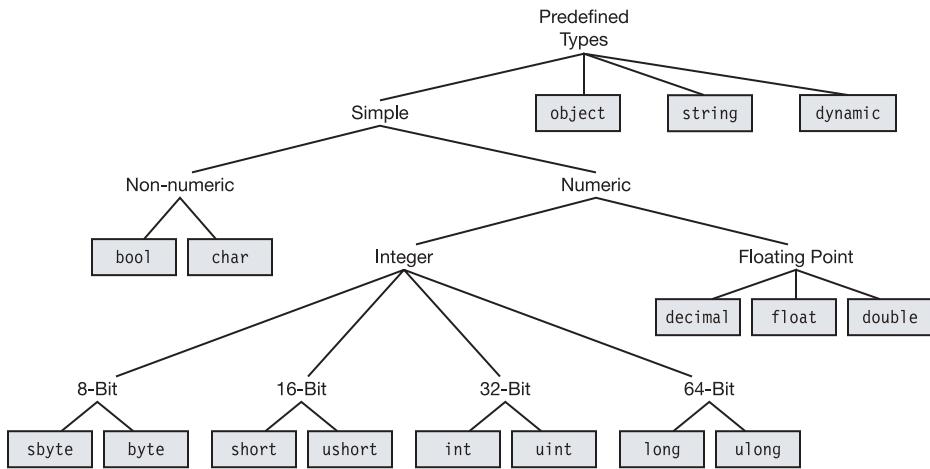
---

■ **Note** Unlike C and C++, numeric values do not have a Boolean interpretation in C#.

---

The three nonsimple types are the following:

- Type `string`, which is an array of Unicode characters
- Type `object`, which is the type on which all other types are based
- Type `dynamic`, which is used when using assemblies written in dynamic languages



**Figure 3-4.** The predefined types

## More About the Predefined Types

All the predefined types are mapped directly to underlying .NET types. The C# type names are just aliases for the .NET types, so using the .NET names works fine syntactically, although this is discouraged. Within a C# program, you should use the C# names rather than the .NET names.

The predefined simple types represent a single item of data. They're listed in Table 3-1, along with the ranges of values they can represent and the underlying .NET types to which they map.

**Table 3-1.** The Predefined Simple Types

Name	Meaning	Range	.NET Framework Type	Default Value
sbyte	8-bit signed integer	-128–127	System.SByte	0
byte	8-bit unsigned integer	0–255	System.Byte	0
short	16-bit signed integer	-32,768–32,767	System.Int16	0
ushort	16-bit unsigned integer	0–65,535	System.UInt16	0
int	32-bit signed integer	-2,147,483,648–2,147,483,647	System.Int32	0
uint	32-bit unsigned integer	0–4,294,967,295	System.UInt32	0
long	64-bit signed integer	-9,223,372,036,854,775,808–9,223,372,036,854,775,807	System.Int64	0
ulong	64-bit unsigned integer	0–18,446,744,073,709,551,615	System.UInt64	0
float	Single-precision float	$1.5 \times 10^{-45}$ – $3.4 \times 10^{38}$	System.Single	0.0f
double	Double-precision float	$5 \times 10^{-324}$ – $1.7 \times 10^{308}$	System.Double	0.0d
bool	Boolean	true, false	System.Boolean	false
char	Unicode character	U+0000–U+ffff	System.Char	\x0000
decimal	Decimal value with 28-significant-digit precision	$\pm 1.0 \times 10^{-28}$ – $\pm 7.9 \times 10^{28}$	System.Decimal	0m

The nonsimple predefined types are somewhat more complex. Values of type `string` contain zero or more Unicode characters. The `object` type is the base class for all other types in the system, including the predefined, simple types. Table 3-2 shows the predefined nonsimple types.

**Table 3-2.** The Predefined Nonsimple Types

Name	Meaning	.NET Framework Type
<code>object</code>	The base class from which all other types are derived	System.Object
<code>string</code>	A sequence of Unicode characters	System.String
<code>dynamic</code>	A type designed to be used with assemblies written in dynamic languages	

## User-Defined Types

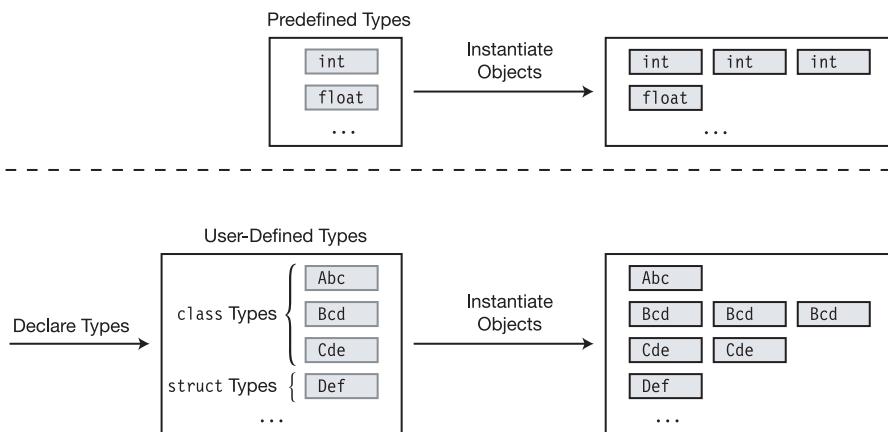
Besides the 15 predefined types provided by C#, you can also create your own user-defined types. There are six kinds of types you can create. They are the following:

- class types
- struct types
- array types
- enum types
- delegate types
- interface types

You create a type using a *type declaration*, which includes the following information:

- The kind of type you are creating
- The name of the new type
- A declaration (name and specification) of each of the type's members—except for array and delegate types, which don't have named members

Once you've declared a type, you can create and use objects of the type just as if they were predefined types. Figure 3-5 summarizes the use of predefined and user-defined types. Using predefined types is a one-step process in which you simply instantiate the objects of that type. Using user-defined types is a two-step process. You must first declare the type and then instantiate objects of the type.



**Figure 3-5.** The predefined types require instantiation only. The user-defined types require two steps: declaration and instantiation.

# The Stack and the Heap

While a program is running, its data must be stored in memory. How much memory is required for an item, and where and how it's stored, depends on its type.

A running program uses two regions of memory to store data: the *stack* and the *heap*.

## The Stack

The system takes care of all stack manipulation. You, as the programmer, don't need to do anything with it explicitly. But understanding its basic functions will give you a better understanding of what your program is doing when it's running and allow you to better understand the C# documentation and literature.

The stack is an array of memory that acts as a last-in, first-out (LIFO) data structure. It stores several types of data:

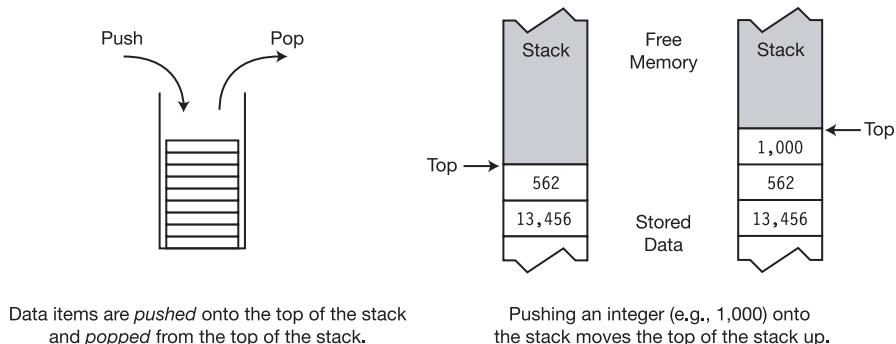
- The values of certain types of variables
- The program's current execution environment
- Parameters passed to methods

## Facts About Stacks

The general characteristics of stacks are the following:

- Data can be added to and deleted only from the top of the stack.
- Placing a data item at the top of the stack is called *pushing* the item onto the stack.
- Deleting an item from the top of the stack is called *popping* the item from the stack.

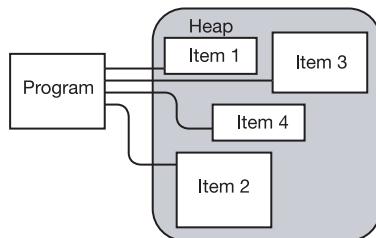
Figure 3-6 illustrates the functions and terminology of the stack.



**Figure 3-6.** Pushing and popping on the stack

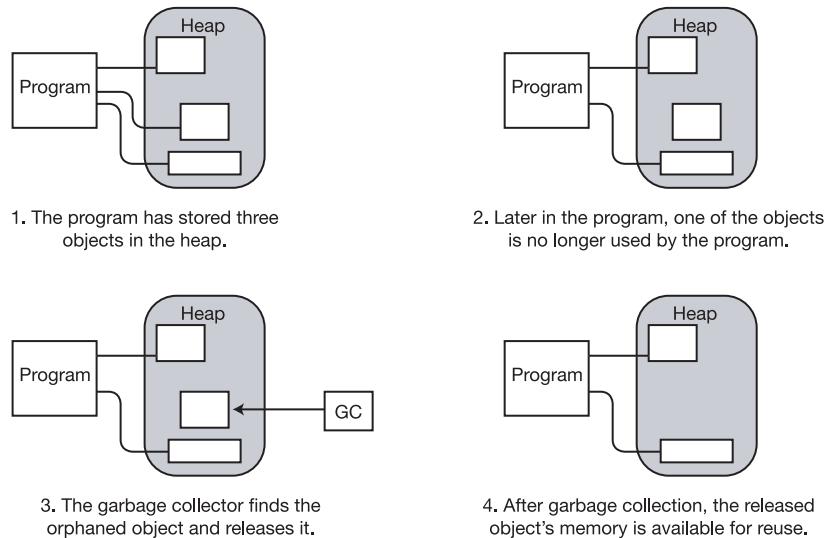
## The Heap

The heap is an area where chunks of memory are allocated to store certain kinds of data objects. Unlike the stack, memory can be stored and removed from the heap in any order. Figure 3-7 shows a program that has stored four items in the heap.



**Figure 3-7.** The memory heap

Although your program can store items in the heap, it cannot explicitly delete them. Instead, the CLR's garbage collector (GC) automatically cleans up orphaned heap objects when it determines that your code is no longer accessing them. This frees you from what in other programming languages can be an error-prone task. Figure 3-8 illustrates the garbage collection process.



**Figure 3-8.** Automatic garbage collection in the heap

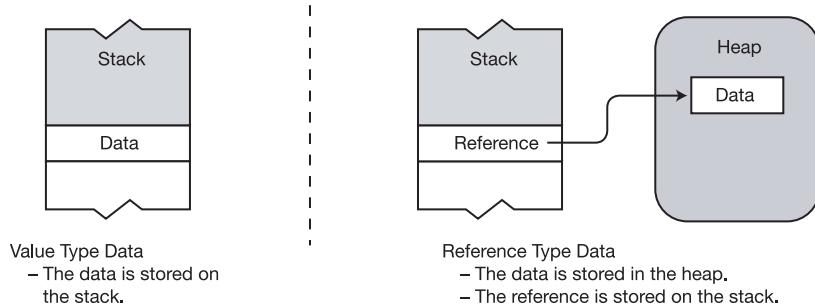
## Value Types and Reference Types

The *type* of a data item defines how much memory is required to store it and the data members that comprise it. The type also determines where an object is stored in memory—the stack or the heap.

Types are divided into two categories: value types and reference types. Objects of these types are stored differently in memory.

- *Value types* require only a single segment of memory, which stores the actual data.
- *Reference types* require two segments of memory:
  - The first contains the *actual data*—and is always located in the heap.
  - The second is a reference that points to where in the heap the data is stored.

Data that is not a member of another type is stored as shown in Figure 3-9. For value types, data is stored on the stack. For reference types, the actual data is stored in the heap, and the reference is stored on the stack.



**Figure 3-9.** Storing data that is not part of another type

## Storing Members of a Reference Type Object

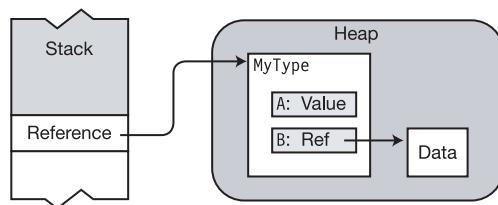
Figure 3-9 shows how data is stored when it isn't a member of another type. When it's a member of another type, data might be stored a little differently.

- The data portion of a reference type object is *always* stored in the heap, as shown in Figure 3-9.
- A value type object, or the reference part of a reference type, can be stored in either the stack or the heap, depending on the circumstances.

Suppose, for example, that you have an instance of a reference type, called `MyType`, that has two members—a value type member and a reference type member. How is it stored? Is the value type member stored on the stack and the reference type split between the stack and the heap, as shown in Figure 3-9? The answer is no.

Remember that for a reference type, the data of an instance is *always* stored in the heap. Since both members are part of the object's data, they're both stored in the heap, regardless of whether they are value or reference types. Figure 3-10 illustrates the case of type `MyType`.

- Even though member `A` is a value type, it's part of the data of the instance of `MyType` and is therefore stored with the object's data in the heap.
- Member `B` is a reference type, and therefore its data portion will always be stored in the heap, as shown by the small box marked "Data." What's different is that its reference is also stored in the heap, inside the data portion of the enclosing `MyType` object.



**Figure 3-10.** Storage of data as part of a reference type

---

**Note** For any object of a reference type, all its data members are stored in the heap, regardless of whether they are of value type or reference type.

---

## Categorizing the C# Types

Table 3-3 shows all the types available in C# and what kinds of types they are—value types or reference types. Each reference type is covered later in the text.

**Table 3-3.** Value Types and Reference Types in C#

	Value Types				Reference Types
Predefined types	<code>sbyte</code> <code>short</code> <code>int</code> <code>long</code> <code>bool</code>	<code>byte</code> <code>ushort</code> <code>uint</code> <code>ulong</code>	<code>float</code> <code>double</code> <code>char</code> <code>decimal</code>		<code>object</code> <code>string</code> <code>dynamic</code>
User-defined types	<code>struct</code> <code>enum</code>				<code>class</code> <code>interface</code> <code>delegate</code> <code>array</code>

# Variables

A general-purpose programming language must allow a program to store and retrieve data.

- A *variable* is a name that represents data stored in memory during program execution.
- C# provides four categories of variables, each of which will be discussed in detail. These kinds are listed in Table 3-4.

**Table 3-4. The Four Kinds of Variables**

Name	Member of a Type	Description
Local variable	No	Holds temporary data within the scope of a method
Field	Yes	Holds data associated with a type or an instance of a type
Parameter	No	A temporary variable used to pass data from one method to another method
Array element	Yes	One member of a sequenced collection of (usually) homogeneous data items

## Variable Declarations

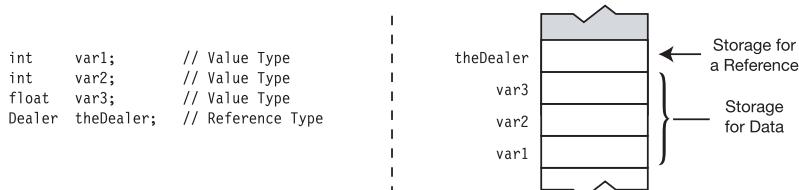
A variable must be declared before it can be used. The variable declaration defines the variable and accomplishes two things:

- It gives the variable a name and associates a type with it.
- It allows the compiler to allocate memory for it.

A simple variable declaration requires at least a type and a name. The following declaration defines a variable named var2, of type int:

```
Type
↓
int var2;
↑
Name
```

For example, Figure 3-11 represents the declaration of four variables and their places on the stack.



**Figure 3-11. Value type and reference type variable declarations**

## Variable Initializers

Besides declaring a variable's name and type, you can optionally use the declaration to initialize its memory to a specific value.

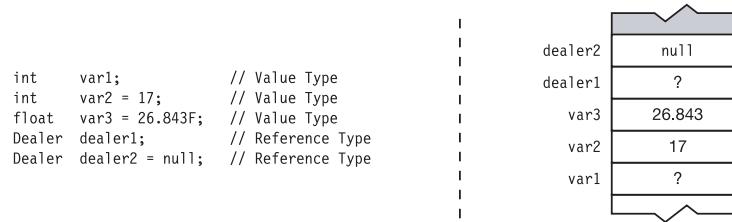
A *variable initializer* consists of an equals sign followed by the initializing value, as shown here:

```

  Initializer
  ↓
int var2 = 17;
```

Local variables without initializers have an undefined value and cannot be used until they have been assigned a value. Attempting to use an undefined local variable causes the compiler to produce an error message.

Figure 3-12 shows a number of local variable declarations on the left and the resulting stack configuration on the right. Some of the variables have initializers, and others do not.



**Figure 3-12.** Variable initializers

## Automatic Initialization

Some kinds of variables are automatically set to default values if they are declared without an initializer, and others are not. Variables that are not automatically initialized to default values contain undefined values until the program assigns them a value. Table 3-5 shows which types of variables are automatically initialized and which are not. I'll cover each of the five variable types later in the text.

**Table 3-5.** Types of Variables

Variable Type	Stored In	Auto-initialized	Use
Local variables	Stack or stack and heap	No	Used for local computation inside a function member
Class fields	Heap	Yes	Members of a class
Struct fields	Stack or heap	Yes	Members of a struct
Parameters	Stack	No	Used for passing values into and out of a method
Array elements	Heap	Yes	Members of an array

## Multiple-Variable Declarations

You can declare multiple variables in a single declaration statement.

- The variables in a multiple-variable declaration must all be of the same type.
- The variable names must be separated with commas. Initializers can be included with the variable names.

For example, the following code shows two valid declaration statements with multiple variables. Notice that the initialized variables can be mixed with uninitialized variables as long as they're separated by commas. The last declaration statement shown is invalid because it attempts to declare different types of variables in a single statement.

```
// Variable declarations--some with initializers, some without
int    var3 = 7, var4, var5 = 3;
double var6, var7 = 6.52;

Type      Different type
↓          ↓
int var8, float var9;      // Error! Can't mix types (int and float)
```

## Using the Value of a Variable

A variable name represents the value stored by the variable. You can use the value by using the variable name.

For example, in the following statement, the value of `var2` is retrieved from memory and placed at the position of the variable.

```
Console.WriteLine("{0}", var2);
```

## Static Typing and the `dynamic` Keyword

One thing you'll have noticed is that every variable includes the *type* of the variable, allowing the compiler to determine the amount of memory it will require at runtime and which parts should be stored in the stack and which in the heap. The type of the variable is determined at compile time and cannot be changed at runtime. This is called *static typing*.

Not all languages, though, are statically typed. Many, including such scripting languages as IronPython and IronRuby, are *dynamically typed*. That is, the type of a variable might not be resolved until runtime. Since these are .NET languages, C# programs need to be able to use assemblies written in these languages.

To solve the problem that C# needs to be able to resolve at compile time a type referenced in an assembly that doesn't resolve its types until runtime, the C# language designers added the keyword `dynamic` to the language. The `dynamic` keyword represents a specific, actual C# type that knows how to resolve itself at runtime. That is, it's statically typed as `dynamic`!

This satisfies both constraints. The C# compiler can resolve the keyword to an actual type, and the type object can resolve itself to the target assembly's type at runtime.

## Nullable Types

There are situations, particularly when working with databases, where you want to indicate that a variable does not currently hold a valid value. For reference types, you can do this easily, by setting the variable to `null`. When you define a variable of a value type, however, its memory is allocated whether or not its contents have any valid meaning.

What you would like in this situation is to have a Boolean indicator associated with the variable, so that when the value is valid, the indicator is `true`, and when the value is not valid, the indicator is `false`.

*Nullable types* allow you to create a value type variable that can be marked as valid or invalid so that you can make sure a variable is valid before using it. Regular value types are called *non-nullable types*.

## Creating a Nullable Type

A nullable type is always based on another type, called the *underlying type*, that has already been declared.

- You can create a nullable type from any value type, including the predefined, simple types.
- You cannot create a nullable type from a reference type or from another nullable type.
- You do not explicitly declare a nullable type in your code. Instead, you declare a *variable of a nullable type*. The compiler implicitly creates the nullable type for you.

To create a variable of a nullable type, simply add a question mark to the end of the name of the underlying type, in the variable declaration. Unfortunately, this syntax makes it appear that you have a lot of questions about your code.

For example, the following code declares a variable of the nullable `int` type. Notice that the suffix is attached to the *type name*—not the variable name.

```
Suffix
↓
int? myNInt = 28;
↑
The name of the nullable type includes the suffix.
```

With this declaration statement, the compiler takes care of both producing the nullable type and creating the variable of that type.

Using a nullable type is almost the same as using a variable of any other type. Reading a variable of a nullable type returns its value. You must, however, make sure that the variable is not `null`. Attempting to read the value of a `null` variable produces an exception.

- Like any variable, to retrieve its value, you just use its name.
- To check whether a nullable type has a value, you can compare it to `null`.

```
Compare to null
↓
if ( myInt1 != null )
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", myInt1);
↑
Use variable name
```

Both sets of code produce the following output:

---

15

---

You can easily convert between a nullable type and its corresponding non-nullable type. We'll go into conversions in detail in Chapter 18, but the important points for nullable types are the following:

- There is an *implicit* conversion between a non-nullable type and its nullable version. That is, no cast is needed.
- There is an *explicit* conversion between a nullable type and its non-nullable version.

For example, the following lines show conversion in both directions. In the first line, a literal of type `int` is implicitly converted to a value of type `int?` and is used to initialize the variable of the nullable type. In the second line, the variable is explicitly converted to its non-nullable version.

```
int? myInt1 = 15;                      // Implicitly convert int to int?
int regInt = (int) myInt1;              // Explicitly convert int? to int
```

## Assigning to a Nullable Type

You can assign three kinds of values to a variable of a nullable type:

- A value of the underlying type
- A value of the same nullable type
- The value `null`

The following code shows an example of each of the three types of assignment:

```
int? myI1, myI2, myI3;

myI1 = 28;                                // Value of underlying type
myI2 = myI1;                               // Value of nullable type
myI3 = null;                                // Null

Console.WriteLine("myI1: {0}, myI2: {1}", myI1, myI2);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
myI1: 28, myI2: 28
```

---

In Chapter 25, when you have a clearer understanding of C#, I'll explain the finer points of nullable types.



# Classes: The Basics

- Overview of Classes
- Programs and Classes: A Quick Example
- Declaring a Class
- Class Members
- Creating Variables and Instances of a Class
- Allocating Memory for the Data
- Instance Members
- Access Modifiers
- Accessing Members from Inside the Class
- Accessing Members from Outside the Class
- Putting It All Together

## Overview of Classes

In the previous chapter, you saw that C# provides six user-defined types. The most important of these, and the one I'll cover first, is the *class*. Since the topic of classes in C# is a large one, its discussion will be spread over the next several chapters.

### A Class Is an Active Data Structure

Before the days of object-oriented analysis and design, programmers thought of a program as just a sequence of instructions. The focus at that time was on structuring and optimizing those instructions. With the advent of the object-oriented paradigm, the focus changed from optimizing instructions to organizing a program's data and functions into encapsulated sets of logically related data items and functions, called classes.

A class is a data structure that can store data and execute code. It contains the following:

- *Data members*, which store data associated with the class or an instance of the class. Data members generally model the attributes of the real-world object the class represents.
- *Function members*, which execute code. Function members generally model the functions and actions of the real-world object the class represents.

A C# class can have any number of data and function members. The members can be any combination of nine possible member types. Table 4-1 shows these member types. The ones I'll cover in this chapter—*fields* and *methods*—are checked in the table.

**Table 4-1.** Types of Class Members

Data Members Store Data	Function Members Execute Code
✓ Fields	✓ Methods
❑ Constants	❑ Properties
	❑ Constructors
	❑ Destructors
	❑ Operators
	❑ Indexers
	❑ Events

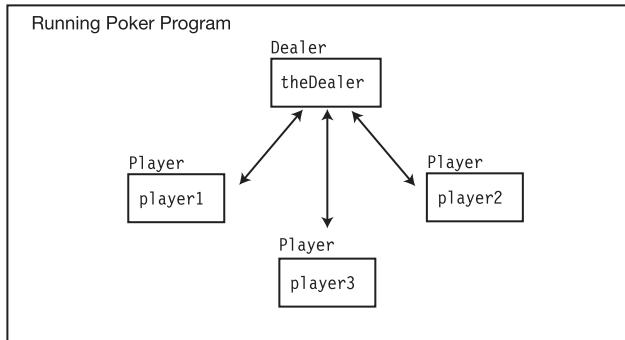
**Note** Classes are encapsulated sets of logically related data items and functions that generally represent objects in the real world or a conceptual world.

## Programs and Classes: A Quick Example

A running C# program is a group of interacting type objects, most of which are instances of classes. For example, suppose you have a program simulating a poker game. When it's running, it might have an instance of a class called Dealer, whose job is to run the game, and several instances of a class called Player, which represent the players of the game.

The Dealer object stores such information as the current state of the card deck and the number of players. Its actions include shuffling the deck and dealing the cards.

The Player class is very different. It stores such information as the player's name and the amount of money left to bet, and it performs such actions as analyzing the player's current hand and placing bets. Figure 4-1 illustrates the running program.



**Figure 4-1.** The objects in a running program

A real program would undoubtedly contain dozens of other classes besides Dealer and Player. These would include classes such as Card and Deck. Each class models some *thing* that is a component of the poker game.

**Note** A running program is a set of objects interacting with each other.

## Declaring a Class

Although types `int`, `double`, and `char` are defined in the C# language, classes such as `Dealer` and `Player`, as you can probably guess, are not defined by the language. If you want to use them in a program, you'll have to define them yourself. You do this by writing a *class declaration*.

A *class declaration* defines the characteristics and members of a new class. It does not create an instance of the class but creates the template from which class instances will be created. The class declaration provides the following:

- The class name
- The members of the class
- The characteristics of the class

The following is an example of the minimum syntax for a class declaration. The curly braces contain the member declarations that make up the *class body*. Class members can be declared in any order inside the class body. This means it's perfectly fine for the declaration of a member to refer to another member that is not yet defined until further down in the class declaration.

```
class MyExcellentClass
{
    MemberDeclarations
}
```

For example, the following code shows the outlines of two class declarations:

```
class Dealer                                // Class declaration
{
    ...
}

class Player                                // Class declaration
{
    ...
}
```

---

**Note** Since a class declaration “defines” a new class, you will often see a class declaration referred to as a *class definition* both in the literature and in common usage among programmers.

---

# Class Members

Fields and methods are the most important of the class member types. Fields are data members, and methods are function members.

## Fields

A *field* is a variable that belongs to a class.

- It can be of any type, either predefined or user-defined.
- Like all variables, fields store data and have the following characteristics:
  - They can be written to.
  - They can be read from.

The minimum syntax for declaring a field is the following:

```
Type  
↓  
Type Identifier;  
↑  
Field name
```

For example, the following class contains the declaration of field `MyField`, which can store an `int` value:

```
class MyClass  
{  Type  
    ↓  
    int MyField;  
  }      Field name
```

---

■ **Note** Unlike C and C++, there are *no global variables* (that is, variables or fields) declared outside of a type. All fields belong to a type and must be declared within the type declaration.

---

## Explicit and Implicit Field Initialization

Since a field is a kind of variable, the syntax for a field initializer is the same as that of the variable initializer shown in the previous chapter.

- A *field initializer* is part of the field declaration and consists of an equals sign followed by an expression that evaluates to a value.
- The initialization value *must be determinable at compile time*.

```
class MyClass
{
    int F1 = 17;
}
    ↑
Field initializer
```

- If no initializer is used, the value of a field is set by the compiler to a default value, determined by the type of the field. Table 3-1 (in Chapter 3) gives the default values for the simple types. To summarize them, though, the default value for each type is 0, and false for bool. The default for reference types is null.

For example, the following code declares four fields. The first two fields are initialized implicitly. The second two fields are initialized explicitly with initializers.

```
class MyClass
{
    int    F1;           // Initialized to 0 - value type
    string F2;          // Initialized to null - reference type

    int    F3 = 25;      // Initialized to 25
    string F4 = "abcd"; // Initialized to "abcd"
}
```

## Declarations with Multiple Fields

You can declare multiple fields *of the same type* in the same statement by separating the names with commas. You cannot mix different types in a single declaration. For example, you can combine the four preceding field declarations into two statements, with the exact same semantic result:

```
int    F1, F3 = 25;
string F2, F4 = "abcd";
```

## Methods

A method is a named block of executable code that can be executed from many different parts of the program, and even from other programs. (There are also anonymous methods, which aren't named—but I'll cover those in Chapter 15.)

When a method is *called*, or *invoked*, it executes its code and then returns to the code that called it. Some methods return a value to the position from which they were called. Methods correspond to member functions in C++.

The minimum syntax for declaring a method includes the following components:

- *Return type*: This states the type of value the method returns. If a method doesn't return a value, the return type is specified as `void`.
- *Name*: This is the name of the method.
- *Parameter list*: This consists of at least an empty set of matching parentheses. If there are parameters (which I'll cover in the next chapter), they are listed between the parentheses.
- *Method body*: This consists of a matching set of curly braces, containing the executable code.

For example, the following code declares a class with a simple method called `PrintNums`. From the declaration, you can tell the following about `PrintNums`:

- It returns no value; hence, the return type is specified as `void`.
- It has an empty parameter list.
- It contains two lines of code in its method body.

```
class SimpleClass
{
    Return type      Parameter list
    ↓              ↓
    void PrintNums( )
    {
        Console.WriteLine("1");
        Console.WriteLine("2");
    }
}
```

---

**Note** Unlike C and C++, there are *no global functions* (that is, methods or functions) declared outside of a type declaration. Also, unlike C and C++, there is no “default” return type for a method. All methods must include a return type or list it as `void`.

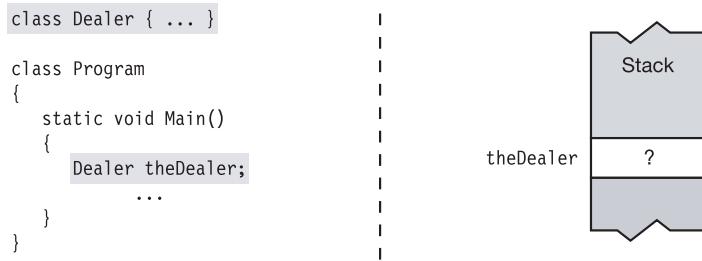
---

## Creating Variables and Instances of a Class

The class declaration is just the blueprint from which instances of the class are created. Once a class is declared, you can create instances of the class.

- Classes are reference types, which, as you will remember from the previous chapter, means that they require memory both for the reference to the data and for the actual data.
- The reference to the data is stored in a variable of the class type. So, to create an instance of the class, you need to start by declaring a variable of the class type. If the variable isn't initialized, its value is undefined.

Figure 4-2 illustrates how to define the variable to hold the reference. At the top of the code on the left is a declaration for class Dealer. Below that is a declaration for class Program, which contains method Main. Main declares variable theDealer of type Dealer. Since the variable is uninitialized, its value is undefined, as shown on the right in the figure.

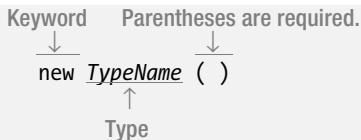


**Figure 4-2.** Allocating memory for the reference of a class variable

## Allocating Memory for the Data

Declaring the variable of the class type allocates the memory to hold the reference, but not the memory to hold the actual data of the class object. To allocate memory for the actual data, you use the new operator.

- The new operator allocates and initializes memory for an instance of any specified type. It allocates the memory from either the stack or the heap, depending on the type.
- Use the new operator to form an *object-creation expression*, which consists of the following:
  - The keyword new.
  - The name of the type of the instance for which memory is to be allocated.
  - Matching parentheses, which might or might not include parameters. I'll discuss more about the possible parameters later.



- If the memory allocated is for a reference type, the object-creation expression returns a reference to the allocated and initialized instance of the object in the heap.

This is exactly what you need to allocate and initialize the memory to hold the class instance data. Use the new operator to create an object-creation expression, and assign the value returned by it to the class variable. Here's an example:

```

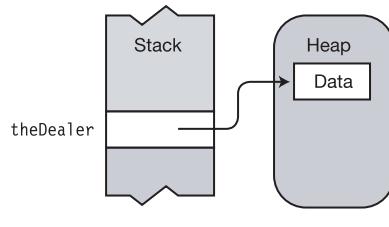
Dealer theDealer;          // Declare variable for the reference.
theDealer = new Dealer();   // Allocate memory for the class object.
                           ↑
Object-creation expression
  
```

The code on the left in Figure 4-3 shows the new operator used to allocate memory and create an instance of class Dealer, which is then assigned to the class variable. The memory structure is illustrated in the figure, to the right of the code.

```

class Dealer {...}

class App
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Dealer theDealer;
        theDealer = new Dealer();
        ...
    }
}
  
```



**Figure 4-3.** Allocating memory for the data of a class variable

## Combining the Steps

You can combine the two steps by *initializing* the variable with the object-creation expression.

Declare variable.

Dealer theDealer = new Dealer(); // Declare and initialize.

Initialize with an object-creation expression.

In the case of local variables, but not fields, you can simplify the syntax a bit more by having the compiler infer the type in the declaration part on the left. But I'll cover that in the section on local variables in the next chapter.

## Instance Members

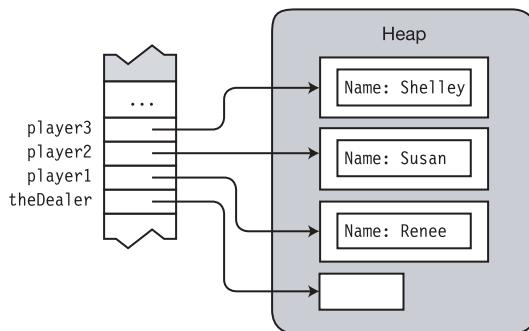
A class declaration acts as a blueprint from which you can create as many instances of the class as you like.

- *Instance members:* Each instance of a class is a separate entity that has its own set of data members, distinct from the other instances of the same class. These are called instance members since they are associated with an instance of the class.
- *Static members:* Instance members are the default, but you can also declare members called static members that are associated with the class, rather than the instance. I'll cover these in Chapter 6.

As an example of instance members, the following code shows the poker program with three instances of class `Player`. Figure 4-4 shows that each instance has a different value for the `Name` field.

```
class Dealer { ... }           // Declare class
class Player {                 // Declare class
    string Name;              // Field
    ...
}

class Program {
    static void Main()
    {
        Dealer theDealer = new Dealer();
        Player player1  = new Player();
        Player player2  = new Player();
        Player player3  = new Player();
        ...
    }
}
```



**Figure 4-4.** Instance members have distinct values between class objects.

# Access Modifiers

From within a class, any function member can access any other member of the class by simply using that member's name.

The *access modifier* is an optional part of a member declaration that specifies what other parts of the program have access to the member. The access modifier is placed before the simple declaration forms. The following is the syntax for fields and methods:

```

Fields
  AccessModifier Type Identifier

Methods
  AccessModifier ReturnType MethodName ()
  {
    ...
  }

```

The five categories of member access are the following. I'll describe the first two in this chapter and the others in Chapter 7.

- `private`
- `public`
- `protected`
- `internal`
- `protected internal`

## Private and Public Access

Private members are accessible only from within the class in which they are declared—other classes cannot see or access them.

- Private access is the default access level, so if a member is declared without an access modifier, it is a private member.
- You can also use the `private` access modifier to explicitly declare a member as private.
- There is no semantic difference between declaring a private member implicitly as opposed to explicitly. The forms are equivalent.

For example, the following two declarations both specify `private int` members:

<code>int MyInt1;</code> <code><u>private</u> int MyInt2;</code> <span style="margin-left: 100px;">↑</span> Access modifier	<code>// Implicitly declared private</code> <code>// Explicitly declared private</code>
--	--

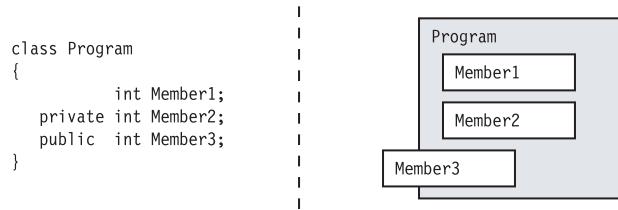
Public members are accessible to other objects in the program. You must use the `public` access modifier to specify public access.

```
Access modifier  
↓  
public int MyInt;
```

## Depicting Public and Private Access

The figures in this text represent classes as labeled boxes, as shown in Figure 4-5.

- The class members are represented as smaller labeled boxes inside the class boxes.
- Private members are represented enclosed entirely within their class box.
- Public members are represented sticking partially outside their class box.



**Figure 4-5.** Representing classes and members

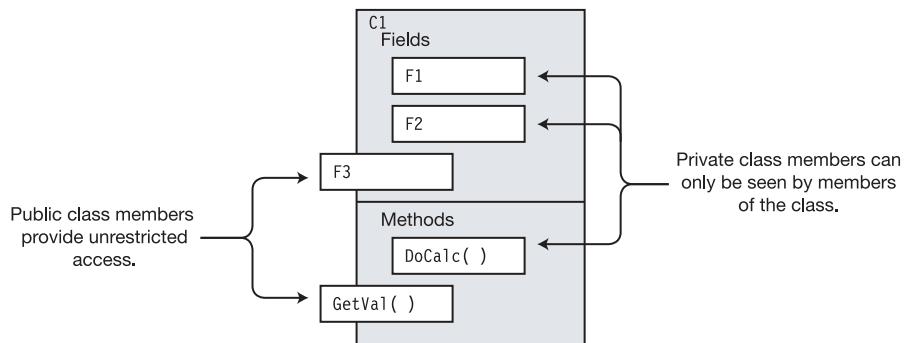
## Example of Member Access

Class C1 in the following code declares both public and private fields and methods. Figure 4-6 illustrates the visibility of the members of class C1.

```
class C1
{
    int      F1;           // Implicit private field
    private int F2;         // Explicit private field
    public  int F3;          // Public field

    void DoCalc()           // Implicit private method
    {
        ...
    }

    public int GetVal()       // Public method
    {
        ...
    }
}
```



**Figure 4-6.** Private and public class members

## Accessing Members from Inside the Class

As mentioned, members of a class can access the other class members by just using their names.

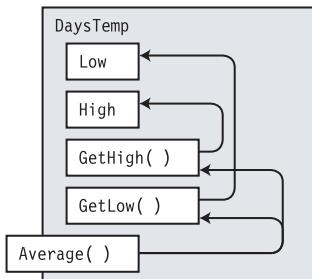
For example, the following class declaration shows the methods of the class accessing the fields and other methods. Even though the fields and two of the methods are declared private, all the members of a class can be accessed by any method (or any function member) of the class. Figure 4-7 illustrates the code.

```
class DaysTemp
{
    // Fields
    private int High = 75;
    private int Low = 45;

    // Methods
    private int GetHigh()
    {
        return High;                                // Access private field
    }

    private int GetLow()
    {
        return Low;                                 // Access private field
    }

    public float Average ()
    {
        return (GetHigh() + GetLow()) / 2;          // Access private methods
    }
}                                            Accessing the private methods
```



**Figure 4-7.** Members within a class can freely access each other.

## Accessing Members from Outside the Class

To access a public instance member from outside the class, you must include the variable name and the member name, separated by a period (dot). This is called dot-syntax notation; it will be discussed in more detail later.

For example, the second line of the following code shows an example of accessing a method from outside the class:

```
DaysTemp myDt = new DaysTemp();      // Create an object of the class.
float fValue = myDt.Average();       // Access it from outside.
                                         ↑           ↑
                                         Variable name   Member name
```

As an example, the following code declares two classes: `DaysTemp` and `Program`.

- The two fields in `DaysTemp` are declared `public`, so they can be accessed from outside the class.
- Method `Main` is a member of class `Program`. It creates a variable and object of class `DaysTemp`, and it assigns values to the fields of the object. It then reads the values of the fields and prints them out.

```
class DaysTemp                                // Declare class DaysTemp
{
    public int High = 75;
    public int Low = 45;
}

class Program                                  // Declare class Program.
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Variable name
        ↓
        DaysTemp temp = new DaysTemp();          // Create the object.
        Variable name and field
        ↓
        temp.High = 85;                         // Assign to the fields.
        temp.Low = 60;                          Variable name and field
                                                ↓
        Console.WriteLine("High: {0}", temp.High); // Read from fields.
        Console.WriteLine("Low: {0}", temp.Low);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
High: 85
Low: 60
```

---

## Putting It All Together

The following code creates two instances and stores their references in variables named t1 and t2. Figure 4-8 illustrates t1 and t2 in memory. The code demonstrates the following three actions discussed so far in the use of a class:

- Declaring a class
- Creating instances of the class
- Accessing the class members (that is, writing to a field and reading from a field)

```
class DaysTemp           // Declare the class.
{
    public int High, Low;      // Declare the instance fields.
    public int Average()       // Declare the instance method.
    {
        return (High + Low) / 2;
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // Create two instances of DaysTemp.
        DaysTemp t1 = new DaysTemp();
        DaysTemp t2 = new DaysTemp();

        // Write to the fields of each instance.
        t1.High = 76;      t1.Low = 57;
        t2.High = 75;      t2.Low = 53;

        // Read from the fields of each instance and call a method of
        // each instance.
        Console.WriteLine("t1: {0}, {1}, {2}",
                           t1.High, t1.Low, t1.Average() );
        Console.WriteLine("t2: {0}, {1}, {2}",
                           t2.High, t2.Low, t2.Average() );
    }
}
```

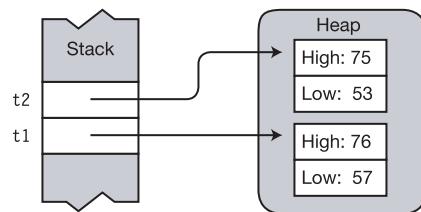
↑      ↑      ↑  
Field    Field    Method

This code produces the following output:

---

```
t1: 76, 57, 66
t2: 75, 53, 64
```

---



**Figure 4-8.** Memory layout of instances `t1` and `t2`



# Methods

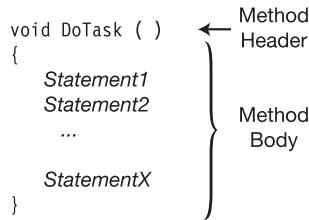
- The Structure of a Method
- Local Variables
- Method Invocations
- Return Values
- Parameters
- Value Parameters
- Reference Parameters
- Output Parameters
- Parameter Arrays
- Summary of Parameter Types
- Stack Frames
- Recursion
- Method Overloading

# The Structure of a Method

A *method* is a block of code with a name. You can execute the code from somewhere else in the program by using the method's name. You can also pass data into a method and receive data back as output.

As you saw in the previous chapter, a method is a function member of a class. Methods have two major sections, as shown in Figure 5-1—the method header and the method body.

- The *method header* specifies the method's characteristics, including the following:
  - Whether the method returns data and, if so, what type
  - The name of the method
  - What types of data can be passed to and from the method and how that data should be treated
- The *method body* contains the sequence of executable code statements. Execution starts at the first statement in the method body and continues sequentially through the method.



**Figure 5-1.** The structure of a method

The following example shows the form of the method header. I'll cover each part in the following pages.

<code>int</code>	<code>MyMethod</code>	<code>(</code>	<code>int</code>	<code>par1,</code>	<code>string</code>	<code>par2</code>	<code>)</code>
↑	↑	↑					
Return type	Method name			Parameter list			

For example, the following code shows a simple method called `MyMethod` that, in turn, calls the `WriteLine` method several times:

```
void MyMethod()
{
    Console.WriteLine("First");
    Console.WriteLine("Last");
}
```

Although these first few chapters describe classes, there's another user-defined type called a `struct`, which I'll cover in Chapter 12. Most of what this chapter covers about class methods is also true for `struct` methods.

## Code Execution in the Method Body

The method body is a *block*, which (as you will recall from Chapter 2) is a sequence of statements between curly braces. A block can contain the following items:

- Local variables
- Flow-of-control constructs
- Method invocations
- Blocks nested within it

Figure 5-2 shows an example of a method body and some of its components.

```
static void Main()
{
    int myInt = 3;           ← Local Variable Initialized to 3
    while (myInt > 0)       { } ← Flow-of-Control Construct
    {
        --myInt;
        PrintMyMessage();
    }
}
```

The diagram illustrates the components of the `Main()` method body. It highlights a local variable `myInt` initialized to 3, a `while` loop as a flow-of-control construct, and a call to the `PrintMyMessage()` method.

**Figure 5-2.** Method body example

## Local Variables

Like fields, local variables store data. While fields usually store data about the state of the object, local variables are usually created to store data for local, or transitory, computations. Table 5-1 compares and contrasts local variables and instance fields.

The following line of code shows the syntax of local variable declarations. The optional initializer consists of the equals sign followed by a value to be used to initialize the variable.

```

Variable name
↓
Type Identifier = Value;
↑
Optional initializer

```

- The existence of a local variable is limited to the block in which it is created and the blocks nested within it.
  - The variable comes into existence at the point at which it is declared.
  - It goes out of existence when the block completes execution.
- You can declare local variables at any position in the method body, but they must be declared before they're used.

The following example shows the declaration and use of two local variables. The first is of type `int`, and the second is of type `SomeClass`.

```

static void Main( )
{
    int myInt    = 15;
    SomeClass sc = new SomeClass();
    ...
}

```

**Table 5-1. Instance Fields vs. Local Variables**

	Instance Field	Local Variable
<b>Lifetime</b>	Starts when the class instance is created. Ends when the class instance is no longer accessible.	Starts at the point in the block where it is declared. Ends when the block completes execution.
<b>Implicit initialization</b>	Initialized to a default value for the type.	No implicit initialization. The compiler produces an error message if the variable isn't assigned to before use.
<b>Storage area</b>	All the fields of a class are stored in the heap, regardless of whether they're value types or reference types.	Value type: Stored on the stack. Reference type: Reference stored on the stack and data stored in the heap.

## Type Inference and the var Keyword

If you look at the following code, you'll see that when you supply the type name at the beginning of the declaration, you are supplying information that the compiler should already be able to infer from the right side of the initialization.

- In the first variable declaration, the compiler can infer that 15 is an `int`.
- In the second declaration, the object-creation expression on the right side returns an object of type `MyExcellentClass`.

So in both cases, including the explicit type name at the beginning of the declaration is redundant.

```
static void Main( )
{
    int total = 15;
    MyExcellentClass mec = new MyExcellentClass();
    ...
}
```

Starting with C# 3.0 you can use the new keyword `var` in place of the explicit type name at the beginning of the variable declaration, as follows:

```
static void Main( )
{ Keyword
    ↓
    var total = 15;
    var mec = new MyExcellentClass();
    ...
}
```

The `var` keyword does *not* signal a special kind of variable. It's just syntactic shorthand for whatever type can be inferred from the initialization on the right side of the statement. In the first declaration, it is shorthand for `int`. In the second, it is shorthand for `MyExcellentClass`. The preceding code segment with the explicit type names and the code segment with the `var` keywords are semantically equivalent.

Some important conditions on using the `var` keyword are the following:

- You can use it only with local variables—not with fields.
- You can use it only when the variable declaration includes an initialization.
- Once the compiler infers the type of a variable, it is fixed and unchangeable.

**Note** The `var` keyword is *not* like the JavaScript `var` that can reference different types. It's shorthand for the actual type inferred from the right side of the equals sign. The `var` keyword *does not change the strongly typed nature of C#.*

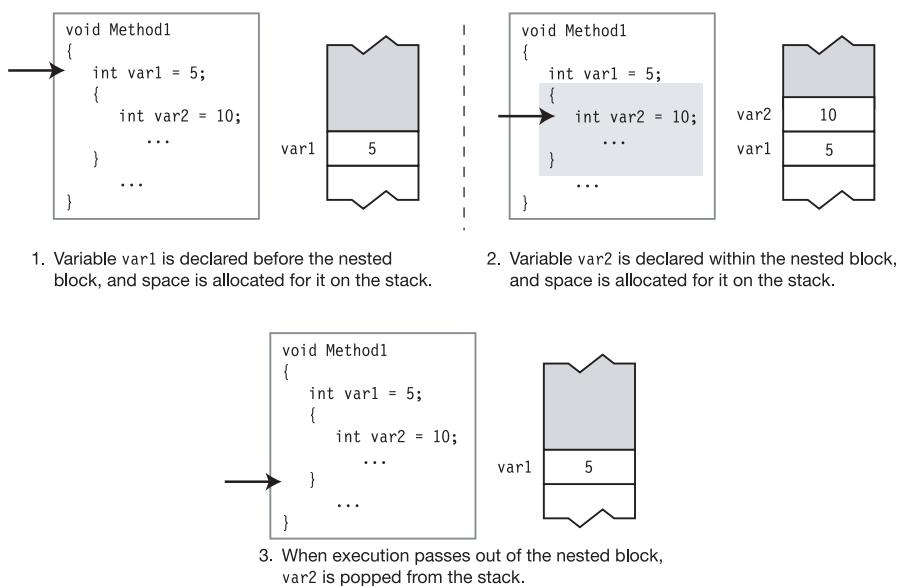
## Local Variables Inside Nested Blocks

Method bodies can have other blocks nested inside them.

- There can be any number of blocks, and they can be sequential or nested further. Blocks can be nested to any level.
- Local variables can be declared inside nested blocks, and like all local variables, their lifetimes and visibility are limited to the block in which they're declared and the blocks nested within it.

Figure 5-3 illustrates the lifetimes of two local variables, showing the code and the state of the stack. The arrows indicate the line that has just been executed.

- Variable `var1` is declared in the body of the method, before the nested block.
- Variable `var2` is declared inside the nested block. It exists from the time it's declared, until the end of the block in which it was declared.
- When control passes out of the nested block, its local variables are popped from the stack.



**Figure 5-3.** The lifetime of a local variable

**Note** In C and C++ you can declare a local variable, and then within a nested block you can declare another local variable with the same name. The inner name masks the outer name while within the inner scope. In C#, however, you cannot declare another local variable with the same name within the scope of the first name regardless of the level of nesting.

## Local Constants

A local constant is much like a local variable, except that once it is initialized, its value can't be changed. Like a local variable, a local constant must be declared inside a block.

The two most important characteristics of a constant are the following:

- A constant *must be initialized* at its declaration.
- A constant *cannot be changed* after its declaration.

The core declaration for a constant is shown following. The syntax is the same as that of a field or variable declaration, except for the following:

- The addition of the keyword `const` before the type.
- The mandatory initializer. The initializer value must be determinable at compile time and is usually one of the predefined simple types or an expression made up of them. It can also be the null reference, but it cannot be a reference to an object, because references to objects are determined at run time.

**Note** The keyword `const` is not a modifier but part of the core declaration. It must be placed immediately before the type.

```
Keyword
↓
const Type Identifier = Value;
                                ↑
                                Initializer required
```

A local constant, like a local variable, is declared in a method body or code block, and it goes out of scope at the end of the block in which it is declared. For example, in the following code, local constant `PI` goes out of scope at the end of method `DisplayRadii`.

```
void DisplayRadii()
{
    const double PI = 3.1416;           // Declare local constant

    for (int radius = 1; radius <= 5; radius++)
    {
        double area = radius * radius * PI;      // Read from local constant
        Console.WriteLine
            ("Radius: {0}, Area: {1}" radius, area);
    }
}
```

## Flow of Control

Methods contain most of the code for the actions that comprise a program. The remainder is in other function members, such as properties and operators—but the bulk is in methods.

The term *flow of control* refers to the flow of execution through your program. By default, program execution moves sequentially from one statement to the next. The control statements allow you to modify the order of execution.

In this section, I'll just mention some of the available control statements you can use in your code. Chapter 9 covers them in detail.

- *Selection statements:* These statements allow you to select which statement, or block of statements, to execute.
  - `if`: Conditional execution of a statement
  - `if...else`: Conditional execution of one statement or another
  - `switch`: Conditional execution of one statement from a set
- *Iteration statements:* These statements allow you to loop, or iterate, on a block of statements.
  - `for`: Loop—testing at the top
  - `while`: Loop—testing at the top
  - `do`: Loop—testing at the bottom
  - `foreach`: Execute once for each member of a set
- *Jump statements:* These statements allow you to jump from one place in the block or method to another.
  - `break`: Exit the current loop.
  - `continue`: Go to the bottom of the current loop.
  - `goto`: Go to a named statement.
  - `return`: Return execution to the calling method.

For example, the following method shows two of the flow-of-control statements. Don't worry about the details.

```
void SomeMethod()
{
    int intValue = 3;
    Equality comparison operator
    ↓
    if( intValue == 3 )                                // if statement
        Console.WriteLine("Value is 3. ");

    for( int i=0; i<5; i++ )                          // for statement
        Console.WriteLine("Value of i: {0}", i);
}
```

## Method Invocations

You can call other methods from inside a method body.

- The phrases *call a method* and *invoke a method* are synonymous.
- You call a method by using its name, along with the parameter list, which I'll discuss shortly.

For example, the following class declares a method called `PrintDateAndTime`, which is called from inside method `Main`:

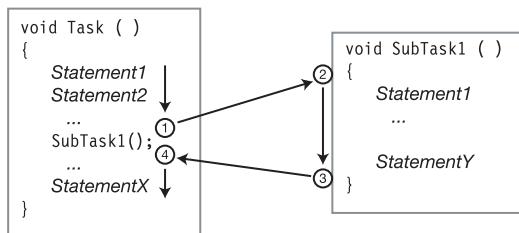
```
class MyClass
{
    void PrintDateAndTime( )                // Declare the method.
    {
        DateTime dt = DateTime.Now;         // Get the current date and time.
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", dt);        // Write it out.
    }

    static void Main()                    // Declare the method.
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        mc.PrintDateAndTime();            // Invoke the method.
    }
}
```

↑                   ↑  
Method       Empty  
name       parameter list

Figure 5-4 illustrates the sequence of actions when a method is called:

1. Execution of the current method suspends at that point of the invocation.
2. Control transfers to the beginning of the invoked method.
3. The invoked method executes until it completes.
4. Control returns to the calling method.



**Figure 5-4.** Flow of control when calling a method

## Return Values

A method can return a value to the calling code. The returned value is inserted into the calling code at the position in the expression where the invocation occurred.

- To return a value, the method must declare a *return type* before the method name.
- If a method doesn't return a value, it must declare a return type of `void`.

The following code shows two method declarations. The first returns a value of type `int`. The second doesn't return a value.

```
Return type
↓
int GetHour() { ... }
void DisplayHour() { ... }
↑
No value is returned.
```

A method that declares a return type must return a value from the method by using the following form of the return statement, which includes an expression after the keyword `return`. Every path through the method must end with a `return` statement of this form.

```
return Expression; // Return a value.
```

Evaluates to a value of the return type

For example, the following code shows a method called `GetHour`, which returns a value of type `int`.

```
Return type
↓
int GetHour( )
{
    DateTime dt = DateTime.Now;           // Get the current date and time.
    int hour    = dt.Hour;                // Get the hour.

    return hour;                         // Return an int.
}
↑
Return statement
```

You can also return objects of user-defined types. For example, the following code returns an object of type `MyClass`:

```
Return type -- MyClass
↓
MyClass method3( )
{
    MyClass mc = new MyClass();
    ...
    return mc;                                // Return a MyClass object.
}
```

As another example, in the following code, method `GetHour` is called in the `WriteLine` statement in `Main` and returns an `int` value to that position in the `WriteLine` statement.

```
class MyClass
{
    ↓ Return type
    public int GetHour()
    {
        DateTime dt = DateTime.Now;           // Get the current date and time.
        int hour      = dt.Hour;              // Get the hour.

        return hour;                         // Return an int.
    }                                     Return value
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();          Method invocation
        Console.WriteLine("Hour: {0}", mc.GetHour()); 
    }                                     ↑           ↑
}                                     Instance name   Method name
```

## The Return Statement and Void Methods

In the previous section, you saw that methods that return a value must contain return statements. Void methods do not require return statements. When the flow of control reaches the closing curly brace of the method body, control returns to the calling code, and no value is inserted back into the calling code.

Often, however, you can simplify your program logic by exiting the method early when certain conditions apply.

- You can exit from a void method at any time by using the following form of the return statement, with no parameters:

```
return;
```

- This form of the return statement can be used only with methods declared void.

For example, the following code shows the declaration of a void method called `SomeMethod`, which has three possible places it might return to the calling code. The first two places are in branches called if statements, which are covered in Chapter 9. The last place is the end of the method body.

```
Void return type
↓
void SomeMethod()
{
    ...
    if ( SomeCondition )
        return;                                // If ...
                                                // return to the calling code.
    ...

    if ( OtherCondition )
        return;                                // If ...
                                                // return to the calling code.

    ...
}

                                            // Default return to the calling code.
```

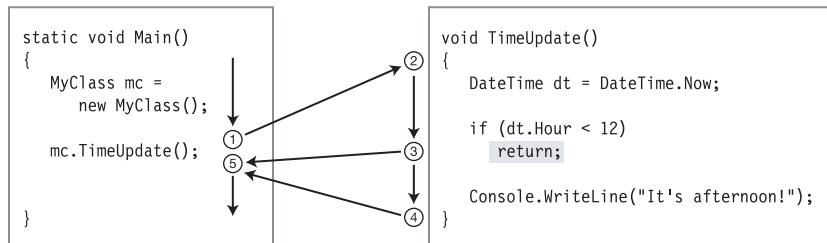
The following code shows an example of a void method with a return statement. The method writes out a message only if the time is after noon. The process, which is illustrated in Figure 5-5, is as follows:

- First the method gets the current date and time. (Don't worry about understanding the details of this right now.)
- If the hour is less than 12 (that is, before noon), the return statement is executed, and control immediately returns to the calling method without writing anything to the screen.
- If the hour is 12 or greater, the return statement is skipped, and the code executes the `WriteLine` statement, which writes an informative message to the screen.

```
class MyClass
{
    ↓ Void return type
    void TimeUpdate()
    {
        DateTime dt = DateTime.Now;           // Get the current date and time.
        if (dt.Hour < 12)                    // If the hour is less than 12,
            return;                         // then return.

        Return to calling method.
        Console.WriteLine("It's afternoon!"); // Otherwise, print message.
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();         // Create an instance of the class.
        mc.TimeUpdate();                   // Invoke the method.
    }
}
```



**Figure 5-5.** Using a return statement with a void return type

# Parameters

So far, you've seen that methods are named units of code that can be called from many places in a program and can return a single value to the calling code. Returning a single value is certainly valuable, but what if you need to return multiple values? Also, it would be useful to be able to pass data into a method when it starts execution. *Parameters* are special variables that allow you to do both these things.

## Formal Parameters

*Formal* parameters are local variables that are declared in the method declaration's parameter list, rather than in the body of the method.

The following method header shows the syntax of parameter declarations. It declares two formal parameters—one of type `int` and the other of type `float`.

```
public void PrintSum( int x, float y )
{
    ...
        ↑
        Formal parameter declarations
}
```

- Because formal parameters are variables, they have a data type and a name, and they can be written to and read from.
- Unlike a method's other local variables, the parameters are defined outside the method body and are initialized before the method starts, except for one type, called output parameters, which I'll cover shortly.
- The parameter list can have any number of formal parameter declarations, and the declarations must be separated by commas.

The formal parameters are used throughout the method body, for the most part, just like other local variables. For example, the following declaration of method `PrintSum` uses two formal parameters, `x` and `y`, and a local variable, `sum`, all of which are of type `int`.

```
public void PrintSum( int x, int y )
{
    int sum = x + y;
    Console.WriteLine("Newsflash: {0} + {1} is {2}", x, y, sum);
}
```

## Actual Parameters

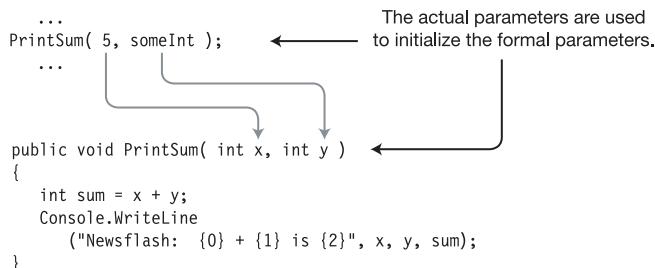
When your code calls a method, the values of the formal parameters must be initialized before the code in the method begins execution.

- The expressions or variables used to initialize the formal parameters are called the *actual parameters*. They are also sometimes called *arguments*.
- The actual parameters are placed in the parameter list of the method invocation.
- Each actual parameter must match the type of the corresponding formal parameter, or the compiler must be able to implicitly convert the actual parameter to that type. I'll explain the details of conversion from one type to another in Chapter 18.

For example, the following code shows the invocation of method `PrintSum`, which has two actual parameters of data type `int`:

```
PrintSum( 5, someInt );
          ↑     ↑
Expression   Variable of type int
```

When the method is called, the value of each actual parameter is used to initialize the corresponding formal parameter. The method body is then executed. Figure 5-6 illustrates the relationship between the actual parameters and the formal parameters.



**Figure 5-6.** Actual parameters initialize the corresponding formal parameters.

Notice that in the previous example code, and in Figure 5-6, the number of actual parameters must be the same as the number of formal parameters (with the exception of params parameters, which I'll discuss later). Parameters that follow this pattern are called *positional parameters*. We'll look at some other options shortly.

## An Example of Methods with Positional Input Parameters

In the following code, class `MyClass` declares two methods—one that takes two integers and returns their sum and another that takes two floats and returns their average. In the second invocation, notice that the compiler has implicitly converted the two int values—5 and `someInt`—to the float type.

```

class MyClass      Formal parameters
{
    public int Sum(int x, int y)           // Declare the method.
    {
        return x + y;                   // Return the sum.
    }
    public float Avg(float input1, float input2)   // Declare the method.
    {
        return (input1 + input2) / 2.0F;          // Return the average.
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass myT = new MyClass();
        int someInt = 6;

        Console.WriteLine
            ("Newsflash: Sum: {0} and {1} is {2}",
             5, someInt, myT.Sum( 5, someInt ));           // Invoke the method.

        Console.WriteLine
            ("Newsflash: Avg: {0} and {1} is {2}",
             5, someInt, myT.Avg( 5, someInt ));           // Invoke the method.
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---

```

Newsflash: Sum: 5 and 6 is 11
Newsflash: Avg: 5 and 6 is 5.5

```

---

## Value Parameters

There are several kinds of parameters, which pass data to and from the method in slightly different ways. The kind we've looked at so far is the default type and is called a *value parameter*.

When you use value parameters, data is passed to the method by copying the value of the actual parameter to the formal parameter. When a method is called, the system does the following:

- It allocates space on the stack for the formal parameters.
- It copies the values of the actual parameters to the formal parameters.

An actual parameter for a value parameter doesn't have to be a variable. It can be any expression evaluating to the matching data type. For example, the following code shows two method calls. In the first, the actual parameter is a variable of type float. In the second, it's an expression that evaluates to float.

```
float func1( float val )                                // Declare the method.
{
    ↑
    Float data type
    float j = 2.6F;
    float k = 5.1F;      Variable of type float
    ↓
    float fValue1 = func1( k );                         // Method call
    float fValue2 = func1( (k + j) / 3 );               // Method call
    ...
    ↓
    Expression that evaluates to a float
```

Before you can use a variable as an actual parameter, that variable must have been assigned a value (except in the case of output parameters, which I'll cover shortly). For reference types, the variable can be assigned either an actual reference or null.

**Note** Chapter 3 covered *value types*, which, as you will remember, are types that contain their own data. Don't be confused that I'm now talking about *value parameters*. They're entirely different. *Value parameters* are parameters where the value of the actual parameter is copied to the formal parameter.

For example, the following code shows a method called `MyMethod`, which takes two parameters—a variable of type `MyClass` and an `int`.

- The method adds 5 to both the `int` type field belonging to the class and to the `int`.
- You might also notice that `MyMethod` uses the modifier `static`, which I haven't explained yet. You can ignore it for now. I'll explain static methods in Chapter 6.

```
class MyClass
{
    public int Val = 20;                                // Initialize the field to 20.
}

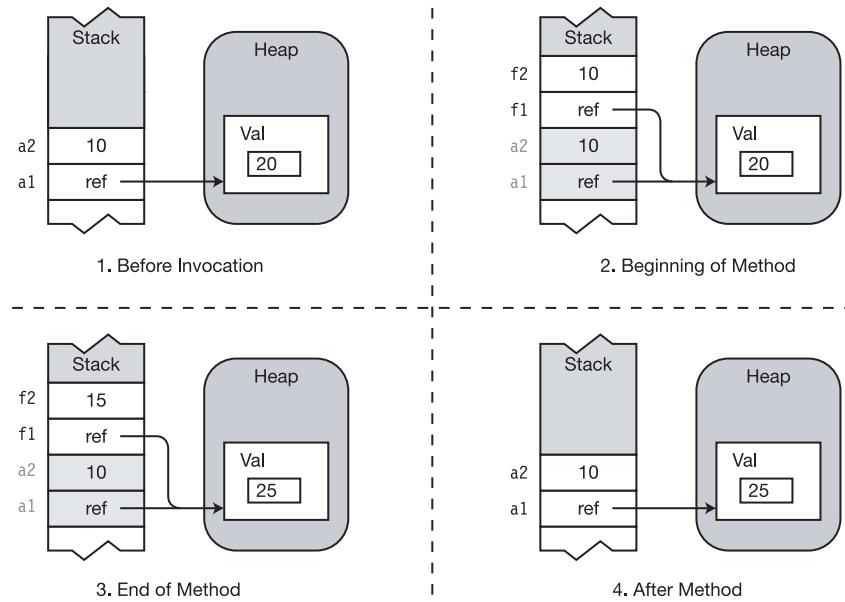
class Program
{
    static void MyMethod( MyClass f1, int f2 )           Formal parameters
    {
        f1.Val = f1.Val + 5;                            // Add 5 to field of f1 param.
        f2      = f2 + 5;                               // Add 5 to second param.
    }

    static void Main( )
    {
        MyClass a1 = new MyClass();
        int      a2 = 10;

        MyMethod( a1, a2 );                           // Call the method.
    }
}                                         Actual parameters
```

Figure 5-7 illustrates the following about the values of the actual and formal parameters at various stages in the execution of the method:

- Before the method call, variables `a1` and `a2`, which will be used as the actual parameters, are already on the stack.
- By the beginning of the method, the system has allocated space on the stack for the formal parameters and copied the values from the actual parameters.
  - Since `a1` is a reference type, the *reference* is copied, resulting in both the actual and formal parameters referring to the same object in the heap.
  - Since `a2` is a value type, the *value* is copied, producing an independent data item.
- At the end of the method, both `f2` and the field of object `f1` have been incremented by 5.
  - After method execution, the formal parameters are popped off the stack.
  - The value of `a2`, the value type, is *unaffected* by the activity in the method.
  - The value of `a1`, the reference type, however, *has been changed* by the activity in the method.



**Figure 5-7. Value parameters**

## Reference Parameters

The second type of parameter is called a *reference parameter*.

- When using a reference parameter, you must use the `ref` modifier in both the declaration and the invocation of the method.
- The actual parameter *must* be a variable, and it must have been assigned to before being used as the actual parameter. If it's a reference type variable, it can be assigned either an actual reference or the value `null`.

For example, the following code illustrates the syntax of the declaration and invocation:

```

Include the ref modifier.
↓
void MyMethod( ref int val )           // Method declaration
{ ... }

int y = 1;                           // Variable for the actual parameter
MyMethod ( ref y );                 // Method call
↑
Include the ref modifier.

MyMethod ( ref 3+5 );                // Error!
↑
Must use a variable

```

In the previous section you saw that for value parameters, the system allocates memory on the stack for the formal parameters. In contrast, for reference parameters:

- The formal parameter name *acts as if it were an alias for the actual parameter variable*; that is, it acts as if it referred to the same memory location.

Since the formal parameter name and the actual parameter name are acting as if they reference the same memory location, clearly any changes made to the formal parameter during method execution are visible after the method is completed, through the actual parameter variable.

**Note** Remember to use the `ref` keyword in both the method declaration *and* the invocation.

For example, the following code shows method `MyMethod` again, but this time the parameters are reference parameters rather than value parameters:

```
class MyClass
{
    public int Val = 20;                      // Initialize field to 20.

class Program
{
    static void MyMethod(ref MyClass f1, ref int f2)
    {
        f1.Val = f1.Val + 5;                  // Add 5 to field of f1 param.
        f2      = f2 + 5;                    // Add 5 to second param.
    }

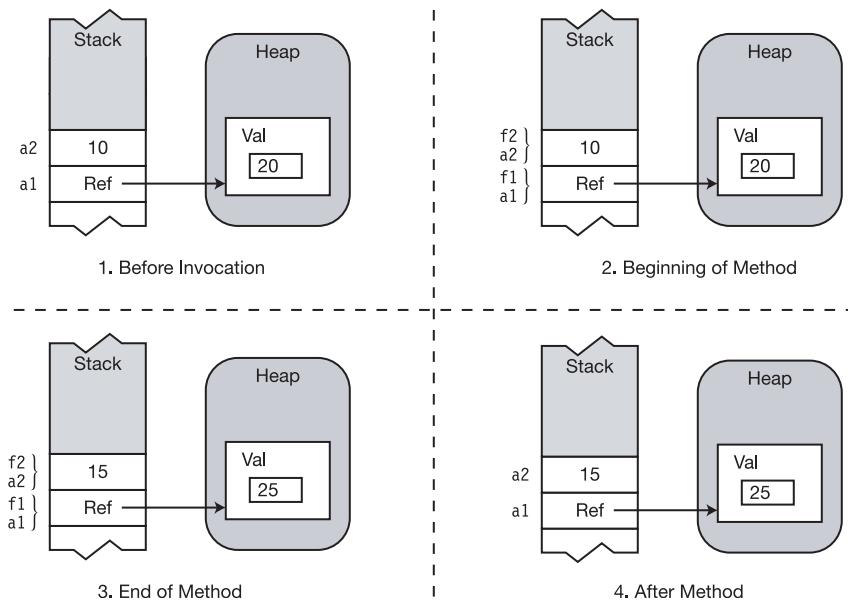
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass a1 = new MyClass();
        int a2     = 10;

        MyMethod(ref a1, ref a2);           // Call the method.
    }
}
```

ref modifier              ref modifier  
                ↓                    ↓  
                ↑                    ↑  
                ref modifiers

Figure 5-8 illustrates the following about the values of the actual and formal parameters at various stages in the execution of the method:

- Before the method call, variables `a1` and `a2`, which will be used as the actual parameters, are already on the stack.
- By the beginning of the method, the names of the formal parameters have been set as if they were aliases for the actual parameters. You can think of variables `a1` and `f1` as if they referred to the same memory location and `a2` and `f2` as if they referred to the same memory location.
- At the end of the method, both `f2` and the field of the object of `f1` have been incremented by 5.
- After method execution, the names of the formal parameters are gone (“out of scope”), but both the value of `a2`, which is the value type, and the value of the object pointed at by `a1`, which is the reference type, have been changed by the activity in the method.



**Figure 5-8.** With a reference parameter, the formal parameter behaves as if it were an alias for the actual parameter.

# Output Parameters

*Output parameters* are used to pass data from inside the method back out to the calling code. Their behavior is very similar to reference parameters. Like reference parameters, output parameters have the following requirements:

- You must use a modifier in both the method declaration and the invocation. With output parameters, the modifier is `out`, rather than `ref`.
- Like reference parameters, the actual parameter *must* be a variable—it cannot be another type of expression. This makes sense, since the method needs a memory location to store the value it's returning.

For example, the following code declares a method called `MyMethod`, which takes a single output parameter.

```

out modifier
↓
void MyMethod( out int val )           // Method declaration
{ ... }

...
int y = 1;                           // Variable for the actual parameter
MyMethod ( out y );                 // Method call
                                     ↑
                                     out modifier

```

Like reference parameters, the formal parameters of output parameters act as if they were aliases for the actual parameters. Any changes made to a formal parameter inside the method are visible through the actual parameter variable after the method completes execution.

Unlike reference parameters, output parameters require the following:

- Inside the method, an output parameter must be assigned to before it can be read from. This means that the initial values of the parameters are irrelevant and that you don't have to assign values to the actual parameters before the method call.
- Inside the method, every possible path through the code must assign a value to every output parameter before the method exits.

Since the code inside the method must write to an output parameter before it can read from it, it is *impossible* to send data *into* a method using output parameters. In fact, if there is any execution path through the method that attempts to read the value of an output parameter before the method has assigned it a value, the compiler produces an error message.

```
public void Add2( out int outValue )
{
    int var1 = outValue + 2; // Error! Can't read from an output parameter
} // before it has been assigned to by the method.
```

For example, the following code again shows method `MyMethod`, but this time using output parameters:

```
class MyClass
{
    public int Val = 20; // Initialize field to 20.
}

class Program
{
    static void MyMethod(out MyClass f1, out int f2)
    {
        f1 = new MyClass(); // Create an object of the class.
        f1.Val = 25; // Assign to the class field.
        f2 = 15; // Assign to the int param.
    }

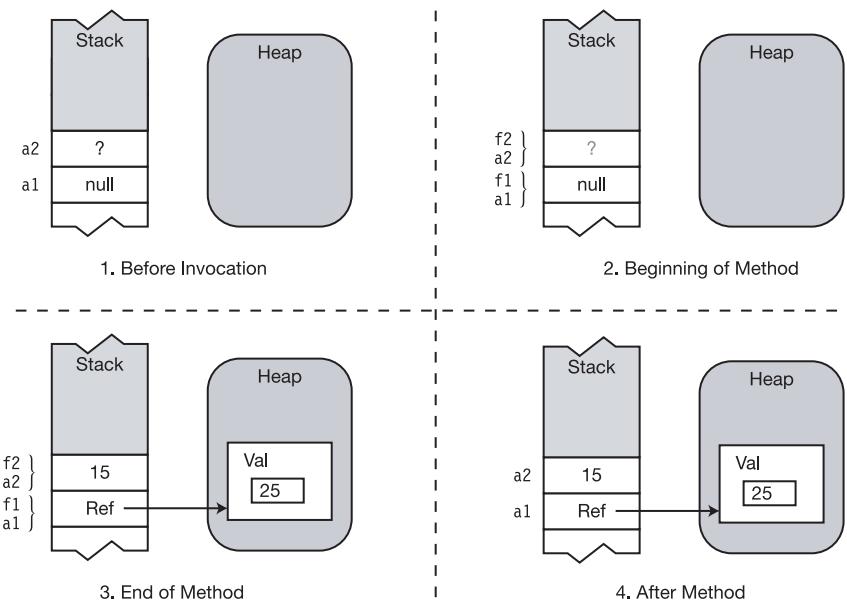
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass a1 = null;
        int a2;

        MyMethod(out a1, out a2); // Call the method.
    }
}
```

out modifier                    out modifier  
                      ↓                       ↓  
                       out modifiers

Figure 5-9 illustrates the following about the values of the actual and formal parameters at various stages in the execution of the method.

- Before the method call, variables `a1` and `a2`, which will be used as the actual parameters, are already on the stack.
- At the beginning of the method, the names of the formal parameters are set as aliases for the actual parameters. You can think of variables `a1` and `f1` as if they referred to the same memory location, and you can think of `a2` and `f2` as if they referred to the same memory location. The names `a1` and `a2` are out of scope and cannot be accessed from inside `MyMethod`.
- Inside the method, the code creates an object of type `MyClass` and assigns it to `f1`. It then assigns a value to `f1`'s field and also assigns a value to `f2`. The assignments to `f1` and `f2` are both *required*, since they're output parameters.
- After method execution, the names of the formal parameters are out of scope, but the values of both `a1`, the reference type, and `a2`, the value type, have been changed by the activity in the method.



**Figure 5-9.** With an output parameter, the formal parameter behaves as if it were an alias for the actual parameter, but with the additional requirement that it must be assigned to inside the method.

## Parameter Arrays

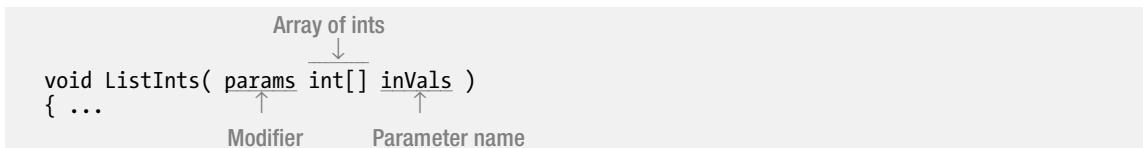
In the parameter types I've covered so far, there must be exactly one actual parameter for each formal parameter. *Parameter arrays* are different in that they allow *zero or more* actual parameters for a particular formal parameter. Important points about parameter arrays are the following:

- There can be only one parameter array in a parameter list.
- If there is one, it must be the last parameter in the list.

To declare a parameter array, you must do the following:

- Use the `params` modifier before the data type.
- Place a set of empty square brackets after the data type.

The following method header shows the syntax for the declaration of a parameter array of type `int`. In this example, formal parameter `inVals` can represent zero or more actual `int` parameters.



The empty set of square brackets after the type name specifies that the parameter will be an *array of ints*. You don't need to worry about the details of arrays here. They're covered in detail in Chapter 14. For our purposes here, though, all you need to know is the following:

- An array is an ordered set of data items of the same type.
- An array is accessed by using a numerical index.
- An array is a reference type and therefore stores all its data items in the heap.

## Method Invocation

You can supply the actual parameters for a parameter array in two ways. The forms you can use are the following:

- A comma-separated list of elements of the data type. All the elements must be of the type specified in the method declaration.

```
ListInts( 10, 20, 30 );           // Three ints
```

- A one-dimensional array of elements of the data type.

```
int[] intArray = {1, 2, 3};  
ListInts( intArray );           // An array variable
```

Notice in these examples that you do *not* use the `params` modifier in the *invocation*. The usage of the modifier in parameter arrays doesn't fit the pattern of the other parameter types.

- The other parameter types are consistent in that they either use a modifier or do not use a modifier.
  - Value parameters take *no* modifier in *either* the declaration or the invocation.
  - Reference and output parameters require the modifier in *both* places.
- The summary for the usage of the `params` modifier is the following:
  - It is *required* in the *declaration*.
  - It is *not allowed* in the *invocation*.

## Expanded Form

The first form of method invocation, where you use separate actual parameters in the invocation, is sometimes called the *expanded form*.

For example, the declaration of method `ListInts` in the following code matches all the method invocations below it, even though they have different numbers of actual parameters.

```
void ListInts( params int[] inVals ) { ... }           // Method declaration  
  
...  
ListInts( );                                         // 0 actual parameters  
ListInts( 1, 2, 3 );                                // 3 actual parameters  
ListInts( 4, 5, 6, 7 );                              // 4 actual parameters  
ListInts( 8, 9, 10, 11, 12 );                         // 5 actual parameters
```

When you use an invocation with separate actual parameters for a parameter array, the compiler does the following:

- It takes the list of actual parameters and uses them to create and initialize an array in the heap.
- It stores the reference to the array in the formal parameter on the stack.
- If there are no actual parameters at the position corresponding to the formal parameter array, the compiler creates an array with zero elements and uses that.

For example, the following code declares a method called `ListInts`, which takes a parameter array. `Main` declares three ints and passes them to the array.

```

class MyClass
{
    public void ListInts( params int[] inVals )
    {
        if ( (inVals != null) && (inVals.Length != 0))
            for (int i = 0; i < inVals.Length; i++)      // Process the array.
            {
                inVals[i] = inVals[i] * 10;
                Console.WriteLine("{0}", inVals[i]);    // Display new value.
            }
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        int first = 5, second = 6, third = 7;           // Declare three ints.

        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        mc.ListInts( first, second, third );           // Call the method.

        ↑
        Actual parameters
        Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}, {2}", first, second, third);
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---

```

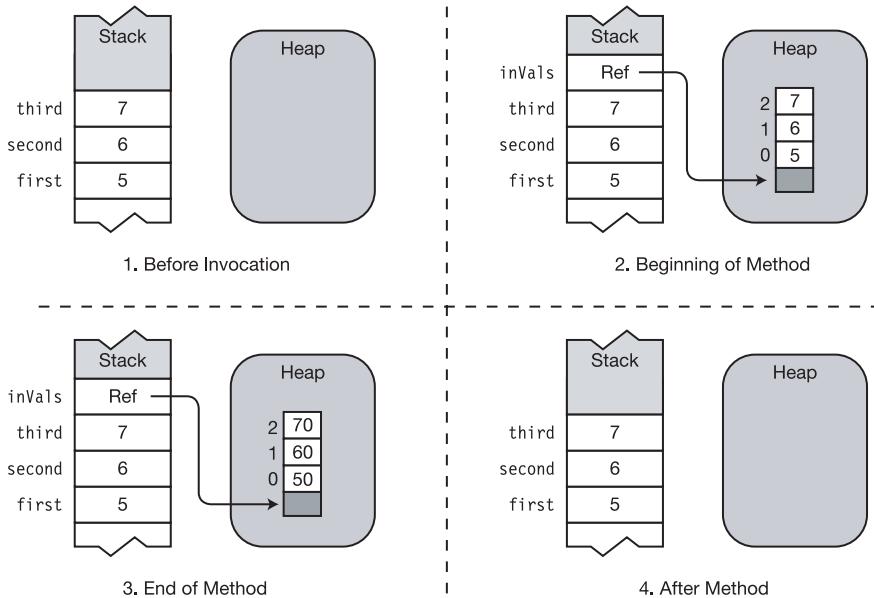
50
60
70
5, 6, 7

```

---

Figure 5-10 illustrates the following about the values of the actual and formal parameters at various stages in the execution of the method:

- Before the method call, the three actual parameters are already on the stack.
- By the beginning of the method, the three actual parameters have been used to initialize an array in the heap, and the reference to the array has been assigned to formal parameter `inVals`.
- Inside the method, the code first checks to make sure the array reference is not `null` and then processes the array by multiplying each element in the array by 10 and storing it back.
- After method execution, the formal parameter, `inVals`, is out of scope.



**Figure 5-10.** Parameter array

An important thing to remember about parameter arrays is that when an array is created in the heap, the values of the actual parameters are *copied* to the array. In this way, they're like value parameters.

- If the array parameter is a value type, the *values* are copied, and the actual parameters *cannot be affected* inside the method.
- If the array parameter is a reference type, the *references* are copied, and the objects referenced by the actual parameters *can be affected* inside the method.

## Arrays As Actual Parameters

You can also create and populate an array before the method call and pass the single array variable as the actual parameter. In this case, the compiler uses *your* array, rather than creating one.

For example, the following code uses method `ListInts`, declared in the previous example. In this code, `Main` creates an array and uses the array variable as the actual parameter, rather than using separate integers.

```
static void Main()
{
    int[] myArr = new int[] { 5, 6, 7 }; // Create and initialize array.

    MyClass mc = new MyClass();
    mc.ListInts(myArr); // Call method to print the values.

    foreach (int x in myArr)
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", x); // Print out each element.
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
50
60
70
50
60
70
```

---

## Summary of Parameter Types

Since there are four parameter types, it's sometimes difficult to remember their various characteristics. Table 5-2 summarizes them, making it easier to compare and contrast them.

**Table 5-2.** Summary of Parameter Type Syntactic Usage

Parameter Type	Modifier	Used at Declaration?	Used at Invocation?	Implementation
Value	None			The system copies the value of the actual parameter to the formal parameter.
Reference	<code>ref</code>	Yes	Yes	The formal parameter aliases the actual parameter.
Output	<code>out</code>	Yes	Yes	The formal parameter aliases the actual parameter.
Array	<code>params</code>	Yes	No	This allows passing a variable number of actual parameters to a method.

# Method Overloading

A class can have more than one method with the same name. This is called *method overloading*. Each method with the same name must have a different *signature* than the others.

- The signature of a method consists of the following information from the method header of the method declaration:
  - The name of the method
  - The number of parameters
  - The data types and order of the parameters
  - The parameter modifiers
- The return type is *not* part of the signature—although it's a common mistake to believe that it is.
- Notice that the *names* of the formal parameters are *not* part of the signature.

```
Not part of signature
↓
long AddValues( int a, out int b) { ... }
                               ↑
Signature
```

For example, the following four methods are overloads of the method name `AddValues`:

```
class A
{
    long AddValues( int   a, int   b)      { return a + b;      }
    long AddValues( int   c, int   d, int e) { return c + d + e; }
    long AddValues( float  f, float  g)     { return (long)(f + g); }
    long AddValues( long   h, long   m)     { return h + m;     }
}
```

The following code shows an illegal attempt at overloading the method name `AddValues`. The two methods differ only on the return types and the names of the formal parameters. But they still have the same signature, because they have the same method name; and the number, types, and order of their parameters are the same. The compiler would produce an error message for this code.

```
class B           Signature
{
    long AddValues( long  a, long  b) { return a+b; }
    int  AddValues( long  c, long  d) { return c+d; } // Error, same signature
}
```

## Named Parameters

So far in our discussion of parameters we've used positional parameters, which, as you'll remember, means that the position of each actual parameter matches the position of the corresponding formal parameter.

Starting with C# 4.0, you can list the actual parameters in your method invocation in any order, as long as you explicitly specify the names of the parameters. The details are the following:

- Nothing changes in the declaration of the method. The formal parameters already have names.
- In the method invocation, however, you use the formal parameter name, followed by a colon, in front of the actual parameter value or expression, as shown in the following method invocation. Here a, b, and c are the names of the three formal parameters of method Calc:

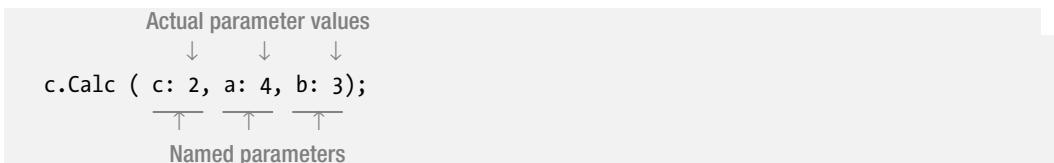


Figure 5-11 illustrates the structure of using named parameters.

```

class MyClass
{
    public int Calc(int a, int b, int c)
    { return (a + b) * c; }

    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        int result = mc.Calc( c: 2, a: 4, b: 3 );
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", result);
    }
}
  
```

Annotations on the code:

- A bracket on the method declaration 'Calc' is labeled "No change in parameter declarations".
- A bracket on the method invocation 'mc.Calc( c: 2, a: 4, b: 3 )' is labeled "Parameter names used with values".

**Figure 5-11.** When using named parameters, include the parameter name in the method invocation. No changes are needed in the method declaration.

You can use both positional and named parameters in an invocation, but all the positional parameters must be listed first. For example, the following code shows the declaration of a method called Calc, along with five different calls to the method using different combinations of positional and named parameters:

```
class MyClass
{
    public int Calc( int a, int b, int c )
    { return ( a + b ) * c; }

    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();

        int r0 = mc.Calc( 4, 3, 2 );                                // Positional Parameters
        int r1 = mc.Calc( 4, b: 3, c: 2 );                          // Positional and Named Parameters
        int r2 = mc.Calc( 4, c: 2, b: 3 );                          // Switch order
        int r3 = mc.Calc( c: 2, b: 3, a: 4 );                      // All named parameters
        int r4 = mc.Calc( c: 2, b: 1 + 2, a: 3 + 1 );            // Named parameter expressions

        Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}, {2}, {3}, {4}", r0, r1, r2, r3, r4);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

14, 14, 14, 14, 14

---

Named parameters are useful as a means of self-documenting a program, in that they can show, at the position of the method call, what values are being assigned to which formal parameters. For example, in the following two calls to method GetCylinderVolume, the second call is a bit more informative and less prone to error.

```
class MyClass
{
    double GetCylinderVolume( double radius, double height )
    {
        return 3.1416 * radius * radius * height;
    }

    static void Main( string[] args )
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        double volume;
        ↓   ↓
        volume = mc.GetCylinderVolume( 3.0, 4.0 );
        ...
        ↓   ↓
        volume = mc.GetCylinderVolume( radius: 3.0, height: 4.0 );
        ...
    }
}
```

More informative

## Optional Parameters

Another feature introduced in C# 4.0, is called *optional parameters*. An optional parameter is a parameter that you can either include or omit when invoking the method.

To specify that a parameter is optional, you need to include a default value for that parameter in the method declaration. The syntax for specifying the default value is the same as that of initializing a local variable, as shown in the method declaration of the following code. In this example:

- Formal parameter *b* is assigned the default value 3.
- Therefore, if the method is called with only a single parameter, the method will use the value 3 as the initial value of the second parameter.

```
class MyClass
{
    public int Calc( int a, int b = 3 )           Optional Parameter
    {
        return a + b;                           Default Value Assignment
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();

        int r0 = mc.Calc( 5, 6 );                // Use explicit values.
        int r1 = mc.Calc( 5 );                   // Use default for b.

        Console.WriteLine( "{0}, {1}", r0, r1 );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

There are several important things to know about declaring optional parameters:

- Not all types of parameters can be used as optional parameters.
  - You can use value types as optional parameters as long as the default value is determinable at compile time.
  - You can only use a reference type as an optional parameter if the default value is `null`.

		Parameter Types			
		Value	ref	out	params
Data Types	Value Type	Yes	No	No	No
	Reference Type	Only null default	No	No	No

**Figure 5-12.** Optional parameters can only be value parameter types.

- All required parameters must be declared before any optional parameters are declared. If there is a `params` parameter, it must be declared after all the optional parameters. Figure 5-13 illustrates the required syntactic order.

```
( int x, decimal y, ... int op1 = 17, double op2 = 36, ... params int[] intVals )
```

Required Parameters      Optional Parameters      params Parameter

**Figure 5-13.** In the method declaration, optional parameters must be declared after all the required parameters and before the `params` parameter, if one exists.

As you saw in the previous example, you use the default value of an optional parameter by leaving out the corresponding actual parameter from the method invocation. You can't, however, omit just any combination of optional parameters because in many situations it would be ambiguous as to which optional parameters to use. The rules are the following:

- You must omit parameters starting from the end of the list of optional parameters and work toward the beginning.
- That is, you can omit the last optional parameter, or the last *n* optional parameters, but you can't pick and choose to omit any arbitrary optional parameters; they must be taken off the end.

```
class MyClass
{
    public int Calc( int a = 2, int b = 3, int c = 4 )
    {
        return (a + b) * c;
    }

    static void Main( )
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass( );
        int r0 = mc.Calc( 5, 6, 7 );      // Use all explicit values.
        int r1 = mc.Calc( 5, 6 );        // Use default for c.
        int r2 = mc.Calc( 5 );          // Use default for b and c.
        int r3 = mc.Calc( );            // Use all defaults.

        Console.WriteLine( "{0}, {1}, {2}, {3}", r0, r1, r2, r3 );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

---

77, 44, 32, 20

---

---

To omit optional parameters from arbitrary positions within the list of optional parameters, rather than from the end of the list, you must use the names of the optional parameters to disambiguate the assignments. You are therefore using both the named parameters and optional parameters features, as illustrated in the following code:

```
class MyClass
{
    double GetCylinderVolume( double radius = 3.0, double height = 4.0 )
    {
        return 3.1416 * radius * radius * height;
    }

    static void Main( )
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        double volume;

        volume = mc.GetCylinderVolume( 3.0, 4.0 );           // Positional
        Console.WriteLine( "Volume = " + volume );

        volume = mc.GetCylinderVolume( radius: 2.0 );       // Use default height
        Console.WriteLine( "Volume = " + volume );

        volume = mc.GetCylinderVolume( height: 2.0 );       // Use default radius
        Console.WriteLine( "Volume = " + volume );

        volume = mc.GetCylinderVolume( );                     // Use both defaults
        Console.WriteLine( "Volume = " + volume );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Volume = 113.0976
Volume = 50.2656
Volume = 56.5488
Volume = 113.0976
```

---

## Stack Frames

So far, you know that local variables and parameters are kept on the stack. Let's look at that organization a little further.

When a method is called, memory is allocated at the top of the stack to hold a number of data items associated with the method. This chunk of memory is called the *stack frame* for the method.

- The stack frame contains memory to hold the following:
  - The return address—that is, where to resume execution when the method exits
  - Those parameters that allocate memory—that is, the value parameters of the method, and the parameter array if there is one
  - Various other administrative data items relevant to the method call
- When a method is called, its entire stack frame is pushed onto the stack.
- When the method exits, its entire stack frame is popped from the stack. Popping a stack frame is sometimes called *unwinding* the stack.

For example, the following code declares three methods. Main calls MethodA, which calls MethodB, creating three stack frames. As the methods exit, the stack unwinds.

```
class Program
{
    static void MethodA( int par1, int par2)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Enter MethodA: {0}, {1}", par1, par2);
        MethodB(11, 18);                                // Call MethodB.
        Console.WriteLine("Exit  MethodA");
    }

    static void MethodB(int par1, int par2)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Enter MethodB: {0}, {1}", par1, par2);
        Console.WriteLine("Exit  MethodB");
    }

    static void Main( )
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Enter Main");
        MethodA( 15, 30);                            // Call MethodA.
        Console.WriteLine("Exit  Main");
    }
}
```

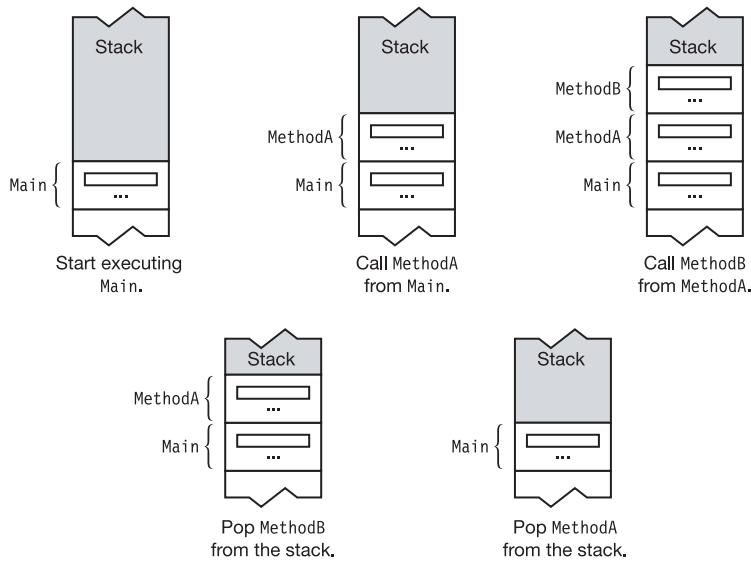
This code produces the following output:

---

```
Enter Main
Enter MethodA: 15, 30
Enter MethodB: 11, 18
Exit  MethodB
Exit  MethodA
Exit  Main
```

---

Figure 5-14 shows how the stack frames of each method are placed on the stack when the method is called and how the stack is unwound as the methods complete.



**Figure 5-14.** Stack frames in a simple program

# Recursion

Besides calling other methods, a method can also call *itself*. This is called *recursion*.

Recursion can produce some very elegant code, such as the following method for computing the factorial of a number. Notice that inside the method, the method calls itself with an actual parameter of one less than its input parameter.

```
int Factorial(int inValue)
{
    if (inValue <= 1)
        return inValue;
    else
        return inValue * Factorial(inValue - 1);      // Call Factorial again.
}
Calls itself
```

The mechanics of a method calling itself are exactly the same as if it had called another, different method. A new stack frame is pushed onto the stack for each call to the method.

For example, in the following code, method Count calls itself with one less than its input parameter and then prints out its input parameter. As the recursion gets deeper, the stack gets larger.

```
class Program
{
    public void Count(int inVal)
    {
        if (inVal == 0)
            return;
        Count(inVal - 1);           // Invoke this method again.
        ↑
        Calls itself
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", inVal);
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        Program pr = new Program();
        pr.Count(3);
    }
}
```

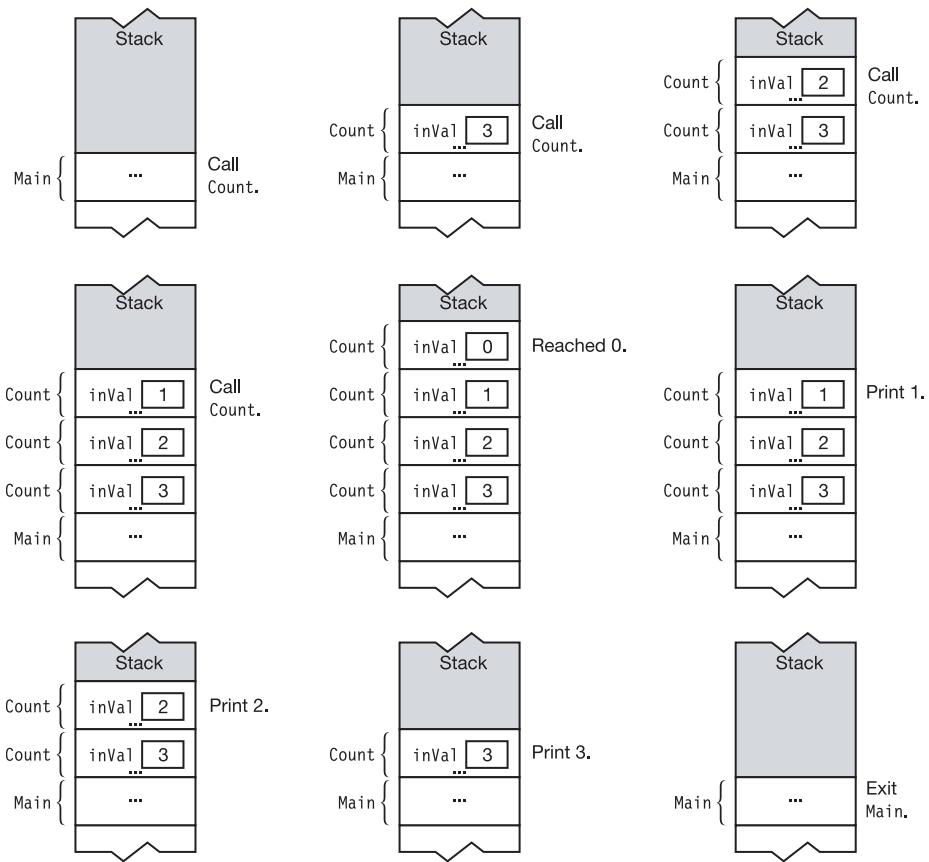
This code produces the following output:

---

1  
2  
3

---

Figure 5-15 illustrates the code. Notice that with an input value of 3, there are four different, independent stack frames for method Count. Each has its own value for input parameter inVal.



**Figure 5-15.** Example of recursion





# More About Classes

- Class Members
- Instance Class Members
- Static Fields
- Static Function Members
- Other Static Class Member Types
- Constants
- Properties
- Instance Constructors
- Static Constructors
- Accessibility of Constructors
- Destructors
- Comparison of Constructors and Destructors
- The readonly Modifier
- The this Keyword
- Indexers
- Access Modifiers on Accessors
- Partial Classes

# Class Members

The previous two chapters covered two of the nine types of class members: fields and methods. In this chapter, I'll introduce more types of class members, and explain their features.

Table 6-1 shows a list of the class member types. Those that have already been introduced are marked with diamonds. Those that are covered in this chapter are marked with a check. Those that will be covered later in the text are marked with empty check boxes.

**Table 6-1.** Types of Class Members

Data Members (Store Data)	Function Members (Execute Code)		
◆ Fields	◆ Methods	✓ Operators	
✓ Constants	✓ Properties	✓ Indexers	
	✓ Constructors	□ Events	
	✓ Destructors		

## Order of Member Modifiers

Previously, you saw that the declarations of fields and methods can include modifiers such as `public` and `private`. In this chapter, I'll discuss a number of additional modifiers. Since many of these modifiers can be used together, the question that arises is, what order do they need to be in?

Class member declaration statements consist of the following: the core declaration, an optional set of *modifiers*, and an optional set of *attributes*. The syntax used to describe this structure is the following. The square brackets indicate that the enclosed set of components is optional.

```
[ attributes ] [ modifiers ] CoreDeclaration
```

The optional components are the following:

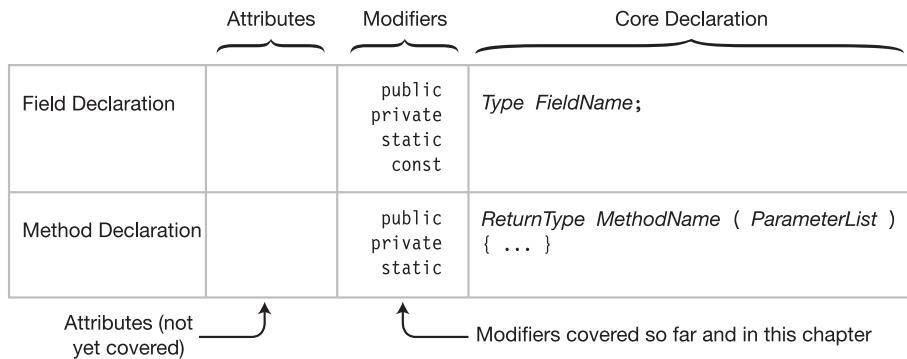
- *Modifiers*
  - If there are any modifiers, they must be placed before the core declaration.
  - If there are multiple modifiers, they can be in an order.
- *Attributes*
  - If there are any attributes, they must be placed before the modifiers and core declaration.
  - If there are multiple attributes, they can be in any order.

So far, I've explained only two modifiers: `public` and `private`, and I'll cover attributes in Chapter 24.

For example, `public` and `static` are both modifiers that can be used together to modify certain declarations. Since they're both modifiers, they can be placed in either order. The following two lines are semantically equivalent:

```
public static int MaxVal;  
static public int MaxVal;
```

Figure 6-1 shows the order of the components as applied to the member types shown so far: fields and methods. Notice that the type of the field and the return type of the method are not modifiers—they're part of the core declaration.



**Figure 6-1.** The order of attributes, modifiers, and core declarations

## Instance Class Members

Class members can be associated with an instance of the class or with the class as a whole. By default, members are associated with an instance. You can think of each instance of a class as having its own copy of each class member. These members are called *instance members*.

Changes to the value of one instance field do not affect the values of the members in any other instance. So far, the fields and methods you've seen have all been instance fields and instance methods.

For example, the following code declares a class D with a single integer field Mem1. Main creates two instances of the class. Each instance has its own copy of field Mem1. Changing the value of one instance's copy of the field doesn't affect the value of the other instance's copy. Figure 6-2 shows the two instances of class D.

```
class D
{
    public int Mem1;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        D d1 = new D();
        D d2 = new D();
        d1.Mem1 = 10; d2.Mem1 = 28;

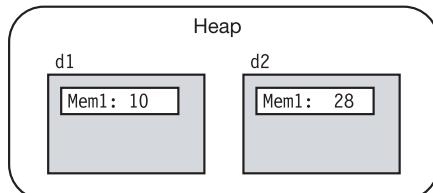
        Console.WriteLine("d1 = {0}, d2 = {1}", d1.Mem1, d2.Mem1);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
d1 = 10, d2 = 28
```

---



**Figure 6-2.** Each instance of class D has its own copy of field Mem1.

## Static Fields

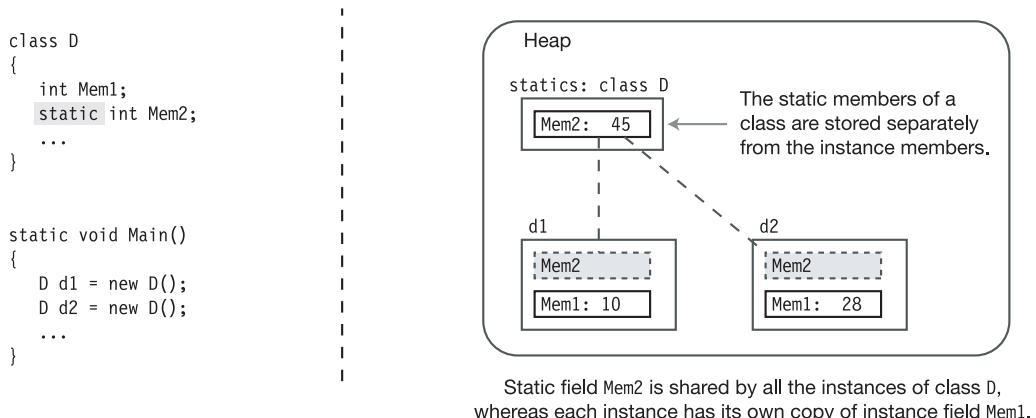
Besides instance fields, classes can have what are called *static fields*.

- A static field is *shared by all the instances of the class*, and all the instances access the same memory location. Hence, if the value of the memory location is changed by one instance, the change is visible to all the instances.
- Use the **static** modifier to declare a field static, as follows:

```
class D
{
    int Mem1;           // Instance field
    static int Mem2;    // Static field
}
} Keyword
```

For example, the code on the left in Figure 6-3 declares class D with static field Mem2 and instance field Mem1. Main defines two instances of class D. The figure shows that static field Mem2 is stored separately from the storage of any of the instances. The gray fields inside the instances represent the fact that, from inside an instance method, the syntax to access or update the static field is the same as for any other member field.

- Because Mem2 is static, both instances of class D share a single Mem2 field. If Mem2 is changed, that change is seen from both.
- Member Mem1 is not declared static, so each instance has its own distinct copy.



**Figure 6-3.** Static and instance data members

## Accessing Static Members from Outside the Class

In the previous chapter, you saw that dot-syntax notation is used to access instance members from outside the class. Dot-syntax notation consists of listing the instance name, followed by a dot, followed by the member name.

Static members, like instance members, are also accessed from outside the class using dot-syntax notation. But since there is no instance, you must use the *class name*, as shown here:

```
Class name
↓
D.Mem2 = 5;           // Accessing the static class member
↑
Member name
```

### Example of a Static Field

The following code expands the preceding class D by adding two methods:

- One method sets the values of the two data members.
- The other method displays the values of the two data members.

```
class D {
    int      Mem1;
    static int Mem2;

    public void SetVars(int v1, int v2) // Set the values
    {   Mem1 = v1; Mem2 = v2; }
        ↑ Access as if it were an instance field

    public void Display( string str )
    {   Console.WriteLine("{0}: Mem1= {1}, Mem2= {2}", str, Mem1, Mem2); }
        ↑ Access as if it were an instance field

class Program {
    static void Main()
    {
        D d1 = new D(), d2 = new D(); // Create two instances.

        d1.SetVars(2, 4);           // Set d1's values.
        d1.Display("d1");

        d2.SetVars(15, 17);         // Set d2's values.
        d2.Display("d2");

        d1.Display("d1");          // Display d1 again and notice that the
        // value of static member Mem2 has changed!
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
d1: Mem1= 2, Mem2= 4
d2: Mem1= 15, Mem2= 17
d1: Mem1= 2, Mem2= 17
```

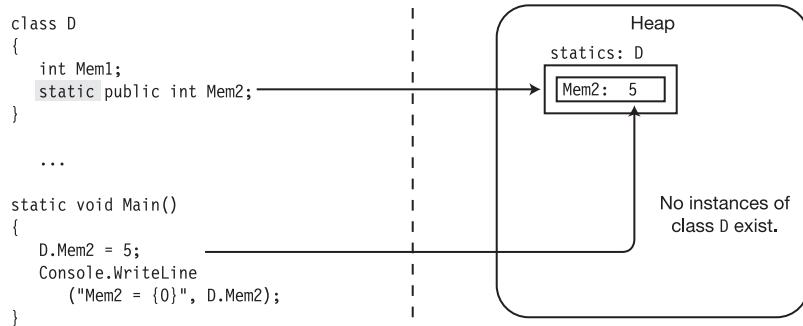
---

## Lifetimes of Static Members

The lifetimes for static members are different from those of instance members.

- As you saw previously, instance members come into existence when the instance is created and go out of existence when the instance is destroyed.
- Static members, however, exist and are accessible *even if there are no instances* of the class.

Figure 6-4 illustrates a class D, with a static field, Mem2. Even though Main doesn't define any instances of the class, it assigns the value 5 to the static field and prints it out with no problem.



**Figure 6-4.** Static fields with no class instances can still be assigned to and read from, because the field is associated with the class, and not an instance.

The code in Figure 6-4 produces the following output:

---

```
Mem2 = 5
```

---

**Note** Static members exist even if there are no instances of the class. If a static field has an initializer, the field is initialized before the use of any of the class's static fields but not necessarily at the beginning of program execution.

## Static Function Members

Besides static fields, there are also static function members.

- Static function members, like static fields, are independent of any class instance. Even if there are no instances of a class, you can still call a static method.
- Static function members cannot access instance members. They can, however, access other static members.

For example, the following class contains a static field and a static method. Notice that the body of the static method accesses the static field.

```
class X
{
    static public int A;                      // Static field
    static public void PrintValA()            // Static method
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Value of A: {0}", A);
    }
}
```

Accessing the static field

The following code uses class X, defined in the preceding code:

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        X.A = 10;                  // Use dot-syntax notation
        X.PrintValA();             // Use dot-syntax notation
    }
}
```

Class name

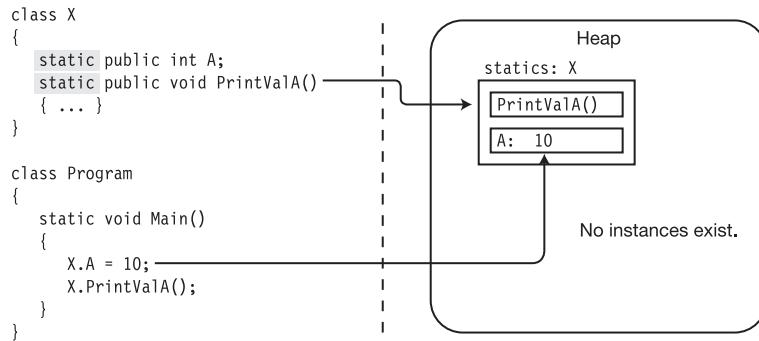
This code produces the following output:

---

Value of A: 10

---

Figure 6-5 illustrates the preceding code.



**Figure 6-5.** Static methods of a class can be called even if there are no instances of the class.

## Other Static Class Member Types

The types of class members that can be declared static are shown checked in Table 6-2. The other member types cannot be declared static.

**Table 6-2.** Class Member Types That Can Be Declared Static

Data Members (Store Data)	Function Members (Execute Code)
✓ Fields	✓ Methods
Constants	✓ Properties
	✓ Constructors
	✓ Operators
	Indexers
	✓ Events

## Member Constants

Member constants are like the local constants covered in the previous chapter, except that they're declared in the class declaration, as shown in the following example:

```
class MyClass
{
    const int IntVal = 100;           // Defines a constant of type int
                                    // with a value of 100.
}      Type      Initializer

const double PI = 3.1416;          // Error: cannot be declared outside a type
                                    // declaration
```

Like local constants, the value used to initialize a member constant must be computable at compile time and is usually one of the predefined simple types or an expression composed of them.

```
class MyClass
{
    const int IntVal1 = 100;
    const int IntVal2 = 2 * IntVal1; // Fine, since the value of IntVal1
                                    // was set in the previous line.
```

Like local constants, you cannot assign to a member constant after its declaration.

```
class MyClass
{
    const int IntVal;               // Error: initialization is required.
    IntVal = 100;                  // Error: assignment is not allowed.
}
```

**Note** Unlike C and C++, in C# there are no global constants. Every constant must be declared within a type.

## Constants Are Like Statics

Member constants, however, are more interesting than local constants, in that they act like static values. They're "visible" to every instance of the class, and they're available even if there are no instances of the class.

For example, the following code declares class X with constant field PI. Main doesn't create any instances of X, and yet it can use field PI and print its value.

```
class X
{
    public const double PI = 3.1416;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("pi = {0}", X.PI);      // Use static field PI
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

---

```
pi = 3.1416
```

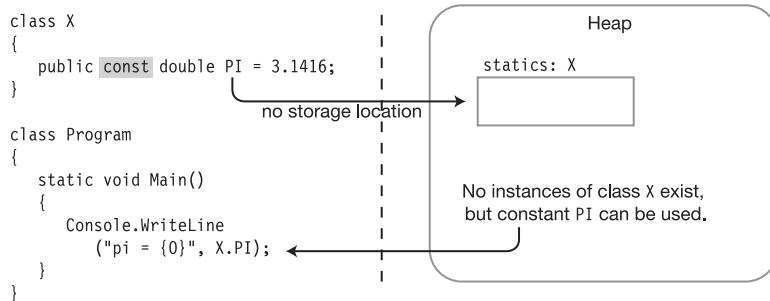
---

---

Unlike actual statics, however, constants do not have their own storage locations and are substituted in by the compiler at compile time in a manner similar to `#define` values in C and C++. This is shown in Figure 6-6, which illustrates the preceding code. Hence, although a constant member acts like a static, you cannot declare a constant as `static`.

```
static const double PI = 3.14;
```

```
Error: can't declare a constant as static
```



**Figure 6-6.** Constant fields act like static fields but do not have a storage location in memory.

# Properties

A property is a member that represents an item of data in a class or class instance. Using a property appears very much like writing to, or reading from, a field. The syntax is the same.

For example, the following code shows the use of a class called `MyClass` that has both a public field and a public property. From their usage, you cannot tell them apart.

```
MyClass mc = new MyClass();

mc.MyField    = 5;                                // Assigning to a field
mc.MyProperty = 10;                               // Assigning to a property

WriteLine("{0} {1}", mc.MyField, mc.MyProperty); // Read field and property
```

A property, like a field, has the following characteristics:

- It is a named class member.
- It has a type.
- It can be assigned to and read from.

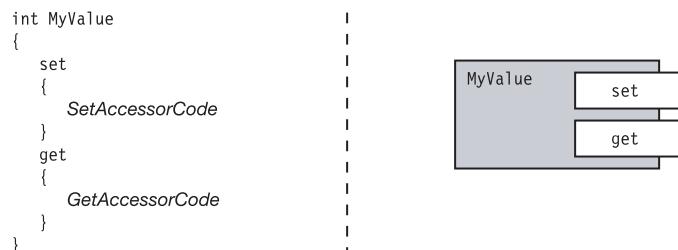
Unlike a field, however, a property is a function member.

- It does not necessarily allocate memory for data storage.
- It executes code.

A *property* is a named set of two matching methods called *accessors*.

- The *set* accessor is used for assigning a value to the property.
- The *get* accessor is used for retrieving a value from the property.

Figure 6-7 shows the representation of a property. The code on the left shows the syntax of declaring a property named `MyValue`, of type `int`. The image on the right shows how properties will be represented visually in this text. Notice that the accessors are shown sticking out the back, because, as you will soon see, they're not directly callable.



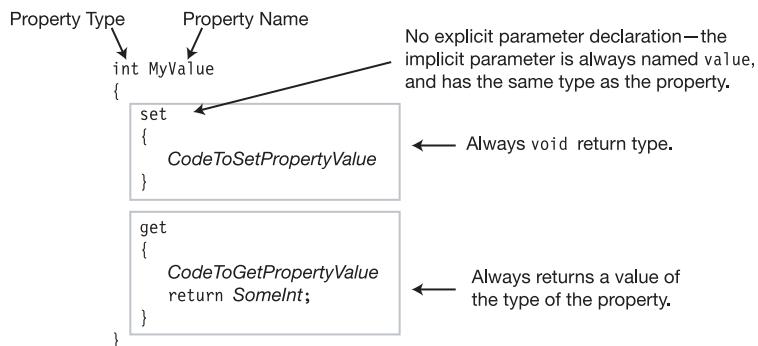
**Figure 6-7.** An example property of type `int`, named `MyValue`

## Property Declarations and Accessors

The set and get accessors have predefined syntax and semantics. You can think of the set accessor as a method with a single parameter that “sets” the value of the property. The get accessor has no parameters and returns the value the property.

- The set accessor always has the following:
  - A single, implicit value parameter named `value`, of the same type as the property
  - A return type of `void`
- The get accessor always has the following:
  - No parameters
  - A return type of the same type as the property

Figure 6-8 shows the structure of a property declaration. Notice in the figure that neither accessor declaration has *explicit* parameter or return type declarations. They don’t need them, because they’re *implicit* in the type of the property.



**Figure 6-8.** The syntax and structure of a property declaration

The implicit parameter `value` in the set accessor is a normal value parameter. Like other value parameters, you can use it to send data into a method body—or in this case, the accessor block. Once inside the block, you can use `value` like a normal variable, including assigning values to it.

Other important points about accessors are the following:

- All paths through the implementation of a get accessor *must* include a `return` statement that returns a value of the property type.
- The set and get accessors can be declared in either order, and no methods other than the two accessors are allowed on a property.

## A Property Example

The following code shows an example of the declaration of a class called C1 that contains a property named MyValue.

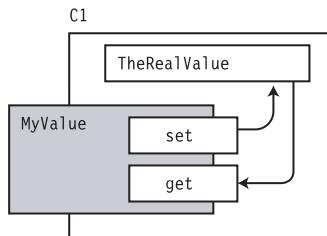
- Notice that the property itself doesn't have any storage. Instead, the accessors determine what should be done with data sent in and what data should be sent out. In this case, the property uses a field called TheRealValue for storage.
- The set accessor takes its input parameter, value, and assigns that value to field TheRealValue.
- The get accessor just returns the value of field TheRealValue.

Figure 6-9 illustrates the code.

```
class C1
{
    private int TheRealValue;           // Field: memory allocated

    public int MyValue                 // Property: no memory allocated
    {
        set
        {
            TheRealValue = value;
        }

        get
        {
            return TheRealValue;
        }
    }
}
```



**Figure 6-9.** Property accessors often use fields for storage

## Using a Property

As you saw previously, you write to and read from a property in the same way you access a field. The accessors are called implicitly.

- To write to a property, use the property's name on the left side of an assignment statement.
- To read from a property, use the property's name in an expression.

For example, the following code contains an outline of the declaration of a property named `MyValue`. You write to and read from the property using just the property name, as if it were a field name.

```
int MyValue          // Property declaration
{
    set{ ... }
    get{ ... }
}
...
Property name
↓
MyValue = 5;        // Assignment: the set method is implicitly called
z = MyValue;        // Expression: the get method is implicitly called
↑
Property name
```

The appropriate accessor is called implicitly depending on whether you are writing to or reading from the property. You cannot explicitly call the accessors. Attempting to do so produces a compile error.

```
y = MyValue.get();      // Error! Can't explicitly call get accessor.
MyValue.set(5);        // Error! Can't explicitly call set accessor.
```

## Properties and Associated Fields

A property is often associated with a field, as shown in the previous two sections. A common practice is to encapsulate a field in a class by declaring it private and declaring a public property to give controlled access to the field from outside the class. The field associated with a property is called the *backing field* or *Backing store*.

For example, the following code uses the public property `MyValue` to give controlled access to private field `TheRealValue`:

```
class C1
{
    private int TheRealValue = 10;    // Backing Field: memory allocated
    public  int MyValue            // Property: no memory allocated
    {
        set{ TheRealValue = value; } // Sets the value of field TheRealValue
        get{ return TheRealValue; } // Gets the value of the field
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        C1 c = new C1();           Read from the property as if it were a field.
        Console.WriteLine("MyValue: {0}", c.MyValue);

        c.MyValue = 20;             ← Use assignment to set the value of a property.
        Console.WriteLine("MyValue: {0}", c.MyValue);
    }
}
```

There are several conventions for naming properties and their backing fields. One convention is to use the same string for both names but use camel casing (in which the first letter is lowercase) for the field and Pascal casing for the property. Although this violates the general rule that it is bad practice to have different identifiers that differ only in casing, it has the advantage of tying the two identifiers together in a meaningful way.

Another convention is to use Pascal casing for the property, and then for the field, use the camel case version of the same identifier, with an underscore in front.

The following code shows both conventions:

```
private int firstField;           // Camel casing
public int FirstField            // Pascal casing
{
    get { return firstField; }
    set { firstField = value; }
}

private int _secondField;         // Underscore and camel casing
public int SecondField
{
    get { return _secondField; }
    set { _secondField = value; }
}
```

## Performing Other Calculations

Property accessors are not limited to just passing values back and forth from an associated backing field; the get and set accessors can perform any, or no, computations. The only action *required* is that the get accessor return a value of the property type.

For instance, the following example shows a valid (but probably useless) property that just returns the value 5 when its get accessor is called. When the set accessor is called, it doesn't do anything. The value of implicit parameter value is ignored.

```
public int Useless
{
    set{ /* I'm not setting anything. */ }
    get{ /* I'm just returning the value 5. */
        return 5;
    }
}
```

The following code shows a more realistic and useful property, where the set accessor performs filtering before setting the associated field. The set accessor sets field TheRealValue to the input value—unless the input value is greater than 100. In that case, it sets TheRealValue to 100.

```
int TheRealValue = 10;                      // The field
int MyValue                                // The property
{
    set                                     // Sets the value of the field
    {
        TheRealValue = value > 100          // but makes sure it's not > 100
            ? 100
            : value;
    }
    get                                     // Gets the value of the field
    {
        return TheRealValue;
    }
}
```

**Note** In the preceding code sample, the syntax between the equals sign and the end of the statement might look somewhat strange. That expression uses the *conditional operator*, which will be covered in greater detail in Chapter 8. The conditional operator is a ternary operator that evaluates the expression in front of the question mark, and if the expression evaluates to true, it returns the expression after the question mark. Otherwise, it returns the expression after the colon.

## Read-Only and Write-Only Properties

You can leave one or the other (but not both) of a property's accessors undefined by omitting its declaration.

- A property with only a `get` accessor is called a *read-only* property. A read-only property is a safe way of passing an item of data out from a class or class instance without allowing too much access.
- A property with only a `set` accessor is called a *write-only* property. A write-only property is a safe way of passing an item of data from outside the class to the class without allowing too much access.
- At least one of the two accessors must be defined, or the compiler will produce an error message.

Figure 6-10 illustrates read-only and write-only properties.



**Figure 6-10.** A property can have one or the other of its accessors undefined.

## An Example of a Computed, Read-Only Property

In most of the examples so far, the property has been associated with a field, and the get and set accessors have referenced that field. However, a property does not have to be associated with a field. In the following example, the get accessor *computes* the return value.

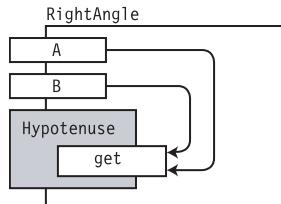
In the following example code, class RightTriangle represents, not surprisingly, a right triangle.

- It has two public fields that represent the lengths of the two right-angle sides of the triangle. These fields can be written to and read from.
- The third side is represented by property Hypotenuse, which is a read-only property whose return value is based on the lengths of the other two sides. It isn't stored in a field. Instead, it computes the correct value, on demand, for the current values of A and B.

Figure 6-11 illustrates read-only property Hypotenuse.

```
class RightTriangle
{
    public double A = 3;
    public double B = 4;
    public double Hypotenuse // Read-only property
    {
        get{ return Math.Sqrt((A*A)+(B*B)); } // Calculate return value
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        RightTriangle c = new RightTriangle();
        Console.WriteLine("Hypotenuse: {0}", c.Hypotenuse);
    }
}
```



**Figure 6-11.** Read-only property Hypotenuse

## Example of Properties and Databases

Another example in which a property is not associated with a field is when the property is associated with a value in a database. In that case, the get accessor makes the appropriate database calls to get the value from the database. The set accessor makes the corresponding calls to the database to set the new value in the database.

For example, the following property is associated with a particular value in some database. The code assumes that there are two other methods in the class to handle the details of the database transactions:

- `SetValueInDatabase` takes an integer parameter and uses it to set a particular field in a record in some database.
- `GetValueFromDatabase` retrieves and returns a particular integer field value from a particular record in some database.

```
int MyDatabaseValue
{
    set                      // Sets integer value in the database
    {
        SetValueInDatabase(value);
    }
    get                      // Gets integer value from the database
    {
        return GetValueFromDatabase();
    }
}
```

## Properties vs. Public Fields

As a matter of preferred coding practice, properties are preferred over public fields for several reasons:

- Since properties are functional members as opposed to data members, they allow you to process the input and output, which you can't do with public fields.
- The semantics of a compiled variable and a compiled property are different.

The second point has implications when you release an assembly that is accessed by other code. For example, sometimes there's the temptation is to use a public field rather than a property, with the reasoning that if you ever need to add processing to the data held in the field, you can always change it to a property at a later time. This is true, but if you make that change, you will also have to recompile any other assemblies *accessing* that field, because the compiled semantics of fields and properties are different. On the other hand, if you had implemented it as a property and just changed its *implementation*, you wouldn't need to recompile the other assemblies accessing it.

## Automatically Implemented Properties

Because properties are so often associated with backing fields, C# 3.0 added *automatically implemented properties*, or *auto-implemented properties*, which allow you to just declare the property, without declaring a backing field. The compiler creates a hidden backing field for you and automatically hooks up the get and set accessors to it.

The important points about auto-implemented properties are the following:

- You do not declare the backing field—the compiler allocates the storage for you, based on the type of the property.
- You cannot supply the bodies of the accessors—they must be declared simply as semicolons. The get acts as a simple read of the memory, and the set as a simple write.
- You cannot access the backing field other than through the accessors. Since you can't access it any other way, it wouldn't make sense to have read-only or write-only auto-implemented properties—so they're not allowed.

The following code shows an example of an automatically implemented property:

```
class C1
{
    public int MyValue           ← No declared backing field
    {
        set; get;
    }                                // Allocates memory
} The bodies of the accessors are declared as semicolons.

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        C1 c = new C1();           Use auto-implemented properties as regular properties.
        ↓
        Console.WriteLine("MyValue: {0}", c.MyValue);

        c.MyValue = 20;
        Console.WriteLine("MyValue: {0}", c.MyValue);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
MyValue: 0
MyValue: 20
```

---

Besides being convenient, auto-implemented properties allow you to easily insert a property where you might be tempted to declare a public field.

## Static Properties

Properties can also be declared `static`. Accessors of static properties, like all static members

- Cannot access instance members of a class—although they can be accessed by them
- Exist regardless of whether there are instances of the class
- Must be referenced by the class name, rather than an instance name, when being accessed from outside the class

For example, the following code shows a class with an auto-implemented static property called `MyValue`. In the first three lines of `Main`, the property is accessed, even though there are no instances of the class. The last line of `Main` calls an instance method that accesses the property from *inside* the class.

```
class Trivial
{
    public static int MyValue { get; set; }

    public void PrintValue()          Accessed from inside the class
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Value from inside: {0}", MyValue);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()              Accessed from outside the class
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Init Value: {0}", Trivial.MyValue);
        Trivial.MyValue = 10;         ← Accessed from outside the class
        Console.WriteLine("New Value : {0}", Trivial.MyValue);

        Trivial tr = new Trivial();
        tr.PrintValue();
    }
}
```

---

```
Init Value: 0
New Value : 10
Value from inside: 10
```

---

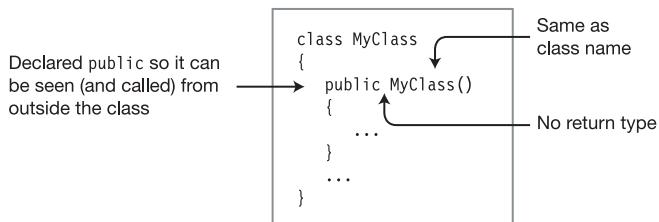
## Instance Constructors

An *instance constructor* is a special method that is executed whenever a new instance of a class is created.

- A constructor is used to initialize the state of the class instance.
- If you want to be able to create instances of your class from outside the class, you need to declare the constructor `public`.

Figure 6-12 shows the syntax of a constructor. A constructor looks like the other methods in a class declaration, with the following exceptions:

- The name of the constructor is the same as the name of the class.
- A constructor cannot have a return value.



**Figure 6-12.** Constructor declaration

For example, the following class uses its constructor to initialize its fields. In this case, it has a field called `TimeOfInstantiation` that is initialized with the current date and time.

```

class MyClass
{
    DateTime TimeOfInstantiation;           // Field
    ...
    public MyClass()                      // Constructor
    {
        TimeOfInstantiation = DateTime.Now; // Initialize field
    }
    ...
}
  
```

**Note** Having finished the section on static properties, take a closer look at the line that initializes `TimeOfInstantiation`. The `DateTime` class is from the BCL, and `Now` is a *static property* of the `DateTime` class. The `Now` property creates a new instance of the `DateTime` class, initializes it with the current date and time from the system clock, and returns a reference to the new `DateTime` instance.

## Constructors with Parameters

Constructors are like other methods in the following ways:

- A constructor can have parameters. The syntax for the parameters is exactly the same as for other methods.
- A constructor can be overloaded.

When you use an object-creation expression to create a new instance of a class, you use the `new` operator followed by one of the class's constructors. The `new` operator uses that constructor to create the instance of the class.

For example, in the following code, `Class1` has three constructors: one that takes no parameters, one that takes an `int`, and another that takes a `string`. `Main` creates an instance using each one.

```
class Class1
{
    int Id;
    string Name;

    public Class1() { Id=28;     Name="Nemo"; } // Constructor 0
    public Class1(int val) { Id=val;   Name="Nemo"; } // Constructor 1
    public Class1(String name) { Name=name; } // Constructor 2

    public void SoundOff()
    { Console.WriteLine("Name {0}, Id {1}", Name, Id); }

}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Class1 a = new Class1(); // Call constructor 0.
        b = new Class1(7); // Call constructor 1.
        c = new Class1("Bill"); // Call constructor 2.

        a.SoundOff();
        b.SoundOff();
        c.SoundOff();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Name Nemo, Id 28
Name Nemo, Id 7
Name Bill, Id 0
```

---

## Default Constructors

If no instance constructor is explicitly supplied in the class declaration, then the compiler supplies an implicit, default constructor, which has the following characteristics:

- It takes no parameters.
- It has an empty body.

If you declare any constructors at all for a class, then the compiler does not define a default constructor for the class.

For example, Class2 declares two constructors.

- Because there is at least one explicitly defined constructor, the compiler does not create any additional constructors.
- In Main, there is an attempt to create a new instance using a constructor with no parameters. Since there *is* no constructor with zero parameters, the compiler produces an error message.

```
class Class2
{
    public Class2(int Value) { ... } // Constructor 0
    public Class2(String Value) { ... } // Constructor 1
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Class2 a = new Class2(); // Error! No constructor with 0 parameters
        ...
    }
}
```

## Static Constructors

Constructors can also be declared `static`. While an instance constructor initializes each new instance of a class, a static constructor initializes items at the class level. Generally, static constructors initialize the static fields of the class.

- Class-level items need to be initialized:
  - Before any static member is referenced
  - Before any instance of the class is created
- Static constructors are like instance constructors in the following ways:
  - The name of the static constructor must be the same as the name of the class.
  - The constructor cannot return a value.
- Static constructors are unlike instance constructors in the following ways:
  - Static constructors use the `static` keyword in the declaration.
  - There can only be a single static constructor for a class, and it cannot have parameters.
  - Static constructors cannot have accessibility modifiers.

The following is an example of a static constructor. Notice that its form is the same as that of an instance constructor, but with the addition of the `static` keyword.

```
class Class1
{
    static Class1 ()
    {
        ...
        // Do all the static initializations.
    }
    ...
}
```

Other important things you should know about static constructors are the following:

- A class can have both a static constructor and instance constructors.
- Like static methods, a static constructor cannot access instance members of its class and cannot use the `this` accessor, which we'll cover shortly.
- You cannot explicitly call static constructors from your program. They're called automatically by the system, at some time:
  - Before any instance of the class is created
  - Before any static member of the class is referenced

## Example of a Static Constructor

The following code uses a static constructor to initialize a private static field named `RandomKey`, of type `Random`. `Random` is a class provided by the BCL to produce random numbers. It is in the `System` namespace.

```
class RandomNumberClass
{
    private static Random RandomKey;           // Private static field

    static RandomNumberClass()                 // Static constructor
    {
        RandomKey = new Random();             // Initialize RandomKey
    }

    public int GetRandomNumber()
    {
        return RandomKey.Next();
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        RandomNumberClass a = new RandomNumberClass();
        RandomNumberClass b = new RandomNumberClass();

        Console.WriteLine("Next Random #: {0}", a.GetRandomNumber());
        Console.WriteLine("Next Random #: {0}", b.GetRandomNumber());
    }
}
```

One execution of this code produced the following output:

---

```
Next Random #: 47857058
Next Random #: 1124842041
```

---

## Accessibility of Constructors

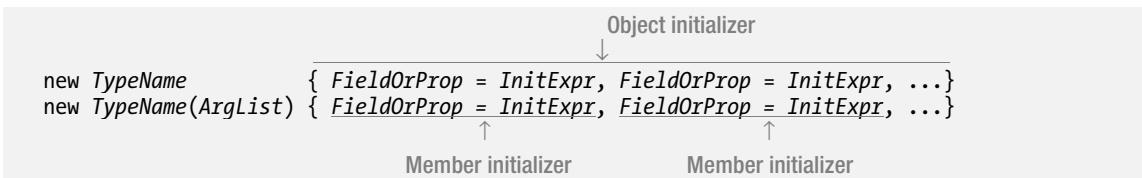
You can assign access modifiers to instance constructors just as you can to other members. Notice that in the examples, the constructors have been declared `public` so that you can create instances from outside the class.

You can also create `private` constructors, which cannot be called from outside the class, but can be used from within the class, as you'll see in the next chapter.

## Object Initializers

So far in the text, you've seen that an object-creation expression consists of the keyword new followed by a class constructor and its parameter list. An object initializer extends that syntax by placing a list of member initializations at the end of the expression. This allows you to set the values of fields and properties when creating a new instance of an object.

The syntax has two forms, as shown here. One form includes the constructor's argument list, and the other doesn't. Notice that the first form doesn't even use the parentheses that would enclose the argument list.



For example, for a class named Point with two public integer fields X and Y, you could use the following expression to create a new object:

```

new Point { X = 5, Y = 6 };
      ↑   ↑
Init X  Init Y
  
```

Important things to know about object initializers are the following:

- The fields and properties being initialized must be accessible to the code creating the object. For example, in the previous code, X and Y must be `public`.
- The initialization occurs *after* the constructor has finished execution, so the values might have been set in the constructor and then reset to the same or different value in the object initialize.

The following code shows an example of using an object initializer. In Main, pt1 calls just the constructor, which sets the values of its two fields. For pt2, however, the constructor sets the fields' values to 1 and 2, and the initializer changes them to 5 and 6.

```
public class Point
{
    public int X = 1;
    public int Y = 2;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        Point pt1 = new Point();           Object initializer
        Point pt2 = new Point { X = 5, Y = 6 };
        Console.WriteLine("pt1: {0}, {1}", pt1.X, pt1.Y);
        Console.WriteLine("pt2: {0}, {1}", pt2.X, pt2.Y);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
pt1: 1, 2
pt2: 5, 6
```

---

## Destructors

Destructors perform actions required to clean up or release unmanaged resources after an instance of a class is no longer referenced. The important things to know about destructors are the following:

- You can have only a single destructor per class.
- A destructor cannot have parameters.
- A destructor cannot have accessibility modifiers.
- A destructor has the same name as the class but is preceded by a tilde character (pronounced *TIL-duh*).
- A destructor only acts on *instances* of classes; hence, *there are no static destructors*.
- *You cannot call a destructor explicitly in your code.* Instead, it is called during the garbage collection process, when the garbage collector analyzes your code and determines that there is no longer any path through your code that references the object.

For example, the following code illustrates the syntax for a destructor of a class called Class1:

```
Class1
{
    ~Class1()                  // The destructor
    {
        CleanupCode
    }
    ...
}
```

Some important guidelines for using destructors are the following:

- Don't implement a destructor if you don't need one. They can incur performance costs.
- A destructor should only release external resources that the object owns.
- A destructor should not access other objects because you can't assume that those objects haven't already been destroyed.

---

**Note** Before the release of version 3.0 of C#, destructors were sometimes called *finalizers*. You might sometimes still run across this term in the literature and in the .NET API method names.

---

## Calling the Destructor

Unlike a C++ destructor, a C# destructor is not called immediately when an instance goes out of scope. In fact, there is no way of knowing when the destructor will be called. Furthermore, as previously mentioned, you cannot explicitly call a destructor. If your code needs a destructor, you must provide it for the system, which will call it at some point before the object is removed from the managed heap.

If your code contains unmanaged resources that need to be released in a timely manner, you shouldn't leave that task for the destructor, since there is no guarantee that the destructor will run any time soon. Instead, you should adopt the standard pattern where your classes implement what is called the `IDisposable` interface. (I'll cover interfaces in Chapter 17.) This consists of encapsulating the cleanup code for these resources in a void, parameterless method, which you should call `Dispose`.

When you're done with the resources and want them released, you need to call `Dispose`. Notice that it is *you* who needs to call `Dispose`—not the destructor. The system won't call it for you automatically.

Some guidelines for your `Dispose` method are the following:

- Implement the code in `Dispose` in such a way that it is safe for the method to be called more than once. If it has already been called, then on any subsequent invocations it should not raise an exception or do any additional work. (Exceptions are covered in Chapter 11.)
- Write your `Dispose` method and destructor such that, if for some reason your code doesn't get to call `Dispose`, your destructor will call it and release the resources.
- Since `Dispose` is doing the cleanup rather than the destructor, it should call the `GC.SuppressFinalize` method, which tells the CLR not to call this object's destructor, because it has already been taken care of.

The following code describes the safe disposal process. First, the class needs to declare a Boolean `disposed` field to keep track of whether the cleanup has occurred. This is initialized to `false` when the object is created.

Inside the `Dispose` method, do the following:

- Check the flag to see whether the resources have already been released. If not, then do the following:
  - Call the `Dispose` methods on any managed resources that require it.
  - Release any unmanaged resources held by the object.
- Now that the disposal has occurred, set the `disposed` flag to `true`.
- Finally, call the garbage collector's `SuppressFinalize` method to tell the garbage collector not to call the class's destructor.

The process in the destructor is similar to but shorter than that in the Dispose method. Just check to see whether the object has already been cleaned up, and if not, then release the unmanaged resources. Notice that in this case you do not call the Dispose methods of any managed resources, because the garbage collector might have already deleted those objects.

```
class MyClass
{
    bool disposed = false;           // Flag indicating disposal status

    /////////////////////////////////
    public void Dispose()           // Public Dispose
    {
        if (disposed == false)      // Check the flag.
        {
            // Call Dispose on managed resources.
            ...

            // Release any unmanaged resources.
            ...
        }
        disposed = true;            // Set the flag to show disposal.
        GC.SuppressFinalize(this);   // Tell GC not to call Finalize.
    }

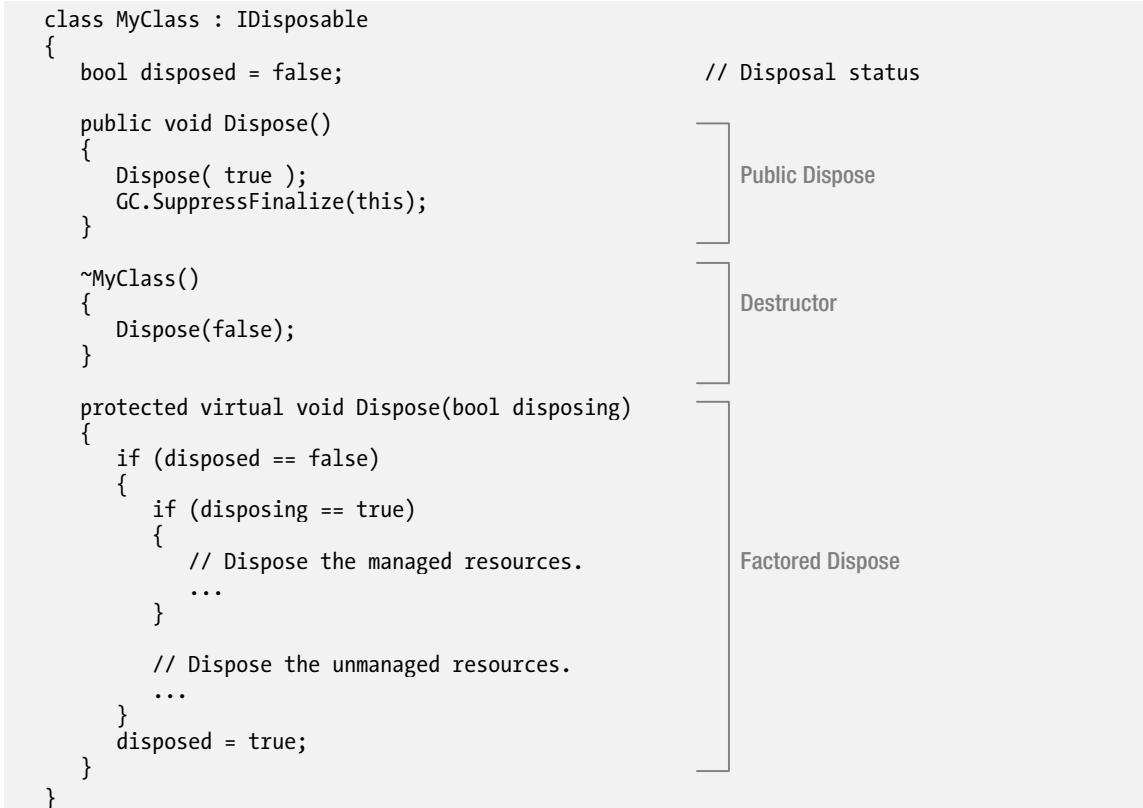
    /////////////////////////////////
    ~MyClass()                      // Destructor
    {
        if (disposed == false)      // Check the flag.
        {
            // Release any unmanaged resources.
            ...
        }
    }

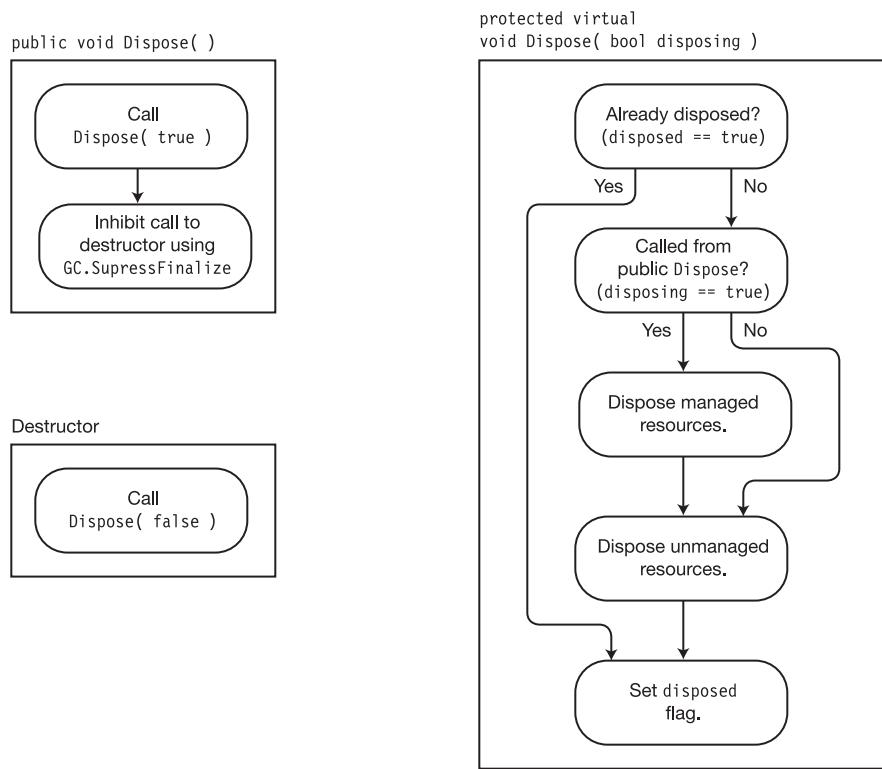
    ...
}
```

## The Standard Dispose Pattern

In the previous section, you saw that the destructor code is essentially a subset of the `Dispose` code. The standard pattern factors out most of the common code of these two methods into another method called `Dispose`, which I'll call the *factored Dispose*. It takes a single Boolean parameter that is used to indicate whether the method is being called from the public `Dispose` method (`true`) or from the destructor (`false`).

This standard dispose pattern is shown following and illustrated in Figure 6-13. I'll cover the protected and virtual modifiers in the next chapter.



**Figure 6-13.** The standard dispose pattern

## Comparing Constructors and Destructors

Table 6-3 provides a summary of when constructors and destructors are called.

**Table 6-3.** Constructors and Destructors

When and How Often Called		
Instance	Constructor	Called once on the creation of each new instance of the class.
	Destructor	Called for each instance of the class, at some point after the program flow can no longer access the instance.
Static	Constructor	Called only once—either before the first access of any static member of the class or before any instances of the class are created, whichever is first.
	Destructor	Does not exist—destructors work only on instances.

## The `readonly` Modifier

A field can be declared with the `readonly` modifier. The effect is similar to declaring a field as `const`, in that once the value is set, it cannot be changed.

- While a `const` field can only be initialized in the field's declaration statement, a `readonly` field can have its value set in any of the following places:
  - The field declaration statement—like a `const`.
  - Any of the class constructors. If it's a `static` field, then it must be done in the `static` constructor.
- While the value of a `const` field must be determinable at compile time, the value of a `readonly` field can be determined at run time. This additional freedom allows you to set different values under different circumstances or in different constructors!
- Unlike a `const`, which always acts like a `static`, the following is true of a `readonly` field:
  - It can be either an instance field or a static field.
  - It has a storage location in memory.

For example, the following code declares a class called `Shape`, with two `readonly` fields.

- Field `PI` is initialized in its declaration.
- Field `NumberOfSides` is set to either 3 or 4, depending on which constructor is called.

```
class Shape
{   Keyword           Initialized
    ↓                   ↓
  readonly double PI = 3.1416;
  readonly int    NumberOfSides;
    ↑                   ↑
  Keyword           Not initialized

  public Shape(double side1, double side2)          // Constructor
  {
    // Shape is a rectangle
    NumberOfSides = 4;
    ↑
    ... Set in constructor
  }

  public Shape(double side1, double side2, double side3) // Constructor
  {
    // Shape is a triangle
    NumberOfSides = 3;
    ↑
    ... Set in constructor
  }
}
```

## The this Keyword

The `this` keyword, used in a class, is a reference to the current instance. It can be used only in the *blocks* of the following class members:

- Instance constructors.
- Instance methods.
- Instance accessors of properties and indexers. (Indexers are covered in the next section.)

Clearly, since static members are not part of an instance, you cannot use the `this` keyword inside the code of any static function member. Rather, it is used for the following:

- To distinguish between class members and local variables or parameters
- As an actual parameter when calling a method

For example, the following code declares class `MyClass`, with an `int` field and a method that takes a single `int` parameter. The method compares the values of the parameter and the field and returns the greater value. The only complicating factor is that the names of the field and the formal parameter are the same: `Var1`. The two names are distinguished inside the method by using the `this` access keyword to reference the field.

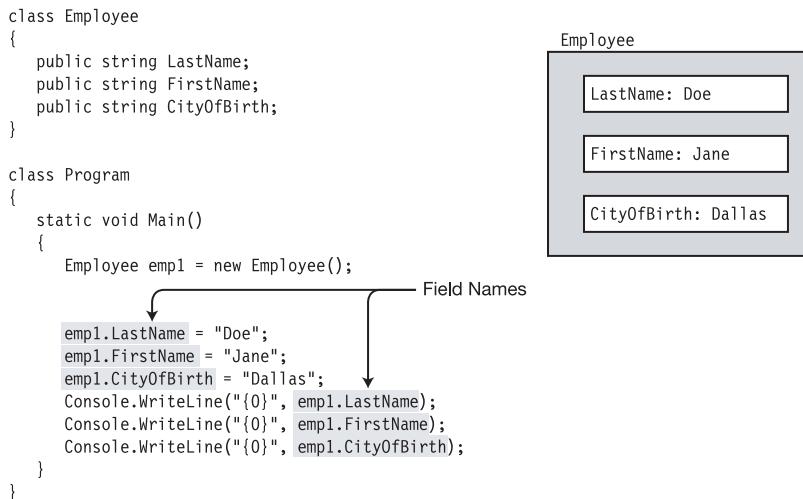
```
class MyClass
{
    int Var1 = 10;
        ↑ Both are called "Var1" ↓
    public int ReturnMaxSum(int Var1)
    {
        Parameter   Field
        ↓           ↓
        return Var1 > this.Var1
            ? Var1          // Parameter
            : this.Var1;      // Field
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();

        Console.WriteLine("Max: {0}", mc.ReturnMaxSum(30));
        Console.WriteLine("Max: {0}", mc.ReturnMaxSum(5));
    }
}
```

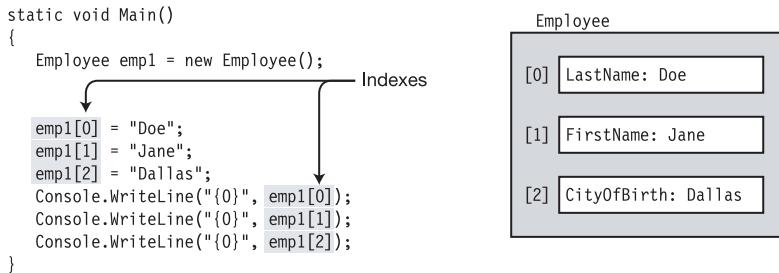
## Indexers

Suppose you were to define class `Employee`, with three fields of type `string` (as shown in Figure 6-14). You could then access the fields using their names, as shown in the code in `Main`.



**Figure 6-14.** Simple class without indexers

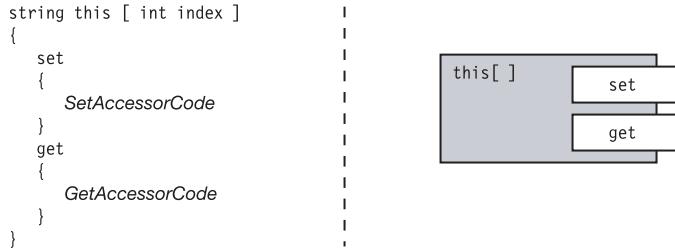
There are times, however, when it would be convenient to be able to access them with an index, as if the instance were an array of fields. This is exactly what *indexers* allow you to do. If you were to write an indexer for class `Employee`, method `Main` might look like the code in Figure 6-15. Notice that instead of using dot-syntax notation, indexers use *index notation*, which consists of an index between square brackets.



**Figure 6-15.** Using indexed fields

## What Is an Indexer?

An indexer is a pair of get and set accessors, similar to those of properties. Figure 6-16 shows the representation of an indexer for a class that can get and set values of type `string`.



**Figure 6-16.** Representations of an indexer

## Indexers and Properties

Indexers and properties are similar in many ways.

- Like a property, an indexer does not allocate memory for storage.
- Both indexers and properties are used primarily for giving access to *other* data members with which they're associated and for which they provide get and set access.
  - A *property* usually represents a *single* data member.
  - An *indexer* usually represents *multiple* data members.

**Note** You can think of an *indexer* as a *property* that gives get and set access to *multiple data members* of the class. You select which of the many possible data members by supplying an index, which itself can be of any type—not just numeric.

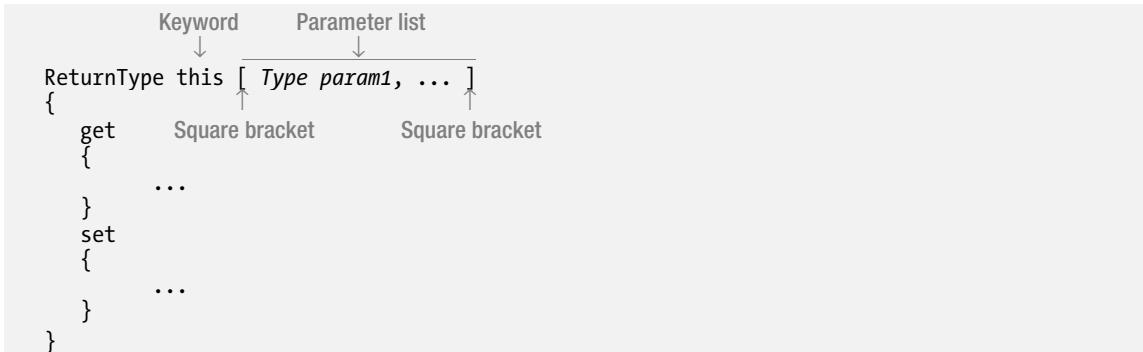
Some additional points you should know when working with indexers are the following:

- Like a property, an indexer can have either one or both of the accessors.
- Indexers are always instance members; hence, an indexer cannot be declared `static`.
- Like properties, the code implementing the get and set accessors does not have to be associated with any fields or properties. The code can do anything, or nothing, as long as the get accessor returns some value of the specified type.

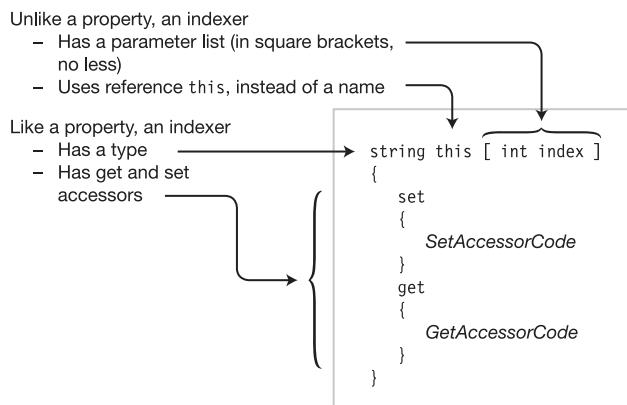
## Declaring an Indexer

The syntax for declaring an indexer is shown next. Notice the following about indexers:

- An indexer *does not have a name*. In place of the name is the keyword `this`.
- The parameter list is between *square* brackets.
- There must be at least one parameter declaration in the parameter list.



Declaring an indexer is similar to declaring a property. Figure 6-17 shows the syntactic similarities and differences.



**Figure 6-17.** Comparing an indexer declaration to a property declaration

## The Indexer set Accessor

When the indexer is the target of an assignment, the `set` accessor is called and receives two items of data, as follows:

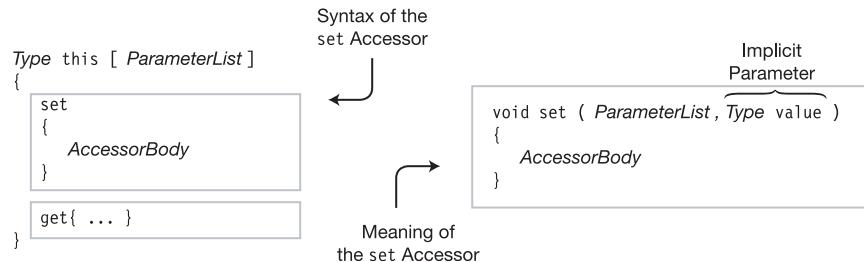
- An implicit parameter, named `value`, which holds the data to be stored
- One or more index parameters that represent where it should be stored

```
emp[0] = "Doe";
      ↑   ↑
Index   Value
Parameter
```

Your code in the `set` accessor must examine the index parameters, determine where the data should be stored, and then store it.

Figure 6-18 shows the syntax and meaning of the `set` accessor. The left side of the figure shows the actual syntax of the accessor declaration. The right side shows the semantics of the accessor if it were written using the syntax of a normal method. The figure on the right shows that the `set` accessor has the following semantics:

- It has a `void` return type.
- It uses the same parameter list as that in the indexer declaration.
- It has an implicit value parameter named `value`, of the same type as the indexer.



**Figure 6-18.** The syntax and meaning of the `set` accessor declaration

## The Indexer get Accessor

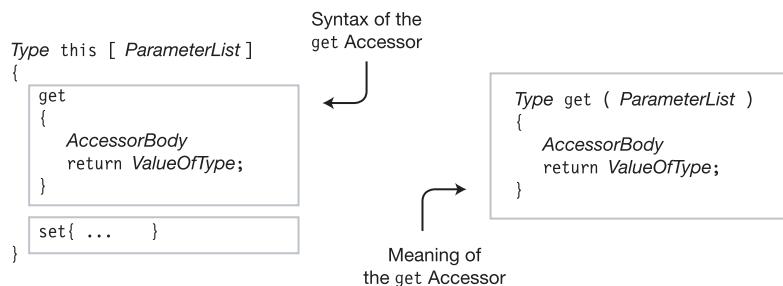
When the indexer is used to retrieve a value, the get accessor is called with one or more index parameters. The index parameters represent which value to retrieve.

```
string s = emp[0];
          ↑
    Index parameter
```

The code in the get accessor body must examine the index parameters, determine which field they represent, and return the value of that field.

Figure 6-19 shows the syntax and meaning of the get accessor. The left side of the figure shows the actual syntax of the accessor declaration. The right side shows the semantics of the accessor if it were written using the syntax of a normal method. The semantics of the get accessor are as follows:

- It has the same parameter list as in the indexer declaration.
- It returns a value of the same type as the indexer.



**Figure 6-19.** The syntax and meaning of the get accessor declaration

## More About Indexers

As with properties, the get and set accessors cannot be called explicitly. Instead, the get accessor is called automatically when the indexer is used in an expression for a value. The set accessor is called automatically when the indexer is assigned a value with the assignment statement.

When an indexer is “called,” the parameters are supplied between the square brackets.

```
Index   Value
↓     ↓
emp[0] = "Doe";
string NewName = emp[0];
          ↑
    Index
```

// Calls set accessor  
// Calls get accessor

## Declaring the Indexer for the Employee Example

The following code declares an indexer for the earlier example: class Employee.

- The indexer must read and write values of type `string`—so `string` must be declared as the indexer's type. It must be declared `public` so that it can be accessed from outside the class.
- The three fields in the example have been arbitrarily indexed as integers 0 through 2, so the formal parameter between the square brackets, named `index` in this case, must be of type `int`.
- In the body of the set accessor, the code determines which field the index refers to and assigns the value of implicit variable `value` to it. In the body of the get accessor, the code determines which field the index refers to and returns that field's value.

```
class Employee
{
    public string LastName;                      // Call this field 0.
    public string FirstName;                     // Call this field 1.
    public string CityOfBirth;                   // Call this field 2.

    public string this[int index]                // Indexer declaration
    {
        set                                     // Set accessor declaration
        {
            switch (index)
            {
                case 0: LastName = value;
                break;
                case 1: FirstName = value;
                break;
                case 2: CityOfBirth = value;
                break;

                default:                         // (Exceptions in Ch. 11)
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException("index");
            }
        }

        get                                     // Get accessor declaration
        {
            switch (index)
            {
                case 0: return LastName;
                case 1: return FirstName;
                case 2: return CityOfBirth;

                default:                         // (Exceptions in Ch. 11)
                    throw new ArgumentOutOfRangeException("index");
            }
        }
    }
}
```

## Another Indexer Example

The following is an additional example that indexes the two int fields of class Class1:

```
class Class1
{
    int Temp0;                      // Private field
    int Temp1;                      // Private field
    public int this [ int index ]    // The indexer
    {
        get
        {
            return ( 0 == index )     // Return value of either Temp0 or Temp1
                ? Temp0
                : Temp1;
        }

        set
        {
            if( 0 == index )        // Note the implicit variable "value".
                Temp0 = value;
            else                    // Note the implicit variable "value".
                Temp1 = value;
        }
    }

    class Example
    {
        static void Main()
        {
            Class1 a = new Class1();

            Console.WriteLine("Values -- T0: {0}, T1: {1}", a[0], a[1]);
            a[0] = 15;
            a[1] = 20;
            Console.WriteLine("Values -- T0: {0}, T1: {1}", a[0], a[1]);
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Values -- T0: 0, T1: 0
Values -- T0: 15, T1: 20
```

---

## Indexer Overloading

A class can have any number of indexers, as long as the parameter lists are different; it isn't sufficient for the indexer *type* to be different. This is called *indexer overloading*, because all the indexers have the same "name"—the `this` access reference.

For example, the following class has three indexers: two of type `string` and one of type `int`. Of the two indexers of type `string`, one has a single `int` parameter, and the other has two `int` parameters.

```
class MyClass
{
    public string this [ int index ]
    {
        get { ... }
        set { ... }
    }

    public string this [ int index1, int index2 ]
    {
        get { ... }
        set { ... }
    }

    public int this [ float index1 ]
    {
        get { ... }
        set { ... }
    }

    ...
}
```

---

■ **Note** Remember that the overloaded indexers of a class must have different parameter lists.

---

## Access Modifiers on Accessors

In this chapter, you've seen two types of function members that have get and set accessors: properties and indexers. By default, both a member's accessors have the same access level as the member itself. That is, if a property has an access level of public, then both its accessors have that same access level. The same is true of indexers.

You can, however, assign different access levels to the two accessors. For example, the following code shows a common and important paradigm of declaring a private set accessor and a public get accessor. The get is public because the access level of the property is public.

Notice in this code that although the property can be read from outside the class, it can only be set from inside the class itself, in this case by the constructor. This is an important tool for encapsulation.

```
class Person
{
    public string Name { get; private set; }
    public Person( string name )
    {
        Name = name;
    }
}

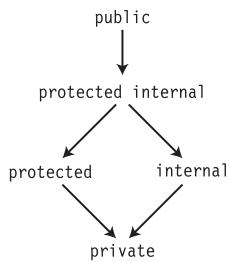
class Program
{
    static public void Main( )
    {
        Person p = new Person( "Capt. Ernest Evans" );
        Console.WriteLine( "Person's name is {0}", p.Name );
    }
}
```

There are several restrictions on the access modifiers of accessors. The most important ones are the following:

- An accessor can have an access modifier only if the member (property or indexer) has both a get accessor and a set accessor.
- Although both accessors must be present, only one of them can have an access modifier.
- The access modifier of the accessor must be *strictly more restrictive* than the access level of the member.

Figure 6-20 shows the hierarchy of access levels. The access level of an accessor must be strictly lower in the chart than the access level of the member.

For example, if a property has an access level of public, you can give any of the four lower access levels on the chart to one of the accessors. But if the property has an access level of protected, the only access modifier you can use on one of the accessors is private.



**Figure 6-20.** Hierarchy of strictly restrictive accessor levels

## Partial Classes and Partial Types

The declaration of a class can be partitioned among several partial class declarations.

- Each of the partial class declarations contains the declarations of some of the class members.
- The partial class declarations of a class can be in the same file or in different files.

Each partial declaration must be labeled as `partial` class, in contrast to the single keyword `class`. The declaration of a partial class looks the same as the declaration of a normal class, other than the addition of the type modifier `partial`.

```

Type modifier
↓
partial class MyPartClass // Same class name as following
{
    member1 declaration
    member2 declaration
    ...
}

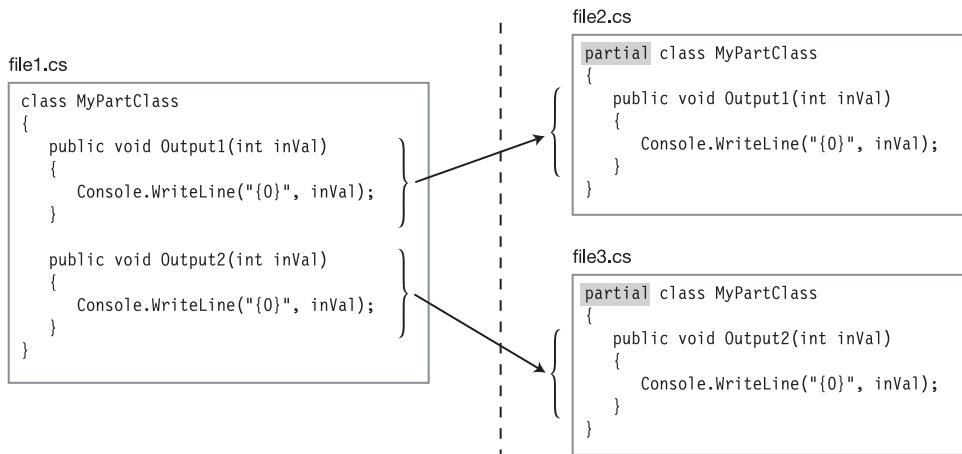
Type modifier
↓
partial class MyPartClass // Same class name as preceding
{
    member3 declaration
    member4 declaration
    ...
}
  
```

---

**Note** The type modifier `partial` is not a keyword, so in other contexts you can use it as an identifier in your program. But when used immediately before the keywords `class`, `struct`, or `interface`, it signals the use of a partial type.

---

For example, the box on the left of Figure 6-21 represents a file with a class declaration. The boxes on the right of the figure represent that same class declaration split into two files.



**Figure 6-21.** Class split using partial types

All the partial class declarations comprising a class must be compiled together. A class using partial class declarations has the same meaning as if all the class members were declared within a single class declaration body.

Visual Studio uses this feature in its standard Windows program templates. When you create an ASP.NET project or a Windows Forms project from the standard templates, the templates create two class files for each web page or form:

- One file contains the partial class containing the code generated by Visual Studio, declaring the components on the page. You shouldn't modify the partial class in this file, since it's regenerated by the Visual Studio when you modify the components on the page.
- The other file contains the partial class you use to implement the look and behavior of the components of the page or form.

Besides partial classes, you can also create two other partial types, which are the following:

- Partial structs. (Structs are covered in Chapter 12.)
- Partial interfaces. (Interfaces are covered in Chapter 17.)

## Partial Methods

Partial methods are methods that are declared in two parts of a partial class. The two parts of the partial method can be declared in different parts of the partial class or in the same part. The two parts of the partial method are the following:

- The *defining partial method declaration*:
  - Gives the signature and return type.
  - The implementation part of the declaration consists of only a semicolon.
- The *implementing partial method declaration*:
  - Gives the signature and return type.
  - The implementation is in the normal format, which, as you know, is a statement block.

The important things to know about partial methods are the following:

- Both the defining and implementing declaration must match in signature and return type. The signature and return type have the following characteristics:
  - The contextual keyword `partial` must be included in both the defining and implementing declarations immediately before the keyword `void`.
  - The signature cannot include access modifiers, *making partial methods implicitly private*.
  - The return type must be `void`.
  - The parameter list cannot contain out parameters.
- You can have a defining partial method without an implementing partial method. In this case, the compiler removes the declaration and any calls to the method made inside the class. If, however, the class has an implementing partial method, it must also have a defining partial method.

The following code shows an example of a partial method called PrintSum.

- PrintSum is declared in different parts of partial class MyClass: the defining declaration in the first part and the implementing declaration in the second part. The implementation prints out the sum of its two integer parameters.
- Since partial methods are implicitly private, PrintSum cannot be called from outside the class. Method Add is a public method that calls PrintSum.
- Main creates an object of class MyClass and calls public method Add, which calls method PrintSum, which prints out the sum of the input parameters.

```

partial class MyClass
{
    Must be void
    ↓
    partial void PrintSum(int x, int y); // Defining partial method
    ↑
    Contextual keyword           No implementation

    public void Add(int x, int y)
    {
        PrintSum(x, y);
    }
}

partial class MyClass
{
    partial void PrintSum(int x, int y) // Implementing partial method
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Sum is {0}", x + y); ← Implementation
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        var mc = new MyClass();
        mc.Add(5, 6);
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---



---

Sum is 11

---



---



# Classes and Inheritance

- Class Inheritance
- Accessing the Inherited Members
- Hiding Members of a Base Class
- Base Access
- Using References to a Base Class
- Constructor Execution
- Inheritance Between Assemblies
- Member Access Modifiers
- Abstract Members
- Abstract Classes
- Sealed Classes
- External Methods

# Class Inheritance

Inheritance allows you to define a new class that incorporates and extends an already declared class.

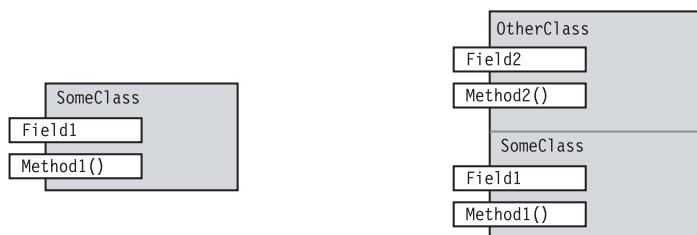
- You can use an existing class, called the *base class*, as the basis for a new class, called the *derived class*. The members of the derived class consist of the following:
  - The members in its own declaration
  - The members of the base class
- To declare a derived class, you add a *class-base specification* after the class name. The class-base specification consists of a colon, followed by the name of the class to be used as the base class. The derived class is said to *directly inherit* from the base class listed.
- A derived class is said to *extend* its base class, because it includes the members of the base class plus any additional functionality provided in its own declaration.
- A derived class *cannot delete* any of the members it has inherited.

For example, the following shows the declaration of a class called `OtherClass`, which is derived from a class called `SomeClass`:

```

  Class-base specification
  ↓
class OtherClass : SomeClass
{
    ↑   ↑
    ... Colon Base class
}
```

Figure 7-1 shows an instance of each of the classes. Class `SomeClass`, on the left, has one field and one method. Class `OtherClass`, on the right, is derived from `SomeClass` and contains an additional field and an additional method.



**Figure 7-1.** Base class and derived class

## Accessing the Inherited Members

Inherited members are accessed just as if they had been declared in the derived class itself. (Inherited constructors are a bit different—I'll cover them later in the chapter.) For example, the following code declares classes `SomeClass` and `OtherClass`, which were shown in Figure 7-1. The code shows that all four members of `OtherClass` can be seamlessly accessed, regardless of whether they're declared in the base class or the derived class.

- `Main` creates an object of derived class `OtherClass`.
- The next two lines in `Main` call `Method1` in the *base class*, using `Field1` from the base class and then `Field2` from the derived class.
- The subsequent two lines in `Main` call `Method2` in the *derived class*, again using `Field1` from the base class and then `Field2` from the derived class.

```
class SomeClass          // Base class
{
    public string Field1 = "base class field ";
    public void Method1( string value ) {
        Console.WriteLine("Base class -- Method1: {0}", value);
    }
}

class OtherClass: SomeClass      // Derived class
{
    public string Field2 = "derived class field";
    public void Method2( string value ) {
        Console.WriteLine("Derived class -- Method2: {0}", value);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main() {
        OtherClass oc = new OtherClass();

        oc.Method1( oc.Field1 );      // Base method with base field
        oc.Method1( oc.Field2 );      // Base method with derived field
        oc.Method2( oc.Field1 );      // Derived method with base field
        oc.Method2( oc.Field2 );      // Derived method with derived field
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Base class -- Method1: base class field
Base class -- Method1: derived class field
Derived class -- Method2: base class field
Derived class -- Method2: derived class field
```

---

## All Classes Are Derived from Class object

*All* classes, except special class `object`, are derived classes, even if they don't have a class-base specification. `Class object` is the only class that is not derived, since it is the base of the inheritance hierarchy.

Classes without a class-base specification are implicitly derived directly from `class object`. Leaving off the class-base specification is just shorthand for specifying that `object` is the base class. The two forms are semantically equivalent, as shown in Figure 7-2.

```
class SomeClass
{
    ...
}
```

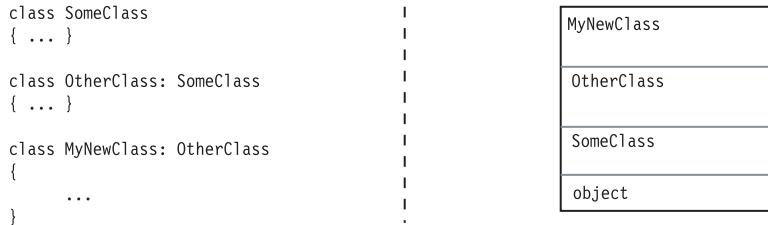
```
class SomeClass : object
{
    ...
}
```

**Figure 7-2.** The class declaration on the left implicitly derives from `class object`, while the one on the right explicitly derives from `object`. The two forms are semantically equivalent.

Other important facts about class derivation are the following:

- A class declaration can have only a single class listed in its class-base specification. This is called *single inheritance*.
- Although a class can directly inherit from only a single base class, there is no limit to the *level* of derivation. That is, the class listed as the base class might be derived from another class, which is derived from another class, and so forth, until you eventually reach `object`.

*Base class* and *derived class* are relative terms. All classes are derived classes, either from `object` or from another class—so generally when we call a class a derived class, we mean that it is immediately derived from some class other than `object`. Figure 7-3 shows a simple class hierarchy. After this, I won't show `object` in the figures, since all classes are ultimately derived from it.



**Figure 7-3.** A class hierarchy

## Hiding Members of a Base Class

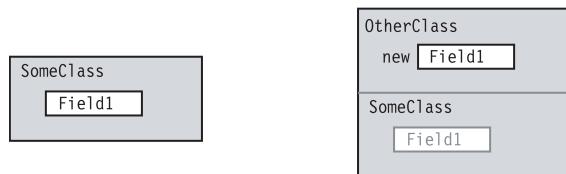
Although a derived class cannot delete any of the members it has inherited, it can hide them.

- To hide an inherited data member, declare a new member of the same type and with the same *name*.
- You can *hide*, or *mask*, an inherited function member by declaring in the derived class a new function member with the same signature. Remember that the *signature* consists of the name and parameter list but does not include the return type.
- To let the compiler know that you are purposely hiding an inherited member, use the `new` modifier. Without it, the program will compile successfully, but the compiler will warn you that you are hiding an inherited member.
- You can also hide static members.

The following code declares a base class and a derived class, each with a `string` member called `Field1`. The keyword `new` is used to explicitly tell the compiler to mask the base class member. Figure 7-4 illustrates an instance of each class.

```
class SomeClass           // Base class
{
    public string Field1;
    ...
}

class OtherClass : SomeClass // Derived class
{
    new public string Field1; // Mask base member with same name
    ↑
    Keyword
```



**Figure 7-4.** Hiding a member of a base class

In the following code, `OtherClass` derives from `SomeClass` but hides both its inherited members. Note the use of the `new` modifier. The code is illustrated in Figure 7-5.

```
class SomeClass // Base class
{
    public string Field1 = "SomeClass Field1";
    public void Method1(string value)
        { Console.WriteLine("SomeClass.Method1: {0}", value); }
}

class OtherClass : SomeClass // Derived class
{ Keyword
    ↓
    new public string Field1 = "OtherClass Field1"; // Mask the base member.
    new public void Method1(string value)           // Mask the base member.
    ↑ { Console.WriteLine("OtherClass.Method1: {0}", value); }
} Keyword

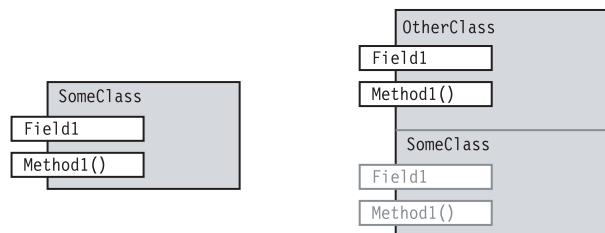
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        OtherClass oc = new OtherClass();          // Use the masking member.
        oc.Method1(oc.Field1);                     // Use the masking member.
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

OtherClass.Method1: OtherClass Field1

---



**Figure 7-5.** Hiding a field and a method of the base class

## Base Access

If your derived class absolutely must access a hidden inherited member, you can access it by using a *base access* expression. This expression consists of the keyword `base`, followed immediately by a period and the name of the member, as shown here:

```
Console.WriteLine("{0}", base.Field1);
    ^
    Base access
```

For example, in the following code, derived class `OtherClass` hides `Field1` in its base class but accesses it by using a base access expression.

```
class SomeClass {                                // Base class
    public string Field1 = "Field1 -- In the base class";
}

class OtherClass : SomeClass {                  // Derived class

    new public string Field1 = "Field1 -- In the derived class";
    ^
    ↑
    Hides the field in the base class
    public void PrintField1()
    {
        Console.WriteLine(Field1);           // Access the derived class.
        Console.WriteLine(base.Field1);       // Access the base class.
    }
}                                              Base access

class Program {
    static void Main()
    {
        OtherClass oc = new OtherClass();
        oc.PrintField1();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Field1 -- In the derived class
Field1 -- In the base class
```

---

If you use this feature frequently, you might want to reevaluate the design of your classes. Generally there are more elegant designs, but the feature is there if there's a situation where nothing else will do.

## Using References to a Base Class

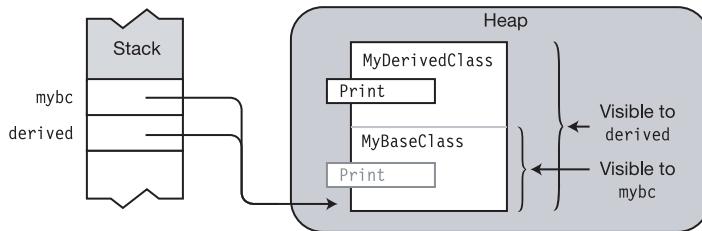
An instance of a derived class consists of an instance of the base class, plus the additional members of the derived class. A reference to the derived class points to the whole class object, including the base class part.

If you have a reference to a derived class object, you can get a reference to just the base class part of the object by *casting* the reference to the type of the base class by using the *cast operator*. The cast operator is placed in front of the object reference and consists of a set of parentheses containing the name of the class being cast to. Casting is covered in detail in Chapter 18.

The next few sections cover accessing an object by using a reference to the base class part of the object. We'll start by looking at the two lines of code that follow, which declare references to objects. Figure 7-6 illustrates the code and shows the parts of the object seen by the different variables.

- The first line declares and initializes variable `derived`, which then contains a reference to an object of type `MyDerivedClass`.
- The second line declares a variable of the base class type, `MyBaseClass`, and casts the reference in `derived` to that type, giving a reference to the base class part of the object.
  - The reference to the base class part is stored in variable `mybc`, on the left side of the assignment operator.
  - The reference to the base class part cannot “see” the rest of the derived class object, because it's “looking” at it through a reference to the base type.

```
MyDerivedClass derived = new MyDerivedClass();           // Create an object.
MyBaseClass mybc          = (MyBaseClass) derived;       // Cast the reference.
```



**Figure 7-6.** Reference `derived` can see the entire `MyDerivedClass` object, while `mybc` can only see the `MyBaseClass` part of the object.

The following code shows the declaration and use of these two classes. Figure 7-7 illustrates the object and references in memory.

Main creates an object of type MyDerivedClass and stores its reference in variable derived. Main also creates a variable of type MyBaseClass and uses it to store a reference to the base class portion of the object. When the Print method is called on each reference, the call invokes the implementation of the method that the reference can see, producing different output strings.

```

class MyBaseClass
{
    public void Print()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This is the base class.");
    }
}

class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass
{
    new public void Print()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This is the derived class.");
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyDerivedClass derived = new MyDerivedClass();
        MyBaseClass mybc = (MyBaseClass)derived;
        ↑
        Cast to base class
        derived.Print();           // Call Print from derived portion.
        mybc.Print();             // Call Print from base portion.
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

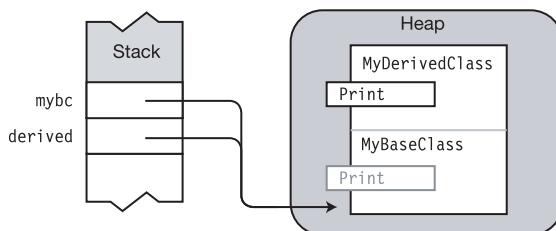
---

```

This is the derived class.
This is the base class.

```

---



**Figure 7-7.** A reference to the derived class and the base class

## Virtual and Override Methods

In the previous section, you saw that when you access an object of a derived class by using a reference to the base class, you get the members from the base class. *Virtual methods* allow a reference to the base class to access “up into” the derived class.

You can use a reference to a base class to call a method in the *derived class*, if the following are true:

- The method in the derived class and the method in the base class each have the same signature and return type.
- The method in the base class is labeled *virtual*.
- The method in the derived class is labeled *override*.

For example, the following code shows the *virtual* and *override* modifiers on the methods in the base class and derived class:

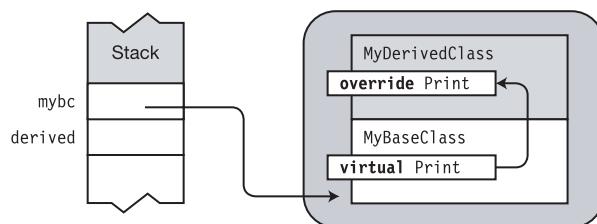
```
class MyBaseClass // Base class
{
    virtual public void Print()
    ↑

    ...
}

class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass // Derived class
{
    override public void Print()
    ↑
}
```

Figure 7-8 illustrates this set of *virtual* and *override* methods. Notice how the behavior differs from the previous case, where I used *new* to hide the base class members.

- When the *Print* method is called by using the reference to the base class (*mybc*), the method call is passed up to the derived class and executed, because
  - The method in the base class is marked as *virtual*.
  - There is a matching *override* method in the derived class.
- Figure 7-8 illustrates this by showing the arrow coming out of the back of the *virtual Print* method and pointing at the *override Print* method.



**Figure 7-8.** A *virtual* method and an *override* method

The following code is the same as in the previous section, but this time, the methods are labeled `virtual` and `override`. This produces a result that is very different from that of the previous example. In this version, calling the method through the base class invokes the method in the derived class.

```
class MyBaseClass
{
    virtual public void Print()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This is the base class.");
    }
}

class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass
{
    override public void Print()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This is the derived class.");
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyDerivedClass derived = new MyDerivedClass();
        MyBaseClass mybc      = (MyBaseClass)derived;
        ↑
        derived.Print();      Cast to base class
        mybc.Print();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
This is the derived class.
This is the derived class.
```

---

Other important things to know about the `virtual` and `override` modifiers are the following:

- The overriding and overridden methods must have the same accessibility. In other words, the overridden method cannot be, for example, `private`, and the overriding method `public`.
- You cannot override a method that is `static` or is nonvirtual.
- Methods, properties, and indexers (which I covered in the preceding chapter), and another member type, called *events* (which I'll cover later in the text), can all be declared `virtual` and `override`.

## Overriding a Method Marked `override`

Overriding methods can occur between any levels of inheritance.

- When you use a reference to the base class part of an object to call an overridden method, the method call is passed up the derivation hierarchy for execution to the *most-derived* version of the method marked as `override`.
- If there are other declarations of the method at higher levels of derivation that are not marked as `override`—they are not invoked.

For example, the following code shows three classes that form an inheritance hierarchy: `MyBaseClass`, `MyDerivedClass`, and `SecondDerived`. All three classes contain a method named `Print`, with the same signature. In `MyBaseClass`, `Print` is labeled `virtual`. In `MyDerivedClass`, it's labeled `override`. In class `SecondDerived`, you can declare method `Print` with either `override` or `new`. Let's look at what happens in each case.

```
class MyBaseClass                                // Base class
{
    virtual public void Print()
    { Console.WriteLine("This is the base class."); }

class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass               // Derived class
{
    override public void Print()
    { Console.WriteLine("This is the derived class."); }

class SecondDerived : MyDerivedClass            // Most-derived class
{
    ... // Given in the following pages
}
```

### Case 1: Declaring `Print` with `override`

If you declare the `Print` method of `SecondDerived` as `override`, then it will override *both the less-derived versions* of the method, as shown in Figure 7-9. If a reference to the base class is used to call `Print`, it gets passed all the way up the chain to the implementation in class `SecondDerived`.

The following code implements this case. Notice the code in the last two lines of method Main.

- The first of the two statements calls the Print method by using a reference to the most-derived class—SecondDerived. This is not calling through a reference to the base class portion, so it will call the method implemented in SecondDerived.
- The second statement, however, calls the Print method by using a reference to the base class—MyBaseClass.

```
class SecondDerived : MyDerivedClass
{
    override public void Print()
        ↑   Console.WriteLine("This is the second derived class.");
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        SecondDerived derived = new SecondDerived(); // Use SecondDerived.
        MyBaseClass mybc = (MyBaseClass)derived;      // Use MyBaseClass.

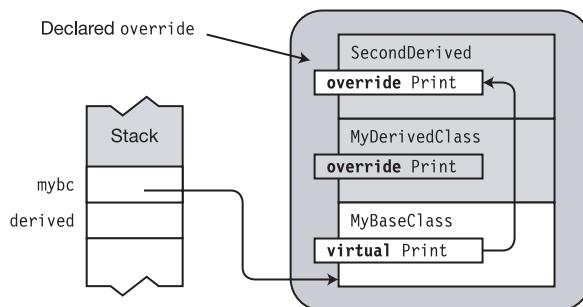
        derived.Print();
        mybc.Print();
    }
}
```

The result is that regardless of whether Print is called through the derived class or the base class, the method in the most-derived class is called. When called through the base class, it's passed up the inheritance hierarchy. This code produces the following output:

---

```
This is the second derived class.  
This is the second derived class.
```

---



**Figure 7-9.** Execution is passed to the top of the chain of multiple levels of override.

## Case 2: Declaring Print with new

If instead you declare the Print method of SecondDerived as new, the result is as shown in Figure 7-10. Main is the same as in the previous case.

```
class SecondDerived : MyDerivedClass
{
    new public void Print()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("This is the second derived class.");
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main() // Main
    {
        SecondDerived derived = new SecondDerived(); // Use SecondDerived.
        MyBaseClass mybc = (MyBaseClass)derived; // Use MyBaseClass.

        derived.Print();
        mybc.Print();
    }
}
```

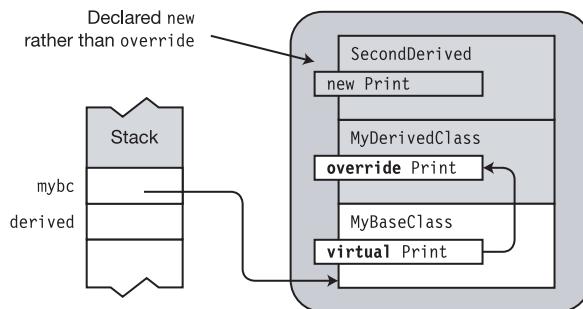
The result is that when method Print is called through the reference to SecondDerived, the method in SecondDerived is executed, as you would expect. When the method is called through a reference to MyBaseClass, however, the method call is passed up only one level, to class MyDerived, where it is executed. The only difference between the two cases is whether the method in SecondDerived is declared with modifier `override` or modifier `new`.

This code produces the following output:

---

```
This is the second derived class.  
This is the derived class.
```

---



**Figure 7-10.** Hiding the overridden methods

## Overriding Other Member Types

In the previous few sections, you've seen how the `virtual/override` designations work on methods. These work exactly the same way with properties, events, and indexers. For example, the following code shows a read-only property named `MyProperty` using `virtual/override`.

```
class MyBaseClass
{
    private int _myInt = 5;
    virtual public int MyProperty
    {
        get { return _myInt; }
    }
}

class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass
{
    private int _myInt = 10;
    override public int MyProperty
    {
        get { return _myInt; }
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyDerivedClass derived = new MyDerivedClass();
        MyBaseClass mybc      = (MyBaseClass)derived;

        Console.WriteLine( derived.MyProperty );
        Console.WriteLine( mybc.MyProperty );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
10
10
```

---

## Constructor Execution

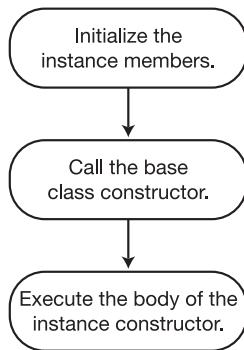
In the preceding chapter, you saw that a constructor executes code that prepares a class for use. This includes initializing both the static and instance members of the class. In this chapter, you saw that part of a derived class object is an object of the base class.

- To create the base class part of an object, a constructor for the base class is implicitly called as part of the process of creating the instance.
- Each class in the inheritance hierarchy chain executes its base class constructor before it executes its own constructor body.

For example, the following code shows a declaration of class `MyDerivedClass` and its constructor. When the constructor is called, it calls the parameterless constructor `MyBaseClass()` before executing its own body.

```
class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass
{
    MyDerivedClass()           // Constructor uses base constructor MyBaseClass().
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

Figure 7-11 shows the order of construction. When an instance is being created, one of the first things that is done is the initialization of all the instance members of the object. After that, the base class constructor is called. Only then is the body of the constructor of the class itself executed.



**Figure 7-11.** Order of object construction

For example, in the following code, the values of `MyField1` and `MyField2` would be set to 5 and 0, respectively, before the base class constructor is called.

```
class MyDerivedClass : MyBaseClass
{
    int MyField1 = 5;                      // 1. Member initialized
    int MyField2;                         // Member initialized

    public MyDerivedClass()                // 3. Body of constructor executed
    {
        ...
    }
}

class MyBaseClass
{
    public MyBaseClass()                  // 2. Base class constructor called
    {
        ...
    }
}
```

---

■ **Caution** Calling a virtual method in a constructor is *strongly discouraged*. The virtual method in the base class would call the override method in the derived class while the base class constructor is being executed. But that would be before the derived constructor's body is executed. It would, therefore, be calling up into the derived class before the class is completely initialized.

---

## Constructor Initializers

By default, the parameterless constructor of the base class is called when an object is being constructed. But constructors can be overloaded, so a base class might have more than one. If you want your derived class to use a specific base class constructor other than the parameterless constructor, you must specify it in a *constructor initializer*.

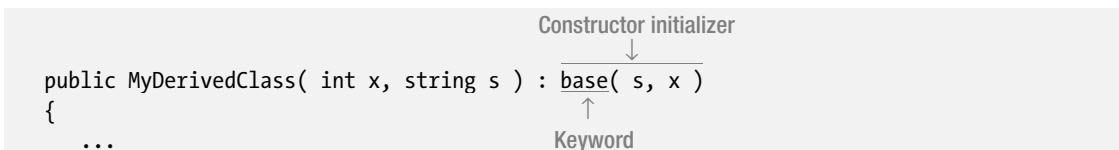
There are two forms of constructor initializer:

- The first form uses the keyword `base` and specifies which base class constructor to use.
- The second form uses the keyword `this` and specifies which other constructor from this class should be used.

A base class constructor initializer is placed after a colon following the parameter list in a class's constructor declaration. The constructor initializer consists of the keyword `base` and the parameter list of the base constructor to call.

For example, the following code shows a constructor for class `MyDerivedClass`.

- The constructor initializer specifies that the construction process should call the base class constructor with two parameters, where the first parameter is a `string` and the second parameter is an `int`.
- The parameters in the base parameter list must match the *intended base constructor's* parameter list, in type and order.



When you declare a constructor without a constructor initializer, it's a shortcut for the form with a constructor initializer consisting of `base()`, as illustrated in Figure 7-12. The two forms are semantically equivalent.

<pre> class MyDerived: MyBase {     MyDerived()     {         ...     }     ... }   </pre> <p>Constructor implicitly uses base constructor <code>MyBase()</code>.</p>	<pre> class MyDerived: MyBase {     MyDerived() : <u>base()</u>     {         ...     }     ... }   </pre> <p>Constructor explicitly uses base constructor <code>MyBase()</code>.</p>
---	---

**Figure 7-12.** Equivalent forms of a constructor

The other form of constructor initializer instructs the construction process (actually, the compiler) to use a different constructor from the same class. For example, the following shows a constructor with a single parameter for class `MyClass`. That single-parameter constructor, however, uses a constructor from the same class, but with two parameters, supplying a default parameter as the second one.

```
Constructor initializer  
↓  
public MyClass(int x): this(x, "Using Default String")  
{  
    ...  
}  
          ↑  
          Keyword
```

Another situation where this comes in particularly handy is where you have several constructors for a class, and they have common code that should always be performed at the beginning of the object construction process. In this case, you can factor out that common code and place it in a constructor that is used as a constructor initializer by all the other constructors. As a matter of fact, this is a suggested practice since it reduces code duplication.

You might think that you could just declare another method that performs those common initializations and have all the constructors call that method. This isn't as good for several reasons. The first is that the compiler can optimize certain things when it knows a method is a constructor. The second is that there are some things that can be done only in a constructor and not elsewhere. For example, in the previous chapter you learned that `readonly` fields can be initialized only inside a constructor. You will get a compiler error if you attempt to initialize a `readonly` field in any other method, even if that method is called by a constructor only.

Going back to that common constructor, if it can stand on its own as a valid constructor that initializes everything in the class that needs to be initialized, then it's perfectly fine to leave it as a `public` constructor.

What if, however, it doesn't completely initialize an object? In that case, you mustn't allow that constructor to be callable from outside the class, since it would then create incompletely initialized objects. To avoid that problem, you can declare the constructor `private` instead of `public`, as shown in the following code:

```
class MyClass
{
    readonly int    firstVar;
    readonly double secondVar;

    public string UserName;
    public int UserIdNumber;

    private MyClass( )           // Private constructor performs initializations
    {                           // common to the other constructors.
        firstVar = 20;
        secondVar = 30.5;
    }

    public MyClass( string firstName ) : this() // use constructor initializer
    {
        UserName      = firstName;
        UserIdNumber = -1;
    }

    public MyClass( int idNumber ) : this( )     // use constructor initializer
    {
        UserName      = "Anonymous";
        UserIdNumber = idNumber;
    }
}
```

## Class Access Modifiers

A class can be seen and accessed by other classes in the system. This section explains the accessibility of classes. Although I'll use classes in the explanations and examples since that's what we've covered so far in the text, the accessibility rules also apply to the other types I'll cover later.

The term *visible* is sometimes used for the term *accessible*. They can be used interchangeably. There are two levels of class accessibility: **public** and **internal**.

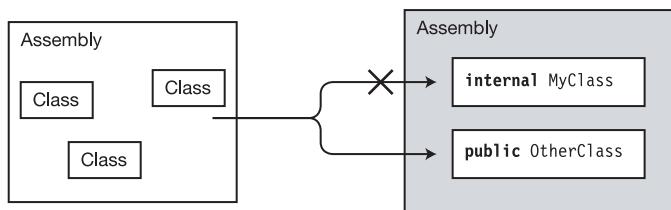
- A class marked **public** can be accessed by code from any assembly in the system. To make a class visible to other assemblies, use the **public** access modifier, as shown here:

```
Keyword
↓
public class MyBaseClass
{ ...
```

- A class marked **internal** can only be seen by classes within its own assembly.
  - This is the default accessibility level, so unless you explicitly specify the modifier **public** in the class declaration, code outside the assembly cannot access the class.
  - You can explicitly declare a class as internal by using the **internal** access modifier.

```
Keyword
↓
internal class MyBaseClass
{ ...
```

Figure 7-13 illustrates the accessibility of internal and public classes from outside the assembly. Class **MyClass** is not visible to the classes in the assembly on the left, because it's marked **internal**. Class **OtherClass**, however, is visible to the classes on the left, because it's marked **public**.



**Figure 7-13.** Classes from other assemblies can access public classes but cannot access internal classes.

## Inheritance Between Assemblies

So far, I've been declaring derived classes in the same assembly that contains the base class. But C# also allows you to derive a class from a base class defined in a different assembly. To do this, the following must be true:

- The base class must be declared `public` so that it can be accessed from outside its assembly.
- You must include a reference in your Visual Studio project to the assembly containing the base class.

To make it easier to refer to the classes and types in the other assembly, without using their fully qualified names, place a `using` directive at the top of the source file, with the namespace containing the classes or types you want to access.

---

**Note** Adding a reference to the other assembly and adding a `using` directive are two separate things. Adding the reference to the other assembly tells the compiler where the required types are defined. Adding the `using` directive allows you to reference other classes without having to use their fully qualified names. Chapter 10 covers this in detail.

---

For example, the following two code segments, from different assemblies, show how easy it is to inherit a class from another assembly. The first code listing creates an assembly that contains the declaration of a class called `MyBaseClass`, which has the following characteristics:

- It's declared in a source file called `Assembly1.cs` and inside a namespace declared as `BaseClassNS`.
- It's declared `public` so that it can be accessed from other assemblies.
- It contains a single member, a method called `PrintMe`, that just writes out a simple message identifying the class.

```
// Source file name Assembly1.cs
using System;
Namespace containing declaration of base class
↓
namespace BaseClassNS
{ Declare the class public so it can be seen outside the assembly.
↓
    public class MyBaseClass {
        public void PrintMe() {
            Console.WriteLine("I am MyBaseClass");
        }
    }
}
```

The second assembly contains the declaration of a class called `DerivedClass`, which inherits from `MyBaseClass`, declared in the first assembly. The source file is named `Assembly2.cs`. Figure 7-14 illustrates the two assemblies.

- `DerivedClass` has an empty body but inherits method `PrintMe` from `MyBaseClass`.
- `Main` creates an object of type `DerivedClass` and calls its inherited method `PrintMe`.

```
// Source file name Assembly2.cs
using System;
using BaseClassNS;
↑
Namespace containing declaration of base class
namespace UsesBaseClass
{
    Base class in other assembly
    ↓
    class DerivedClass: MyBaseClass {
        // Empty body
    }

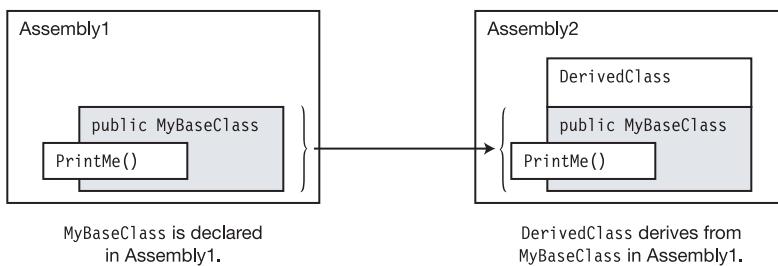
    class Program {
        static void Main( )
        {
            DerivedClass mdc = new DerivedClass();
            mdc.PrintMe();
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

I am MyBaseClass

---



**Figure 7-14.** Inheriting across assemblies

## Member Access Modifiers

The previous two sections explained class accessibility. With class accessibility, there are only two modifiers—internal and public. This section covers *member accessibility*. Class accessibility describes the visibility of a class; member accessibility describes the visibility of the members of a class object.

Each member declared in a class is visible to various parts of the system, depending on the access modifier assigned to it in its class declaration. You've seen that private members are visible only to other members of the same class, while public members can be visible to classes outside the assembly as well. In this section, we'll look again at the public and private access levels, as well as the three other levels of accessibility.

Before looking at the specifics of member accessibility, there are some general things we need to cover first:

- All members explicitly declared in a class's declaration are visible to each other, regardless of their accessibility specification.
- Inherited members are not explicitly declared in a class's declaration, so, as you'll see, inherited members might or might not be visible to members of a derived class.
- There are five member access levels:
  - `public`
  - `private`
  - `protected`
  - `internal`
  - `protected internal`
- You must specify member access levels on a per-member basis. If you don't specify an access level for a member, its implicit access level is `private`.
- A member cannot be more accessible than its class. That is, if a class has an accessibility level limiting it to the assembly, individual members of the class cannot be seen outside the assembly, regardless of their access modifiers, even `public`.

## Regions Accessing a Member

The member access modifiers in a class's declaration specify which other types can and cannot access which members of the class. For example, the following declaration shows members declared with the five access levels.

```
public class MyClass
{
    public      int Member1;
    private     int Member2;
    protected   int Member3;
    internal    int Member4;
    protected internal int Member5;
    ...
}
```

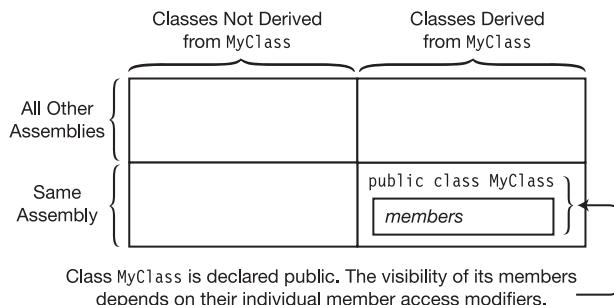
The access levels are based on two characteristics with regard to the class being declared:

- Whether the class is *derived from* the class being declared
- Whether a class is *in the same assembly* as the class being declared

These two characteristics yield four groups, as illustrated in Figure 7-15. In relation to the class being declared, another class can be any of the following:

- In the same assembly and derived from it (bottom right)
- In the same assembly but not derived from it (bottom left)
- In a different assembly and derived from it (top right)
- In a different assembly and not derived from it (top left)

These characteristics are used to define the five access levels.

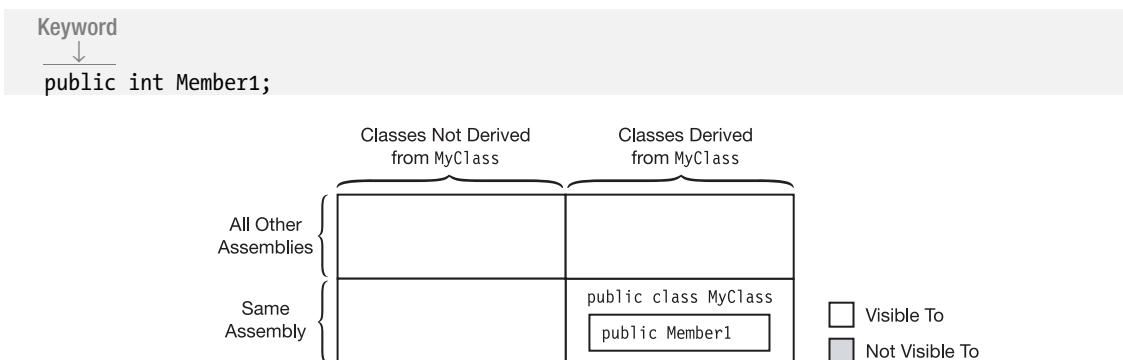


**Figure 7-15.** Areas of accessibility

## Public Member Accessibility

The **public** access level is the least restrictive. All classes both inside and outside the assembly have free access to the member. Figure 7-16 illustrates the accessibility of a public class member of *MyClass*.

To declare a member **public**, use the **public** access modifier, as shown.



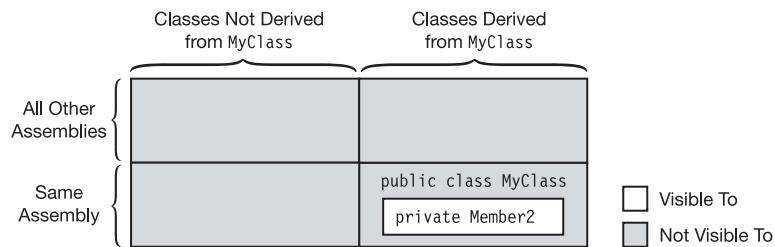
**Figure 7-16.** A *public* member of a *public* class is visible to all classes in the same assembly or other assemblies.

## Private Member Accessibility

The **private** access level is the most restrictive.

- A **private** class member can be accessed only by members of its own class. It cannot be accessed by other classes, including classes that are derived from it.
- A **private** member can, however, be accessed by members of classes nested in its class. *Nested classes* are covered in Chapter 25.

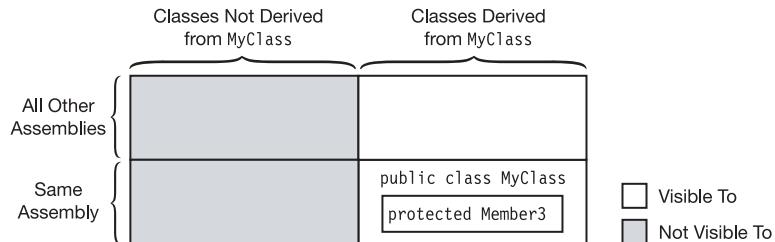
Figure 7-17 illustrates the accessibility of a private member.



**Figure 7-17.** A *private* member of any class is visible only to members of its own class (or nested classes).

## Protected Member Accessibility

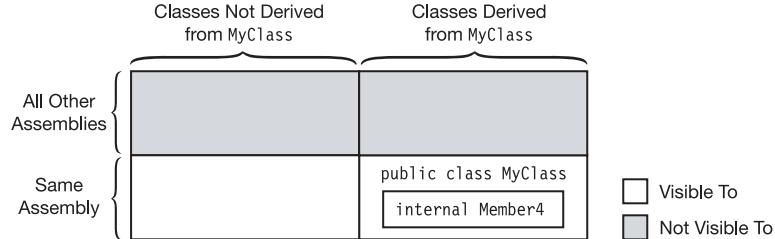
The protected access level is like the private access level, except that it also allows classes derived from the class to access the member. Figure 7-18 illustrates protected accessibility. Notice that even classes outside the assembly that are derived from the class have access to the member.



**Figure 7-18.** A protected member of a public class is visible to members of its own class or classes derived from it. The derived classes can even be in other assemblies.

## Internal Member Accessibility

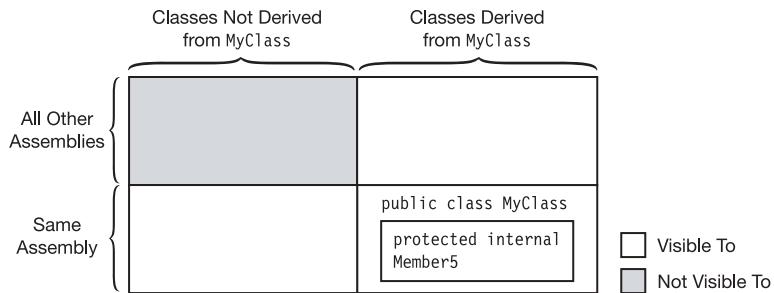
Members marked `internal` are visible to all the classes in the assembly but not to classes outside the assembly, as illustrated in Figure 7-19.



**Figure 7-19.** An internal member of a public class is visible to members of any class in the same assembly but not to classes outside the assembly.

## Protected Internal Member Accessibility

Members marked `protected internal` are visible to all the classes that inherit from the class and also to all classes inside the assembly, as shown in Figure 7-20. Notice that the set of classes allowed access is the combined set of classes allowed by the `protected` modifier plus the set of classes allowed by the `internal` modifier. Notice that this is the *union* of `protected` and `internal`—not the intersection.



**Figure 7-20.** A `protected internal` member of a public class is visible to members of classes in the same assembly or to members of classes derived from that class. It's not visible to classes in other assemblies that are not derived from the class.

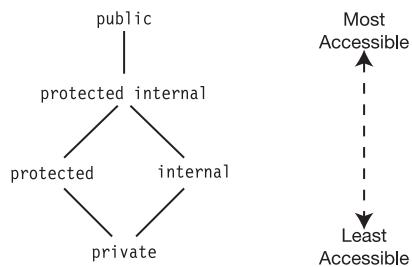
## Summary of Member Access Modifiers

The following two tables summarize the characteristics of the five member access levels. Table 7-1 lists the modifiers and gives an intuitive summary of the effects of the modifier.

**Table 7-1. Member Access Modifiers**

Modifier	Meaning
<code>private</code>	Accessible only within the class
<code>internal</code>	Accessible to all classes within this assembly
<code>protected</code>	Accessible to all classes derived from this class
<code>protected internal</code>	Accessible to all classes that are either derived from this class or declared within this assembly
<code>public</code>	Accessible to any class

Figure 7-21 shows the relative accessibility of the five member access modifiers.



**Figure 7-21.** Relative accessibility of the various member access modifiers

Table 7-2 lists the access modifiers down the left side of the table and the categories of classes across the top. *Derived* refers to classes derived from the class declaring the member. *Nonderived* means classes not derived from the class declaring the member. A check in a cell means that the category of class can access members with the corresponding modifier.

**Table 7-2.** Summary of Member Accessibility

	Classes in Same Assembly		Classes in Different Assembly	
	Non-Derived	Derived	Non-Derived	Derived
private				
internal	✓	✓		
protected		✓		✓
protected internal	✓	✓		✓
public	✓	✓	✓	✓

## Abstract Members

An *abstract member* is a function member that is designed to be overridden. An abstract member has the following characteristics:

- It is marked with the `abstract` modifier.
- It doesn't have an implementation code block. The code blocks of abstract members are represented by semicolons.

For example, the following code from inside a class definition declares two abstract members: an abstract method called `PrintStuff` and an abstract property called `MyProperty`. Notice the semicolons in place of the implementation blocks.

```
Keyword           Semicolon in place of implementation
↓               ↓
abstract public void PrintStuff(string s);  
  
abstract public int MyProperty
{
    get; ← Semicolon in place of implementation
    set; ← Semicolon in place of implementation
}
```

Abstract members can be declared only in *abstract classes*, which we'll look at in the next section. Four type of member can be declared as abstract:

- Methods
- Properties
- Events
- Indexers

Other important facts about abstract members are the following:

- Abstract members, although they must be overridden by a corresponding member in a derived class, cannot use the `virtual` modifier in addition to the `abstract` modifier.
- As with virtual members, the implementation of an abstract member in a derived class must specify the `override` modifier.

Table 7-3 compares and contrasts virtual members and abstract members.

**Table 7-3. Comparing Virtual and Abstract Members**

	Virtual Member	Abstract Member
Keyword	<code>virtual</code>	<code>abstract</code>
Implementation body	Has an implementation body	No implementation body—semicolon instead
Overridden in a derived class	<i>Can</i> be overridden—using <code>override</code>	<i>Must</i> be overridden—using <code>override</code>
Types of members	Methods Properties Events Indexers	Methods Properties Events Indexers

## Abstract Classes

Abstract classes are designed to be inherited from. An *abstract class* can be used only as the base class of another class.

- You cannot create instances of an abstract class.
- An abstract class is declared using the `abstract` modifier.

```
Keyword  
↓  
abstract class MyClass  
{  
    ...  
}
```

- An abstract class can contain abstract members or regular, nonabstract members. The members of an abstract class can be any combination of abstract members and normal members with implementations.
- An abstract class can itself be derived from another abstract class. For example, the following code shows one abstract class derived from another.

```
abstract class AbClass           // Abstract class  
{  
    ...  
}  
  
abstract class MyAbClass : AbClass // Abstract class derived from  
{  
    ...  
}
```

- Any class derived from an abstract class must implement all the abstract members of the class by using the `override` keyword, unless the derived class is itself abstract.

## Example of an Abstract Class and an Abstract Method

The following code shows an abstract class called `AbClass` with two methods.

The first method is a normal method with an implementation that prints out the name of the class. The second method is an abstract method that must be implemented in a derived class. Class `DerivedClass` inherits from `AbClass` and implements and overrides the abstract method. `Main` creates an object of `DerivedClass` and calls its two methods.

```

Keyword
↓
abstract class AbClass                                // Abstract class
{
    public void IdentifyBase()                         // Normal method
    { Console.WriteLine("I am AbClass"); }

    Keyword
↓
    abstract public void IdentifyDerived();           // Abstract method
}

class DerivedClass : AbClass                           // Derived class
{
    Keyword
↓
    override public void IdentifyDerived()           // Implementation of
    { Console.WriteLine("I am DerivedClass"); }       // abstract method
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // AbClass a = new AbClass();          // Error. Cannot instantiate
        // a.IdentifyDerived();                // an abstract class.

        DerivedClass b = new DerivedClass(); // Instantiate the derived class.
        b.IdentifyBase();                  // Call the inherited method.
        b.IdentifyDerived();               // Call the "abstract" method.
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---



---

```
I am AbClass
I am DerivedClass
```

---



---

## Another Example of an Abstract Class

The following code shows the declaration of an abstract class that contains data members as well as function members. Data members cannot be declared as abstract.

```
abstract class MyBase      // Combination of abstract and non-abstract members
{
    public int SideLength      = 10;           // Data member
    const  int TriangleSideCount = 3;          // Data member

    abstract public void PrintStuff( string s ); // Abstract method
    abstract public int MyInt { get; set; }       // Abstract property

    public int PerimeterLength( )                 // Regular, non-abstract method
    { return TriangleSideCount * SideLength; }

class MyClass : MyBase
{
    public override void PrintStuff( string s ) // Override abstract method
    { Console.WriteLine( s ); }

    private int _myInt;
    public override int MyInt                  // Override abstract property
    {
        get { return _myInt; }
        set { _myInt = value; }
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( string[] args )
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        mc.PrintStuff( "This is a string." );
        mc.MyInt = 28;
        Console.WriteLine( mc.MyInt );
        Console.WriteLine( "Perimeter Length: {0}", mc.PerimeterLength() );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
This is a string.
28
Perimeter Length: 30
```

---

## Sealed Classes

In the previous section, you saw that an abstract class must be used as a base class—it cannot be instantiated as a stand-alone class object. The opposite is true of a *sealed class*.

- A sealed class can be instantiated only as a stand-alone class object—it cannot be used as a base class.
- A sealed class is labeled with the `sealed` modifier.

For example, the following class is a sealed class. Any attempt to use it as the base class of another class will produce a compile error.

```
Keyword  
↓  
sealed class MyClass  
{  
    ...  
}
```

## Static Classes

A static class is a class where all the members are static. Static classes are used to group data and functions that are not affected by instance data. A common use of a static class might be to create a math library containing sets of mathematical methods and values.

The important things to know about static classes are the following:

- The class itself must be marked **static**.
- All the members of the class must be static.
- The class can have a static constructor, but it cannot have an instance constructor, since you cannot create an instance of the class.
- Static classes are implicitly sealed. That is, you cannot inherit from a static class.

You access the members of a static class just as you would access any static member, by using the class name and the member name.

The following code shows an example of a static class:

```
Class must be marked static
↓
static public class MyMath
{
    public static float PI = 3.14f;
    public static bool IsOdd(int x)
        ↑ { return x % 2 == 1; }
    Members must be static
    ↓
    public static int Times2(int x)
        { return 2 * x; }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        int val = 3;
        Console.WriteLine("{0} is odd is {1}.", val, MyMath.IsOdd(val));
        Console.WriteLine("{0} * 2 = {1}.", val, MyMath.Times2(val));
    }
}
```

Use class name and member name.  
↓

This code produces the following output:

---



---

```
3 is odd is True.
3 * 2 = 6.
```

---



---

## Extension Methods

So far in this text, every method you've seen has been associated with the class in which it is declared. The *extension method* feature introduced in C# 3.0 extends that boundary, allowing you to write methods associated with classes *other than the class in which they are declared*.

To see how you might use this feature, take a look at the following code. It contains class `MyData`, which stores three values of type `double`, and contains a constructor and a method called `Sum`, which returns the sum of the three stored values.

```
class MyData
{
    private double D1;                                // Fields
    private double D2;
    private double D3;

    public MyData(double d1, double d2, double d3)      // Constructor
    {
        D1 = d1; D2 = d2; D3 = d3;
    }

    public double Sum()                               // Method Sum
    {
        return D1 + D2 + D3;
    }
}
```

This is a pretty limited class, but suppose it would be more useful if it contained another method, which returned the average of the three data points. With what you know so far about classes, there are several ways you might implement the additional functionality:

- If you have the source code and can modify the class, you could, of course, just add the new method to the class.
- If, however, you can't modify the class—for example, if the class is in a third-party class library—then, as long as it isn't sealed, you could use it as a base class and implement the additional method in a class derived from it.

If, however, you don't have access to the code or the class is sealed or there is some other design reason that neither of these solutions will work, then you will have to write a method in another class that uses the publicly available members of the class.

For example, you might write a class like the one in the following code. The code contains a static class called ExtendMyData, which contains a static method called Average, which implements the additional functionality. Notice that the method takes an instance of MyData as a parameter.

```
static class ExtendMyData { Instance of MyData class
{
    public static double Average( MyData md ) ↓
    {
        return md.Sum() / 3;
    } ↑
} Use the instance of MyData.
```

```
class Program { static void Main() { MyData md = new MyData(3, 4, 5); Instance of MyData ↓ Console.WriteLine("Average: {0}", ExtendMyData.Average(md)); ↑ } } Call the static method.
```

This code produces the following output:

---



---

Average: 4

---



---

Although this is a perfectly fine solution, it would be more elegant if you could call the method on the class instance itself, rather than creating an instance of another class to act on it. The following two lines of code illustrate the difference. The first uses the method just shown—invoking a static method on an instance of another class. The second shows the form we would like to use—invoking an instance method on the object itself.

ExtendMyData.Average( md )	// Static invocation form
md.Average();	// Instance invocation form

Extension methods allow you to use the second form, even though the first form would be the normal way of writing the invocation.

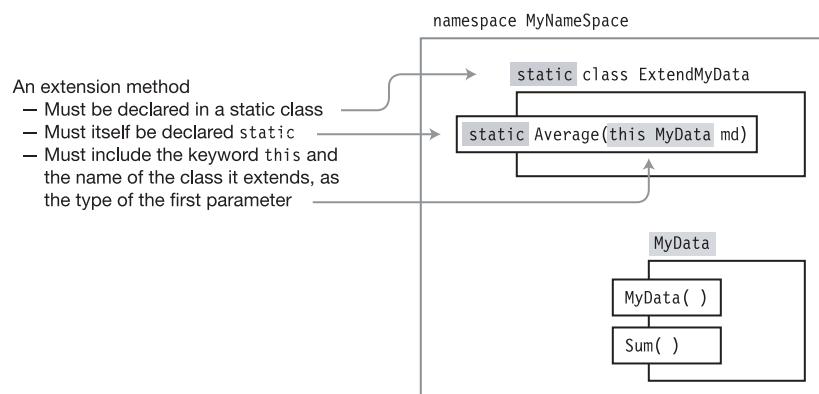
By making a small change in the declaration of method Average, you can use the instance invocation form. The change you need to make is to add the keyword this before the type name in the parameter declaration as shown following. Adding the this keyword to the first parameter of the static method of the static class changes it from a regular method of class ExtendMyData into an *extension method* of class MyData. You can now use both invocation forms.

```
Must be a static class
↓
static class ExtendMyData
{ Must be public and static      Keyword and type
  ↓
  public static double Average( this MyData md )
  {
    ...
  }
}
```

The important requirements for an extension method are the following:

- The class in which the extension method is declared must also be declared **static**.
- The extension method itself must be declared **static**.
- The extension method must contain as its first parameter type the keyword **this**, followed by the name of the class it is extending.

Figure 7-22 illustrates the structure of an extension method.



**Figure 7-22.** The structure of an extension method

The following code shows a full program, including class `MyData` and extension method `Average` declared in class `ExtendMyData`. Notice that method `Average` is invoked exactly as if it were an *instance member* of `MyData`! Figure 7-22 illustrates the code. Classes `MyData` and `ExtendMyData` together act like the desired class, with three methods.

```
namespace ExtensionMethods
{
    sealed class MyData
    {
        private double D1, D2, D3;
        public MyData(double d1, double d2, double d3)
        { D1 = d1; D2 = d2; D3 = d3; }

        public double Sum() { return D1 + D2 + D3; }
    }

    static class ExtendMyData      Keyword and type
    {
        public static double Average(this MyData md)      ↓
        {                                              ↑
            Declared static
            return md.Sum() / 3;
        }
    }

    class Program
    {
        static void Main()
        {
            MyData md = new MyData(3, 4, 5);
            Console.WriteLine("Sum: {0}", md.Sum());
            Console.WriteLine("Average: {0}", md.Average());      ↑
        }
    }                                     Invoke as an instance member of the class
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---



---

```
Sum: 12
Average: 4
```

---



---

## CHAPTER 8



# Expressions and Operators

- Expressions
- Literals
- Order of Evaluation
- Simple Arithmetic Operators
- The Remainder Operator
- Relational and Equality Comparison Operators
- Increment and Decrement Operators
- Conditional Logical Operators
- Logical Operators
- Shift Operators
- Assignment Operators
- The Conditional Operator
- Unary Arithmetic Operators
- User-Defined Type Conversions
- Operator Overloading
- The `typeof` Operator
- Other Operators

# Expressions

This chapter defines expressions and describes the operators provided by C#. It also explains how you can define the C# operators to work with your user-defined classes.

An *expression* is a string of operators and operands. The following are some of the constructs that can act as operands:

- Literals
- Constants
- Variables
- Method calls
- Element accessors, such as array accessors and indexers
- Other expressions

The C# operators take one, two, or three operands. An operator does the following:

- Takes its operands as input
- Performs an action
- Returns a value, based on the action

Expressions can be combined, using operators, to create other expressions, as shown in this expression, with three operators and four operands:

$$\left. \begin{array}{c} a + b \\ \underbrace{\quad\quad\quad}_{\text{expr}} + c \\ \underbrace{\quad\quad\quad}_{\text{expr}} + d \end{array} \right\} a + b + c + d$$

*Evaluating* an expression is the process of applying each operator to its operands, in the proper sequence, to produce a value.

- The value is returned to the position at which the expression was evaluated. There, it might in turn be an operand in an enclosing expression.
- Besides the value returned, some expressions also have side effects, such as setting a value in memory.

# Literals

Literals are numbers or strings typed into the source code that represent a specific, set value of a specific type.

For example, the following code shows literals of six types. Notice, for example, the difference between the double literal and the float literal.

```
static void Main()      Literals
{
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", 1024);          // int literal
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", 3.1416);         // double literal
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", 3.1416F);        // float literal
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", true);          // boolean literal
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", 'x');           // character literal
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", "Hi there");     // string literal
}
```

The output of this code is the following:

---

```
1024
3.1416
3.1416
True
x
Hi there
```

---

Because literals are written into the source code, their values must be known at compile time. Several of the predefined types have their own forms of literal:

- Type `bool` has two literals: `true` and `false`.
- For reference type variables, literal `null` means that the variable is not set to a reference in memory.

# Integer Literals

Integer literals are the most commonly used literals. They are written as a sequence of decimal digits, with the following:

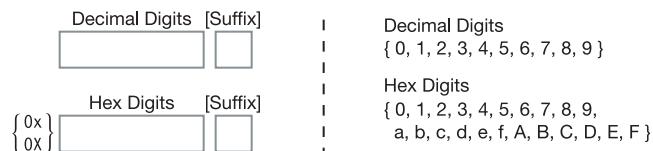
- No decimal point
  - An optional suffix to specify the type of the integer

For example, the following lines show four literals for the integer 236. Each is interpreted by the compiler as a different type of integer, depending on its suffix.

```
236          // int  
236L         // long  
236U         // unsigned  
236UL        // unsigned long
```

Integer type literals can also be written in hexadecimal (hex) form. The digits must be the hex digits (0 through F), and the string must be prefaced with either 0x or 0X (numeral 0, letter x).

Figure 8-1 shows the forms of the integer literal formats. Components with names in square brackets are optional.



**Figure 8-1.** The integer literal formats

Table 8-1 lists the integer literal suffixes. For a given suffix, the compiler will interpret the string of digits as the smallest of the corresponding integer types that can represent the value without losing data.

For example, take the literals 236 and 5000000000, neither of which has a suffix. Since 236 can be represented with 32 bits, it will be interpreted by the compiler as an int. The larger number, however, won't fit into 32 bits, so the compiler will represent it as a long.

**Table 8-1.** Integer Literal Suffixes

Suffix	Integer Type	Notes
None	int, uint, long, ulong	
U, u	uint, ulong	
L, l	long, ulong	Using the lowercase letter <i>l</i> is not recommended, because it is easily mistaken for the digit <i>1</i> .
ul, uL, U1, UL lu, Lu, LU, LU	ulong	Using the lowercase letter <i>l</i> is not recommended, because it is easily mistaken for the digit <i>1</i>

## Real Literals

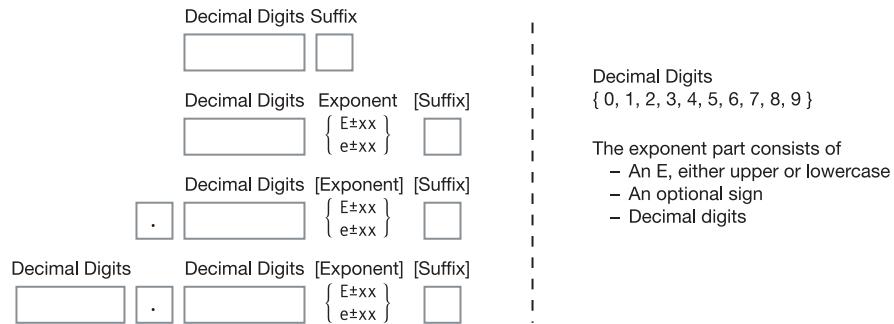
Literals for real numbers consist of the following:

- Decimal digits
- An optional decimal point
- An optional exponent part
- An optional suffix

For example, the following code shows various formats of literals of the real types:

```
float f1 = 236F;
double d1 = 236.714;
double d2 = .35192;
double d3 = 6.338e-26;
```

Figure 8-2 shows the valid formats for real literals. Components with names in square brackets are optional. Table 8-2 shows the real suffixes and their meanings.



**Figure 8-2.** The real literal formats

**Table 8-2.** Suffixes for the Real Literals

Suffix	Real Type
None	double
F, f	float
D, d	double
M, m	decimal

---

**Note** Real literals without a suffix are of type `double`, not `float`!

---

## Character Literals

A character literal consists of a character representation between two single quote marks. A character representation can be any of the following: a single character, a simple escape sequence, a hex escape sequence, or a Unicode escape sequence.

- The type of a character literal is `char`.
- A *simple escape sequence* is a backslash followed by a single character.
- A hex escape sequence is a backslash, followed by an uppercase or lowercase *x*, followed by up to four hex digits.
- A Unicode escape sequence is a backslash, followed by an uppercase or lowercase *u*, followed by up to four hex digits.

For example, the following code shows various formats of character literals:

```
char c1 = 'd';                      // Single character
char c2 = '\n';                      // Simple escape sequence
char c3 = '\x0061';                  // Hex escape sequence
char c4 = '\u005a';                  // Unicode escape sequence
```

Table 8-3 shows some of the important special characters and their encodings.

**Table 8-3. Important Special Characters**

Name	Escape Sequence	Hex Encoding
Null	\0	0x0000
Alert	\a	0x0007
Backspace	\b	0x0008
Horizontal tab	\t	0x0009
New line	\n	0x000A
Vertical tab	\v	0x000B
Form feed	\f	0x000C

Name	Escape Sequence	Hex Encoding
Carriage return	\r	0x000D
Double quote	\"	0x0022
Single quote	\'	0x0027
Backslash	\\	0x005C

## String Literals

String literals use double quote marks rather than the single quote marks used in character literals. There are two types of string literals:

- Regular string literals
- Verbatim string literals

A regular string literal consists of a sequence of characters between a set of double quotes. A regular string literal can include the following:

- Characters
- Simple escape sequences
- Hex and Unicode escape sequences

Here's an example:

```
string st1 = "Hi there!";
string st2 = "Val1\t5, Val2\t10";
string st3 = "Add\x000ASome\u0007Interest";
```

A verbatim string literal is written like a regular string literal but is prefaced with an @ character. The important characteristics of verbatim string literals are the following:

- Verbatim literals differ from regular string literals in that escape sequences are not evaluated. Everything between the set of double quotes—including what would normally be considered escape sequences—is printed exactly as it is listed in the string.
- The only exception with verbatim literals is sets of contiguous double quotes, which are interpreted as a *single* double quote character.

For example, the following code compares some regular and verbatim string literals:

```
string rst1 = "Hi there!";
string vst1 = @"Hi there!";

string rst2 = "It started, \"Four score and seven...\"";
string vst2 = @"It started, ""Four score and seven""";

string rst3 = "Value 1 \t 5, Val2 \t 10";      // Interprets tab esc sequence
string vst3 = @"Value 1 \t 5, Val2 \t 10";    // Does not interpret tab

string rst4 = "C:\\Program Files\\Microsoft\\";
string vst4 = @"C:\\Program Files\\Microsoft\\";

string rst5 = " Print \x000A Multiple \u000A Lines";
string vst5 = @" Print
Multiple
Lines";
```

Printing these strings produces the following output:

---

```
Hi there!
Hi there!

It started, "Four score and seven..."
It started, "Four score and seven..."

Value 1      5, Val2      10
Value 1 \t 5, Val2 \t 10

C:\\Program Files\\Microsoft\
C:\\Program Files\\Microsoft\\

Print
Multiple
Lines
```

---

**Note** The compiler saves memory by having identical string literals share the same memory location in the heap.

---

## Order of Evaluation

An expression can be made up of many nested subexpressions. The order in which the subexpressions are evaluated can make a difference in the final value of the expression.

For example, given the expression  $3 * 5 + 2$ , there are two possible results depending on the order in which the subexpressions are evaluated, as shown in Figure 8-3.

- If the multiplication is performed first, the result is 17.
- If the 5 and the 2 are added together first, the result is 21.



**Figure 8-3.** Simple order of evaluation

## Precedence

You know from your grade-school days that in the preceding example, the multiplication must be performed before the addition because multiplication has a higher precedence than addition. But unlike grade-school days, when you had four operators and two levels of precedence, things are a bit more complex with C#, which has more than 45 operators and 14 levels of precedence.

Table 8-4 shows the complete list of operators and their precedences. The table lists the highest precedence operators at the top and continues to the lowest precedence operators at the bottom.

**Table 8-4.** Operator Precedence: Highest to Lowest

Category	Operators
Primary	a.x, f(x), a[x], x++, x--, new, typeof, checked, unchecked
Unary	+, -, !, ~, ++x, --x, (T)x
Multiplicative	*, /, %
Additive	+, -
Shift	<<, >>
Relational and type	<, >, <=, >=, is, as
Equality	==, !=
Logical AND	&
Logical XOR	^

Category	Operators
Logical OR	
Conditional AND	&&
Conditional OR	
Conditional	?:
Assignment	=, *=, /=, %=, +=, -=, <<=, >>=, &=, ^=,  =

## Associativity

If all the operators in an expression have different levels of precedence, then evaluate each subexpression, starting at the one with the highest level, and work down the precedence scale.

But what if two sequential operators have the same level of precedence? For example, given the expression  $2 / 6 * 4$ , there are two possible evaluation sequences:

$$(2 / 6) * 4 = 4/3$$

or

$$2 / (6 * 4) = 1/12$$

When sequential operators have the same level of precedence, the order of evaluation is determined by *operator associativity*. That is, given two operators of the same level of precedence, one or the other will have precedence, depending on the operators' associativity. Some important characteristics of operator associativity are the following and are summarized in Table 8-5:

- *Left-associative* operators are evaluated from left to right.
- *Right-associative* operators are evaluated from right to left.
- Binary operators, except the assignment operators, are left-associative.
- The assignment operators and the conditional operator are right-associative.

Therefore, given these rules, the preceding example expression should be grouped left to right, giving  $(2 / 6) * 4$ , which yields 4/3.

**Table 8-5.** Summary of Operator Associativity

Type of Operator	Associativity
Assignment operators	Right-associative
Other binary operators	Left-associative
The conditional operator	Right-associative

You can explicitly set the order of evaluation of the subexpressions of an expression by using parentheses. Parenthesized subexpressions do the following:

- Override the precedence and associativity rules
- Are evaluated in order from the innermost nested set to the outermost

## Simple Arithmetic Operators

The simple arithmetic operators perform the four basic arithmetic operations and are listed in Table 8-6. These operators are binary and left-associative.

**Table 8-6. The Simple Arithmetic Operators**

Operator	Name	Description
+	Addition	Adds the two operands.
-	Subtraction	Subtracts the second operand from the first.
*	Multiplication	Multiplies the two operands.
/	Division	Divides the first operand by the second. Integer division rounds the result toward 0 to the nearest integer.

The arithmetic operators perform the standard arithmetic operations on all the predefined simple arithmetic types.

The following are examples of the simple arithmetic operators:

```
int x1 = 5 + 6;           double d1 = 5.0 + 6.0;
int x2 = 12 - 3;           double d2 = 12.0 - 3.0;
int x3 = 3 * 4;           double d3 = 3.0 * 4.0;
int x4 = 10 / 3;           double d4 = 10.0 / 3.0;

byte b1 = 5 + 6;
sbyte sb1 = 6 * 5;
```

# The Remainder Operator

The remainder operator (%) divides the first operand by the second operand, ignores the quotient, and returns the remainder. Table 8-7 gives its description.

The remainder operator is binary and left-associative.

**Table 8-7. The Remainder Operator**

Operator	Name	Description
%	Remainder	Divides the first operand by the second operand and returns the remainder

The following lines show examples of the integer remainder operator:

- $0 \% 3 = 0$ , because 0 divided by 3 is 0 with a remainder of 0.
- $1 \% 3 = 1$ , because 1 divided by 3 is 0 with a remainder of 1.
- $2 \% 3 = 2$ , because 2 divided by 3 is 0 with a remainder of 2.
- $3 \% 3 = 0$ , because 3 divided by 3 is 1 with a remainder of 0.
- $4 \% 3 = 1$ , because 4 divided by 3 is 1 with a remainder of 1.

The remainder operator can also be used with real numbers to give *real remainders*.

```
Console.WriteLine("0.0f % 1.5f is {0}" , 0.0f % 1.5f);
Console.WriteLine("0.5f % 1.5f is {0}" , 0.5f % 1.5f);
Console.WriteLine("1.0f % 1.5f is {0}" , 1.0f % 1.5f);
Console.WriteLine("1.5f % 1.5f is {0}" , 1.5f % 1.5f);
Console.WriteLine("2.0f % 1.5f is {0}" , 2.0f % 1.5f);
Console.WriteLine("2.5f % 1.5f is {0}" , 2.5f % 1.5f);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

0.0f % 1.5f is 0	// $0.0 / 1.5 = 0$ remainder 0
0.5f % 1.5f is 0.5	// $0.5 / 1.5 = 0$ remainder .5
1.0f % 1.5f is 1	// $1.0 / 1.5 = 0$ remainder 1
1.5f % 1.5f is 0	// $1.5 / 1.5 = 1$ remainder 0
2.0f % 1.5f is 0.5	// $2.0 / 1.5 = 1$ remainder .5
2.5f % 1.5f is 1	// $2.5 / 1.5 = 1$ remainder 1

---

# Relational and Equality Comparison Operators

The relational and equality comparison operators are binary operators that compare their operands and return a value of type `bool`. Table 8-8 lists these operators.

The relational and equality operators are binary and left-associative.

**Table 8-8. The Relational and Equality Comparison Operators**

Operator	Name	Description
<code>&lt;</code>	Less than	true if first operand is less than second operand; false otherwise
<code>&gt;</code>	Greater than	true if first operand is greater than second operand; false otherwise
<code>&lt;=</code>	Less than or equal to	true if first operand is less than or equal to second operand; false otherwise
<code>&gt;=</code>	Greater than or equal to	true if first operand is greater than or equal to second operand; false otherwise
<code>==</code>	Equal to	true if first operand is equal to second operand; false otherwise
<code>!=</code>	Not equal to	true if first operand is not equal to second operand; false otherwise

A binary expression with a relational or equality operator returns a value of type `bool`.

---

■ **Note** Unlike C and C++, numbers in C# do not have a Boolean interpretation.

---

```
int x = 5;
if( x )           // Wrong.  x is of type int, not type boolean.
...
if( x == 5 )     // Fine, since expression returns a value of type boolean
...
```

When printed, the Boolean values `true` and `false` are represented by the string output values `True` and `False`.

```
int x = 5, y = 4;
Console.WriteLine("x == x is {0}" , x == x);
Console.WriteLine("x == y is {0}" , x == y);
```

The output of this code is the following:

---

```
x == x is True
x == y is False
```

---

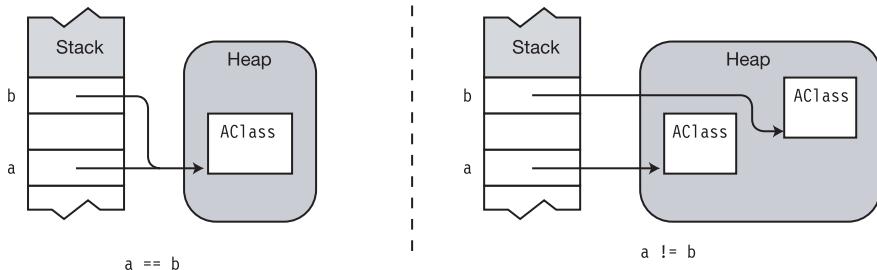
## Comparison and Equality Operations

When comparing most reference types for equality, only the references are compared.

- If the references are equal—that is, if they point to the same object in memory—the equality comparison is true; otherwise, it is false, even if *the two separate objects* in memory are *exactly equivalent* in every other respect.
- This is called a *shallow comparison*.

Figure 8-4 illustrates the comparison of reference types.

- On the left of the figure, the references of both a and b are the same, so a comparison would return true.
- On the right of the figure, the references are not the same, so even if the contents of the two AClass objects were exactly the same, the comparison would return false.



**Figure 8-4.** Comparing reference types for equality

Objects of type `string` are also reference types but are compared differently. When strings are compared for equality, they are compared in length and case-sensitive content.

- If two strings have the same length and the same case-sensitive content, the equality comparison returns true, even if they occupy different areas of memory.
- This is called a *deep comparison*.

Delegates, which are covered in Chapter 15, are also reference types and also use deep comparison. When delegates are compared for equality, the comparison returns true if both delegates are `null` or if both have the same number of members in their invocation lists and the invocation lists match.

When comparing numeric expressions, the types and values are compared. When comparing `enum` types, the comparisons are done on the underlying values of the operands. Enums are covered in Chapter 13.

# Increment and Decrement Operators

The increment operator adds 1 to the operand. The decrement operator subtracts 1 from the operand. Table 8-9 lists the operators and their descriptions.

These operators are unary and have two forms, the *pre-* form and the *post-* form, which act differently.

- In the pre-form, the operator is placed before the operand; for example, `++x` and `--y`.
- In the post-form, the operator is placed after the operand; for example, `x++` and `y--`.

**Table 8-9.** The Increment and Decrement Operators

Operator	Name	Description
<code>++</code>	Pre-increment <code>++var</code>	Increment the value of the variable by 1 and save it back into the variable. Return the new value of the variable.
	Post-increment <code>var++</code>	Increment the value of the variable by 1 and save it back into the variable. Return the old value of the variable before it was incremented.
<code>--</code>	Pre-decrement <code>--var</code>	Decrement the value of the variable by 1 and save it back into the variable. Return the new value of the variable.
	Post-decrement <code>var--</code>	Decrement the value of the variable by 1 and save it back into the variable. Return the old value of the variable before it was decremented.

In comparing the pre- and post-forms of the operators

- The final, stored value of the operand variable after the statement is executed is the same regardless of whether the pre- or post-form of the operator is used.
- The only difference is the value *returned* by the operator to the expression.

Table 8-10 shows an example summarizing the behavior.

**Table 8-10.** Behavior of Pre- and Post-Increment and Decrement Operators

	Expression: x = 10	Value Returned to the Expression	Value of Variable After Evaluation
Pre-increment	++x	11	11
Post-increment	x++	10	11
Pre-decrement	--x	9	9
Post-decrement	x--	10	9

For example, the following is a simple demonstration of the four different versions of the operators. To show the different results on the same input, the value of the operand x is reset to 5 before each assignment statement.

```
int x = 5, y;
y = x++; // result: y: 5, x: 6
Console.WriteLine("y: {0}, x: {1}" , y, x);

x = 5;
y = ++x; // result: y: 6, x: 6
Console.WriteLine("y: {0}, x: {1}" , y, x);

x = 5;
y = x--; // result: y: 5, x: 4
Console.WriteLine("y: {0}, x: {1}" , y, x);

x = 5;
y = --x; // result: y: 4, x: 4
Console.WriteLine("y: {0}, x: {1}" , y, x);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
y: 5, x: 6
y: 6, x: 6
y: 5, x: 4
y: 4, x: 4
```

---

## Conditional Logical Operators

The logical operators are used for comparing or negating the logical values of their operands and returning the resulting logical value. Table 8-11 lists the operators.

The logical AND and logical OR operators are binary and left-associative. The logical NOT is unary.

**Table 8-11.** *The Conditional Logical Operators*

Operator	Name	Description
<code>&amp;&amp;</code>	Logical AND	true if both operands are true; false otherwise
<code>  </code>	Logical OR	true if at least one operand is true; false otherwise
<code>!</code>	Logical NOT	true if the operand is false; false otherwise

The syntax for these operators is the following, where *Expr1* and *Expr2* evaluate to Boolean values:

```
Expr1 && Expr2  
Expr1 || Expr2  
! Expr
```

The following are some examples:

```
bool bVal;
bVal = (1 == 1) && (2 == 2);      // True, both operand expressions are true
bVal = (1 == 1) && (1 == 2);      // False, second operand expression is false

bVal = (1 == 1) || (2 == 2);     // True, both operand expressions are true
bVal = (1 == 1) || (1 == 2);     // True, first operand expression is true
bVal = (1 == 2) || (2 == 3);     // False, both operand expressions are false

bVal = true;                    // Set bVal to true.
bVal = !bVal;                  // bVal is now false.
```

The conditional logical operators operate in “short-circuit” mode, meaning that, if after evaluating *Expr1* the result can already be determined, then it skips the evaluation of *Expr2*. The following code shows examples of expressions in which the value can be determined after evaluating the first operand:

```
bool bVal;
bVal = (1 == 2) && (2 == 2);    // False, after evaluating first expression

bVal = (1 == 1) || (1 == 2);    // True, after evaluating first expression
```

Because of the short circuit behavior, do not place expressions with side effects (such as changing a value) in *Expr2*, since they might not be evaluated. In the following code, the post-increment of variable *iVal* would not be executed, because after executing the first subexpression, it can be determined that the value of the entire expression is false.

```
bool bVal; int iVal = 10;

bVal = (1 == 2) && (9 == iVal++);      // result: bVal = False, iVal = 10
                                         ↑
                                         False           Never evaluated
```

## Logical Operators

The bitwise logical operators are often used to set the bit patterns for parameters to methods. Table 8-12 lists the bitwise logical operators.

These operators, except for bitwise negation, are binary and left-associative. The bitwise negation operator is unary.

**Table 8-12.** *The Logical Operators*

Operator	Name	Description
&	Bitwise AND	Produces the bitwise AND of the two operands. The resulting bit is 1 only if both operand bits are 1.
	Bitwise OR	Produces the bitwise OR of the two operands. The resulting bit is 1 if either operand bit is 1.
^	Bitwise XOR	Produces the bitwise XOR of the two operands. The resulting bit is 1 only if one, but not both, operand bits are 1.
~	Bitwise negation	Each bit in the operand is switched to its opposite. This produces the one's complement of the operand.

The binary bitwise operators compare the corresponding bits at each position in each of their two operands, and they set the bit in the return value according to the logical operation.

Figure 8-5 shows four examples of the bitwise logical operations.

$\begin{array}{r} \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ 0} \ 12 \\ \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0} \ 10 \\ \hline \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ 0\ 0} \ 12 \ \& \ 10 = 8 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ 0} \ 12 \\ \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0} \ 10 \\ \hline \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ 0} \ 12 \   \ 10 = 14 \end{array}$
$\begin{array}{r} \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ 0} \ 12 \\ \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ 0} \ 10 \\ \hline \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ 0} \ 12 \ ^\wedge \ 10 = 6 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{r} \boxed{0\ 0\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}\ 0\ 0} \ 12 \\ \hline \boxed{1\ 1\ 1\ 1\ 0\ 0\ \boxed{1}\ \boxed{1}} \ ^\sim 12 = -13 \end{array}$

**Figure 8-5.** Examples of bitwise logical operators

The following code implements the preceding examples:

```
const byte x = 12, y = 10;
sbyte a;

a = x & y;           // a = 8
a = x | y;           // a = 14
a = x ^ y;           // a = 6
a = ~x;              // a = -13
```

# Shift Operators

The bitwise shift operators shift the bit pattern either right or left a specified number of positions, with the vacated bits filled with 0s or 1s. Table 8-13 lists the shift operators.

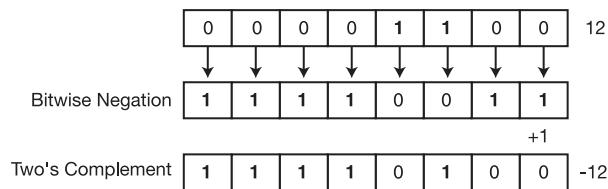
The shift operators are binary and left-associative. The syntax of the bitwise shift operators is shown here. The number of positions to shift is given by *Count*.

*Operand* << *Count* // Left shift  
*Operand* >> *Count* // Right shift

**Table 8-13.** *The Shift Operators*

Operator	Name	Description
<<	Left shift	Shifts the bit pattern left by the given number of positions. The bits shifted off the left end are lost. Bit positions opening up on the right are filled with 0s.
>>	Right shift	Shifts the bit pattern right by the given number of positions. Bits shifted off the right end are lost.

For the vast majority of programming in C#, you don't need to know anything about the hardware underneath. If you're doing bitwise manipulation of signed numbers, however, it can be helpful to know about the numeric representation. The underlying hardware represents signed binary numbers in a form called *two's complement*. In two's-complement representation, positive numbers have their normal binary form. To negate a number, you take the bitwise negation of the number and add 1 to it. This process turns a positive number into its negative representation, and vice versa. In two's complement, all negative numbers have a 1 in the leftmost bit position. Figure 8-6 shows the negation of the number 12.



**Figure 8-6.** To get the negation of a two's-complement number, take its bitwise negation and add 1.

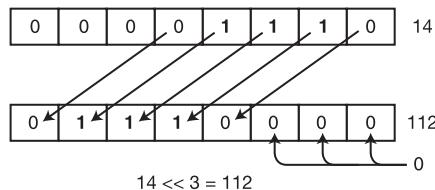
The underlying representation is important when shifting signed numbers because the result of shifting an integral value one bit to the left is the same as multiplying it by two. Shifting it to the right is the same as dividing it by two.

If, however, you were to shift a negative number to the right and the leftmost bit were to be filled with a 0, it would produce the wrong result. The 0 in the leftmost position would indicate a positive number. But this is incorrect, because dividing a negative number by 2 doesn't produce a positive number.

To address this situation, when the operand is a signed integer, if the leftmost bit of the operand is a 1 (indicating a negative number), bit positions opening up on the left are filled with 1s rather than 0s. This maintains the correct two's-complement representation. For positive or unsigned numbers, bit positions opening up on the left are filled with 0s.

Figure 8-7 shows how the expression `14 << 3` would be evaluated in a byte. This operation causes the following:

- Each of the bits in the operand (14) is shifted three places to the left.
  - The three bit positions vacated on the right end are filled with 0s.
  - The resulting value is 112.



**Figure 8-7.** Example of left shift of three bits

Figure 8-8 illustrates bitwise shift operations.



**Figure 8-8.** Bitwise shifts

The following code implements the preceding examples:

```
int a, b, x = 14;  
  
a = x << 3;           // Shift left  
b = x >> 3;           // Shift right  
  
Console.WriteLine("{0} << 3 = {1}" , x, a);  
Console.WriteLine("{0} >> 3 = {1}" , x, b);
```

This code produces the following output:

$$14 \ll 3 = 112$$

# Assignment Operators

The assignment operators evaluate the expression on the right side of the operator and use that value to set the variable expression on the left side of the operator. Table 8-14 lists the assignment operators.

The assignment operators are binary and right-associative.

**Table 8-14.** The Assignment Operators

Operator	Description
=	Simple assignment; evaluate the expression on the right, and assign the returned value to the variable or expression on the left.
*=	Compound assignment; <i>var *= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var * (expr)</i> .
/=	Compound assignment; <i>var /= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var / (expr)</i> .
%=	Compound assignment; <i>var %= expr</i> is equal to <i>var= var % (expr)</i> .
+=	Compound assignment; <i>var += expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var + (expr)</i> .
-=	Compound assignment; <i>var -= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var- (expr)</i> .
<<=	Compound assignment; <i>var &lt;&lt;= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var &lt;&lt; (expr)</i> .
>>=	Compound assignment; <i>var &gt;&gt;= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var &gt;&gt; (expr)</i> .
&=	Compound assignment; <i>var &amp;= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var &amp; (expr)</i> .
^=	Compound assignment; <i>var ^= expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var ^ (expr)</i> .
=	Compound assignment; <i>var  = expr</i> is equal to <i>var = var   (expr)</i> .

The syntax is as follows:

*VariableExpression Operator Expression*

For simple assignment, the expression to the right of the operator is evaluated, and its value is assigned to the variable on the left.

```
int x;
x = 5;
x = y * z;
```

The types of objects that can be on the left side of an assignment operator are the following. They are discussed later in the text.

- Variables (local variables, fields, parameters)
- Properties
- Indexers
- Events

## Compound Assignment

Frequently, you'll want to evaluate an expression and add the results to the current value of a variable, as shown here:

```
x = x + expr;
```

The compound assignment operators allow a shorthand method for avoiding the repetition of the left-side variable on the right side under certain common circumstances. For example, the following two statements are semantically equivalent, but the second is shorter and just as easy to understand.

```
x = x + (y - z);
x += y - z;
```

The other compound assignment statements are analogous:

	Notice the parentheses. $\downarrow$ $\downarrow$
<pre>x *= y - z;      // Equivalent to x = x * (y - z) x /= y - z;      // Equivalent to x = x / (y - z) ...</pre>	

# The Conditional Operator

The conditional operator is a powerful and succinct way of returning one of two values, based on the result of a condition. Table 8-15 shows the operator.

The conditional operator is ternary.

**Table 8-15. The Conditional Operator**

Operator	Name	Description
? :	Conditional operator	Evaluates an expression and returns one of two values, depending on whether the expression returns true or false

The syntax for the conditional operator is shown following. It has a test expression and two result expressions.

- *Condition* must return a value of type `bool`.
- If *Condition* evaluates to true, then *Expression1* is evaluated and returned. Otherwise, *Expression2* is evaluated and returned.

```
Condition ? Expression1 : Expression2
```

The conditional operator can be compared with the `if...else` construct. For example, the following `if...else` construct checks a condition, and if the condition is true, it assigns 5 to variable `intVar`. Otherwise, it assigns it the value 10.

```
if ( x < y )                                // if...else
    intVar = 5;
else
    intVar = 10;
```

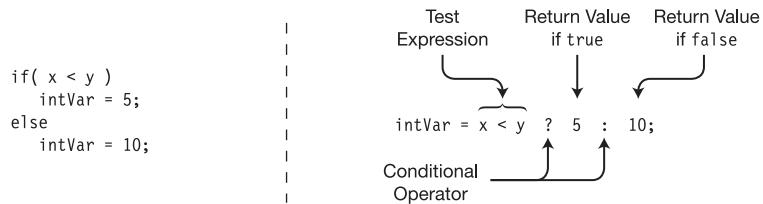
The conditional operator can perform the same operation in a less verbose form, as shown in the following statement:

```
intVar = x < y ? 5 : 10;                      // Conditional operator
```

Placing the condition and each return expression on separate lines, as in the following code, makes the intent very easy to understand.

```
intVar = x < y
    ?
    5
    :
    10 ;
```

Figure 8-9 compares the two forms shown in the example.



**Figure 8-9.** The conditional operator versus *if...else*

For example, the following code uses the conditional operator three times—once in each of the `WriteLine` statements. In the first instance, it returns either the value of `x` or the value of `y`. In the second two instances, it returns either the empty string or the string “not”.

```
int x = 10, y = 9;
int highVal = x > y                                // Condition
            ? x                                     // Expression 1
            : y;                                    // Expression 2
Console.WriteLine("highVal: {0}\n" , highVal);

Console.WriteLine("x is{0} greater than y" ,
                  x > y                      // Condition
                  ? ""                        // Expression 1
                  : " not" );                // Expression 2

y = 11;
Console.WriteLine("x is{0} greater than y" ,
                  x > y                      // Condition
                  ? ""                        // Expression 1
                  : " not" );                // Expression 2
```

This code produces the following output:

---

highVal: 10

x is greater than y  
x is not greater than y

---

**Note** The *if...else* statement is a flow-of-control *statement*. It should be used for doing one or the other of two *actions*. The conditional operator returns an *expression*. It should be used for *returning* one or the other of two *values*.

---

# Unary Arithmetic Operators

The unary operators set the sign of a numeric value. They are listed in Table 8-16.

- The unary positive operator simply returns the value of the operand.
- The unary negative operator returns the value of the operand subtracted from 0.

**Table 8-16.** *The Unary Operators*

Operator	Name	Description
+	Positive sign	Returns the numeric value of the operand
-	Negative sign	Returns the numeric value of the operand subtracted from 0

For example, the following code shows the use and results of the operators:

```
int x = +10;           // x = 10
int y = -x;            // y = -10
int z = -y;            // z = 10
```

## User-Defined Type Conversions

User-defined conversions are discussed in greater detail in Chapter 18, but I'll mention them here as well because they are operators.

- You can define both implicit and explicit conversions for your own classes and structs. This allows you to convert an object of your user-defined type to some other type, and vice versa.
- C# provides implicit and explicit conversions.
  - With an *implicit conversion*, the compiler automatically makes the conversion, if necessary, when it is resolving what types to use in a particular context.
  - With an *explicit conversion*, the compiler will make the conversion only when an explicit cast operator is used.

The syntax for declaring an implicit conversion is the following. The `public` and `static` modifiers are required for all user-defined conversions.

```

Required           Target           Source
↓                ↓             ↓
public static implicit operator TargetType ( SourceType Identifier )
{
    ...
    return ObjectOfTypeTargetType;
}

```

The syntax for the explicit conversion is the same, except that `explicit` is substituted for `implicit`.

The following code shows an example of declarations for conversion operators that will convert an object of type `LimitedInt` to type `int`, and vice versa.

```

class LimitedInt
{
    public static implicit operator int (LimitedInt li)      // LimitedInt to int
    {
        return li.TheValue;
    }

    public static implicit operator LimitedInt (int x)      // int to LimitedInt
    {
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = x;
        return li;
    }

    private int _theValue = 0;
    public int TheValue{ ... }
}

```

For example, the following code reiterates and uses the two type conversion operators just defined. In `Main`, an `int` literal is converted into a `LimitedInt` object, and in the next line, a `LimitedInt` object is converted into an `int`.

```
class LimitedInt
{
    const int MaxValue = 100;
    const int MinValue = 0;

    public static implicit operator int(LimitedInt li)          // Convert type
    {
        return li.TheValue;
    }

    public static implicit operator LimitedInt(int x)          // Convert type
    {
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = x;
        return li;
    }

    private int _theValue = 0;
    public int TheValue                                         // Property
    {
        get { return _theValue; }
        set
        {
            if (value < MinValue)
                _theValue = 0;
            else
                _theValue = value > MaxValue
                    ? MaxValue
                    : value;
        }
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()                                         // Main
    {
        LimitedInt li = 500;                                    // Convert 500 to LimitedInt
        int value      = li;                                    // Convert LimitedInt to int

        Console.WriteLine("li: {0}, value: {1}" , li.TheValue, value);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
li: 100, value: 100
```

---

## Explicit Conversion and the Cast Operator

The preceding example code showed the implicit conversion of the `int` to a `LimitedInt` type and the implicit conversion of a `LimitedInt` type to an `int`. If, however, you had declared the two conversion operators as explicit, you would have had to explicitly use cast operators when making the conversions.

A *cast operator* consists of the name of the type to which you want to convert the expression, inside a set of parentheses. For example, in the following code, method `Main` casts the value 500 to a `LimitedInt` object.

```

Cast operator
↓
LimitedInt li = (LimitedInt) 500;
```

For example, here is the relevant portion of the code, with the changes marked:

```

↓
public static explicit operator int(LimitedInt li)
{
    return li.TheValue;
}
↓
public static explicit operator LimitedInt(int x)
{
    LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
    li.TheValue = x;
    return li;
}

static void Main()
{
    ↓
    LimitedInt li = (LimitedInt) 500;
    int value = (int) li;
    ↑
    Console.WriteLine("li: {0}, value: {1}" , li.TheValue, value);
}
```

In both versions of the code, the output is the following:

---



---

```
li: 100, value: 100
```

---



---

There are two other operators that take a value of one type and return a value of a different, specified type. These are the `is` operator and the `as` operator. These are covered at the end of Chapter 18.

# Operator Overloading

The C# operators, as you've seen, are defined to work using the predefined types as operands. If confronted with a user-defined type, an operator simply would not know how to process it. Operator overloading allows you to define how the C# operators should operate on operands of your user-defined types.

- Operator overloading is available only for classes and structs.
- You can overload an operator *x* for use with your class or struct by declaring a method named `operator x` that implements the behavior (for example, `operator +`, `operator -`, and so on).
  - The overload methods for unary operators take a single parameter of the class or struct type.
  - The overload methods for binary operators take two parameters, at least one of which must be of the class or struct type.

```
public static LimitedInt operator -(LimitedInt x)           // Unary
public static LimitedInt operator +(LimitedInt x, double y) // Binary
```

The declaration of an operator overload method requires the following:

- The declaration must use both the `static` and `public` modifiers.
- The operator must be a member of the class or struct for which it is an operator.

For example, the following code shows two of the overloaded operators of class `LimitedInt`: the addition operator and the negation operator. You can tell that it is negation and not subtraction because the operator overload method has only a single parameter and is therefore unary; whereas the subtraction operator is binary.

```
class LimitedInt Return
{
    Required     type   Keyword   Operator   Operand
    ↓           ↓       ↓        ↓          ↓
    public static LimitedInt operator + (LimitedInt x, double y)
    {
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = x.TheValue + (int)y;
        return li;
    }

    public static LimitedInt operator - (LimitedInt x)
    {
        // In this strange class, negating a value just sets its value to 0.
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = 0;
        return li;
    }
    ...
}
```

## Restrictions on Operator Overloading

Not all operators can be overloaded, and there are restrictions on the types of overloading that can be done. The important things you should know about the restrictions on operator overloading are described later in the section.

Only the following operators can be overloaded. Prominently missing from the list is the assignment operator.

*Overloadable unary operators:* +, -, !, ~, ++, --, true, false

*Overloadable binary operators:* +, -, \*, /, %, &, |, ^, <<, >>, ==, !=, >, <, >=, <=

The increment and decrement operators are overloadable. But unlike the predefined versions, there is no distinction between the pre- and post-usage of the overloaded operator.

You *cannot* do the following things with operator overloading:

- Create a new operator
- Change the syntax of an operator
- Redefine how an operator works on the predefined types
- Change the precedence or associativity of an operator

---

■ **Note** Your overloaded operators should conform to the intuitive meanings of the operators.

---

## Example of Operator Overloading

The following example shows the overloads of three operators for class `LimitedInt`: negation, subtraction, and addition.

```
class LimitedInt {
    const int MaxValue = 100;
    const int MinValue = 0;

    public static LimitedInt operator -(LimitedInt x)
    {
        // In this strange class, negating a value just sets its value to 0.
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = 0;
        return li;
    }

    public static LimitedInt operator -(LimitedInt x, LimitedInt y)
    {
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = x.TheValue - y.TheValue;
        return li;
    }

    public static LimitedInt operator +(LimitedInt x, double y)
    {
        LimitedInt li = new LimitedInt();
        li.TheValue = x.TheValue + (int)y;
        return li;
    }

    private int _theValue = 0;
    public int TheValue
    {
        get { return _theValue; }
        set
        {
            if (value < MinValue)
                _theValue = 0;
            else
                _theValue = value > MaxValue
                    ? MaxValue
                    : value;
        }
    }
}
```



```

class Program {
    static void Main() {
        LimitedInt li1 = new LimitedInt();
        LimitedInt li2 = new LimitedInt();
        LimitedInt li3 = new LimitedInt();
        li1.TheValue = 10; li2.TheValue = 26;
        Console.WriteLine(" li1: {0}, li2: {1}" , li1.TheValue, li2.TheValue);

        li3 = -li1;
        Console.WriteLine("-{0} = {1}" , li1.TheValue, li3.TheValue);

        li3 = li2 - li1;
        Console.WriteLine(" {0} - {1} = {2}" ,
            li2.TheValue, li1.TheValue, li3.TheValue);

        li3 = li1 - li2;
        Console.WriteLine(" {0} - {1} = {2}" ,
            li1.TheValue, li2.TheValue, li3.TheValue);
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---

```

li1: 10, li2: 26
-10 = 0
26 - 10 = 16
10 - 26 = 0

```

---

## The `typeof` Operator

The `typeof` operator returns the `System.Type` object of any type given as its parameter. From this object, you can learn the characteristics of the type. (There is only one `System.Type` object for any given type.) You cannot overload the `typeof` operator. Table 8-17 lists the operator's characteristics.

The `typeof` operator is unary.

**Table 8-17.** *The `typeof` Operator*

---

Operator	Description
<code>typeof</code>	Returns the <code>System.Type</code> object of a given type

---

The following is an example of the syntax of the `typeof` operator. `Type` is a class in the `System` namespace.

```
Type t = typeof ( SomeClass )
```

For example, the following code uses the `typeof` operator to get information on a class called `SomeClass` and to print the names of its public fields and methods.

```
using System.Reflection; // Use the Reflection namespace to take full advantage
                        // of determining information about a type.
class SomeClass
{
    public int Field1;
    public int Field2;

    public void Method1() { }
    public int Method2() { return 1; }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Type t = typeof(SomeClass);
        FieldInfo[] fi = t.GetFields();
        MethodInfo[] mi = t.GetMethods();

        foreach (FieldInfo f in fi)
            Console.WriteLine("Field : {0}" , f.Name);
        foreach (MethodInfo m in mi)
            Console.WriteLine("Method: {0}" , m.Name);
    }
}
```

The output of this code is the following:

---

```
Field : Field1
Field : Field2
Method: Method1
Method: Method2
Method: ToString
Method: Equals
Method: GetHashCode
Method: GetType
```

---

The `typeof` operator is also called by the `GetType` method, which is available for every object of every type. For example, the following code retrieves the name of the type of the object:

```
class SomeClass
{
    ...
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        SomeClass s = new SomeClass();

        Console.WriteLine("Type s: {0}" , s.GetType().Name);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Type s: SomeClass
```

---

## Other Operators

The operators covered in this chapter are the standard operators for the built-in types. There are other special usage operators that are dealt with later in the book, along with their operand types. For example, the nullable types have a special operator called the null coalescing operator, which is described in Chapter 25 along with a more in-depth description of nullable types.



# Statements

- What Are Statements?
- Expression Statements
- Flow-of-Control Statements
- The if Statement
- The if . . . else Statement
- The switch Statement
- The while Loop
- The do Loop
- The for Loop
- Jump Statements
- The break Statement
- The continue Statement
- Labeled Statements
- The goto Statement
- The using Statement
- Other Statements

# What Are Statements?

The statements in C# are very similar to those of C and C++. This chapter covers the characteristics of a C# statement, as well as the flow-of-control statements provided by the language.

- A *statement* is a source code instruction describing a type or telling the program to perform an action.
- There are three major categories of statements:
  - *Declaration statements*: Statements that declare types or variables
  - *Embedded statements*: Statements that perform actions or manage flow of control
  - *Labeled statements*: Statements to which control can jump

Previous chapters have covered a number of different declaration statements, including declarations of local variables, classes, and class members. This chapter covers the embedded statements, which do not declare types, variables, or instances. Instead, they use expressions and flow-of-control constructs to work with the objects and variables that have been declared by the declaration statements.

- A *simple statement* consists of an expression followed by a semicolon.
- A *block* is a sequence of statements enclosed by matching curly braces. The enclosed statements can include the following:
  - Declaration statements
  - Embedded statements
  - Labeled statements
  - Nested blocks

The following code gives examples of each:

```
int x = 10;           // Simple declaration
int z;                // Simple declaration

{
    int y = 20;         // Block
    z = x + y;          // Simple declaration
    top: y = 30;        // Embedded statement
    ...
    {                  // Labeled statement
        ...
    }
}
```

---

**Note** A block counts syntactically as a single embedded statement. Anywhere that an embedded statement is required syntactically, you can use a block.

---

An *empty statement* consists of just a semicolon. You can use an empty statement at any position where the syntax of the language requires an embedded statement but your program logic does not require any action.

For example, the following code is an example of using the empty statement:

- The second line in the code is an empty statement. It is required because there must be an embedded statement between the `if` part and the `else` part of the construct.
- The fourth line is a simple statement, as shown by the terminating semicolon.

```
if( x < y )
;
else
    z = a + b;      // Simple statement
```

## Expression Statements

The previous chapter looked at expressions. Expressions return values, but they can also have *side effects*.

- A side effect is an action that affects the state of the program.
- Many expressions are evaluated only for their side effects.

You can create a statement from an expression by placing a statement terminator (semicolon) after it. Any value returned by the expression is discarded. For example, the following code shows an expression statement. It consists of the assignment expression (an assignment operator and two operands) followed by a semicolon. This does the following two things:

- The expression assigns the value on the right of the operator to the memory location referenced by variable `x`. Although this is probably the main reason for the statement, *this is considered the side effect*.
- After setting the value of `x`, the expression returns with the new value of `x`. But there is nothing to receive this return value, so it is ignored.

```
x = 10;
```

The whole reason for evaluating the expression is to achieve the side effect.

# Flow-of-Control Statements

C# provides the flow-of-control constructs common to modern programming languages.

- *Conditional execution* executes or skips a section of code depending on a condition. The conditional execution statements are the following:
  - if
  - if...else
  - switch
- *Looping statements* repeatedly execute a section of code. The looping statements are the following:
  - while
  - do
  - for
  - foreach
- *Jump statements* change the flow of control from one section of code to a specific statement in another section of code. The jump statements are the following:
  - break
  - continue
  - return
  - goto
  - throw

Conditional execution and looping constructs (other than foreach) require a test expression, or *condition*, to determine where the program should continue execution.

---

**Note** Unlike C and C++, test expressions must return a value of type `bool`. Numbers do not have a Boolean interpretation in C#.

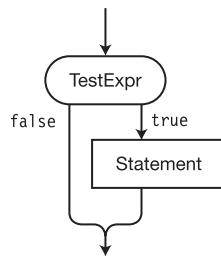
---

# The if Statement

The `if` statement implements conditional execution. The syntax for the `if` statement is shown here and is illustrated in Figure 9-1.

- *TestExpr* must evaluate to a value of type `bool`.
- If *TestExpr* evaluates to `true`, *Statement* is executed.
- If it evaluates to `false`, *Statement* is skipped.

```
if( TestExpr )
    Statement
```



**Figure 9-1.** The `if` statement

The following code shows examples of `if` statements:

```
// With a simple statement
if( x <= 10 )
    z = x - 1;                      // Single statement – no curly braces needed

// With a block
if( x >= 20 )
{
    x = x - 5;                    // Block – curly braces needed
    y = x + z;
}

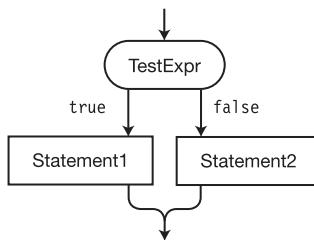
int x = 5;                         // Error: test expression must be a bool, not int
if( x )
{
    ...
}
```

## The if . . . else Statement

The if...else statement implements a two-way branch. The syntax for the if...else statement is shown here and is illustrated in Figure 9-2.

- If *TestExpr* evaluates to true, *Statement1* is executed.
- If it evaluates to false, *Statement2* is executed instead.

```
if( TestExpr )
    Statement1
else
    Statement2
```



**Figure 9-2.** The if...else statement

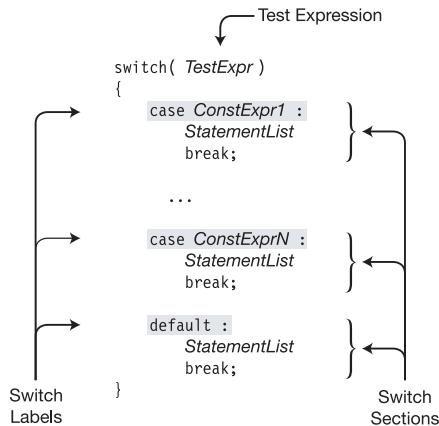
The following is an example of the if...else statement:

```
if( x <= 10 )
    z = x - 1;           // Single statement
else
{
    x = x - 5;
    y = x + z;
}
```

# The switch Statement

The switch statement implements multiway branching. Figure 9-3 shows the syntax and structure of the switch statement.

- The switch statement contains zero or more *switch sections*.
- Each *switch section* starts with one or more *switch labels*.



**Figure 9-3.** Structure of a switch statement

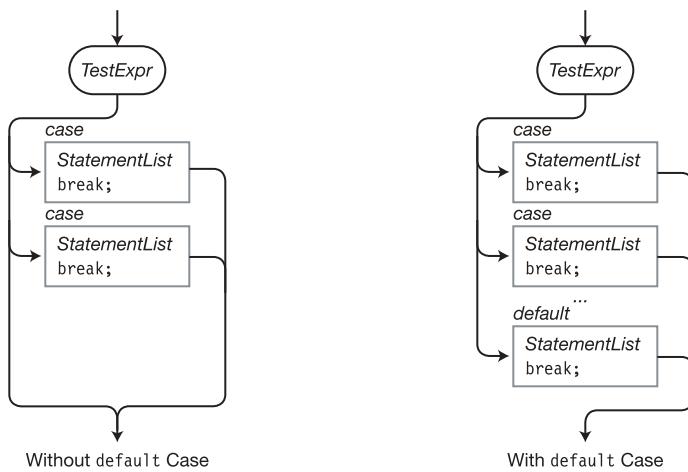
Switch labels have the following form:

<code>case ConstantExpression:</code>	<code>:</code>
↑	↑
Keyword	Switch label terminator

The flow of control through the structure in Figure 9-3 is the following:

- The test expression, *TestExpr*, is evaluated at the top of the construct.
- Each switch section must end with the break statement or one of the other four jump statements.
  - The jump statements are break, return, continue, goto, and throw, and they are described later in this chapter.
  - Of the five jump statements, the break statement is the most commonly used for ending a switch section. The break statement branches execution to the end of the switch statement. We'll cover all the jump statements later in this chapter.
- If the value of *TestExpr* is equal to the value *ConstExpr1*, the constant expression in the first switch label and then the statements in the *statement list* following the switch label are executed, until the one of the jump statements is encountered.
- The default section is optional, but if it is included, it must end with one of the jump statements.

Figure 9-4 illustrates the general flow of control through a switch statement. You can modify the flow through a switch statement with a goto statement or a return statement.



**Figure 9-4.** The flow of control through a switch statement

## A Switch Example

The following code executes the switch statement five times, with the value of `x` ranging from 1 to 5. From the output, you can tell which case section was executed on each cycle through the loop.

```
for( int x=1; x<6; x++ )
{
    switch( x )                                // Evaluate the value of variable x.
    {
        case 2:                                // If x equals 2
            Console.WriteLine("x is {0} -- In Case 2", x);
            break;                               // Go to end of switch.

        case 5:                                // If x equals 5
            Console.WriteLine("x is {0} -- In Case 5", x);
            break;                               // Go to end of switch.

        default:                               // If x is neither 2 nor 5
            Console.WriteLine("x is {0} -- In Default case", x);
            break;                               // Go to end of switch.
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
x is 1 -- In Default case
x is 2 -- In Case 2
x is 3 -- In Default case
x is 4 -- In Default case
x is 5 -- In Case 5
```

---

## More on the switch Statement

A switch statement can have any number of switch sections, including none. The default section is not required, as shown in the following example. It is, however, generally considered good practice to include it, since it can catch potential errors.

For example, the switch statement in the following code has no default section. The switch statement is inside a for loop, which executes the statement five times, with the value of *x* starting at 1 and ending at 5.

```
for( int x=1; x<6; x++ )
{
    switch( x )
    {
        case 5:
            Console.WriteLine("x is {0} -- In Case 5", x);
            break;
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
x is 5 -- In Case 5
```

---

The following code has only the default section:

```
for( int x=1; x<4; x++ )
{
    switch( x )
    {
        default:
            Console.WriteLine("x is {0} -- In Default case", x);
            break;
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
x is 1 -- In Default case
x is 2 -- In Default case
x is 3 -- In Default case
```

---

## Switch Labels

The expression following the keyword `case` in a switch label must be a constant expression and must therefore be completely evaluable by the compiler at *compile* time. It must also be of the same type as the test expression.

For example, Figure 9-5 shows three sample switch statements.

```
const string YES = "yes";           const char LetterB = 'b';           const int Five = 5;
string s = "no";                  char c = 'a';                     int x = 5;
switch (s)                         switch (c)                      switch (x)
{
    case YES:                   case 'a':                       case Five:
        PrintOut("Yes");       PrintOut("a");                 PrintOut("5");
        break;                  break;                      break;
    case "no":                  case LetterB:                case 10:
        PrintOut("No");        PrintOut("b");                 PrintOut("10");
        break;                  break;                      break;
}
}
}
```

**Figure 9-5.** Switch statements with different types of switch labels

**Note** Unlike C and C++, each switch section, including the optional default section, must end with one of the jump statements. In C#, you cannot execute the code in one switch section and then *fall through* to the next.

Although C# does not allow falling through from one switch section to another, you can do the following:

- You can attach multiple switch labels to any switch section.
- Following the statement list associated with a case, there must be one of the jump statements before the next switch label, unless there are *no intervening executable statements* between the switch labels.

For example, in the following code, since there are no executable statements between the first three switch labels, it's fine to have one follow the other. Cases 5 and 6, however, have an executable statement between them, so there must be a jump statement before case 6.

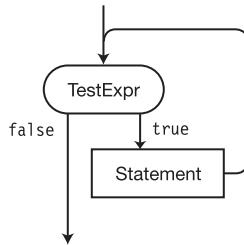
```
switch( x )
{
    case 1:                      // Acceptable
    case 2:
    case 3:
        ...
        break;                   // Execute this code if x equals 1, 2, or 3.
    case 5:
        y = x + 1;              // Not acceptable because there is no break
    case 6:
        ...
}
```

## The while Loop

The while loop is a simple loop construct in which the test expression is performed at the top of the loop. The syntax of the while loop is shown here and is illustrated in Figure 9-6.

- First, *TestExpr* is evaluated.
- If *TestExpr* evaluates to false, then execution continues after the end of the while loop.
- Otherwise, when *TestExpr* evaluates to true, *Statement* is executed, and *TestExpr* is evaluated again. Each time *TestExpr* evaluates to true, *Statement* is executed another time. The loop ends when *TestExpr* evaluates to false.

```
while( TestExpr )
    Statement
```



**Figure 9-6.** The while loop

The following code shows an example of the while loop, where the test expression variable starts with a value of 3 and is decremented at each iteration. The loop exits when the value of the variable becomes 0.

```
int x = 3;
while( x > 0 )
{
    Console.WriteLine("x: {0}", x);
    x--;
}
Console.WriteLine("Out of loop");
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
x: 3
x: 2
x: 1
Out of loop
```

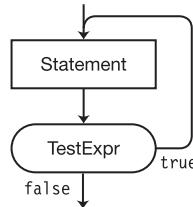
---

## The do Loop

The do loop is a simple loop construct in which the test expression is performed at the bottom of the loop. The syntax for the do loop is shown here and illustrated in Figure 9-7.

- First, *Statement* is executed.
- Then, *TestExpr* is evaluated.
- If *TestExpr* returns true, then *Statement* is executed again.
- Each time *TestExpr* returns true, *Statement* is executed again.
- When *TestExpr* returns false, control passes to the statement following the end of the loop construct.

```
do
    Statement
  while( TestExpr );           // End of do loop
```



**Figure 9-7.** The do loop

The do loop has several characteristics that set it apart from other flow-of-control constructs. They are the following:

- The body of the loop, *Statement*, is always executed at least once, even if *TestExpr* is initially false.
- The semicolon is required after the closing parenthesis of the test expression.

The following code shows an example of a do loop:

```
int x = 0;
do
    Console.WriteLine("x is {0}", x++);
while (x<3);
    ↑
    Required
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
x is 0
x is 1
x is 2
```

---

## The for Loop

The for loop construct executes the body of the loop as long as the test expression returns true when it is evaluated at the top of the loop. The syntax of the for loop is shown here and illustrated in Figure 9-8.

- At the beginning of the for loop, *Initializer* is executed once.
- *TestExpr* is then evaluated.
- If *TestExpr* returns true, *Statement* is executed, followed by *IterationExpr*.
- Control then returns to the top of the loop, and *TestExpr* is evaluated again.
- As long as *TestExpr* returns true, *Statement*, followed by *IterationExpr*, is executed.
- As soon as *TestExpr* returns false, execution continues at the statement following *Statement*.

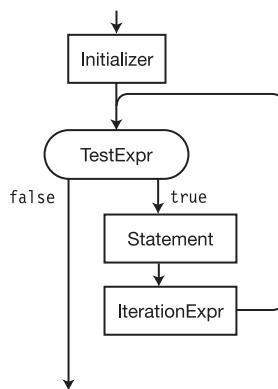
```

    Separated by semicolons
    ↓   ↓
for( Initializer ; TestExpr ; IterationExpr )
    Statement

```

Some parts of the statement are optional.

- *Initializer*, *TestExpr*, and *IterationExpr* are all optional. Their positions can be left blank. If the *TestExpr* position is left blank, the test is *assumed to return* true. Therefore, there must be some other method of exiting the statement if the program is to avoid going into an infinite loop.
- The two semicolons are required as field separators.



**Figure 9-8.** The for loop

Figure 9-8 illustrates the flow of control through the `for` statement. You should also know the following about its components:

- *Initializer* is executed only once, before any other part of the `for` construct. It is usually used to declare and initialize local values to be used in the loop.
- *TestExpr* is evaluated to determine whether *Statement* should be executed or skipped. It must evaluate to a value of type `bool`.
- *IterationExpr* is executed immediately after *Statement* and before returning to the top of the loop to *TestExpr*.

For example, in the following code:

- Before anything else, the initializer (`int i=0`) defines a variable called `i` and initializes its value to 0.
- The condition (`i<3`) is then evaluated. If it is `true`, then the body of the loop is executed.
- At the bottom of the loop, after all the loop statements have been executed, the *IterationExpr* statement is executed—in this case, incrementing the value of `i`.

```
// The body of this for loop is executed three times.  
for( int i=0 ; i<3 ; i++ )  
    Console.WriteLine("Inside loop. i: {0}", i);  
  
Console.WriteLine("Out of Loop");
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Inside loop. i: 0  
Inside loop. i: 1  
Inside loop. i: 2  
Out of Loop
```

---

## The Scope of Variables in a for Statement

Any variables declared in the *initializer* are visible *only within the for statement*.

- This is different from C and C++, where the declaration introduces the variable into the enclosing block.
- The following code illustrates this point:

Type is needed here for declaration.  
↓

```
for(int i=0; i<10; i++ ) // Variable i is in scope here, and also
    Statement;           // here within the statement.
                        // Here, after the statement, i no longer exists.
```

Type is needed here again because the previous variable i has gone out of existence.  
↓

```
for(int i=0; i<10; i++ ) // We need to define a new variable i here,
    Statement;           // the previous one has gone out of existence.
```

The local variables declared within the body of the loop are known only within the loop.

---

**Note** Unlike C and C++, the scope of variables declared in the initializer lasts only for the length of the loop.

---

## Multiple Expressions in the Initializer and Iteration Expression

Both the initializer expression and the iteration expression can contain multiple expressions as long as they are separated by commas.

For example, the following code has two variable declarations in the initializer and two expressions in the iteration expression:

```
static void Main( )
{
    const int MaxI = 5;

    Two declarations           Two expressions
    ↓                         ↓
    for (int i = 0, j = 10; i < MaxI; i++, j += 10)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}", i, j);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
0, 10
1, 20
2, 30
3, 40
4, 50
```

---

## Jump Statements

When the flow of control reaches *jump statements*, program execution is unconditionally transferred to another part of the program. The jump statements are the following:

- break
- continue
- return
- goto
- throw

This chapter covers the first four of these statements. The throw statement is explained in Chapter 11.

## The break Statement

Earlier in this chapter you saw the break statement used in the switch statement. It can also be used in the following statement types:

- for
- foreach
- while
- do

In the body of one of these statements, break causes execution to exit the *innermost enclosing loop*.

For example, the following while loop would be an infinite loop if it relied only on its test expression, which is always true. But instead, after three iterations of the loop, the break statement is encountered, and the loop is exited.

```
int x = 0;
while( true )
{
    x++;
    if( x >= 3 )
        break;
}
```

## The continue Statement

The `continue` statement causes program execution to go to the *top* of the *innermost enclosing loop* of the following types:

- `while`
- `do`
- `for`
- `foreach`

For example, the following `for` loop is executed five times. In the first three iterations, it encounters the `continue` statement and goes directly back to the top of the loop, missing the `WriteLine` statement at the bottom of the loop. Execution only reaches the `WriteLine` statement during the last two iterations.

```
for( int x=0; x<5; x++ )          // Execute loop five times
{
    if( x < 3 )                  // The first three times
        continue;                 // Go directly back to top of loop

    // This line is only reached when x is 3 or greater.
    Console.WriteLine("Value of x is {0}", x);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Value of x is 3
Value of x is 4
```

---

The following code shows an example of a `continue` statement in a `while` loop. This code produces the same output as the preceding `for` loop example.

```
int x = 0;
while( x < 5 )
{
    if( x < 3 )
    {
        x++;
        continue;                // Go back to top of loop
    }

    // This line is reached only when x is 3 or greater.
    Console.WriteLine("Value of x is {0}", x);
    x++;
}
```

# Labeled Statements

A *labeled statement* consists of an identifier, followed by a colon, followed by a statement. It has the following form:

*Identifier:* *Statement*

A labeled statement is executed exactly as if the label were not there and consisted of just the *Statement* part.

- Adding a label to a statement allows control to be transferred to the statement from another part of the code.
- Labeled statements are allowed only inside blocks.

## Labels

Labels have their own declaration space, so the identifier in a labeled statement can be any valid identifier—including those that might be declared in an overlapping scope, such as local variables or parameter names.

For example, the following code shows the valid use of a label with the same identifier as a local variable:

```
{  
    int xyz = 0;                                // Variable xyz  
    ...  
    xyz: Console.WriteLine("No problem.");        // Label xyz  
}
```

There are restrictions, however. The identifier cannot be either

- The same as another label identifier with an overlapping scope
- A keyword

## The Scope of Labeled Statements

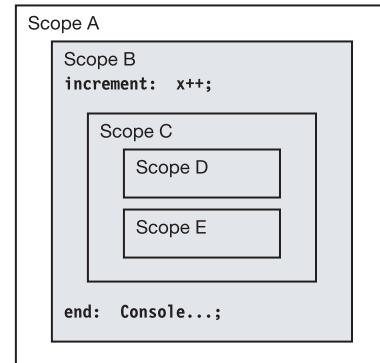
Labeled statements cannot be seen (or accessed) from *outside* the block in which they are declared. The scope of a labeled statement is

- The block in which it is declared
- Any blocks nested inside that block

For example, the code on the left of Figure 9-9 contains several nested blocks, with their scopes marked. There are two labeled statements declared in scope B of the program: increment and end.

- The shaded portions on the right of the figure show the areas of the code in which the labeled statements are in scope.
- Code in scope B, and all the nested blocks, can see and access the labeled statements.
- Code from any of the inner scopes can jump *out* to the labeled statements.
- Code from outside (scope A, in this case) *cannot jump into* a block with a labeled statement.

```
static void Main( )
{ // Scope A
    { // Scope B
        increment: x++;
        { // Scope C
            { // Scope D
                ...
            }
            { // Scope E
                ...
            }
            ...
        }
        end: Console.WriteLine("Exiting");
    }
}
```



**Figure 9-9.** The scope of labels includes nested blocks.

## The goto Statement

The `goto` statement unconditionally transfers control to a *labeled statement*. Its general form is the following, where *Identifier* is the identifier of a labeled statement:

```
goto Identifier ;
```

For example, the following code shows the simple use of a `goto` statement:

```
bool thingsAreFine;
while (true)
{
    thingsAreFine = GetNuclearReactorCondition();

    if ( thingsAreFine )
        Console.WriteLine("Things are fine.");
    else
        goto NotSoGood;
}

NotSoGood: Console.WriteLine("We have a problem.");
```

The `goto` statement must be *within* the scope of the labeled statement.

- A `goto` statement can jump to any labeled statement within its own block or can jump *out* to any block in which it is nested.
- A `goto` statement cannot jump *into* any blocks nested within its own block.

---

■ **Caution** Using the `goto` statement is strongly discouraged, because it can lead to code that is poorly structured and difficult to debug and maintain. Edsger Dijkstra's 1968 letter to the Communications of the ACM, entitled "Go To Statement Considered Harmful," was an important contribution to computer science; it was one of the first published descriptions of the pitfalls of using the `goto` statement.

---

## The goto Statement Inside a switch Statement

There are also two other forms of the `goto` statement, for use inside `switch` statements. These `goto` statements transfer control to the correspondingly named `switch` label in the `switch` statement.

```
goto case ConstantExpression;
goto default;
```

# The using Statement

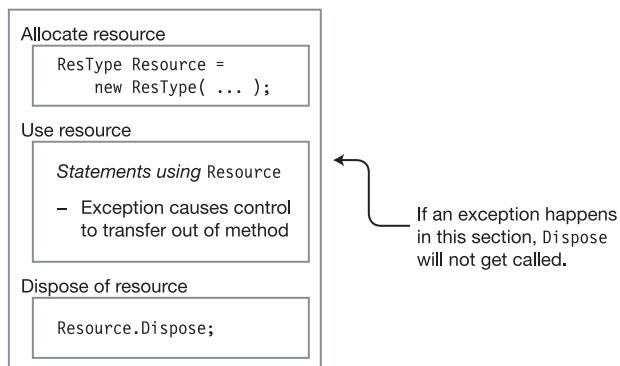
Certain types of unmanaged objects are limited in number or are expensive with system resources. It's important that when your code is done with them, they be released as soon as possible. The `using` statement helps simplify the process and ensures that these resources are properly disposed of.

A *resource* is a class or struct that implements the `System.IDisposable` interface. Interfaces are covered in detail in Chapter 17—but in short, an interface is a collection of unimplemented function members that classes and structs can choose to implement. The `IDisposable` interface contains a single method named `Dispose`.

The phases of using a resource are shown in Figure 9-10 and consist of the following:

- Allocating the resource
- Using the resource
- Disposing of the resource

If an unexpected run-time error occurs during the portion of the code using the resource, the code disposing of the resource might not get executed.



**Figure 9-10.** Components of using a resource

---

**Note** The `using` statement is different from the `using` directives. The `using` directives are covered in Chapter 10.

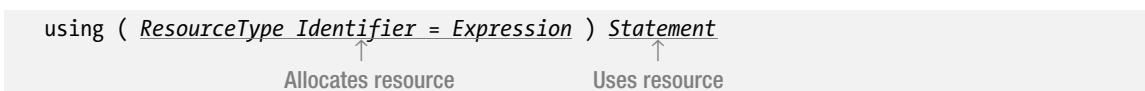
---

## Packaging Use of the Resource

The `using` statement helps reduce the potential problem of an unexpected run-time error by neatly packaging the use of a resource.

There are two forms of the `using` statement. The first form is the following and is illustrated in Figure 9-11.

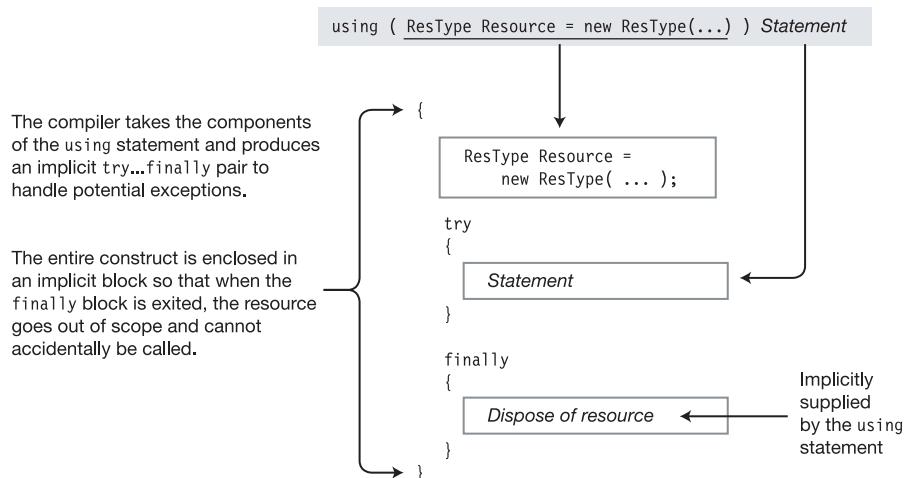
- The code between the parentheses allocates the resource.
- *Statement* is the code that uses the resource.
- The `using` statement *implicitly generates* the code to dispose of the resource.



Unexpected run-time errors are called *exceptions* and are covered in Chapter 11. The standard way of handling the possibility of exceptions is to place the code that might cause an exception in a `try` block and place any code that *must* be executed, whether or not there is an exception, into a `finally` block.

This form of the `using` statement does exactly that. It performs the following:

- Allocates the resource
- Places *Statement* in a `try` block
- Creates a call to the resource's `Dispose` method and places it in a `finally` block



**Figure 9-11.** The effect of the `using` statement

## Example of the using Statement

The following code uses the `using` statement twice—once with a class called `TextWriter` and once with a class called `TextReader`, both from the `System.IO` namespace. Both classes implement the `IDisposable` interface, as required by the `using` statement.

- The `TextWriter` resource opens a text file for writing and writes a line to the file.
- The `TextReader` resource then opens the same text file and reads and displays the contents, line by line.
- In both cases, the `using` statement makes sure that the objects' `Dispose` methods are called.
- Notice also the difference between the `using` statements in `Main` and the `using` directives on the first two lines.

```
using System;           // using DIRECTIVE; not using statement
using System.IO;        // using DIRECTIVE; not using statement

namespace UsingStatement
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main( )
        {
            // using statement
            using (TextWriter tw = File.CreateText("Lincoln.txt"))
            {
                tw.WriteLine("Four score and seven years ago, ...");
            }

            // using statement
            using (TextReader tr = File.OpenText("Lincoln.txt"))
            {
                string InputString;
                while (null != (InputString = tr.ReadLine()))
                    Console.WriteLine(InputString);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Four score and seven years ago, ...
```

---

## Multiple Resources and Nesting

The `using` statement can also be used with multiple resources of the same type, with the resource declarations separated by commas. The syntax is the following:

Only one type ↓	Resource ↓	Resource ↓
<code>using ( ResourceType Id1 = Expr1, Id2 = Expr2, ... ) EmbeddedStatement</code>		

For example, in the following code, each `using` statement allocates and uses two resources:

```
static void Main()
{
    using (TextWriter tw1 = File.CreateText("Lincoln.txt"),
          tw2 = File.CreateText("Franklin.txt"))
    {
        tw1.WriteLine("Four score and seven years ago, ...");
        tw2.WriteLine("Early to bed; Early to rise ...");
    }

    using (TextReader tr1 = File.OpenText("Lincoln.txt"),
          tr2 = File.OpenText("Franklin.txt"))
    {
        string InputString;

        while (null != (InputString = tr1.ReadLine()))
            Console.WriteLine(InputString);

        while (null != (InputString = tr2.ReadLine()))
            Console.WriteLine(InputString);
    }
}
```

The `using` statement can also be nested. In the following code, besides the nesting of the `using` statements, also note that it is not necessary to use a block with the second `using` statement because it consists of only a single, simple statement.

```
using (TextWriter tw1 = File.CreateText("Lincoln.txt") )
{
    tw1.WriteLine("Four score and seven years ago, ...");

    using (TextWriter tw2 = File.CreateText("Franklin.txt") ) // Nested
        tw2.WriteLine("Early to bed; Early to rise ...");      // Single
}
```

## Another Form of the using Statement

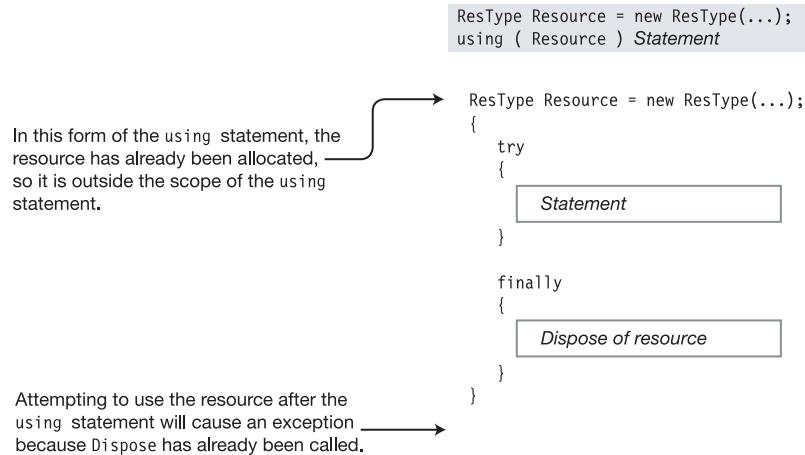
Another form of the `using` statement is the following:

Keyword ↓	Resource ↓	Uses resource ↓
<code>using</code>	<code>( Expression )</code>	<code>EmbeddedStatement</code>

In this form, the resource is declared before the `using` statement.

```
TextWriter tw = File.CreateText("Lincoln.txt");           // Resource declared
using ( tw )
    tw.WriteLine("Four score and seven years ago, ..."); // using statement
```

Although this form still ensures that the `Dispose` method will always be called after you finish using the resource, it does not protect you from attempting to use the resource after the `using` statement has released its unmanaged resources, leaving it in an inconsistent state. It therefore gives less protection and is discouraged. This form is illustrated in Figure 9-12.



**Figure 9-12.** Resource declaration before the using statement

# Other Statements

There are other statements that are associated with particular features of the language. These statements are covered in the sections dealing with those features. The statements covered in other chapters are shown in Table 9-1.

**Table 9-1.** *Statements Covered in Other Chapters*

Statement	Description	Relevant Chapter
checked, unchecked	These statements control the overflow checking context.	Chapter 18
foreach	This statement iterates through each member of a collection.	Chapters 14 and 20
try, throw, finally	These statements are associated with exceptions.	Chapter 11
return	This statement returns control to the calling function member and can also return a value.	Chapter 5
yield	This statement is used with iterators.	Chapter 20





# Namespaces and Assemblies

- Referencing Other Assemblies
- Namespaces
- The using Directives
- The Structure of an Assembly
- The Identity of an Assembly
- Strongly Named Assemblies
- Private Deployment of an Assembly
- Shared Assemblies and the GAC
- Configuration Files
- Delayed Signing

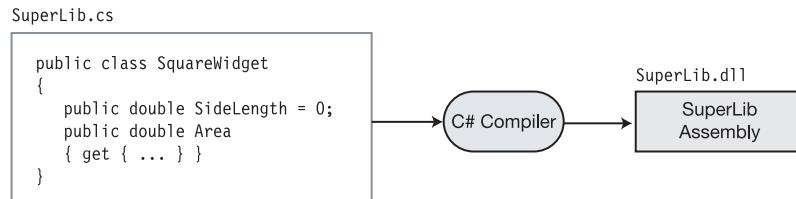
## Referencing Other Assemblies

In Chapter 1, we took a high-level look at the compilation process. You saw that the compiler takes the source code file and produces an output file called an *assembly*. This chapter takes a closer look at assemblies and how they are produced and deployed. You will also look at how namespaces help organize types.

All the programs you've seen so far have, for the most part, declared and used their own classes. In many projects, however, you will want to use classes or types from other assemblies. These other assemblies might come from the BCL or a third-party vendor, or you might have created them yourself. These are called *class libraries*, and the names of their assembly files generally end with the .dll extension rather than the .exe extension.

Suppose, for example, that you want to create a class library that contains classes and types that can be used by other assemblies. The source code for a simple library is shown in the following example and is contained in a file called SuperLib.cs. The library contains a single public class called SquareWidget. Figure 10-1 illustrates the production of the DLL.

```
public class SquareWidget
{
    public double SideLength = 0;
    public double Area
    {
        get { return SideLength * SideLength; }
    }
}
```



**Figure 10-1.** The *SuperLib* source code and the resulting assembly

To create a class library using Visual Studio 2010, select the Class Library template from the installed Windows templates. Specifically, when in Visual Studio, do the following:

1. Select File > New > Project, and the New Project window will open.
2. In the left pane in the Installed Templates panel, find the Visual C# node under the Other Languages root, and select the Windows entry.
3. In the right pane, select the Class Library template.

Suppose also that you are writing a program called `MyWidgets`, and you want to use the `SquareWidget` class. The code for the program is in a file called `MyWidgets.cs` and is shown in the following example. The code simply creates an object of type `SquareWidget` and uses the object's members.

```
using System;

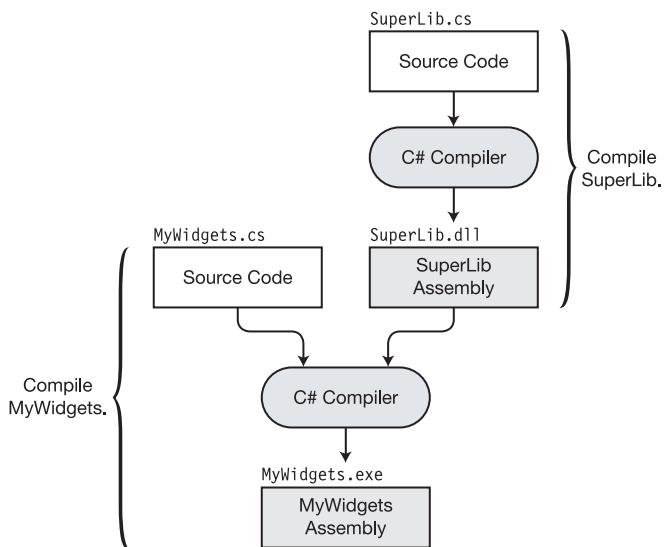
class WidgetsProgram
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        SquareWidget sq = new SquareWidget(); // From class library
        ↑
        Not declared in this assembly
        sq.SideLength = 5.0;                  // Set the side length.
        Console.WriteLine(sq.Area);          // Print out the area.
        ↑
    } Not declared in this assembly
}
```

Notice that the code doesn't declare class `SquareWidget`. Instead, you use the class defined in `SuperLib`. When you compile the `MyWidgets` program, however, the compiler must be aware that your code uses assembly `SuperLib` so it can get the information about class `SquareWidget`. To do this, you need to give the compiler a *reference* to the assembly, by giving its name and location.

In Visual Studio, you can add references to a project in the following way:

- Select the Solution Explorer, and find the References folder underneath the project name. The References folder contains a list of the assemblies used by the project.
- Right-click the References folder, and select Add Reference. There are five tabs from which to choose, allowing you to find the class library in different ways.
- For our program, select the Browse tab, browse to the DLL file containing the `SquareWidget` class definition, and select it.
- Click the OK button, and the reference will be added to the project.

After you've added the reference, you can compile `MyWidgets`. Figure 10-2 illustrates the full compilation process.

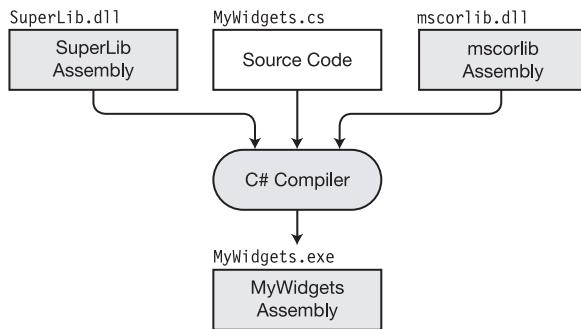


**Figure 10-2.** Referencing another assembly

## The mscorelib Library

There's a class library that I've been using in every example in the book so far. It is the one that contains the `Console` class. The `Console` class is defined in an assembly called `mscorelib` in a file called `mscorelib.dll`. You won't find this assembly listed in the `References` folder, however. Assembly `mscorelib` contains the definitions of the C# types and the basic types for most .NET languages. It must always be referenced when compiling a C# program, so Visual Studio doesn't bother showing it in the `References` folder.

When you take into account `mscorelib`, the compilation process for `MyWidgets` looks more like the representation shown in Figure 10-3. After this, I'll assume the use of the `mscorelib` assembly without representing it again.



**Figure 10-3.** Referencing class libraries

Now suppose that your program has been working fine with the `SquareWidget` class, but you want to expand its capabilities to use a class called `CircleWidget`, which is defined in a different assembly called `UltraLib`. The `MyWidgets` source code now looks like the following. It creates a `SquareWidget` object as defined in `SuperLib` and a `CircleWidget` object as defined in `UltraLib`.

```

class WidgetsProgram
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        SquareWidget sq = new SquareWidget();      // From SuperLib
        ...

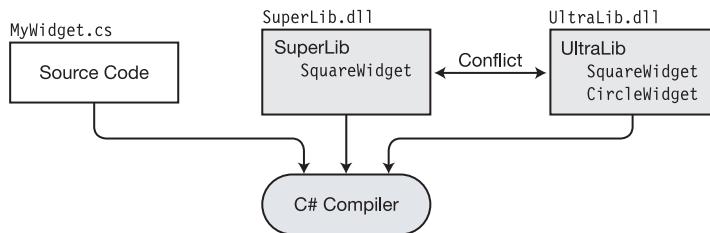
        CircleWidget circle = new CircleWidget();   // From UltraLib
        ...
    }
}
  
```

The source code for class library UltraLib is shown in the following example. Notice that besides class CircleWidget, like library SuperLib, it also declares a class called SquareWidget. You can compile UltraLib to a DLL and add it to the list of references in project MyWidgets.

```
public class SquareWidget
{
    ...
}

public class CircleWidget
{
    public double Radius = 0;
    public double Area
    {
        get { ... }
    }
}
```

Since both libraries contain a class called SquareWidget, when you attempt to compile program MyWidgets, the compiler produces an error message because it doesn't know which version of class SquareWidget to use. Figure 10-4 illustrates this *name clash*.



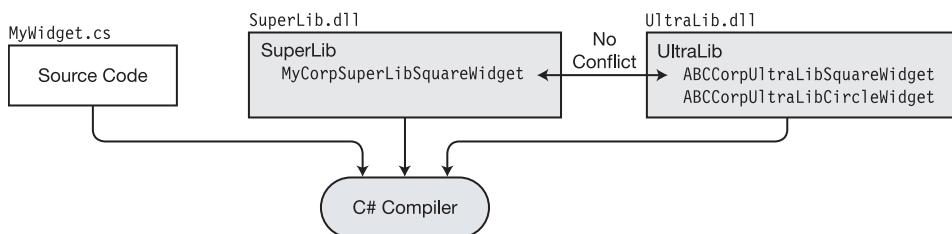
**Figure 10-4.** Since assemblies SuperLib and UltraLib both contain declarations for a class called SquareWidget, the compiler doesn't know which one to instantiate.

## Namespaces

In the *MyWidgets* example, since you have the source code, you can solve the name clash by just changing the name of the *SquareWidget* class in either the *SuperLib* source code or the *UltraLib* source code. But what if these libraries had been developed by separate companies, and you didn't have the source code? Suppose that *SuperLib* was produced by a company called *MyCorp*, and *UltraLib* was produced by the *ABCCorp* company. In that case, you wouldn't be able to use them together if you used any classes or types where there was a clash.

As you can imagine, with your development machine containing assemblies produced by dozens, if not hundreds, of different companies, there is likely to be a certain amount of duplication in the names of classes. It would be a shame if you couldn't use two assemblies in the same program just because they happened to have type names in common.

Suppose, however, that *MyCorp* had a policy of prefacing all their classes with a string that consisted of the company name followed by the product name followed by the descriptive class name. Suppose further that *ABCCorp* had the same policy. In that case, the three class names in our example would be named *MyCorpSuperLibSquareWidget*, *ABCCorpUltraLibSquareWidget*, and *ABCCorpUltraLibCircleWidget*, as shown in Figure 10-5. These are perfectly valid class names, and there's little chance of the classes in one company's library conflicting with those of another company.



**Figure 10-5.** With disambiguating strings prefaced to the class names, there is no conflict between the libraries.

Our example program, however, would need to use these long names and would look like the following:

```

class WidgetsProgram
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        MyCorpSuperLibSquareWidget sq
            = new MyCorpSuperLibSquareWidget(); // From SuperLib
        ...

        ABCCorpUltraLibCircleWidget circle
            = new ABCCorpUltraLibCircleWidget(); // From UltraLib
        ...
    }
}

```

Although this solves the conflict problem, these new, disambiguated names are harder to read and clumsy to work with, even with IntelliSense.

Suppose, however, that in addition to the characters normally allowed in an identifier, you could also use the period character within the string—although still not at the beginning or at the end of the class name. In this case, we could make the names more understandable, such as `MyCorp.SuperLib.SquareWidget`, `ABCCorp.UltraLib.SquareWidget`, and `ABCCorp.UltraLib.CircleWidget`. Now the code would look like the following:

```
class WidgetsProgram
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        MyCorp.SuperLib.SquareWidget sq
            = new MyCorp.SuperLib.SquareWidget();           // From SuperLib
        ...
        ABCCorp.UltraLib.CircleWidget circle
            = new ABCCorp.UltraLib.CircleWidget();         // From UltraLib
        ...
    }
}
```

This brings us to the concept of the namespace name and a namespace.

- You can think of a *namespace name* as a string of characters (that can include periods inside the string) tacked on to the front of the class or type name and separated by a period.
- The full string including the namespace name, separating period, and the class name is called the class's *fully qualified name*.
- A *namespace* is the *set of classes and types* that share that namespace name.

Figure 10-6 illustrates these definitions.



**Figure 10-6.** A namespace is the set of type definitions that share the same namespace name.

You can use namespaces to group a set of types together and give them a name. Generally, you want namespace names to be descriptive of the types contained by the namespace and to be distinct from other namespace names.

You create a namespace by declaring the namespace in the source file that contains your type declarations. The following shows the syntax for declaring a namespace. You then declare all your classes and other types between the curly braces of the namespace declaration. These are then the *members* of the namespace.

```
Keyword      Namespace name
↓           ↓
namespace NamespaceName
{
    TypeDeclarations
}
```

The following code shows how the programmers at MyCorp could create the `MyCorp.SuperLib` namespace and declare the `SquareWidget` class inside it.

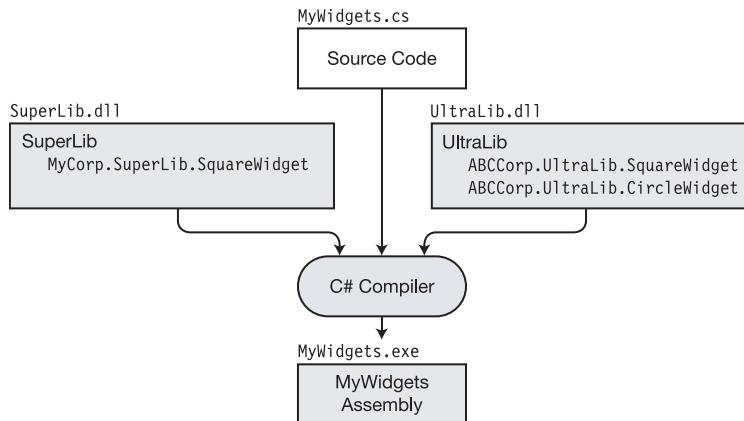
```
Company name  Period
↓           ↓
namespace MyCorp.SuperLib
{
    public class SquareWidget
    {
        public double SideLength = 0;
        public double Area
        {
            get { return SideLength * SideLength; }
        }
    }
}
```

Now, when the MyCorp company ships you the new updated assembly, you can use it by modifying your `MyWidgets` program, as shown here:

```
class WidgetsProgram
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        Fully qualified name
        ↓
        MyCorp.SuperLib.SquareWidget sq = new MyCorp.SuperLib.SquareWidget();
        ↓
        Namespace name      Class name
        ↓
        CircleWidget circle = new CircleWidget();
        ...
    }
}
```

Now that you have explicitly specified the `SuperLib` version of `SquareWidget` in your code, the compiler will no longer have a problem distinguishing the classes. The fully qualified name is a bit long to type, but at least you can now use both libraries. A little later in the chapter, we'll cover the `using alias` directive to solve the inconvenience of having to repeatedly type in the fully qualified name.

If the `UltraLib` assembly is also updated with a namespace by the company that produces it (ABCCorp), then the compile process would be as shown in Figure 10-7.



**Figure 10-7.** Class libraries with namespaces

## Namespace Names

As you saw, the name of a namespace can contain the name of the company that created the assembly. Besides identifying the company, the name is also used to help programmers get a quick idea of the kinds of types defined in the namespace.

Some important points about the names of namespaces are the following:

- A namespace name can be any valid identifier, as described in Chapter 2.
- Additionally, a namespace name can include any number of period characters. You can use this to organize types into hierarchies.

For example, Table 10-1 gives the names of some of the namespaces in the .NET BCL.

**Table 10-1.** Sample Namespaces from the BCL

System	System.IO
System.Data	Microsoft.CSharp
System.Drawing	Microsoft.VisualBasic

Namespace naming guidelines suggest the following:

- Start namespace names with the company name.
- Follow the company name with the technology name.
- Do not name a namespace with the same name as a class or type.

For example, the software development department of the Acme Widget Company develops software in the following three namespaces, as shown in the following code:

- AcmeWidgets.SuperWidget
- AcmeWidgets.Media
- AcmeWidgets.Games

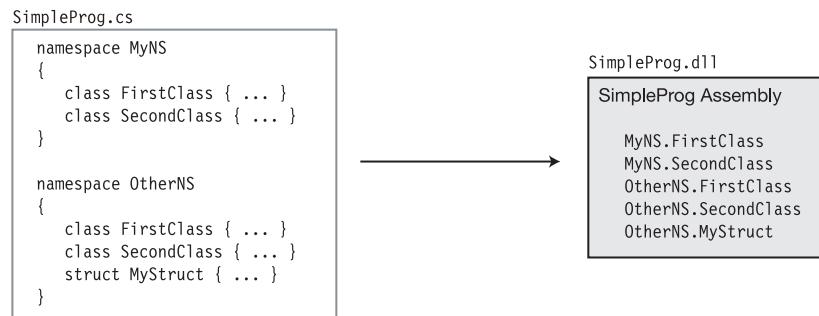
```
namespace AcmeWidgets.SuperWidget
{
    class SPDBase ...
    ...
}
```

## More About Namespaces

There are several other important points you should know about namespaces:

- Every type name in a namespace must be different from all the others.
- The types in a namespace are called *members* of the namespace.
- A source file can contain any number of namespace declarations, either sequentially or nested.

Figure 10-8 shows a source file on the left that declares two namespaces sequentially, with several types in each one. Notice that even though the namespaces contain several class names in common, they are differentiated by their namespace names, as shown in the assembly at the right of the figure.



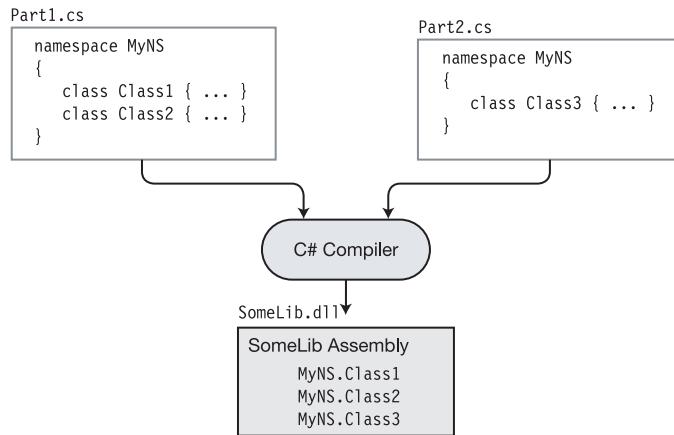
**Figure 10-8.** Multiple namespaces in a source file

The .NET Framework BCL offers thousands of defined classes and types to choose from in building your programs. To help organize this vast array of available functionality, types with related functionality are declared in the same namespace. The BCL uses more than 100 namespaces to organize its types.

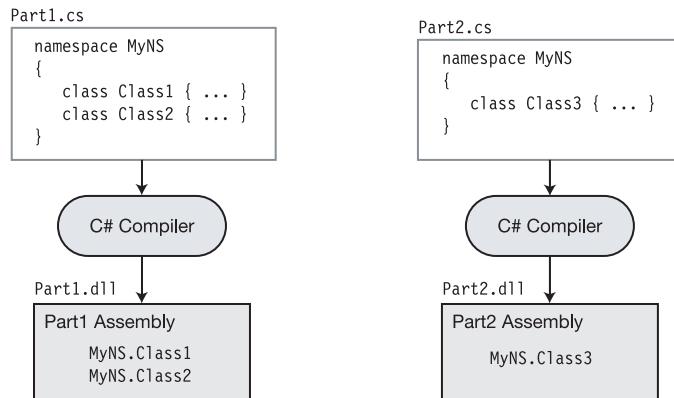
## Namespaces Spread Across Files

A namespace is not closed. This means you can add more type declarations to it by declaring it again either later in the source file or in another source file.

For example, Figure 10-9 shows the declaration of three classes, all in the same namespace but declared in separate source files. The source files can be compiled into a single assembly, as shown in Figure 10-9, or into separate assemblies, as shown in Figure 10-10.



**Figure 10-9.** A namespace can be spread across source files and compiled to a single assembly.



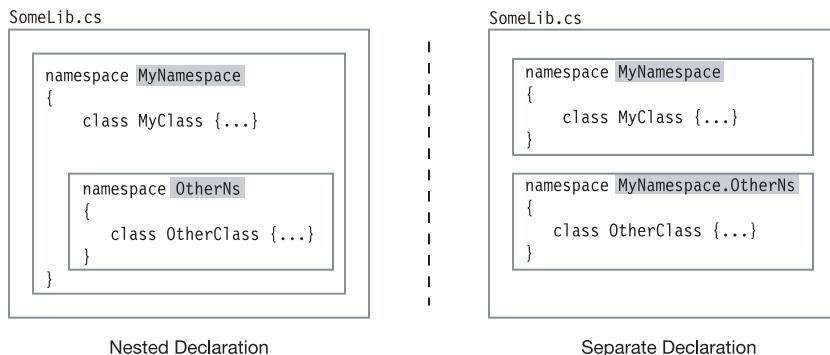
**Figure 10-10.** A namespace can be spread across source files and compiled to separate assemblies.

## Nesting Namespaces

Namespaces can be nested, producing a *nested namespace*. Nesting namespaces allows you to create a conceptual hierarchy of types.

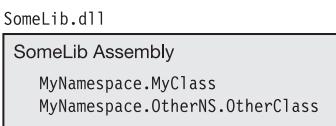
There are two ways you can declare a nested namespace:

- *Textual nesting*: You can create a nested namespace by placing its declaration inside the declaration body of the enclosing namespace. This is illustrated on the left in Figure 10-11. In this example, namespace OtherNs is nested in namespace MyNamespace.
- *Separate declaration*: You can also create a separate declaration for the nested namespace, but you must use its fully qualified name in the declaration. This is illustrated on the right in Figure 10-11. Notice that in the declaration of nested namespace OtherNs, the fully qualified name MyNamespace.OtherNS is used.



**Figure 10-11.** The two forms of declaring a nested namespace are equivalent.

Both forms of the nested namespace declarations shown in Figure 10-11 produce the same assembly, as illustrated in Figure 10-12. The figure shows the two classes declared in file SomeLib.cs, with their fully qualified names.



**Figure 10-12.** Nested namespace structure

Although the nested namespace is inside the enclosing namespace, its members are *not* members of the enclosing namespace. A common misconception is that since the nested namespace is inside the enclosing namespace, the members of the nested namespace must be a subset of the enclosing namespace. This is not true; the namespaces are separate.

## The using Directives

Fully qualified names can be quite long, and using them throughout your code can become quite cumbersome. There are two compiler directives, however, that allow you to avoid having to use fully qualified names—the *using namespace directive* and the *using alias directive*.

Two important points about the *using* directives are the following:

- They must be placed at the top of the source file, *before any type declarations*.
- They apply for all the namespaces in the current source file.

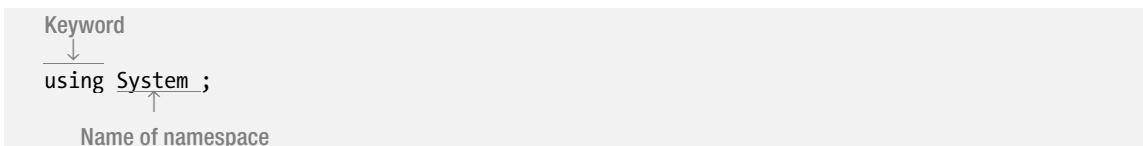
## The using Namespace Directive

You saw in the *MyWidgets* example several sections back that you can specify a class by using the fully qualified name. You can avoid having to use the long name by placing *using namespace* directives at the top of the source file.

The *using namespace* directive instructs the compiler that you will be using types from certain specific namespaces. You can then go ahead and use the simple class names without having to fully qualify them.

When the compiler encounters a name that is not in the current namespace, it checks the list of namespaces given in the *using namespace* directives and appends the unknown name to the first namespace in the list. If the resulting fully qualified name matches a class in this assembly or a referenced assembly, the compiler uses that class. If it does not match, it tries the next namespace in the list.

The *using namespace* directive consists of the keyword *using*, followed by a namespace identifier.



One method I have been using throughout the text is the *WriteLine* method, which is a member of class *Console*, in the *System* namespace. Rather than use its fully qualified name throughout the code, I simplified our work just a bit, by the use of the *using namespace* directive at the top of the code.

For example, the following code uses the *using namespace* directive in the first line to state that the code uses classes or other types from the *System* namespace.

```

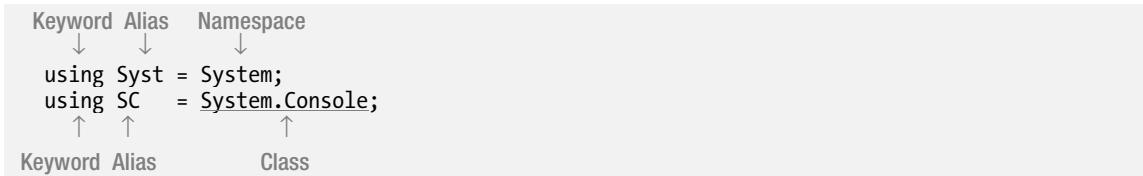
using System; // using namespace directive
...
System.Console.WriteLine("This is text 1"); // Use fully qualified name
Console.WriteLine("This is text 2"); // Use directive
    
```

## The using Alias Directive

The *using alias directive* allows you to assign an alias for either of the following:

- A namespace
- A type in a namespace

For example, the following code shows the use of two `using` alias directives. The first directive instructs the compiler that identifier `Syst` is an alias for namespace `System`. The second directive says that identifier `SC` is an alias for class `System.Console`.



The following code uses these aliases. All three lines of code in `Main` call the `System.Console.WriteLine` method.

- The first statement in `Main` uses the alias for a *namespace*—`System`.
- The second statement uses the *fully qualified name* of the method.
- The third statement uses the alias for a *class*—`Console`.

```

using Syst = System;                      // using alias directive
using SC   = System.Console;                // using alias directive

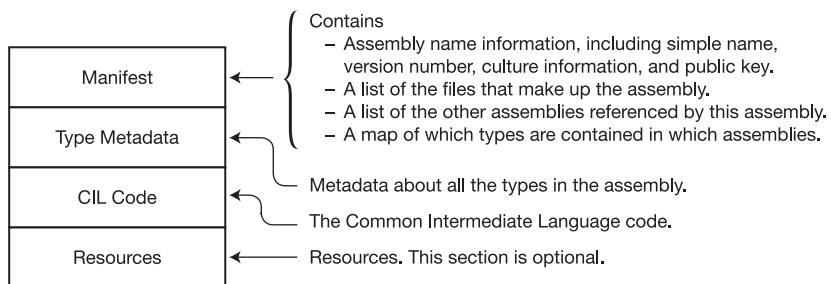
namespace MyNamespace
{
    class SomeClass
    {
        static void Main()
        { Alias for namespace
          ↓
          Syst.Console.WriteLine ("Using the namespace alias.");
          System.Console.WriteLine("Using fully qualified name.");
          SC.WriteLine      ("Using the type alias");
          ↑
        } Alias for class
    }
}
  
```

## The Structure of an Assembly

As you saw in Chapter 1, an assembly does not contain native machine code, but Common Intermediate Language (CIL) code. It also contains everything needed by the Just-in-Time (JIT) compiler to convert the CIL into native code at run time, including references to other assemblies it references. The file extension for an assembly is generally .exe or .dll.

Most assemblies are composed of a single file. Figure 10-13 illustrates the four main sections of an assembly.

- The assembly *manifest* contains the following:
  - The identity of the assembly
  - A list of the files that make up the assembly
  - A map of where things are in the assembly
  - Information about other assemblies that are referenced
- The *type metadata* section contains the information about all the types defined in the assembly. This information contains everything there is to know about each type.
- The *CIL* section contains all the intermediate code for the assembly.
- The *resources* section is optional but can contain graphics or language resources.

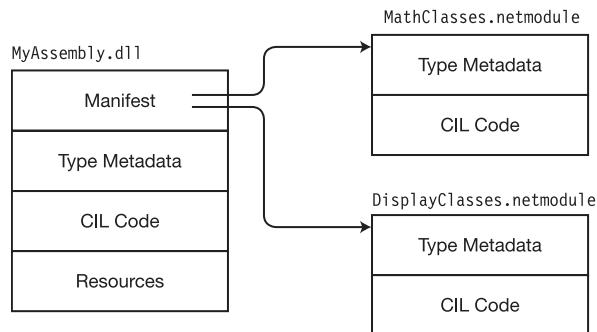


**Figure 10-13.** The structure of a single-file assembly

Although most assemblies comprise a single file, some have more. For an assembly with multiple modules, one file is the *primary module*, and the others are *secondary modules*.

- The primary module contains the manifest of the assembly and references to the secondary modules.
- The file names of secondary modules end with the extension .netmodule.
- Multiple-file assemblies are considered a single unit. They are deployed together and versioned together.

Figure 10-14 illustrates a multifile assembly with secondary modules.



**Figure 10-14.** A *multifile assembly*

## The Identity of an Assembly

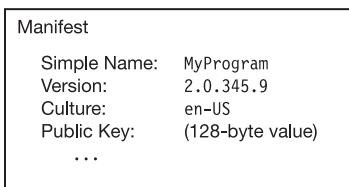
In the .NET Framework, the file names of assemblies are not as important as in other operating systems and environments. What is much more important is the *identity* of an assembly.

The identity of an assembly has four components that together should uniquely identify it. These four components are the following:

- *Simple name*: This is just the file name without the file extension. Every assembly has a simple name. It is also called the *assembly name* or the *friendly name*.
- *Version number*: This consists of a string of four period-separated integers, in the form *MajorVersion.MinorVersion.Build.Revision*—for example, 2.0.35.9.
- *Culture information*: This is a string that consists of two to five characters representing a language, or a language and a country or region. For example, the culture name for English as used in the United States is en-US. For German as used in Germany, it is de-DE.
- *Public key*: This 128-byte string should be unique to the company producing the assembly.

The public key is part of a public/private key pair, which is a set of two very large, specially chosen numbers that can be used to create secure digital signatures. The public key, as its name implies, can be made public. The private key must be guarded by the owner. The public key is part of the assembly's identity. We will look at the use of the private key later in the chapter.

The components of an assembly's name are embedded in the assembly's manifest. Figure 10-15 illustrates this section of the manifest.



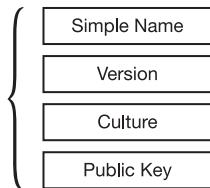
**Figure 10-15.** *The components of an assembly identity in the manifest*

Figure 10-16 shows some of the terms used in the .NET documentation and literature regarding the identity of an assembly.

Identity: All four of the components listed at the right together constitute the identity of an assembly.

Fully qualified name: A textual listing of the simple name, version, culture, and the public key, represented by a 16-byte public key token.

Display name: Same as fully qualified name.



**Figure 10-16.** *Terms for an assembly's identity*

## Strongly Named Assemblies

A *strongly named* assembly is one that has a unique digital signature attached to it. Strongly named assemblies are much more secure than assemblies that do not have strong names, for the following reasons:

- A strong name uniquely identifies an assembly. No one else can create an assembly with the same strong name, so the user can be sure that the assembly came from the claimed source.
- The contents of an assembly with a strong name cannot be altered without the security components of the CLR catching the modification.

A *weakly named* assembly is one that is not strongly named. Since a weakly named assembly does not have a digital signature, it is inherently insecure. Because a chain is only as strong as its weakest link, by default, strongly named assemblies can only access other strongly named assemblies. (There's also a way to allow "partially trusted callers," but I won't be covering that topic.)

The programmer does not produce the strong name. The compiler produces it by taking information about the assembly and hashing it to create a unique digital signature that it attaches to the assembly. The pieces of information it uses in the hash process are the following:

- The sequence of bytes composing the assembly
- The simple name
- The version number
- The culture information
- The public/private key pair

---

**Note** There is some diversity in the nomenclature surrounding strong names. What I'm calling "strongly named" is often referred to as "strong-named." What I'm calling "weakly named" is sometimes referred to as "not strong-named" or "assembly with a simple name."

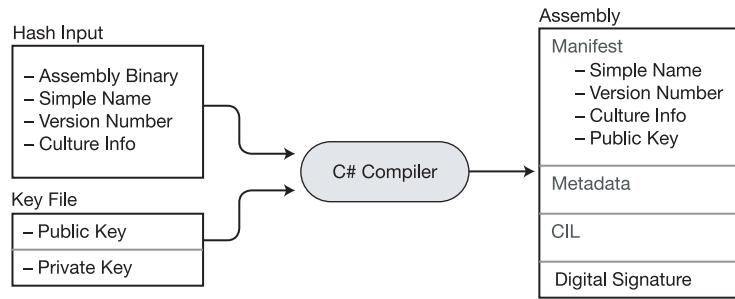
---

## Creating a Strongly Named Assembly

To strongly name an assembly using Visual Studio 2010, you must have a copy of the public/private key pair file. If you don't have a key file, you can have Visual Studio generate one for you. You can then do the following:

1. Open the properties of the project.
2. Select the Signing tab.
3. Select the Sign the Assembly check box, and enter the location of the key file or create a new one.

When you compile the code, the compiler will produce a strongly named assembly. Figure 10-17 illustrates the inputs and output of the compiler.



**Figure 10-17.** Creating a strongly named assembly

## Private Deployment of an Assembly

Deploying a program on a target machine can be as simple as creating a directory on the machine and copying the application to it. If the application doesn't need other assemblies (such as DLLs) or if the required DLLs are in the same directory, the program should work just fine where it is. Programs deployed this way are called *private assemblies*, and this method of deployment is called *xcopy* deployment.

Private assemblies can be placed in almost any directory and are self-sufficient as long as all the files on which they depend are in the same directory or a subdirectory. In fact, you could have several directories in various parts of the file system, each with the identical set of assemblies, and they would all work fine in their various locations.

Some important things to know about private assembly deployment are the following:

- The directory in which the private assemblies are placed is called the *application directory*.
- A private assembly can be either strongly named or weakly named.
- There is no need to register components in the registry.
- To uninstall a private assembly, just delete it from the file system.

## Shared Assemblies and the GAC

Private assemblies are very useful, but sometimes you'll want to put a DLL in a central place so that a single copy can be shared by other assemblies on the system. .NET has such a repository, called the *global assembly cache* (GAC). An assembly placed into the GAC is called a *shared assembly*.

Some important facts about the GAC are the following:

- Only strongly named assemblies can be added to the GAC.
- Although earlier versions of the GAC accepted only files with the .dll extension, you can now add assemblies with the .exe extension as well.
- The GAC is located in a subdirectory named Assembly, of the Windows system directory.

## Installing Assemblies into the GAC

When you attempt to install an assembly into the GAC, the security components of the CLR must first verify that the digital signature on the assembly is valid. If there is no digital signature or if it is invalid, the system will not install it into the GAC.

This is a one-time check, however. After an assembly is in the GAC, no further checks are required when it is referenced by a running program.

The gacutil.exe command-line utility allows you to add and delete assemblies from the GAC and list the assemblies it contains. The three most useful flags are the following:

- /i: Inserts an assembly into the GAC
- /u: Uninstalls an assembly from the GAC
- /l: Lists the assemblies in the GAC

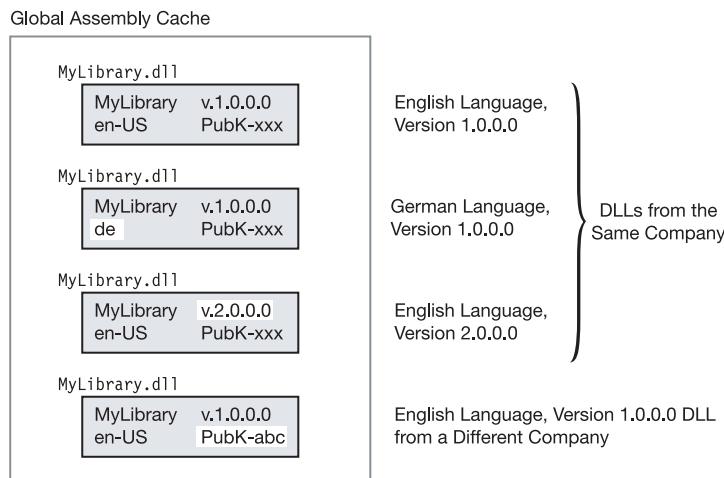
## Side-by-Side Execution in the GAC

After an assembly is deployed to the GAC, it can be used by other assemblies in the system. Remember, however, that an assembly's identity consists of all four parts of the fully qualified name. So, if the version number of a library changes or if it has a different public key, these differences specify different assemblies.

The result is that there can be many different assemblies in the GAC that have the same file name. Although they have the same file name, *they are different assemblies* and coexist perfectly fine together in the GAC. This makes it easy for different applications to use different versions of the same DLL at the same time, since they are different assemblies with different identities. This is called *side-by-side execution*.

Figure 10-18 illustrates four different DLLs in the GAC that all have the same file name—`MyLibrary.dll`. Looking at the figure, you can see that the first three come from the same company, because they have the same public key, and the fourth comes from a different source, since it has a different public key. These versions differ as follows:

- An English version 1.0.0.0, from company A
- An English version 2.0.0.0, from company A
- A German version 1.0.0.0, from company A
- An English version 1.0.0.0, from company B



**Figure 10-18.** Four different side-by-side DLLs in the GAC

## Configuration Files

Configuration files contain information about the application, for use by the CLR at run time. They can instruct the CLR to do such things as use a different version of a DLL or to look in additional directories when searching for a DLL referenced by the program.

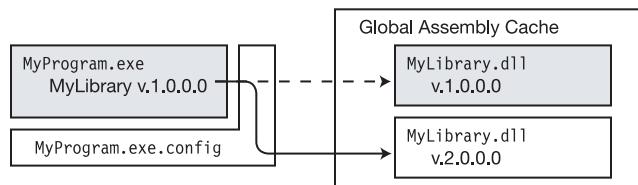
Configuration files consist of XML code and don't contain C# code. The details of writing the XML code are beyond the scope of this text, but you should understand the purpose of configuration files and how they are used. One way they are used is to update an application assembly to use the new version of a DLL.

Suppose, for example, that you have an application that references a DLL in the GAC. The identity of the reference in the application's manifest must exactly match the identity of the assembly in the GAC. If a new version of the DLL is released, it can be added to the GAC, where it can happily coexist with the old version.

The application, however, still has embedded in its manifest the identity of the old version of the DLL. Unless you recompile the application and make it reference the new version of the DLL, it will continue to use the old version. That's fine, if that's what you want.

If, however, you do not want to recompile the application but want it to use the new DLL, then you can create a configuration file telling the CLR to use the new version rather than the old version. The configuration file is placed in the application directory.

Figure 10-19 illustrates objects in the run-time process. The `MyProgram.exe` application on the left calls for version 1.0.0.0 of the `MyLibrary.dll`, as indicated by the dashed arrow. But the application has a configuration file, which instructs the CLR to load version 2.0.0.0 instead. Notice that the name of the configuration file consists of the full name of the executable file including the extension, plus the additional extension `.config`.



**Figure 10-19.** Using a configuration file to bind to a new version

## Delayed Signing

It is important that companies carefully guard the private key of their official public/private key pair. Otherwise, if untrustworthy people were to obtain it, they could publish code masquerading as the company's code. To avoid this, companies clearly cannot allow free access to the file containing their public/private key pair. In large companies, the final strong naming of an assembly is often performed at the very end of the development process, by a special group with access to the key pair.

This can cause problems, though, in the development and testing processes, for several reasons. First, since the public key is one of the four components of an assembly's identity, it can't be set until the public key is supplied. Also, a weakly named assembly cannot be deployed to the GAC. Both the developers and testers need to be able to compile and test the code in the way it will be deployed on release, including its identity and location in the GAC.

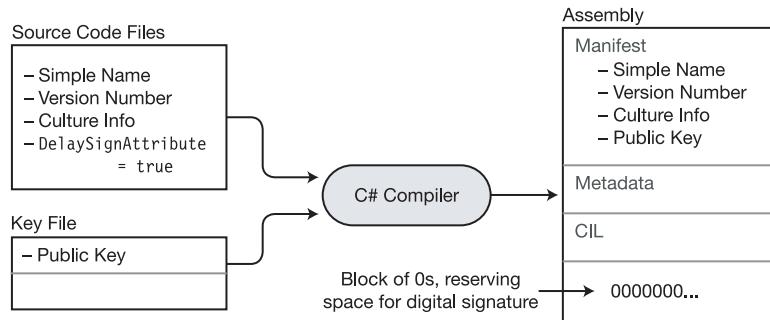
To allow for this, there is a modified form of assigning a strong name, called *delayed signing*, or *partial signing*, that overcomes these problems, but without releasing access to the private key.

In delayed signing, the compiler uses only the public key of the public/private key pair. The public key can then be placed in the manifest to complete the assembly's identity. Delayed signing also uses a block of 0s to reserve space for the digital signature.

To create a delay-signed assembly, you must do two things. First, create a copy of the key file that has only the public key, rather than the public/private key pair. Next, add an additional attribute called `DelaySignAttribute` to the assembly scope of the source code and set its value to `true`.

Figure 10-20 shows the input and output for producing a delay-signed assembly. Notice the following in the figure:

- In the input, the `DelaySignAttribute` is located in the source files, and the key file contains only the public key.
- In the output, there is space reserved for the digital signature at the bottom of the assembly.

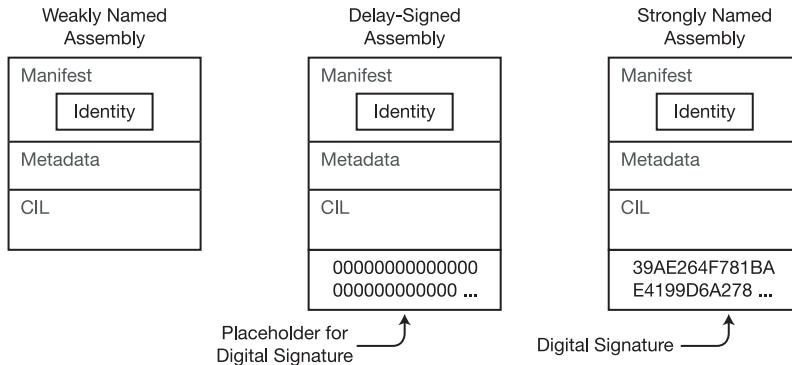


**Figure 10-20.** Creating a delay-signed assembly

If you try to deploy the delay-signed assembly to the GAC, the CLR will not allow it, because it's not strongly named. To deploy it on a particular machine, you must first issue a command-line command that disables the GAC's signature verification on that machine, for this assembly only, and allows it to be installed in the GAC. To do this, issue the following command from the Visual Studio command prompt.

```
sn -vr MyAssembly.dll
```

You've now looked at weakly named assemblies, delay-signed assemblies, and strongly named assemblies. Figure 10-21 summarizes the differences in their structures.



**Figure 10-21.** The structures of different assembly signing stages



# Exceptions

- What Are Exceptions?
- The try Statement
- The Exception Classes
- The catch Clause
- Examples Using Specific catch Clauses
- The catch Clauses Section
- The finally Block
- Finding a Handler for an Exception
- Searching Further
- Throwing Exceptions
- Throwing Without an Exception Object

## What Are Exceptions?

An *exception* is a run-time error in a program that violates a system or application constraint, or a condition that is not expected to occur during normal operation. Examples are when a program tries to divide a number by zero or tries to write to a read-only file. When these occur, the system catches the error and *raises* an exception.

If the program has not provided code to handle the exception, the system will halt the program. For example, the following code raises an exception when it attempts to divide by zero:

```
static void Main()
{
    int x = 10, y = 0;
    x /= y;           // Attempt to divide by zero--raises an exception
}
```

When this code is run, the system displays the following error message:

---

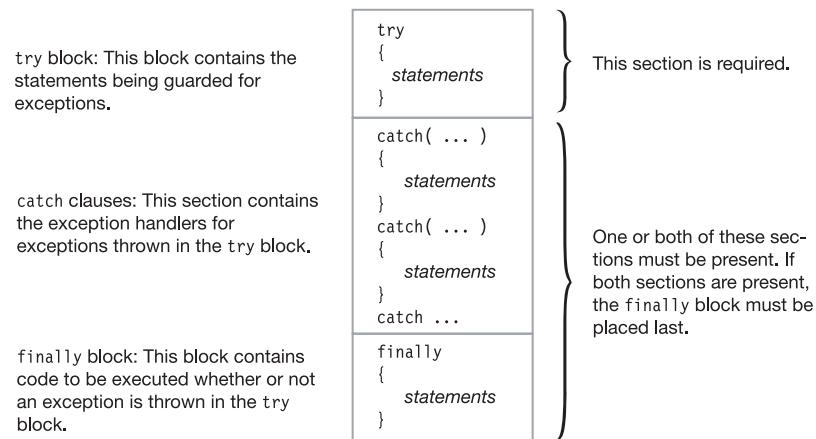
```
Unhandled Exception: System.DivideByZeroException: Attempted to divide by zero.
at Exceptions_1.Program.Main() in C:\Progs\Exceptions\Program.cs:line 12
```

---

# The try Statement

The `try` statement allows you to designate blocks of code to be guarded for exceptions and to supply code to handle them if they occur. The `try` statement consists of three sections, as shown in Figure 11-1.

- The `try block` contains the code that is being guarded for exceptions.
- The `catch clauses section` contains one or more `catch clauses`. These are blocks of code to handle the exceptions. They are also known as *exception handlers*.
- The `finally block` contains code to be executed under all circumstances, whether or not an exception is raised.



**Figure 11-1.** Structure of the *try statement*

## Handling the Exception

The previous example showed that attempting to divide by zero causes an exception. You can modify the program to handle that exception by placing the code inside a `try` block and supplying a simple `catch` clause. When the exception is raised, it is caught and handled in the `catch` block.

```
static void Main()
{
    int x = 10;

    try
    {
        int y = 0;
        x /= y;                  // Raises an exception
    }
    catch
    {
        ...                      // Code to handle the exception

        Console.WriteLine("Handling all exceptions - Keep on Running");
    }
}
```

This code produces the following message. Notice that, other than the output message, there is no indication that an exception has occurred.

---

Handling all exceptions - Keep on Running

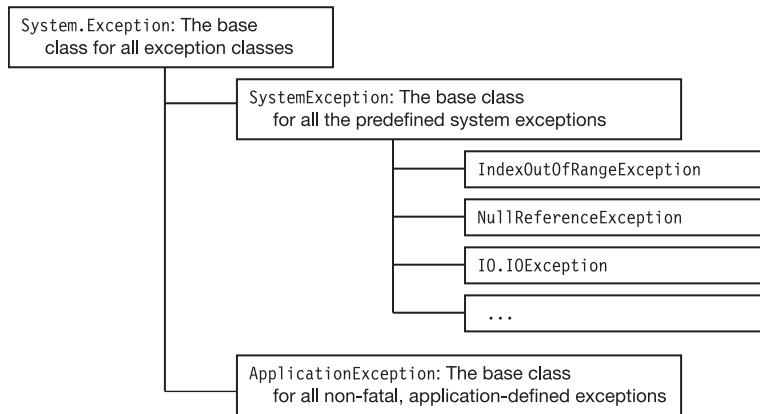
---

# The Exception Classes

There are many different types of exceptions that can occur in a program. The BCL defines a number of exception classes, each representing a specific type. When one occurs, the CLR does the following:

- It creates an exception object for the type.
- It looks for an appropriate catch clause to handle it.

All exception classes are ultimately derived from the `System.Exception` class. Figure 11-2 shows a portion of the exception inheritance hierarchy.



**Figure 11-2.** Structure of the exception hierarchy

An exception object contains read-only properties with information about the exception that caused it. Table 11-1 shows some of these properties.

**Table 11-1.** Selected Properties of an Exception Object

Property	Type	Description
Message	string	This property contains an error message explaining the cause of the exception.
StackTrace	string	This property contains information describing where the exception occurred.
InnerException	Exception	If the current exception was raised by another exception, this property contains a reference to the previous exception.
HelpLink	string	This property can be set by application-defined exceptions to give a URN or URL for information on the cause of the exception.
Source	string	If not set by an application-defined exception, this property contains the name of the assembly where the exception originated.

# The catch Clause

The catch clause handles exceptions. There are three forms, allowing different levels of processing. Figure 11-3 shows the forms.

<pre>catch {     Statements }</pre>	<b>General catch Clause</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Does not have a parameter list after the catch keyword.</li> <li>– Matches any type of exception raised in the try block.</li> </ul>
<pre>catch( ExceptionType ) {     Statements }</pre>	<b>Specific catch Clause</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Takes the name of an exception class as a single parameter.</li> <li>– Matches any exception of the named type.</li> </ul>
<pre>catch( ExceptionType ExceptionVariable ) {     Statements }</pre>	<b>Specific catch Clause with Object</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Includes an identifier after the name of the exception class.</li> <li>– The identifier acts as a local variable in the block of the catch clause, and is called the <i>exception variable</i>.</li> <li>– The exception variable references the exception object, and can be used to access information about the object.</li> </ul>

**Figure 11-3.** The three forms of the catch clause

The *general* catch clause can accept any exception but can't determine the type of exception that caused it. This allows only general processing and cleanup for whatever exception might occur.

The *specific* catch clause form takes the name of an exception class as a parameter. It matches exceptions of the specified class or exception classes derived from it.

The *specific catch clause with object* form gives you the most information about the exception. It matches exceptions of the specified class, or exception classes derived from it. It gives you a reference to the exception object created by the CLR, by assigning it to the *exception variable*. You can access the exception variable's properties within the block of the catch clause to get specific information about the exception raised.

For example, the following code handles exceptions of type `IndexOutOfRangeException`. When one occurs, a reference to the actual exception object is passed into the code with parameter name `e`. The three `WriteLine` statements each read a string field from the exception object.



## Examples Using Specific catch Clauses

Going back to our divide-by-zero example, the following code modifies the previous catch clause to specifically handle exceptions of the `DivideByZeroException` class. While in the previous example, the catch clause would handle any exception raised in the try block, the current example will only handle those of the `DivideByZeroException` class.

```
int x = 10;
try
{
    int y = 0;
    x /= y;           // Raises an exception
}
    ↓
catch ( DivideByZeroException ) { ... }
    ↓
    Console.WriteLine("Handling an exception.");
}
```

You could further modify the catch clause to use an exception variable. This allows you to access the exception object inside the catch block.

```
int x = 10;
try
{
    int y = 0;
    x /= y;           // Raises an exception
}
    ↓
    ↓
    ↓
catch ( DivideByZeroException e ) { ... }
    ↓
    ↓
    ↓
    Accessing the exception variable
    ↓
    Console.WriteLine("Message: {0}", e.Message );
    Console.WriteLine("Source: {0}", e.Source );
    Console.WriteLine("Stack: {0}", e.StackTrace );
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

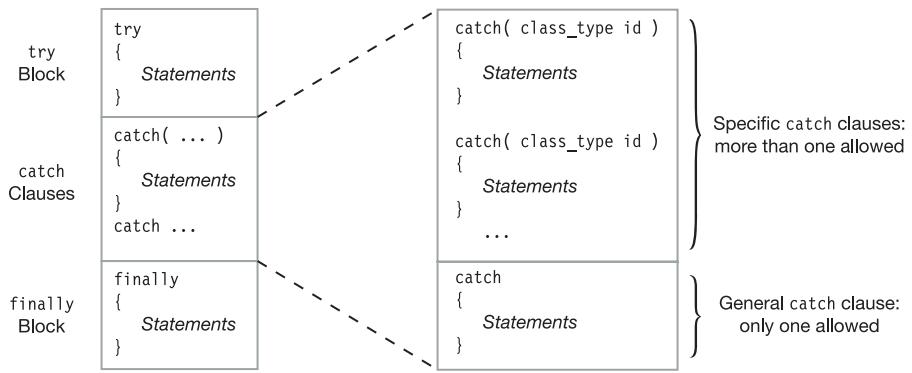
```
Message: Attempted to divide by zero.
Source: Exceptions 1
Stack: at Exceptions_1.Program.Main() in C:\Progs\Exceptions 1\
Exceptions 1\Program.cs:line 14
```

---

# The catch Clauses Section

The purpose of a catch clause is to allow you to handle an exception in an elegant way. If your catch clause is of the form that takes a parameter, then the system has set that exception variable to a reference to the exception object, which you can inspect to determine the cause of the exception. If the exception was the result of a previous exception, you can get a reference to that previous exception's exception object from the exception variable's `InnerException` property.

The catch clauses section can contain multiple catch clauses. Figure 11-4 shows a summary of the catch clauses section.



**Figure 11-4.** Structure of the catch clauses section of a try statement

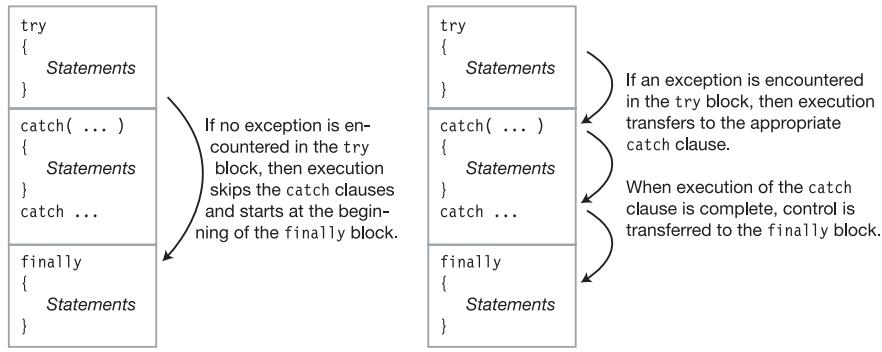
When an exception is raised, the system searches the list of catch clauses in order, and the first catch clause that matches the type of the exception object is executed. Because of this, there are two important rules in ordering the catch clauses. They are the following:

- The specific catch clauses must be ordered with the most specific exception types first, progressing to the most general. For example, if you declare an exception class *derived from* NullReferenceException, the catch clause for your derived exception type should be listed before the catch clause for NullReferenceException.
  - If there is a general catch clause, it must be last, after all specific catch clauses. Using the general catch clause is discouraged. You should use one of the specific catch clauses if at all possible. The general catch clause hides bugs by allowing the program to continue execution and can leave the program in an unknown state.

## The finally Block

If a program's flow of control enters a try statement that has a finally block, the finally block is *always* executed. Figure 11-5 shows the flow of control.

- If no exception occurs inside the try block, then at the end of the try block, control skips over any catch clauses and goes to the finally block.
- If an exception occurs inside the try block, then the appropriate catch clause in the catch clauses section is executed, followed by execution of the finally block.



**Figure 11-5.** Execution of the finally block

The finally block will always be executed before returning to the calling code, even if a try block has a return statement or an exception is thrown in the catch block. For example, in the following code, there is a return statement in the middle of the try block that is executed under certain conditions. This does not allow it to bypass the finally statement.

```

try
{
    if (inVal < 10) {
        Console.WriteLine("First Branch - ");
        return;
    }
    else
        Console.WriteLine("Second Branch - ");
}
finally
{ Console.WriteLine("In finally statement"); }

```

This code produces the following output when variable inVal has the value 5:

---

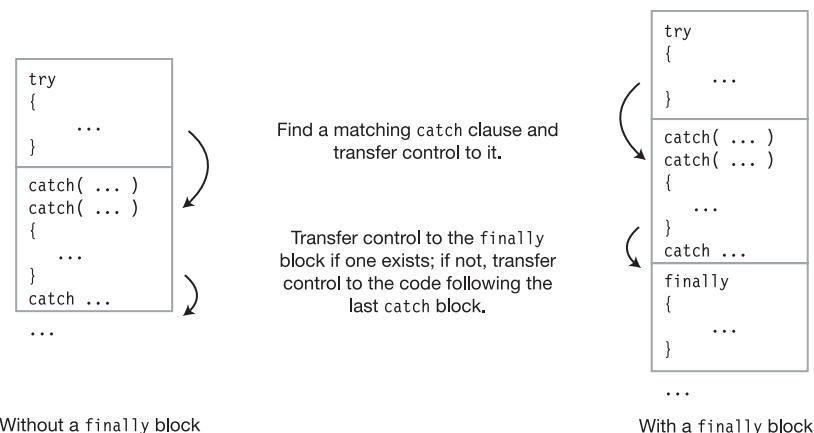
First Branch - In finally statement

---

## Finding a Handler for an Exception

When a program raises an exception, the system checks to see whether the program has provided a handler for it. Figure 11-6 shows the flow of control.

- If the exception occurred inside a try block, the system will check to see whether any of the catch clauses can handle the exception.
- If an appropriate catch clause is found, the one of the following happens:
  - The catch clause is executed.
  - If there is a finally block, it is executed.
  - Execution continues after the end of the try statement (that is, after the finally block, or after the last catch clause if there is no finally block).



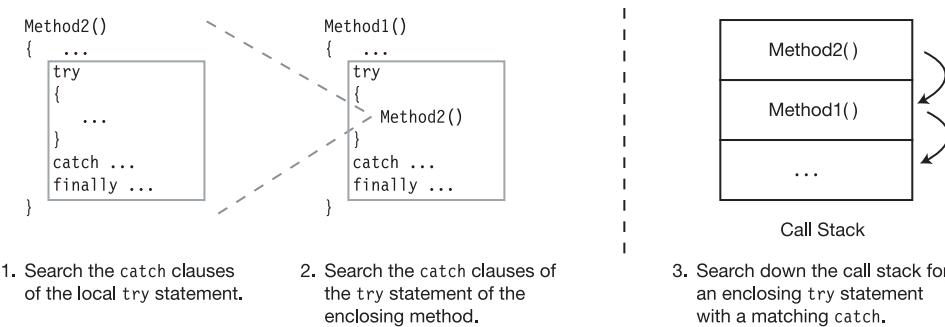
**Figure 11-6.** Exception with handler in current try statement

# Searching Further

If the exception was raised in a section of code that was not guarded by a `try` statement or if the `try` statement does not have a matching exception handler, the system will have to look further for a matching handler. It will do this by searching down the call stack, in sequence, to see whether there is an enclosing `try` block with a matching handler.

Figure 11-7 illustrates the search process. On the left of the figure is the calling structure of the code, and on the right is the call stack. The figure shows that `Method2` is called from inside the `try` block of `Method1`. If an exception occurs inside the `try` block in `Method2`, the system does the following:

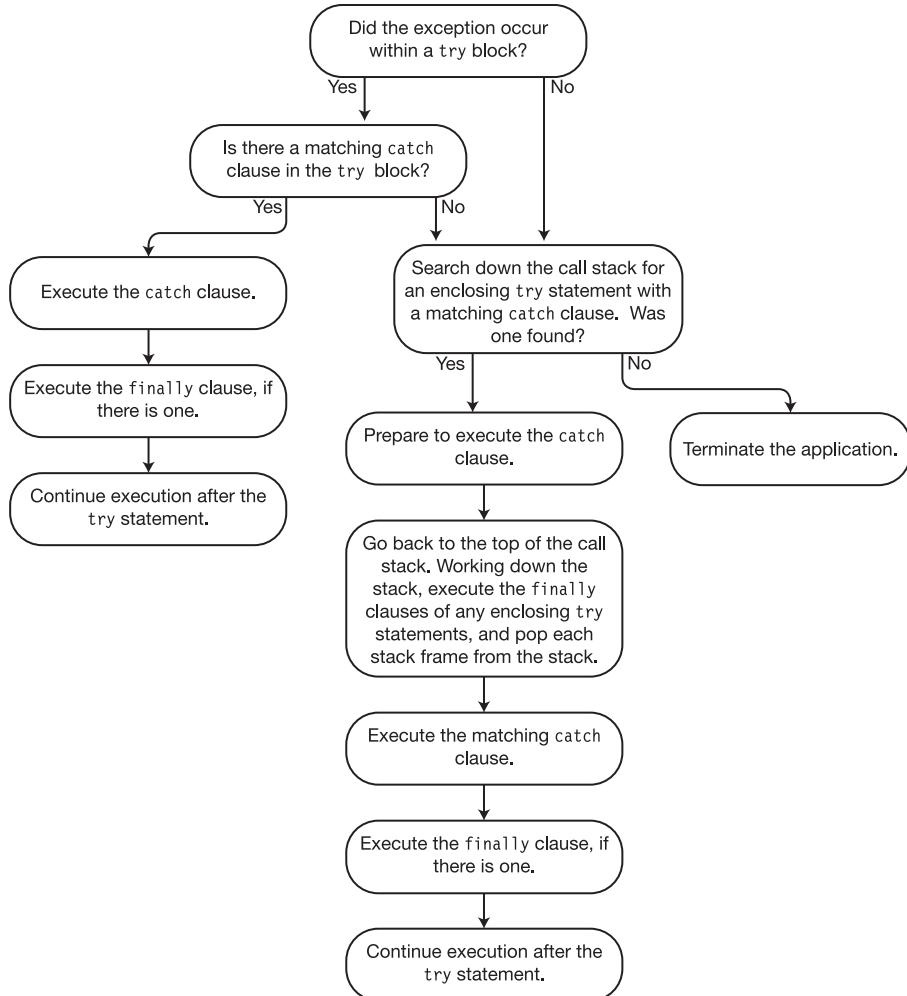
- First, it checks to see whether `Method2` has exception handlers that can handle the exception.
  - If so, `Method2` handles it, and program execution continues.
  - If not, the system continues down the call stack to `Method1`, searching for an appropriate handler.
- If `Method1` has an appropriate catch clause, the system does the following:
  - Goes back to the top of the call stack—which is `Method2`
  - Executes `Method2`'s `finally` block and pops `Method2` off the stack
  - Executes `Method1`'s catch clause and its `finally` block
- If `Method1` doesn't have an appropriate catch clause, the system continues searching down the call stack.



**Figure 11-7.** Searching down the call stack

## General Algorithm

Figure 11-8 shows the general algorithm for handling an exception.



**Figure 11-8.** The general algorithm for handling an exception

## Example of Searching Down the Call Stack

In the following code, Main starts execution and calls method A, which calls method B. A description and diagram of the process are given after the code and in Figure 11-9.

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass MCls = new MyClass();
        try
            { MCls.A(); }
        catch (DivideByZeroException e)
            { Console.WriteLine("catch clause in Main()"); }
        finally
            { Console.WriteLine("finally clause in Main()"); }
        Console.WriteLine("After try statement in Main.");
        Console.WriteLine("                -- Keep running.");
    }
}

class MyClass
{
    public void A()
    {
        try
            { B(); }
        catch (System.NullReferenceException)
            { Console.WriteLine("catch clause in A()"); }
        finally
            { Console.WriteLine("finally clause in A()"); }
    }

    void B()
    {
        int x = 10, y = 0;
        try
            { x /= y; }
        catch (System.IndexOutOfRangeException)
            { Console.WriteLine("catch clause in B()"); }
        finally
            { Console.WriteLine("finally clause in B()"); }
    }
}
```

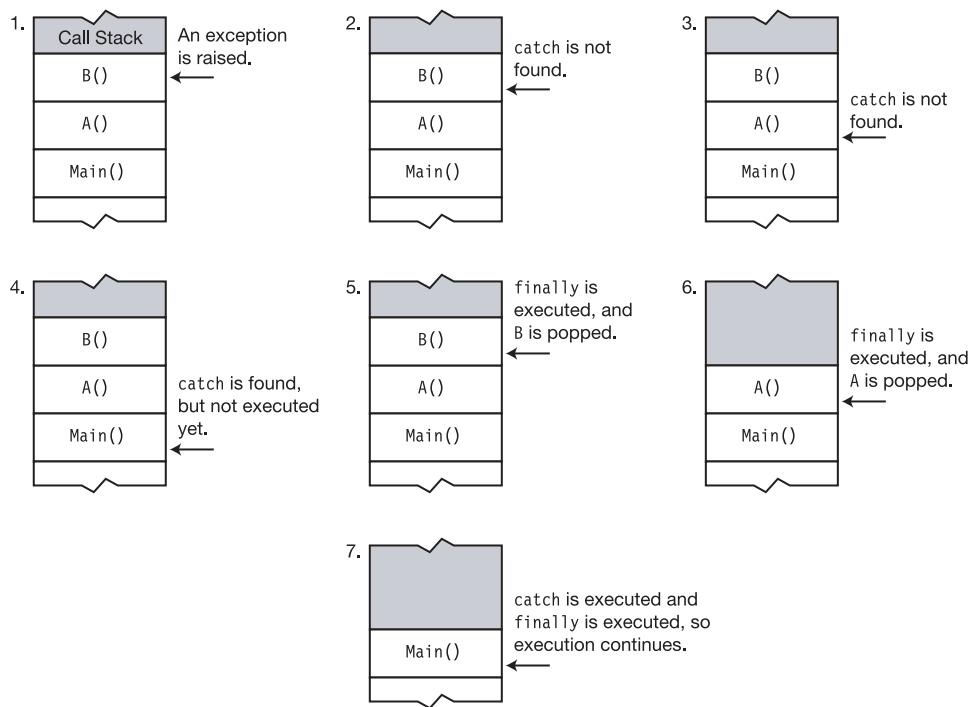
This code produces the following output:

---

```
finally clause in B()
finally clause in A()
catch clause in Main()
finally clause in Main()
After try statement in Main.
    -- Keep running.
```

---

1. Main calls A, which calls B, which encounters a DivideByZeroException exception.
2. The system checks B's catch section for a matching catch clause. Although it has one for IndexOutOfRangeException, it doesn't have one for DivideByZeroException.
3. The system then moves down the call stack and checks A's catch section, where it finds that A also doesn't have a matching catch clause.
4. The system continues down the call stack and checks Main's catch clause section, where it finds that Main *does* have a DivideByZeroException catch clause.
5. Although the matching catch clause has now been located, *it is not executed yet*. Instead, the system goes back to the top of the stack, executes B's finally clause, and pops B from the call stack.
6. The system then moves to A, executes its finally clause, and pops A from the call stack.
7. Finally, Main's matching catch clause is executed, followed by its finally clause. Execution then continues after the end of Main's try statement.



**Figure 11-9.** Searching the stack for an exception handler

# Throwing Exceptions

You can make your code explicitly raise an exception by using the `throw` statement. The syntax for the `throw` statement is the following:

```
throw ExceptionObject;
```

For example, the following code defines a method called `PrintArg`, which takes a `string` argument and prints it out. Inside the `try` block, it first checks to make sure the argument is not null. If it is, it creates an `ArgumentNullException` instance and throws it. The exception instance is caught in the `catch` statement, and the error message is printed. `Main` calls the method twice: once with a null argument and then with a valid argument.

```
class MyClass
{
    public static void PrintArg(string arg)
    {
        try
        {
            if (arg == null)                                Supply name of null argument
            {
                ArgumentNullException myEx = new ArgumentNullException("arg");
                throw myEx;
            }
            Console.WriteLine(arg);
        }
        catch (ArgumentNullException e)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Message: {0}", e.Message);
        }
    }
}
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string s = null;
        MyClass.PrintArg(s);
        MyClass.PrintArg("Hi there!");
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Message: Value cannot be null.
Parameter name: arg
Hi there!
```

---

# Throwing Without an Exception Object

The `throw` statement can also be used without an exception object, inside a `catch` block.

- This form rethrows the current exception, and the system continues its search for additional handlers for it.
- This form can be used only inside a `catch` statement.

For example, the following code rethrows the exception from inside the first `catch` clause:

```
class MyClass
{
    public static void PrintArg(string arg)
    {
        try
        {
            try
            {
                if (arg == null)                               Supply name of null argument
                {
                    ArgumentNullException myEx = new ArgumentNullException("arg");
                    throw myEx;
                }
                Console.WriteLine(arg);
            }
            catch (ArgumentNullException e)
            {
                Console.WriteLine("Inner Catch: {0}", e.Message);
                throw;
            }   ↑
        }   Rethrow the exception, with no additional parameters
        catch
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Outer Catch: Handling an Exception.");
        }
    }
}

class Program {
    static void Main() {
        string s = null;
        MyClass.PrintArg(s);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

---

Inner Catch: Value cannot be null.  
Parameter name: arg  
Outer Catch: Handling an Exception.

---

---





# Structs

- What Are Structs?
- Structs Are Value Types
- Assigning to a Struct
- Constructors and Destructors
- Field Initializers Are Not Allowed
- Structs Are Sealed
- Boxing and Unboxing
- Structs As Return Values and Parameters
- Additional Information About Structs

## What Are Structs?

Structs are programmer-defined data types, very similar to classes. They have data members and function members. Although similar to classes, there are a number of important differences. The most important ones are the following:

- Classes are reference types, and structs are value types.
- Structs are implicitly sealed, which means they cannot be derived from.

The syntax for declaring a struct is similar to that of declaring a class:

```
Keyword
↓
struct StructName
{
    MemberDeclarations
}
```

For example, the following code declares a struct named Point. It has two public fields, named X and Y. In Main, three variables of struct type Point are declared, and their values are assigned and printed out.

```
struct Point
{
    public int X;
    public int Y;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Point first, second, third;

        first.X = 10; first.Y = 10;
        second.X = 20; second.Y = 20;
        third.X = first.X + second.X;
        third.Y = first.Y + second.Y;

        Console.WriteLine("first: {0}, {1}", first.X, first.Y);
        Console.WriteLine("second: {0}, {1}", second.X, second.Y);
        Console.WriteLine("third: {0}, {1}", third.X, third.Y);
    }
}
```

## Structs Are Value Types

As with all value types, a variable of a struct type contains its own data. Consequently:

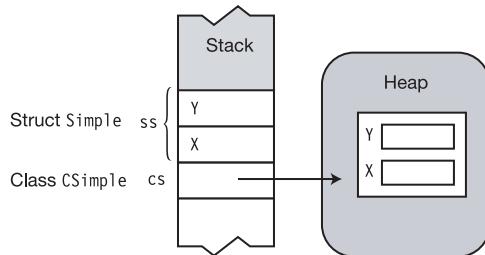
- A variable of a struct type cannot be null.
- Two structs variables cannot refer to the same object.

For example, the following code declares a class called `CSimple`, a struct called `Simple`, and a variable of each. Figure 12-1 shows how the two would be arranged in memory.

```
class CSimple
{
    public int X;
    public int Y;
}

struct Simple
{
    public int X;
    public int Y;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        CSimple cs = new CSimple();
        Simple ss = new Simple();
        ...
    }
}
```



**Figure 12-1.** Memory arrangement of a class versus a struct

## Assigning to a Struct

Assigning one struct to another copies the values from one to the other. This is quite different from copying from a class variable, where only the reference is copied.

Figure 12-2 shows the difference between the assignment of a class variable and a struct variable. Notice that after the class assignment, `cs2` is pointing at the same object in the heap as `cs1`. But after the struct assignment, the values of `ss2`'s members are copies of those in `ss1`.

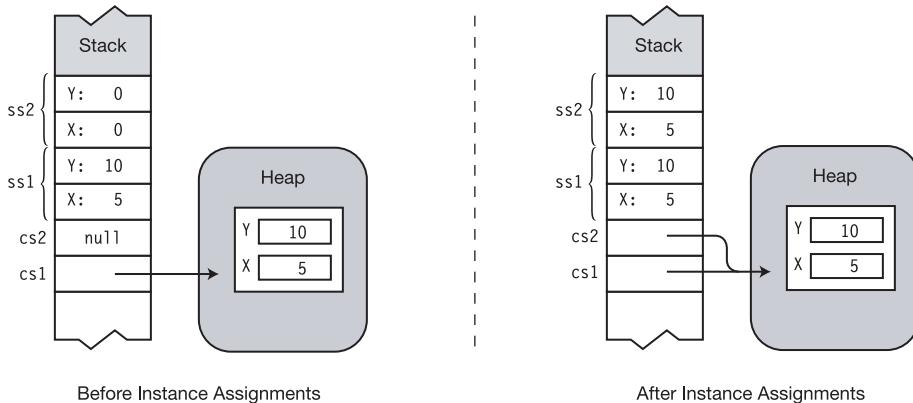
```
class CSimple
{ public int X; public int Y; }

struct Simple
{ public int X; public int Y; }

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        CSimple cs1 = new CSimple(), cs2 = null;           // Class instances
        Simple ss1 = new Simple(), ss2 = new Simple(); // Struct instances

        cs1.X = ss1.X = 5;                                // Assign 5 to ss1.X and cs1.X
        cs1.Y = ss1.Y = 10;                               // Assign 10 to ss1.Y and cs1.Y

        cs2 = cs1;                                         // Assign class instance
        ss2 = ss1;                                         // Assign struct instance
    }
}
```



**Figure 12-2.** Assigning a class variable and a struct variable

# Constructors and Destructors

Structs can have instance and static constructors, but destructors are not allowed.

## Instance Constructors

The language implicitly supplies a parameterless constructor for every struct. This constructor sets each of the struct's members to the default value for that type. Value members are set to their default values. Reference members are set to null.

The predefined parameterless constructor exists for every struct—and you cannot delete or redefine it. You can, however, create additional constructors, as long as they have parameters. Notice that this is different from classes. For classes, the compiler will supply an implicit parameterless constructor only if no other constructors are declared.

To call a constructor, including the implicit parameterless constructor, use the new operator. Notice that the new operator is used even though the memory is not allocated from the heap.

For example, the following code declares a simple struct with a constructor that takes two int parameters. Main creates two instances of the struct—one using the implicit parameterless constructor and the second with the declared two-parameter constructor.

```
struct Simple
{
    public int X;
    public int Y;

    public Simple(int a, int b)           // Constructor with parameters
    {
        X = a;
        Y = b;
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Call implicit constructor
        ↓
        Simple s1 = new Simple();
        Simple s2 = new Simple(5, 10);
        ↑
        Call constructor
        Console.WriteLine("{0},{1}", s1.X, s1.Y);
        Console.WriteLine("{0},{1}", s2.X, s2.Y);
    }
}
```

You can also create an instance of a struct without using the new operator. If you do this, however, there are some restrictions, which are the following:

- You cannot use the value of a data member until you have explicitly set it.
- You cannot call *any* function member of the struct until *all* the data members have been assigned.

For example, the following code shows two instances of struct Simple created without using the new operator. When there is an attempt to access s1 without explicitly setting the data member values, the compiler produces an error message. There are no problems reading from s2 after assigning values to its members.

```
struct Simple
{
    public int X;
    public int Y;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {   No constructor calls
        ↓
        ↓
        Simple s1, s2;
        Console.WriteLine("{0},{1}", s1.X, s1.Y);           // Compiler error
        ↑           ↑
        Not yet assigned
        s2.X = 5;
        s2.Y = 10;
        Console.WriteLine("{0},{1}", s2.X, s2.Y);           // OK
    }
}
```

## Static Constructors

As with classes, the static constructors of structs create and initialize the static data members and cannot reference instance members. Static constructors for structs follow the same rules as those for classes.

A static constructor is called before the first of either of the following two actions:

- A call to an explicitly declared constructor
- A reference to a static member of the struct

## Summary of Constructors and Destructors

Table 12-1 summarizes the use of constructors and destructors with structs.

**Table 12-1. Summary of Constructors and Destructors**

Type	Description
Instance constructor (parameterless)	Cannot be declared in the program. An implicit constructor is supplied by the system for all structs. It cannot be deleted or redefined by the program.
Instance constructor (with parameters)	Can be declared in the program.
Static constructor	Can be declared in the program.
Destructor	Cannot be declared in the program. Destructors are not allowed.

## Field Initializers Are Not Allowed

Field initializers are not allowed in struct declarations, as shown in the following code:

```
struct Simple
{
    Not allowed
    ↓
    public int x = 0;           // Compile error
    public int y = 10;          // Compile error
}
Not allowed
```

## Structs Are Sealed

Structs are always implicitly sealed, and hence you cannot derive other structs from them.

Since structs do not support inheritance, the use of several of the class member modifiers with struct members would not make sense; thus, they cannot be used in their declarations. The modifiers that cannot be used with structs are the following:

- `protected`
- `internal`
- `abstract`
- `virtual`

Structs themselves are, under the covers, derived from `System.ValueType`, which is derived from `object`.

The two inheritance-associated keywords you *can* use with struct members are the `new` and `override` modifiers, when creating a member with the same name as a member of base class `System.ValueType`, from which all structs are derived.

## Boxing and Unboxing

As with other value type data, if you want to use a struct instance as a reference type object, you must make a boxed copy. Boxing and unboxing are explained in Chapter 18.

# Structs As Return Values and Parameters

Structs can be used as return values and parameters.

- *Return value:* When a struct is a return value, a copy is created and returned from the function member.
- *Value parameter:* When a struct is used as a value parameter, a copy of the actual parameter struct is created. The copy is used in the execution of the method.
- *ref and out parameters:* If you use a struct as a `ref` or `out` parameter, a reference to the struct is passed into the method so that the data members can be changed.

## Additional Information About Structs

Allocating structs requires less overhead than creating instances of a class, so using structs instead of classes can sometimes improve performance—but beware of the high cost of boxing and unboxing.

Finally, some last things you should know about structs are the following:

- The predefined simple types (`int`, `short`, `long`, and so on), although considered primitives in .NET and C#, are all actually implemented under the covers in .NET as structs.
- You can declare partial structs in the same way as partial classes, as described in Chapter 6.

Structs, like classes, can implement interfaces, which will be covered in Chapter 17.





# Enumerations

- Enumerations
- Bit Flags
- More About Enums

# Enumerations

An enumeration, or enum, is a programmer-defined type, like a class or a struct.

- Like structs, enums are value types and therefore store their data directly, rather than separately, with a reference and data.
- Enums have only one type of member: named constants with integral values.

The following code shows an example of the declaration of a new enum type called `TrafficLight`, which contains three members. Notice that the list of member declarations is a comma-separated list; there are no semicolons in an enum declaration.

```

Keyword    Enum name
↓          ↓
enum TrafficLight
{
    Green,   ← Comma separated—no semicolons
    Yellow,  ← Comma separated—no semicolons
    Red
}

```

Every enum type has an underlying integral type, which by default is `int`.

- Each enum member is assigned a constant value of the underlying type.
- By default, the compiler assigns 0 to the first member and assigns each subsequent member the value one more than the previous member.

For example, in the `TrafficLight` type, the compiler assigns the `int` values 0, 1, and 2 to members `Green`, `Yellow`, and `Red`, respectively. In the output of the following code, you can see the underlying member values by casting them to type `int`. Figure 13-1 illustrates their arrangement on the stack.

```

TrafficLight t1 = TrafficLight.Green;
TrafficLight t2 = TrafficLight.Yellow;
TrafficLight t3 = TrafficLight.Red;

Console.WriteLine("{0},\t{1}", t1, (int) t1);
Console.WriteLine("{0},\t{1}", t2, (int) t2);
Console.WriteLine("{0},\t{1}\n", t3, (int) t3);

```

↑  
Cast to int

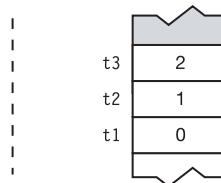
This code produces the following output:

---

```
Green, 0
Yellow, 1
Red, 2
```

---

```
static void Main( )
{
    TrafficLight t1 = TrafficLight.Green;
    TrafficLight t2 = TrafficLight.Yellow;
    TrafficLight t3 = TrafficLight.Red;
}
```



**Figure 13-1.** The member constants of an enum are represented by underlying integral values.

You can assign enum values to variables of the enum type. For example, the following code shows the declaration of three variables of type `TrafficLight`. Notice that you can assign member literals to variables, or you can copy the value from another variable of the same type.

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Type   Variable      Member
        ↓       ↓             ↓
        TrafficLight t1 = TrafficLight.Red;      // Assign from member
        TrafficLight t2 = TrafficLight.Green;     // Assign from member
        TrafficLight t3 = t2;                     // Assign from variable

        Console.WriteLine(t1);
        Console.WriteLine(t2);
        Console.WriteLine(t3);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output. Notice that the member names are printed as strings.

---

```
Red
Green
Green
```

---

## Setting the Underlying Type and Explicit Values

You can use an integral type other than `int` by placing a colon and the type name after the enum name. The type can be any integer type. All the member constants are of the enum's underlying type.

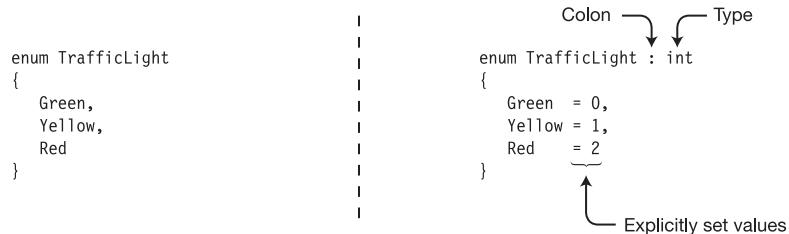
```
Colon
↓
enum TrafficLight : ulong
{
    ...
    ↑
    Underlying type
```

The values of the member constants can be any values of the underlying type. To explicitly set the value of a member, use an initializer after its name in the enum declaration. There can be duplicate values, although not duplicate names, as shown here:

```
enum TrafficLight
{
    Green = 10,
    Yellow = 15,           // Duplicate values
    Red = 15              // Duplicate values
}
```

For example, the code in Figure 13-2 shows two equivalent declarations of enum `TrafficLight`.

- The code on the left accepts the default type and numbering.
- The code on the right explicitly sets the underlying type to `int` and the members to values corresponding to the default values.

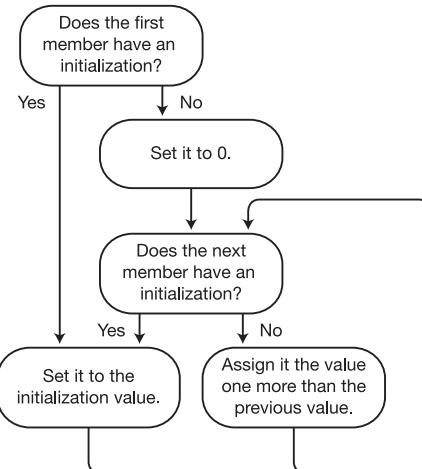


**Figure 13-2.** Equivalent enum declarations

## Implicit Member Numbering

You can explicitly assign the values for any of the member constants. If you don't initialize a member constant, the compiler implicitly assigns it a value. Figure 13-3 illustrates the rules the compiler uses for assigning those values.

- The values associated with the member names do not need to be distinct.



**Figure 13-3.** The algorithm for assigning member values

For example, the following code declares two enumerations. `CardSuit` accepts the implicit numbering of the members, as shown in the comments. `FaceCards` sets some members explicitly and accepts implicit numbering of the others.

```

enum CardSuit
{
    Hearts,                      // 0 - Since this is first
    Clubs,                       // 1 - One more than the previous one
    Diamonds,                     // 2 - One more than the previous one
    Spades,                       // 3 - One more than the previous one
    MaxSuits                      // 4 - A common way to assign a constant
}                                //      to the number of listed items.

enum FaceCards
{
    // Member           // Value assigned
    Jack              = 11,   // 11 - Explicitly set
    Queen             = 12,   // 12 - One more than the previous one
    King              = 13,   // 13 - One more than the previous one
    Ace               = 14,   // 14 - One more than the previous one
    NumberOfFaceCards = 4,    // 4 - Explicitly set
    SomeOtherValue,        // 5 - One more than the previous one
    HighestFaceCard     = Ace // 14 - Ace is defined above
}
  
```

## Bit Flags

Programmers have long used the different bits in a single word as a compact way of representing a set of on/off flags. Enums offer a convenient way to implement this.

The general steps are the following:

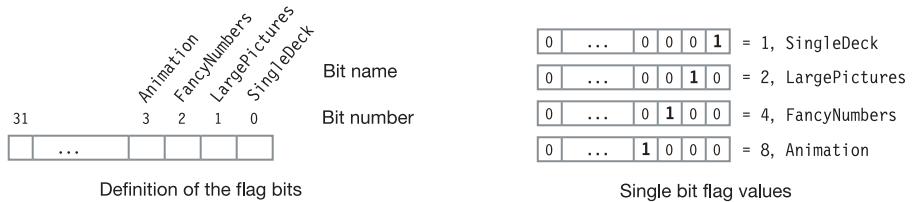
1. Determine how many bit flags you need, and choose an unsigned integral type with enough bits to hold them.
2. Determine what each bit position represents, and give it a name. Declare an enum of the chosen integral type, with each member represented by a bit position.
3. Use the bitwise OR operator to set the appropriate bits in a word holding the bit flags.
4. Unpack the bit flags by using the bitwise AND operator, or the `HasFlag` method.

For example, the following code shows the enum declaration representing the options for a card deck in a card game. The underlying type, `uint`, is more than sufficient to hold the four bit flags needed. Notice the following about the code:

- The members have names that represent binary options.
  - Each option is represented by a particular bit position in the word. Bit positions hold either a 0 or a 1.
  - Since a bit flag represents a set of bits that are either on or off, you do not want to use 0 as a member value. It already has a meaning—that all the bit flags are off.
- Hexadecimal representation is often used when working with bit patterns because there is a more direct correlation between a bit pattern and its hexadecimal representation than with its decimal representation.
- Decorating the enum with the `Flags` attribute is not actually necessary but gives some additional convenience, which I'll discuss shortly. Attributes are covered in Chapter 24.

```
[Flags]
enum CardDeckSettings : uint
{
    SingleDeck     = 0x01,          // Bit 0
    LargePictures = 0x02,          // Bit 1
    FancyNumbers   = 0x04,          // Bit 2
    Animation      = 0x08          // Bit 3
}
```

Figure 13-4 illustrates this enumeration.



**Figure 13-4.** Definition of the flag bits, and their individual representations

To create a word with the appropriate bit flags, declare a variable of the enum type, and use the bitwise OR operator to set the required bits. For example, the following code sets three of the four options:

```

Enum type   Flag word      Bit flags ORed together
↓           ↓                  ↓
CardDeckSettings ops = CardDeckSettings.SingleDeck
| CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers
| CardDeckSettings.Animation ;
```

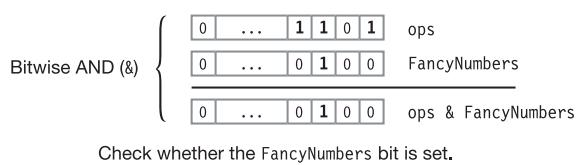
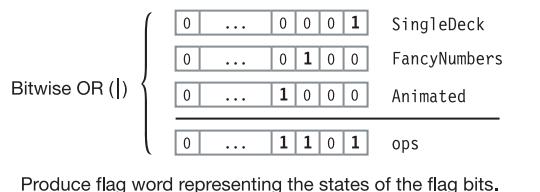
Prior to C# 4.0, to determine whether a particular bit was set, you would use the bitwise AND operator with the flag word and the bit flag.

For example, the following code checks a value to see whether the FancyNumbers bit flag is set. It does this by ANDing that value with the bit flag and then comparing that result with the bit flag. If the bit was set in the original value, then the result of the AND operation will have the same bit pattern as the bit flag.

```

bool useFancyNumbers =
    (ops & CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers) == CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers;
```

Figure 13-5 illustrates the process of creating the flag word and then checking whether a particular bit is set.



**Figure 13-5.** Producing a flag word and checking it for a particular bit flag

This process of checking a flag word for a particular bit or set of bits is such a common task that C# 4.0 introduced a new instance method to the enum type to do the process for you. The method is called `HasFlag`. You use it on an instance of a flag word and pass it the bit flag you want to check for.

For example, the previous check for `useFancyNumbers` can be significantly shortened and simplified to the following statement:

```
UseFancyNumbers = ops.HasFlag(CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers);  
                  ↑          ↑  
      Flag word      Bit flag
```

The `HasFlag` method can also check for multiple bit flags. For example, the following code checks whether the flag word, `ops`, has both the `Animation` and `FancyNumbers` bits set. The code does the following:

- The first statement creates a test word instance, called `testFlags`, with the `Animation` and `FancyNumbers` bits set.
- It then passes `testFlags` as the parameter to the `HasFlags` method.
- `HasFlags` checks whether *all* the flags that are set in the test word are also set in the flag word, `ops`. If they are, then `HasFlag` returns true. Otherwise, it returns false.

```
CardDeckSettings testFlags =  
    CardDeckSettings.Animation | CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers;  
  
UseAnimationAndFancyNumbers = ops.HasFlag( testFlags );  
                                ↑          ↑  
      Flag word      Test word
```

## The Flags Attribute

We'll cover attributes in Chapter 24, but it's worth mentioning the `Flags` attribute here. An attribute appears as a string between square brackets placed on the line above a class declaration. The `Flags` attribute does not change the calculations at all. It does, however, provide several convenient features.

First, it informs the compiler, object browsers, and other tools looking at the code that the members of the enum are meant to be combined as bit flags, rather than used only as separate values. This allows the browsers to interpret variables of the enum type more appropriately.

Second, it allows the `ToString` method of an enum to provide more appropriate formatting for the values of bit flags. The `ToString` method takes an enum value and compares it to the values of the constant members of the enum. If it matches one of the members, `ToString` returns the string name of the member.

Suppose, for example, that you have used the enum declaration for `CardDeckSettings` (given in the preceding code) and have *not* used the `Flags` attribute. The first line of the following code creates a variable (named `ops`) of the enum type and sets the value of a single flag bit. The second line uses `ToString` to get the string name of the member represented by that value.

```
CardDeckSettings ops = CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers;    // Set the bit flag.  
Console.WriteLine( ops.ToString() );                      // Print its name.
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
FancyNumbers
```

---

That's all well and good, but suppose you set two bit flags instead of one, as in the following code. Suppose also that you didn't use the `Flags` attribute on the enum declaration.

```
// Set two bit flags.  
ops = CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers | CardDeckSettings.Animation;  
Console.WriteLine( ops.ToString() ); // Print what?
```

The resulting value of `ops` is 12, where 4 is from the `FancyNumbers` flag and 8 is from the `Animation` flag. In the second line, when `ToString` attempts to look up the value in the list of enum members, it finds that there is no member with the value 12—so it just returns the string representing 12. The resulting output is the following:

---

12

---

If, however, you change your code to use the `Flags` attribute before the declaration of the enum, this tells the `ToString` method that the bits can be considered separately. In looking up the value, it would find that 12 corresponds to the two bit flag members `FancyNumbers` and `Animation`. It would then return the string containing their names, separated by a comma and space, as shown here:

---

FancyNumbers, Animation

---

## Example Using Bit Flags

The following code puts together all the pieces of using bit flags:

```
[Flags]
enum CardDeckSettings : uint
{
    SingleDeck      = 0x01,          // bit 0
    LargePictures   = 0x02,          // bit 1
    FancyNumbers    = 0x04,          // bit 2
    Animation       = 0x08          // bit 3
}

class MyClass
{
    bool UseSingleDeck           = false,
        UseBigPics              = false,
        UseFancyNumbers          = false,
        UseAnimation             = false,
        UseAnimationAndFancyNumbers = false;

    public void SetOptions( CardDeckSettings ops )
    {
        UseSingleDeck      = ops.HasFlag( CardDeckSettings.SingleDeck );
        UseBigPics         = ops.HasFlag( CardDeckSettings.LargePictures );
        UseFancyNumbers    = ops.HasFlag( CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers );
        UseAnimation       = ops.HasFlag( CardDeckSettings.Animation );

        CardDeckSettings testFlags =
            CardDeckSettings.Animation | CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers;
        UseAnimationAndFancyNumbers = ops.HasFlag( testFlags );
    }

    public void PrintOptions( )
    {
        Console.WriteLine( "Option settings:" );
        Console.WriteLine( "  Use Single Deck           - {0}", UseSingleDeck );
        Console.WriteLine( "  Use Large Pictures          - {0}", UseBigPics );
        Console.WriteLine( "  Use Fancy Numbers           - {0}", UseFancyNumbers );
        Console.WriteLine( "  Show Animation              - {0}", UseAnimation );
        Console.WriteLine( "  Show Animation and FancyNumbers - {0}",
                           UseAnimationAndFancyNumbers );
    }
}
```



```
class Program
{
    static void Main( string[] args )
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        CardDeckSettings ops = CardDeckSettings.SingleDeck
            | CardDeckSettings.FancyNumbers
            | CardDeckSettings.Animation;
        mc.SetOptions( ops );
        mc.PrintOptions();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Option settings:
Use Single Deck           - True
Use Large Pictures         - False
Use Fancy Numbers          - True
Show Animation             - True
Show Animation and FancyNumbers - True
```

---

## More About Enums

Enums have only a single member type: the declared member constants.

- You cannot use modifiers with the members. They all implicitly have the same accessibility as the enum.
- Since the members are `static`, they are accessible even if there are no variables of the enum type. Use the enum type name, followed by a dot and the member name.

For example, the following code does not create any variables of the enum `TrafficLight` type, but the members are accessible and can be printed using `WriteLine`.

```
static void Main()
{
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", TrafficLight.Green);
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", TrafficLight.Yellow);
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", TrafficLight.Red);
}
```

↑                   ↑  
Enum name    Member name

An enum is a distinct type. Comparing enum members of different enum types results in a compile-time error. For example, the following code declares two enum types.

- The first if statement is fine because it compares different members from the same enum type.
- The second if statement produces an error because it compares members from different enum types, even though their structures and member names are exactly the same.

```
enum FirstEnum          // First enum type
{
    Mem1,
    Mem2
}

enum SecondEnum         // Second enum type
{
    Mem1,
    Mem2
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        if (FirstEnum.Mem1 < FirstEnum.Mem2) // OK--members of same enum type
            Console.WriteLine("True");

        if (FirstEnum.Mem1 < SecondEnum.Mem1) // Error--different enum types
            Console.WriteLine("True");
    }
}
```

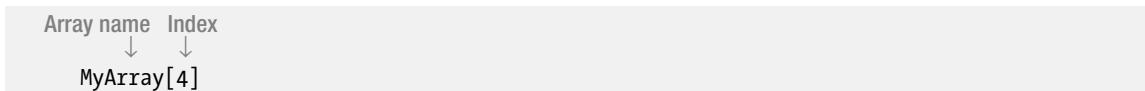


# Arrays

- Arrays
- Types of Arrays
- An Array As an Object
- One-Dimensional and Rectangular Arrays
- Instantiating a One-Dimensional or Rectangular Array
- Accessing Array Elements
- Initializing an Array
- Jagged Arrays
- Comparing Rectangular and Jagged Arrays
- The foreach Statement
- Array Covariance
- Useful Inherited Array Members
- Comparing Array Types

# Arrays

An array is a set of uniform data elements, represented by a single variable name. The individual elements are accessed using the variable name together with one or more indexes between square brackets, as shown here:



## Definitions

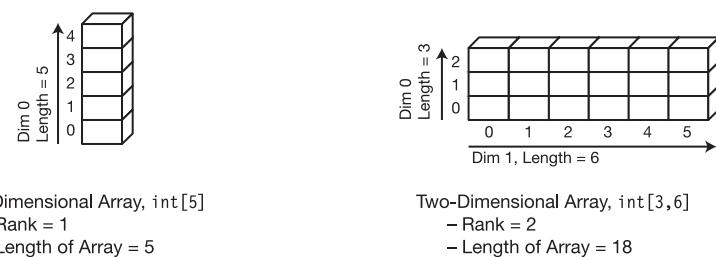
Let's start with some important definitions having to do with arrays in C#.

- *Elements*: The individual data items of an array are called *elements*. All elements of an array must be of the same type or derived from the same type.
- *Rank/dimensions*: Arrays can have any positive number of dimensions. The number of dimensions an array has is called its *rank*.
- *Dimension length*: Each dimension of an array has a *length*, which is the number of positions in that direction.
- *Array length*: The total number of elements contained in an array, in *all* dimensions, is called the *length* of the array.

## Important Details

The following are some important general facts about C# arrays:

- Once an array is created, its size is fixed. C# does not support dynamic arrays.
  - Array indexes are *0-based*. That is, if the length of a dimension is *n*, the index values range from 0 to *n* – 1. For example, Figure 14-1 shows the dimensions and lengths of two example arrays.
- Notice that for each dimension, the indexes range from 0 to *length* – 1.



**Figure 14-1.** Dimensions and sizes

# Types of Arrays

C# provides two kinds of arrays:

- One-dimensional arrays can be thought of as a single line, or *vector*, of elements.
- Multidimensional arrays are composed such that each position in the primary vector is itself an array, called a *subarray*. Positions in the subarray vectors can themselves be subarrays.

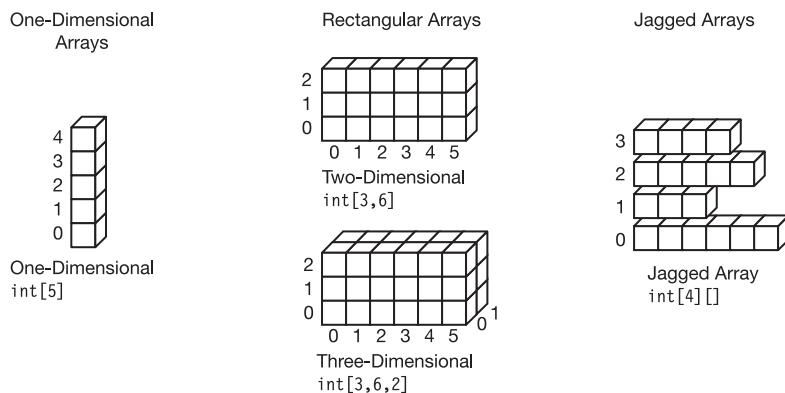
Additionally, there are two types of multidimensional arrays, *rectangular arrays* and *jagged arrays*, which have the following characteristics:

- Rectangular arrays
  - Are multidimensional arrays where all the subarrays in a particular dimension have the same length
  - Always use a single set of square brackets, regardless of the number of dimensions

```
int x = myArray2[4, 6, 1] // One set of square brackets
```
- Jagged arrays
  - Are multidimensional arrays where each subarray is an independent array
  - Can have subarrays of *different* lengths
  - Use a separate set of square brackets for each dimension of the array

```
jagArray1[2][7][4] // Three sets of square brackets
```

Figure 14-2 shows the kinds of arrays available in C#.



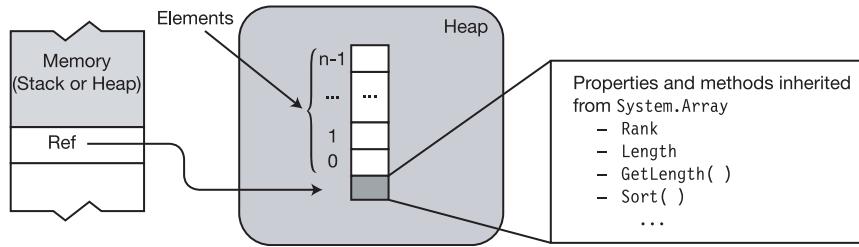
**Figure 14-2.** One-dimensional, rectangular, and jagged arrays

## An Array As an Object

An array instance is an object whose type derives from class `System.Array`. Since arrays are derived from this BCL base class, they inherit a number of useful members from it, such as the following:

- **Rank:** A property that returns the number of dimensions of the array
- **Length:** A property that returns the length (the total number of elements) of the array

Arrays are reference types, and as with all reference types, they have both a reference to the data and the data object itself. The reference is in either the stack or the heap, and the data object itself will always be in the heap. Figure 14-3 shows the memory configuration and components of an array.

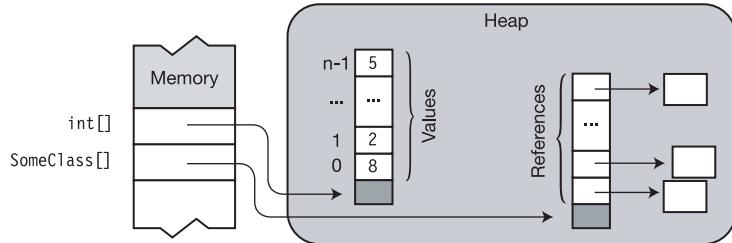


**Figure 14-3.** Structure of an array

Although an array is always a reference type, the elements of the array can be either value types or reference types.

- An array is called a *value type array* if the elements stored are value types.
- An array is called a *reference type array* if the elements stored in the array are references of reference type objects.

Figure 14-4 shows a value type array and a reference type array.



**Figure 14-4.** Elements can be values or references.

# One-Dimensional and Rectangular Arrays

Syntactically, one-dimensional arrays and rectangular arrays are very similar, so I'll treat them together. I'll then treat jagged arrays separately.

## Declaring a One-Dimensional Array or a Rectangular Array

To declare a one-dimensional or rectangular array, use a single set of square brackets between the type and the variable name.

The *rank specifiers* are commas between the brackets. They specify the number of dimensions the array will have. The rank is the number of commas, plus one. For example, no commas indicates a one-dimensional array, one comma indicates a two-dimensional array, and so forth.

The base type, together with the rank specifiers, is the *type* of the array. For example, the following line of code declares a one-dimensional array of longs. The type of the array is `long[]`, which is read as “an array of longs.”

```
Rank specifiers = 1
↓
long[ ] secondArray;
↑
Array type
```

The following code shows examples of declarations of rectangular arrays. Notice the following:

- You can have as many rank specifiers as you need.
- You cannot place array dimension lengths in the array type section. The rank is part of the array's type, but the lengths of the dimensions are *not* part of the type.
- When an array is declared, the *number* of dimensions is fixed. The *length* of the dimensions, however, is not determined until the array is instantiated.

```
Rank specifiers
↓
int[, ,] firstArray;           // Array type: 3-D array of int
int[, ,] arr1;                // Array type: 2-D array of int
long[, ,] arr3;               // Array type: 3-D array of long
↑
Array type

long[3, 2, 6] SecondArray;      // Wrong! Compile error
↑↑↑
Dimension lengths not allowed!
```

---

**Note** Unlike C/C++, the brackets follow the base type, not the variable name.

---

## Instantiating a One-Dimensional or Rectangular Array

To instantiate an array, you use an *array-creation expression*. An array-creation expression consists of the new operator, followed by the base type, followed by a pair of square brackets. The length of each dimension is placed in a comma-separated list between the brackets.

The following are examples of one-dimensional array declarations:

- Array arr2 is a one-dimensional array of four ints.
- Array mcArr is a one-dimensional array of four MyClass references.
- Figure 14-5 shows their layouts in memory.

```

        Four elements
        ↓
int[] arr2 = new int[4];
MyClass[] mcArr = new MyClass[4];
        ↑
Array-creation expression

```

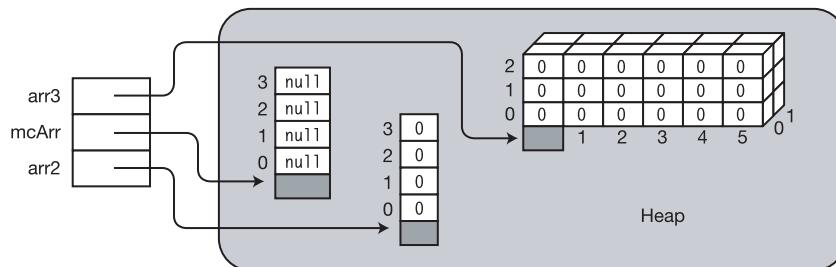
The following is an example of a rectangular array. Array arr3 is a three-dimensional array.

- The length of the array is  $3 * 6 * 2 = 36$ .
- Figure 14-5 shows its layout in memory.

```

Lengths of the dimensions
↓
int[,,] arr3 = new int[3,6,2] ;

```



**Figure 14-5.** Declaring and instantiating arrays

**Note** Unlike object-creation expressions, array-creation expressions do not contain parentheses—even for reference type arrays.

# Accessing Array Elements

An array element is accessed using an integer value as an index into the array.

- Each dimension uses 0-based indexing.
- The index is placed between square brackets following the array name.

The following code shows examples of declaring, writing to, and reading from a one-dimensional and a two-dimensional array:

```
int[] intArr1 = new int[15];           // Declare 1-D array.  
intArr1[2] = 10;                      // Write to element 2 of the array.  
int var1     = intArr1[2];             // Read from element 2 of the array.  
  
int[,] intArr2 = new int[5,10];        // Declare 2-D array.  
intArr2[2,3] = 7;                     // Write to the array.  
int var2     = intArr2[2,3];           // Read from the array.
```

The following code shows the full process of creating and accessing a one-dimensional array:

```
int[] myIntArray;                    // Declare the array.  
myIntArray = new int[4];              // Instantiate the array.  
for( int i=0; i<4; i++ )            // Set the values.  
    myIntArray[i] = i*10;  
  
// Read and display the values of each element.  
for( int i=0; i<4; i++ )  
    Console.WriteLine("Value of element {0} = {1}", i, myIntArray[i]);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Value of element 0 is 0  
Value of element 1 is 10  
Value of element 2 is 20  
Value of element 3 is 30
```

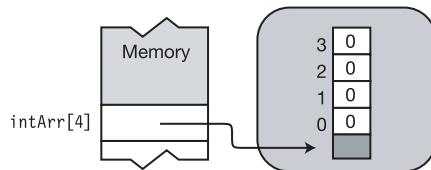
---

## Initializing an Array

Whenever an array is created, each of the elements is automatically initialized to the default value for the type. The default values for the predefined types are 0 for integer types, 0.0 for floating-point types, `false` for Booleans, and `null` for reference types.

For example, the following code creates an array and initializes its four elements to the value 0. Figure 14-6 illustrates the layout in memory.

```
int[] intArr = new int[4];
```



**Figure 14-6.** Automatic initialization of a one-dimensional array

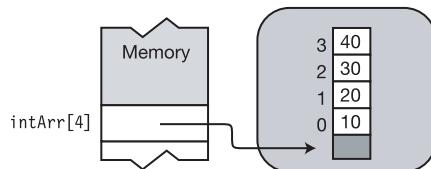
## Explicit Initialization of One-Dimensional Arrays

For a one-dimensional array, you can set explicit initial values by including an *initialization list* immediately after the array-creation expression of an array instantiation.

- The initialization values must be separated by commas and enclosed in a set of curly braces.
- The dimension lengths are optional, since the compiler will infer the lengths from the number of initializing values.
- Notice that nothing separates the array-creation expression and the initialization list. That is, there is no equals sign or other connecting operator.

For example, the following code creates an array and initializes its four elements to the values between the curly braces. Figure 14-7 illustrates the layout in memory.

```
Initialization list  
↓  
int[] intArr = new int[] { 10, 20, 30, 40 };  
↑  
No connecting operator
```



**Figure 14-7.** Explicit initialization of a one-dimensional array

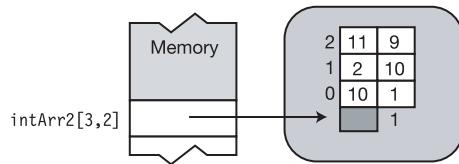
## Explicit Initialization of Rectangular Arrays

To explicitly initialize a rectangular array, you need to follow these rules:

- Each *vector of initial values* must be enclosed in curly braces.
- Each *dimension* must also be nested and enclosed in curly braces.
- In addition to the initial values, the initialization lists and components of each dimension must also be separated by commas.

For example, the following code shows the declaration of a two-dimensional array with an initialization list. Figure 14-8 illustrates the layout in memory.

```
Initialization lists separated by commas
↓   ↓
int[,] intArray2 = new int[,] { {10, 1}, {2, 10}, {11, 9} } ;
```



**Figure 14-8.** Initializing a rectangular array

## Syntax Points for Initializing Rectangular Arrays

Rectangular arrays are initialized with nested, comma-separated initialization lists. The initialization lists are nested in curly braces. This can sometimes be confusing, so to get the nesting, grouping, and commas right, the following tips might be helpful:

- Commas are used as *separators* between all *elements* and *groups*.
- Commas are *not* placed between left curly braces.
- Commas are *not* placed before a right curly brace.
- Read the rank specifications from left to right, designating the last number as “elements” and all the others as “groups.”

For example, read the following declaration as “intArray has four groups of three groups of two elements.”

```
Initialization lists, nested and separated by commas
int[,,] intArray = new int[4,3,2] {
    ↓   ↓   ↓
    { {8, 6}, {5, 2}, {12, 9} },
    { {6, 4}, {13, 9}, {18, 4} },
    { {7, 2}, {1, 13}, {9, 3} },
    { {4, 6}, {3, 2}, {23, 8} }
};
```

## Shortcut Syntax

When combining declaration, array creation, and initialization in a single statement, you can omit the array-creation expression part of the syntax entirely and provide just the initialization portion. Figure 14-9 shows this shortcut syntax.

```
int[] arr1 = new int[3] {10, 20, 30}; } Equivalent
int[] arr1 = {10, 20, 30};
```

```
int[,] arr = new int[2,3] {{0, 1, 2}, {10, 11, 12}}; } Equivalent
int[,] arr = {{0, 1, 2}, {10, 11, 12}};
```

**Figure 14-9.** Shortcut for array declaration, creation, and initialization

## Implicitly Typed Arrays

So far, we've explicitly specified the array types at the beginnings of all our array declarations. But, like other local variables, your arrays can also be implicitly typed. This means the following:

- When initializing an array, you can let the compiler infer the array's type from the type of the initializers. This is allowed as long as all the initializers can be implicitly converted to a single type.
- Just as with implicitly typed local variables, use the keyword `var` instead of the array type.

The following code shows explicit and implicit versions of three array declarations. The first set is a one-dimensional array of ints. The second is a two-dimensional array of ints. The third is an array of strings. Notice that in the declaration of implicitly typed `intArr4` you still need to include the rank specifier in the initialization.

```
Explicit           Explicit
↓                 ↓
int [] intArr1 = new int[] { 10, 20, 30, 40 };
var   intArr2 = new    [] { 10, 20, 30, 40 };
↑
Keyword           Inferred
int[,] intArr3 = new int[,] { { 10, 1 }, { 2, 10 }, { 11, 9 } };
var   intArr4 = new    [,] { { 10, 1 }, { 2, 10 }, { 11, 9 } };
↑
Rank specifier
string[] sArr1 = new string[] { "life", "liberty", "pursuit of happiness" };
var     sArr2 = new      [] { "life", "liberty", "pursuit of happiness" };
```

## Putting It All Together

The following code puts together all the pieces we've looked at so far. It creates, initializes, and uses a rectangular array.

```
// Declare, create, and initialize an implicitly typed array.  
var arr = new int[,] {{0, 1, 2}, {10, 11, 12}};  
  
// Print the values.  
for( int i=0; i<2; i++ )  
    for( int j=0; j<3; j++ )  
        Console.WriteLine("Element [{0},{1}] is {2}", i, j, arr[i,j]);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Element [0,0] is 0  
Element [0,1] is 1  
Element [0,2] is 2  
Element [1,0] is 10  
Element [1,1] is 11  
Element [1,2] is 12
```

---

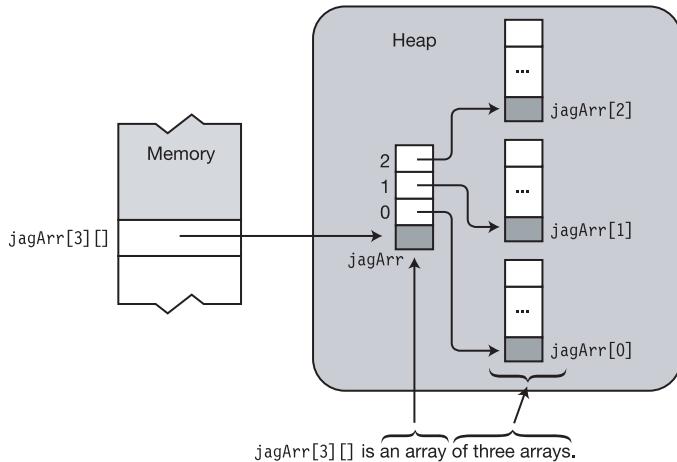
## Jagged Arrays

A jagged array is an array of arrays. Unlike rectangular arrays, the subarrays of a jagged array can have different numbers of elements.

For example, the following code declares a two-dimensional jagged array. Figure 14-10 shows the array's layout in memory.

- The length of the first dimension is 3.
- The declaration can be read as “`jagArr` is an array of three arrays of `ints`.”
- Notice that the figure shows *four* array objects—one for the top-level array and three for the subarrays.

```
int[][] jagArr = new int[3][];    // Declare and create top-level array.  
...                                // Declare and create subarrays.
```

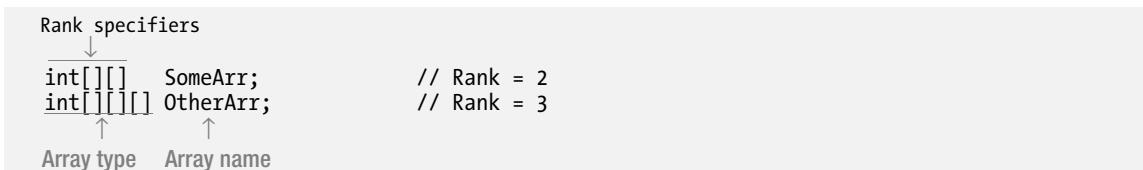


**Figure 14-10.** A jagged array is an array of arrays.

## Declaring a Jagged Array

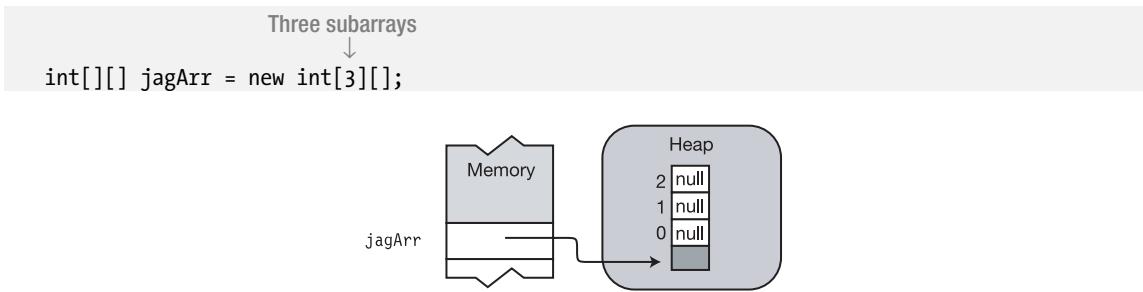
The declaration syntax for jagged arrays requires a separate set of square brackets for each dimension. The number of sets of square brackets in the declaration of the array variable determines the rank of the array.

- A jagged array can be of any number of dimensions greater than one.
- As with rectangular arrays, dimension lengths cannot be included in the array type section of the declaration.



## Shortcut Instantiation

You can combine the jagged array declaration with the creation of the first-level array using an array-creation expression, such as in the following declaration. Figure 14-11 shows the result.



**Figure 14-11.** Shortcut first-level instantiation

You cannot instantiate more than the first-level array in the declaration statement.



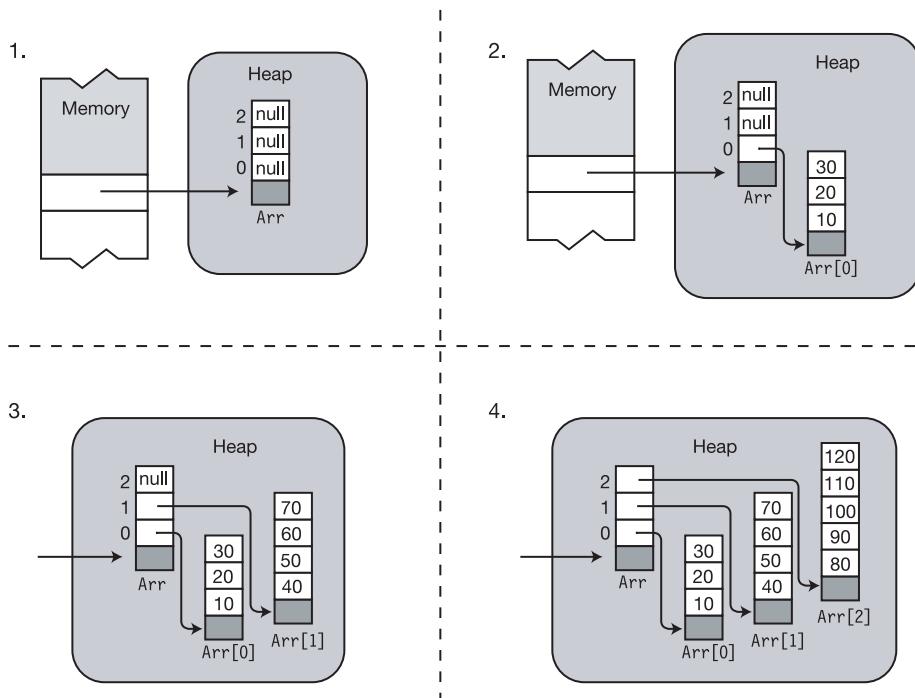
## Instantiating a Jagged Array

Unlike other types of arrays, you cannot fully instantiate a jagged array in a single step. Since a jagged array is an array of independent arrays, each array must be created separately. Instantiating a full jagged array requires the following steps:

1. Instantiate the top-level array.
2. Instantiate each subarray separately, assigning the reference of the newly created array to the appropriate element of its containing array.

For example, the following code shows the declaration, instantiation, and initialization of a two-dimensional jagged array. Notice in the code that the reference to each subarray is assigned to an element in the top-level array. Steps 1 through 4 in the code correspond to the numbered representations in Figure 14-12.

```
int[][] Arr = new int[3][];           // 1. Instantiate top level
Arr[0] = new int[] {10, 20, 30};       // 2. Instantiate subarray
Arr[1] = new int[] {40, 50, 60, 70};   // 3. Instantiate subarray
Arr[2] = new int[] {80, 90, 100, 110, 120}; // 4. Instantiate subarray
```



**Figure 14-12.** Creating a two-dimensional jagged array

## Subarrays in Jagged Arrays

Since the subarrays in a jagged array are themselves arrays, it's possible to have rectangular arrays inside jagged arrays. For example, the following code creates a jagged array of three two-dimensional rectangular arrays and initializes them with values. It then displays the values.

- Figure 14-13 illustrates the structure.
- The code uses the `GetLength(int n)` method of arrays, inherited from `System.Array`, to get the length of the specified dimension of the array.

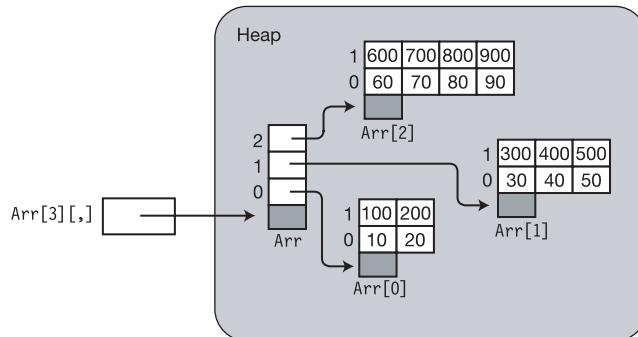
```

int[][][] Arr;           // An array of 2-D arrays
Arr = new int[3][,];    // Instantiate an array of three 2-D arrays.

Arr[0] = new int[,] { { 10, 20 }, { 100, 200 } };
Arr[1] = new int[,] { { 30, 40, 50 }, { 300, 400, 500 } };
Arr[2] = new int[,] { { 60, 70, 80, 90 }, { 600, 700, 800, 900 } };

                                ↓ Get length of dimension 0 of Arr
for (int i = 0; i < Arr.GetLength(0); i++)
{                               ↓ Get length of dimension 0 of Arr[i]
    for (int j = 0; j < Arr[i].GetLength(0); j++)
    {                         ↓ Get length of dimension 1 of Arr[i]
        for (int k = 0; k < Arr[i].GetLength(1); k++) {
            Console.WriteLine
                ("[{0}][{1},{2}] = {3}", i, j, k, Arr[i][j, k]);
        }
        Console.WriteLine("");
    }
    Console.WriteLine("");
}
Console.WriteLine("");
}

```

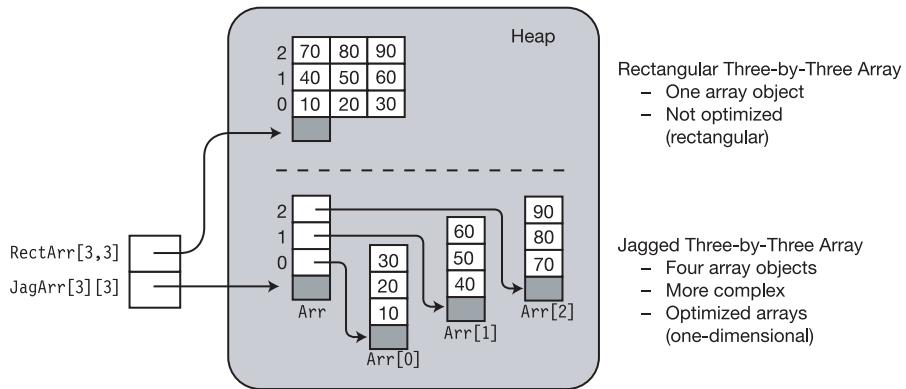


**Figure 14-13.** Jagged array of three two-dimensional arrays

## Comparing Rectangular and Jagged Arrays

The structure of rectangular and jagged arrays is significantly different. For example, Figure 14-14 shows the structure of a rectangular three-by-three array, as well as a jagged array of three one-dimensional arrays of length 3.

- Both arrays hold nine integers, but as you can see, their structures are quite different.
- The rectangular array has a single array object, while the jagged array has four array objects.



**Figure 14-14.** Comparing the structure of rectangular and jagged arrays

One-dimensional arrays have specific instructions in the CIL that allow them to be optimized for performance. Rectangular arrays do not have these instructions and are not optimized to the same level. Because of this, it can sometimes be more efficient to use jagged arrays of one-dimensional arrays—which can be optimized—than rectangular arrays, which cannot.

On the other hand, the programming complexity can be less for a rectangular array because it can be treated as a single unit, rather than an array of arrays.

## The foreach Statement

The foreach statement allows you to sequentially access each element in an array. It's actually a more general construct in that it also works with other collection types as well—but this section only discusses its use with arrays. Chapter 20 covers its use with other collection types.

The important points of the foreach statement are the following:

- The *iteration variable* is a temporary variable of the same type as the elements of the array. The foreach statement uses the iteration variable to sequentially represent each element in the array.
- The syntax of the foreach statement is shown here, where
  - *Type* is the type of the elements of the array. You can explicitly supply its type, or you can let it be implicitly typed and inferred by the compiler, since the compiler knows the type of the array.
  - *Identifier* is the name of the iteration variable.
  - *ArrayName* is the name of the array to be processed.
  - *Statement* is a simple statement or a block that is executed once for each element in the array.

Explicitly typed iteration variable declaration

```
foreach( Type Identifier in ArrayName )  
    Statement
```

Implicitly typed iteration variable declaration

```
foreach( var Identifier in ArrayName )  
    Statement
```

In the following text, I'll sometimes use implicit typing, and other times I'll use explicit typing so that you can see the exact type being used. But the forms are semantically equivalent.

The `foreach` statement works in the following way:

- It starts with the first element of the array and assigns that value to the *iteration variable*.
- It then executes the body of the statement. Inside the body, you can use the iteration variable as a read-only alias for the array element.
- After the body is executed, the `foreach` statement selects the next element in the array and repeats the process.

In this way, it cycles through the array, allowing you to access each element one by one. For example, the following code shows the use of a `foreach` statement with a one-dimensional array of four integers:

- The `WriteLine` statement, which is the body of the `foreach` statement, is executed once for each of the elements of the array.
- The first time through the loop, iteration variable `item` has the value of the first element of the array. Each successive time, it has the value of the next element in the array.

```
int[] arr1 = {10, 11, 12, 13};  
Iteration variable declaration  
↓  
foreach( int item in arr1 )  
    ↓  
    Console.WriteLine("Item Value: {0}", item);  
Iteration variable use
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Item Value: 10  
Item Value: 11  
Item Value: 12  
Item Value: 13
```

---

## The Iteration Variable Is Read-Only

Since the value of the iteration variable is read-only, clearly it cannot be changed. But this has different effects on value type arrays and reference type arrays.

For value type arrays, this means you cannot change the data of the array. For example, in the following code, the attempt to change the data in the iteration variable produces a compile-time error message:

```
int[] arr1 = {10, 11, 12, 13};

foreach( int item in arr1 )
    item++; // Compilation error. Changing variable value is not allowed.
```

For reference type arrays, you still cannot change the iteration variable, but the iteration variable only holds the reference to the data, not the data itself. So although you cannot change the reference, you can change the *data* through the iteration variable.

The following code creates an array of four `MyClass` objects and initializes them. In the first `foreach` statement, the data in each of the objects is changed. In the second `foreach` statement, the changed data is read from the objects.

```
class MyClass
{
    public int MyField = 0;
}

class Program {
    static void Main() {
        MyClass[] mcArray = new MyClass[4];
        for (int i = 0; i < 4; i++)
        {
            mcArray[i] = new MyClass(); // Create class objects
            mcArray[i].MyField = i; // Set field
        }
        foreach (MyClass item in mcArray) // Change the data.
            item.MyField += 10;

        foreach (MyClass item in mcArray)
            Console.WriteLine("{0}", item.MyField); // Read the changed data.
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
10
11
12
13
```

---

## The foreach Statement with Multidimensional Arrays

In a multidimensional array, the elements are processed in the order in which the rightmost index is incremented fastest. When the index has gone from 0 to length – 1, the next index to the left is incremented, and the indexes to the right are reset to 0.

### Example with a Rectangular Array

The following example shows the foreach statement used with a rectangular array:

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        int total = 0;
        int[,] arr1 = { {10, 11}, {12, 13} };

        foreach( var element in arr1 )
        {
            total += element;
            Console.WriteLine
                ("Element: {0}, Current Total: {1}", element, total);
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Element: 10, Current Total: 10
Element: 11, Current Total: 21
Element: 12, Current Total: 33
Element: 13, Current Total: 46
```

---

## Example with a Jagged Array

Since jagged arrays are arrays of arrays, you must use separate `foreach` statements for each dimension in the jagged array. The `foreach` statements must be nested properly to make sure that each nested array is processed properly.

For example, in the following code, the first `foreach` statement cycles through the top-level array—`arr1`—selecting the next subarray to process. The inner `foreach` statement processes the elements of that subarray.

```
class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        int total = 0;
        int[][] arr1 = new int[2][];
        arr1[0] = new int[] { 10, 11 };
        arr1[1] = new int[] { 12, 13, 14 };

        foreach (int[] array in arr1)          // Process the top level.
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Starting new array");
            foreach (int item in array)        // Process the second level.
            {
                total += item;
                Console.WriteLine(" Item: {0}, Current Total: {1}", item, total);
            }
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Starting new array
Item: 10, Current Total: 10
Item: 11, Current Total: 21
Starting new array
Item: 12, Current Total: 33
Item: 13, Current Total: 46
Item: 14, Current Total: 60
```

---

## Array Covariance

Under certain conditions, you can assign an object to an array element even if the object is not of the array's base type. This property of arrays is called *array covariance*. You can use array covariance if the following are true:

- The array is a reference type array.
- There is an implicit or explicit conversion between the type of the object you are assigning and the array's base type.

Since there is always an implicit conversion between a derived class and its base class, you can always assign an object of a derived class to an array declared for the base class.

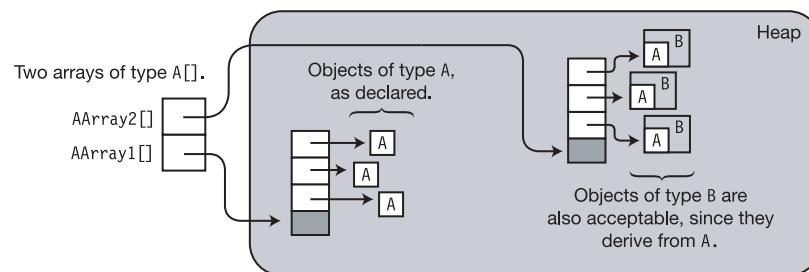
For example, the following code declares two classes, A and B, where class B derives from class A. The last line shows covariance by assigning objects of type B to array elements of type A. Figure 14-15 shows the memory layout for the code.

```
class A { ... }                                // Base class
class B : A { ... }                           // Derived class

class Program {
    static void Main() {
        // Two arrays of type A[]
        A[] AArray1 = new A[3];
        A[] AArray2 = new A[3];

        // Normal--assigning objects of type A to an array of type A
        AArray1[0] = new A(); AArray1[1] = new A(); AArray1[2] = new A();

        // Covariant--assigning objects of type B to an array of type A
        AArray2[0] = new B(); AArray2[1] = new B(); AArray2[2] = new B();
    }
}
```



**Figure 14-15.** Arrays showing covariance

---

■ **Note** There is no covariance for value type arrays.

---

## Useful Inherited Array Members

I mentioned earlier that C# arrays are derived from class `System.Array`. From that base class they inherit a number of useful properties and methods. Table 14-1 lists some of the most useful ones.

**Table 14-1.** Some Useful Members Inherited by Arrays

Member	Type	Lifetime	Meaning
Rank	Property	Instance	Gets the number of dimensions of the array
Length	Property	Instance	Gets the total number of elements in all the dimensions of the array
GetLength	Method	Instance	Returns the length of a particular dimension of the array
Clear	Method	Static	Sets a range of elements to 0 or null
Sort	Method	Static	Sorts the elements in a one-dimensional array
BinarySearch	Method	Static	Searches a one-dimensional array for a value, using binary search
Clone	Method	Instance	Performs a shallow copy of the array—copying only the elements, both for arrays of value types and reference types
IndexOf	Method	Static	Returns the index of the first occurrence of a value in a one-dimensional array
Reverse	Method	Static	Reverses the order of the elements of a range of a one-dimensional array
GetUpperBound	Method	Instance	Gets the upper bound at the specified dimension

For example, the following code uses some of these properties and methods:

```
public static void PrintArray(int[] a)
{
    foreach (var x in a)
        Console.WriteLine("{0} ", x);

    Console.WriteLine("");
}

static void Main()
{
    int[] arr = new int[] { 15, 20, 5, 25, 10 };
    PrintArray(arr);

    Array.Sort(arr);
    PrintArray(arr);

    Array.Reverse(arr);
    PrintArray(arr);

    Console.WriteLine();
    Console.WriteLine("Rank = {0}, Length = {1}", arr.Rank, arr.Length);
    Console.WriteLine("GetLength(0)      = {0}", arr.GetLength(0));
    Console.WriteLine("GetType()         = {0}", arr.GetType());
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
15 20 5 25 10
5 10 15 20 25
25 20 15 10 5

Rank = 1, Length = 5
GetLength(0)      = 5
GetType()         = System.Int32[]
```

---

## The Clone Method

The `Clone` method performs a shallow copy of an array. This means that it only creates a clone of the array itself. If it is a reference type array, it does *not* copy the objects referenced by the elements. This has different results for value type arrays and reference type arrays.

- Cloning a value type array results in two independent arrays.
- Cloning a reference type array results in two arrays pointing at the same objects.

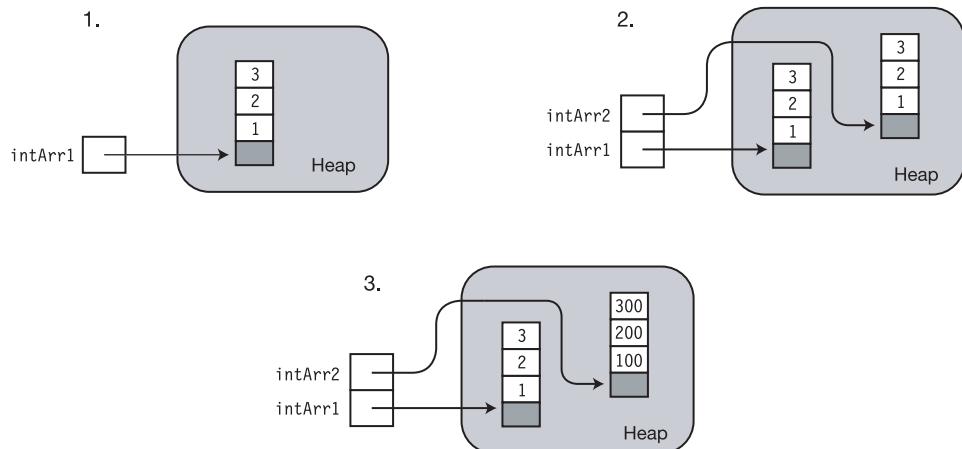
The `Clone` method returns a reference of type `object`, which must be cast to the array type.

```
int[] intArr1 = { 1, 2, 3 };
                ^ Array type           ^ Returns an object
                ↓                         ↓
int[] intArr2 = ( int[] ) intArr1.Clone();
```

For example, the following code shows an example of cloning a value type array, producing two independent arrays. Figure 14-16 illustrates the steps shown in the code.

```
static void Main()
{
    int[] intArr1 = { 1, 2, 3 };                                // Step 1
    int[] intArr2 = (int[]) intArr1.Clone();                      // Step 2

    intArr2[0] = 100; intArr2[1] = 200; intArr2[2] = 300;      // Step 3
}
```



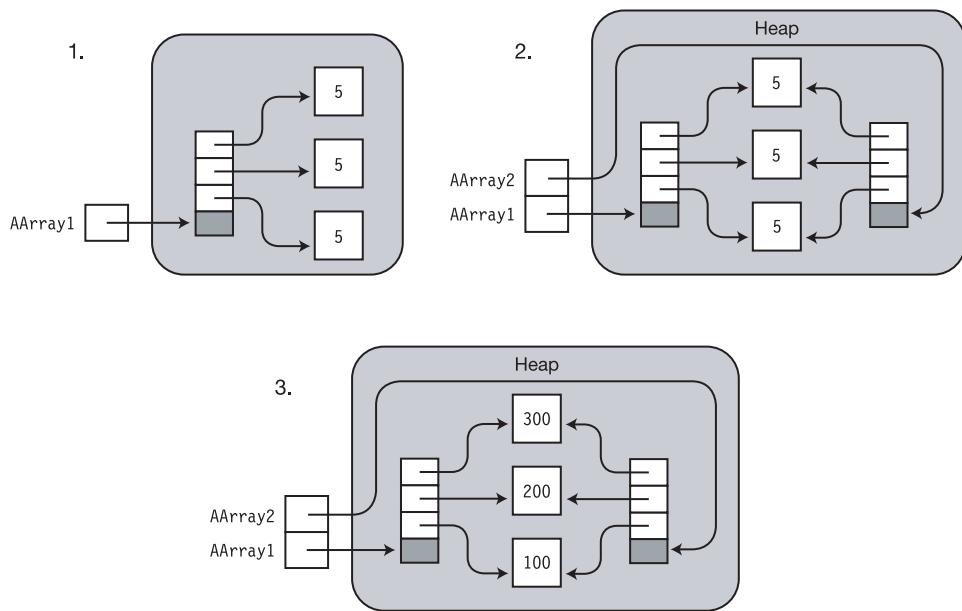
**Figure 14-16.** Cloning a value type array produces two independent arrays.

Cloning a reference type array results in two arrays *pointing at the same objects*. The following code shows an example. Figure 14-17 illustrates the steps shown in the code.

```
class A
{
    public int Value = 5;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        A[] AAarray1 = new A[3] { new A(), new A(), new A() };      // Step 1
        A[] AAarray2 = (A[]) AAarray1.Clone();                         // Step 2

        AAarray2[0].Value = 100;
        AAarray2[1].Value = 200;
        AAarray2[2].Value = 300;                                       // Step 3
    }
}
```

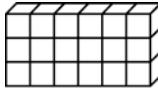
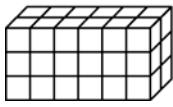
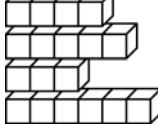


**Figure 14-17.** Cloning a reference type array produces two arrays referencing the same objects.

## Comparing Array Types

Table 14-2 summarizes some of the important similarities and differences between the three types of arrays.

**Table 14-2. Summary Comparing Array Types**

Array Type	Array Objects	Syntax		Shape
		Brackets	Commas	
One-dimensional	1	Single set	No	 One-Dimensional <code>int[3]</code>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Has optimizing instructions in CIL.</li> </ul>				
Rectangular	1	Single set	Yes	 Two-Dimensional <code>int[3,6]</code>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Multidimensional.</li> <li>All subarrays in a multidimensional array must be of the same length.</li> </ul>				 Three-Dimensional <code>int[3,6,2]</code>
Jagged	Multiple	Multiple sets	No	 Jagged <code>int[4][]</code>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Multidimensional.</li> <li>Subarrays can be of different lengths.</li> </ul>				



# Delegates

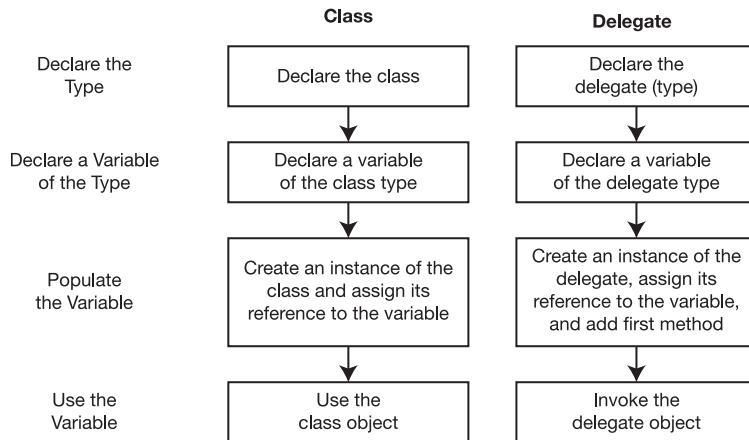
- What Is a Delegate?
- Declaring the Delegate Type
- Creating the Delegate Object
- Assigning Delegates
- Combining Delegates
- Adding Methods to Delegates
- Removing Methods from a Delegate
- Invoking a Delegate
- Delegate Example
- Invoking Delegates with Return Values
- Invoking Delegates with Reference Parameters
- Anonymous Methods
- Lambda Expressions

## What Is a Delegate?

A delegate is a user-defined type, like a class. But whereas a class represents a collection of data, a delegate keeps track of one or more methods. You use a delegate by doing the following. We'll go through each of these steps in detail in the following sections.

1. Declare a new delegate type with a particular signature and return type. A delegate declaration looks like a method declaration, except that it doesn't have an implementation block.
2. Declare a delegate variable of the new delegate type.
3. Create an object of the delegate type, and assign it to the delegate variable. The new delegate object includes a reference to a method with the same signature as defined in the first step.
4. Add additional methods into the delegate object. These methods must have the same signature and return type as the delegate type defined in the first step.
5. Throughout your code you can then invoke the delegate, just as if it were a method. When you invoke the delegate, each of the methods it contains is executed.

In looking at the previous steps, you might have noticed that they're similar to the steps in creating and using a class. Figure 15-1 compares the processes of creating and using classes and delegates.



**Figure 15-1.** A delegate is a user-defined reference type, like a class.

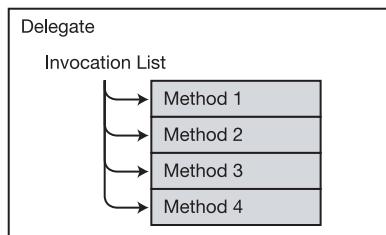
---

**Note** If you're coming from a C++ background, the fastest way for you to understand delegates is to think of them as type-safe, object-oriented *C++ function pointers* on steroids.

---

You can think of a *delegate* as an object that contains an ordered list of methods with the same signature and return type, as illustrated in Figure 15-2.

- The list of methods is called the *invocation list*.
- Methods held by a delegate *can be from any class or struct*, as long as they match *both* the delegate's
  - Return type
  - Signature (including ref and out modifiers)
- Methods in the invocation list can be either instance methods or static methods.
- When a delegate is invoked, each method in its invocation list is executed.



**Figure 15-2.** A delegate as a list of methods

## Declaring the Delegate Type

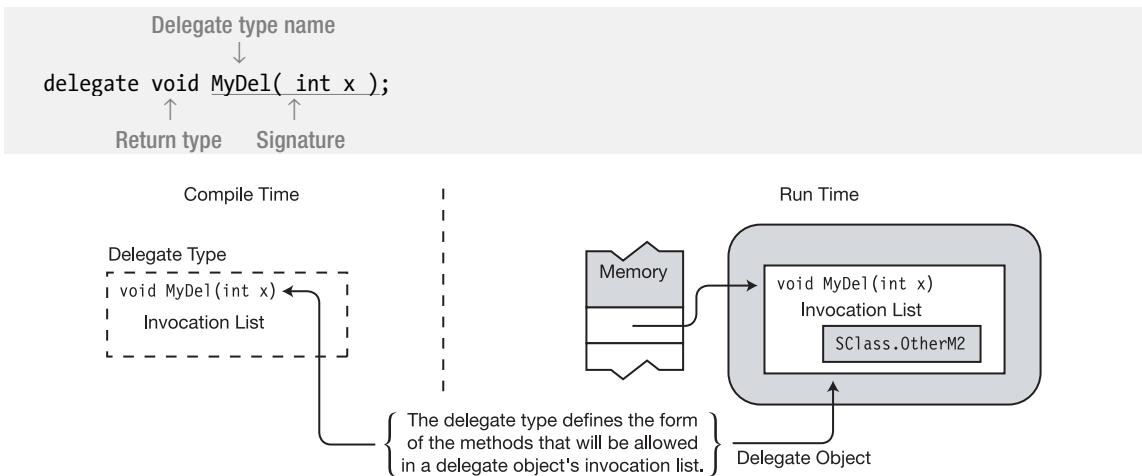
Delegates are types, just as classes are types. And as with classes, a *delegate* type must be declared before you can use it to create variables and objects of the type. The following example code declares a delegate type.

- Even though the delegate type declaration looks like a method declaration, it does not need to be declared inside a class because it is a type declaration.

```
Keyword      Delegate type name
↓           ↓
delegate void MyDel ( int x );
```

The declaration of a delegate type looks much like the declaration of a method, in that it has both a *return type* and a *signature*. The return type and signature specify the form of the methods that the delegate will accept.

For example, the following code declares delegate type MyDel. This declaration specifies that delegates of this type will only accept methods that have a single int parameter and that have no return value. Figure 15-3 shows a representation of the delegate type on the left and the delegate object on the right.



**Figure 15-3. Delegate type and object**

The delegate type declaration differs from a method declaration in two ways. The delegate type declaration

- Is prefaced with the keyword `delegate`
- Does not have a method body

## Creating the Delegate Object

A delegate is a reference type and therefore has both a reference and an object. After a delegate type is declared, you can declare variables and create objects of the type. The following code shows the declaration of a variable of a delegate type:

```
Delegate type   Variable
↓             ↓
MyDel    delVar;
```

There are two ways you can create a delegate object. The first is to use an object-creation expression with the new operator, as shown in the following code. The operand of the new operator consists of the following:

- The delegate type name.
- A set of parentheses containing the name of a method to use as the first member in the invocation list. *The method can be either an instance method or a static method.*

```
Instance method
↓
delVar = new MyDel( myInstObj.MyM1 );      // Create delegate and save ref.
dVar   = new MyDel( SClass.OtherM2 );      // Create delegate and save ref.
                                         ↑
                                         Static method
```

You can also use the shortcut syntax, which consists of just the method specifier, as shown in the following code. This code and the preceding code are equivalent. Using the shortcut syntax works because there is an implicit conversion between a method name and a compatible delegate type.

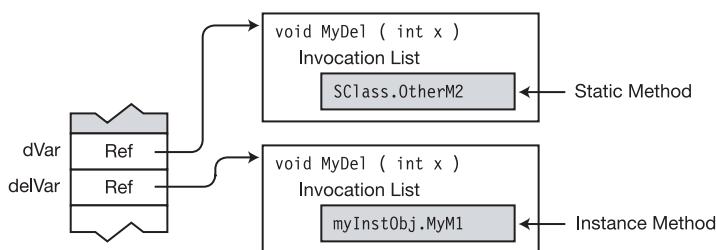
```
delVar = myInstObj.MyM1;          // Create delegate and save reference.
dVar   = SClass.OtherM2;          // Create delegate and save reference.
```

For example, the following code creates two delegate objects—one with an instance method and the other with a static method. Figure 15-4 shows the instantiations of the delegates. This code assumes that there is an object called `myInstObj`, which is an instance of a class that has defined a method called `MyM1` returning no value and taking an `int` as a parameter. It also assumes that there is a class called `SClass`, which has a static method `OtherM2` with a return type and signature matching those of delegate `MyDel`.

```
delegate void MyDel(int x);           // Declare delegate type.
MyDel delVar, dVar;                  // Create two delegate variables.
```

Instance method  
↓  
`delVar = new MyDel( myInstObj.MyM1 );` // Create delegate and save ref.  
`dVar = new MyDel( SClass.OtherM2 );` // Create delegate and save ref.

↑  
Static method



**Figure 15-4.** Instantiating the delegates

Besides allocating the memory for the delegate, creating a delegate object also places the first method in the delegate's invocation list.

You can also create the variable and instantiate the object in the same statement, using the initializer syntax. For example, the following statements also produce the same configuration shown in Figure 15-4:

```
MyDel delVar = new MyDel( myInstObj.MyM1 );
MyDel dVar = new MyDel( SClass.OtherM2 );
```

The following statements use the shortcut syntax but again produce the results shown in Figure 15-4:

```
MyDel delVar = myInstObj.MyM1;
MyDel dVar = SClass.OtherM2;
```

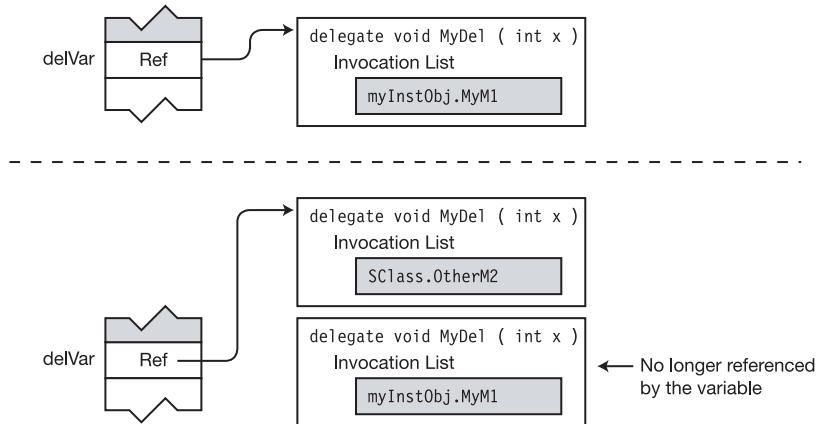
## Assigning Delegates

Because delegates are reference types, you can change the reference contained in a delegate variable by assigning to it. The old delegate object will be disposed of by the garbage collector (GC) when it gets around to it.

For example, the following code sets and then changes the value of `delVar`. Figure 15-5 illustrates the code.

```
MyDel delVar;
delVar = myInstObj.MyM1; // Create and assign the delegate object.

...
delVar = SClass.OtherM2; // Create and assign the new delegate object.
```



**Figure 15-5.** Assigning to a delegate variable

## Combining Delegates

All the delegates you've seen so far have had only a single method in their invocation lists. Delegates can be "combined" by using the addition operator. The result of the operation is the creation of a new delegate, with an invocation list that is the concatenation of copies of the invocation lists of the two operand delegates.

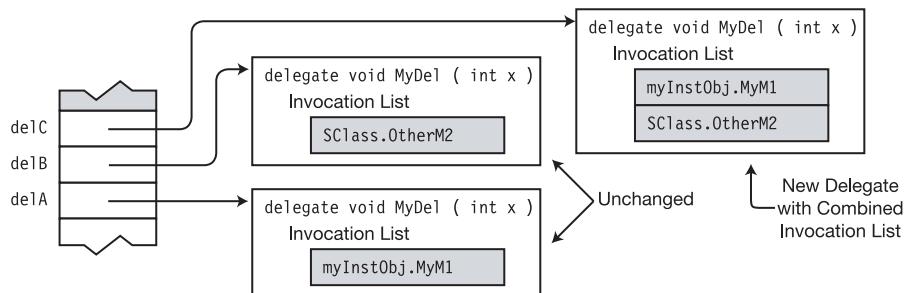
For example, the following code creates three delegates. The third delegate is created from the combination of the first two.

```
MyDel delA = myInstObj.MyM1;
MyDel delB = SClass.OtherM2;

MyDel delC = delA + delB; // Has combined invocation list
```

Although the term *combining delegates* might give the impression that the operand delegates are modified, they are not changed at all. In fact, *delegates are immutable*. After a delegate object is created, it cannot be changed.

Figure 15-6 illustrates the results of the preceding code. Notice that the operand delegates remain unchanged.



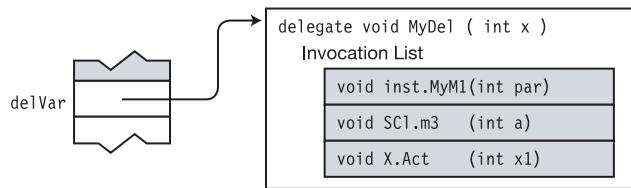
**Figure 15-6.** Combining delegates

## Adding Methods to Delegates

Although you saw in the previous section that delegates are, in reality, immutable, C# provides syntax for making it appear that you can add a method to a delegate, using the `+ =` operator.

For example, the following code “adds” two methods to the invocation list of the delegate. The methods are added to the bottom of the invocation list. Figure 15-7 shows the result.

```
MyDel delVar = inst.MyM1;      // Create and initialize.
delVar     += SCL.m3;          // Add a method.
delVar     += X.Act;           // Add a method.
```



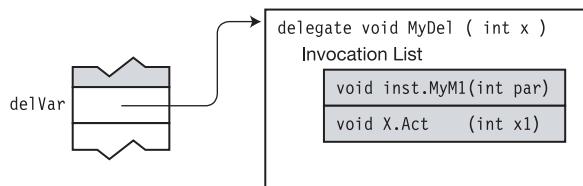
**Figure 15-7.** Result of “adding” methods to a delegate. In reality, because delegates are immutable, the resulting delegate with three methods in its invocation list is an entirely new delegate pointed at by the variable.

What is actually happening, of course, is that when the `+ =` operator is used, a new delegate is created, with an invocation list that is the combination of the delegate on the left plus the method listed on the right. This new delegate is then assigned to the `delVar` variable.

## Removing Methods from a Delegate

You can also remove a method from a delegate, using the `-=` operator. The following code shows the use of the operator. Figure 15-8 shows the result of this code when applied to the delegate illustrated in Figure 15-7.

```
delVar -= SCL.m3;           // Remove the method from the delegate.
```



**Figure 15-8.** Result of removing a method from a delegate

As with adding a method to a delegate, the resulting delegate is actually a new delegate. The new delegate is a copy of the old delegate—but its invocation list no longer contains the reference to the method that was removed.

The following are some things to remember when removing methods:

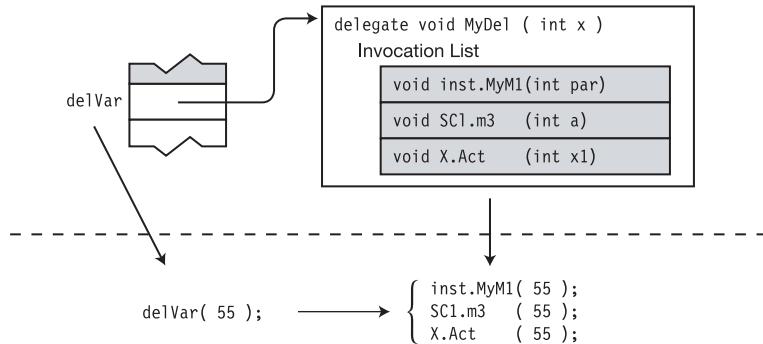
- If there are multiple entries for a method in the invocation list, the `-=` operator *starts searching at the bottom of the list* and removes the first instance of the matching method it finds.
- Attempting to delete a method that is not in the delegate has no effect.
- Attempting to invoke an empty delegate throws an exception.
- You can check whether a delegate's invocation list is empty by comparing the delegate to `null`. If the invocation list is empty, the delegate is `null`.

## Invoking a Delegate

You invoke a delegate by calling it, as if it were simply a method. The parameters used to invoke the delegate are used to invoke each of the methods on the invocation list (unless one of the parameters is an output parameter, which we'll cover shortly).

For example, the delegate `delVar`, as shown in the following code, takes a single integer input value. Invoking the delegate with a parameter causes it to invoke each of the members in its invocation list with the same parameter value (55, in this case). Figure 15-9 illustrates the invocation.

```
MyDel delVar = inst.MyM1;
delVar += SCl.m3;
delVar += X.Act;
...
delVar( 55 );                                // Invoke the delegate.
...
```



**Figure 15-9.** When the delegate is invoked, it executes each of the methods in its invocation list, with the same parameters with which it was called.

A method can be in the invocation list more than once. If it's in the list more than once, then when the delegate is invoked, the method will be called each time it is encountered in the list.

## Delegate Example

The following code defines and uses a delegate with no parameters and no return value. Note the following about the code:

- Class `Test` defines two print functions.
- Method `Main` creates an instance of the delegate and then adds three more methods.
- The program then invokes the delegate, which calls its methods. Before invoking the delegate, however, it checks to make sure it's not null.

```
// Define a delegate type with no return value and no parameters.
delegate void PrintFunction();

class Test
{
    public void Print1()
    { Console.WriteLine("Print1 -- instance"); }

    public static void Print2()
    { Console.WriteLine("Print2 -- static"); }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Test t = new Test();      // Create a test class instance.
        PrintFunction pf;        // Create a null delegate.

        pf = t.Print1;           // Instantiate and initialize the delegate.

        // Add three more methods to the delegate.
        pf += Test.Print2;
        pf += t.Print1;
        pf += Test.Print2;
        // The delegate now contains four methods.

        if( null != pf )         // Make sure the delegate isn't null.
            pf();                // Invoke the delegate.
        else
            Console.WriteLine("Delegate is empty");
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Print1 -- instance
Print2 -- static
Print1 -- instance
Print2 -- static
```

---

## Invoking Delegates with Return Values

If a delegate has a return value and more than one method in its invocation list, the following occurs:

- The value returned by the last method in the invocation list is the value returned from the delegate invocation.
- The return values from all the other methods in the invocation list are ignored.

For example, the following code declares a delegate that returns an `int` value. `Main` creates an object of the delegate and adds two additional methods. It then calls the delegate in the `WriteLine` statement and prints its return value. Figure 15-10 shows a graphical representation of the code.

```
delegate int MyDel(); // Declare method with return value.
class MyClass {
    int IntValue = 5;
    public int Add2() { IntValue += 2; return IntValue; }
    public int Add3() { IntValue += 3; return IntValue; }
}

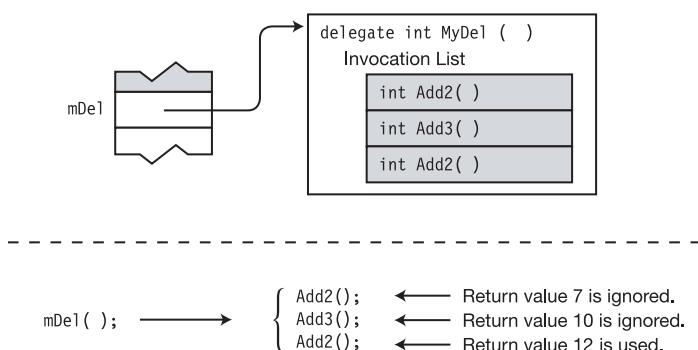
class Program {
    static void Main() {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        MyDel mDel = mc.Add2; // Create and initialize the delegate.
        mDel += mc.Add3; // Add a method.
        mDel += mc.Add2; // Add a method.
        Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}", mDel());
    }
} // Invoke the delegate and use the return value.
```

This code produces the following output:

---

Value: 12

---



**Figure 15-10.** The return value of the last method executed is the value returned by the delegate.

## Invoking Delegates with Reference Parameters

If a delegate has a reference parameter, the value of the parameter can change upon return from one or more of the methods in the invocation list.

- When calling the next method in the invocation list, the *new value of the parameter—not the initial value*—is the one passed to the next method.

For example, the following code invokes a delegate with a reference parameter. Figure 15-11 illustrates the code.

```
delegate void MyDel( ref int X );

class MyClass
{
    public void Add2(ref int x) { x += 2; }
    public void Add3(ref int x) { x += 3; }
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();

        MyDel mDel = mc.Add2;
        mDel += mc.Add3;
        mDel += mc.Add2;

        int x = 5;
        mDel(ref x);

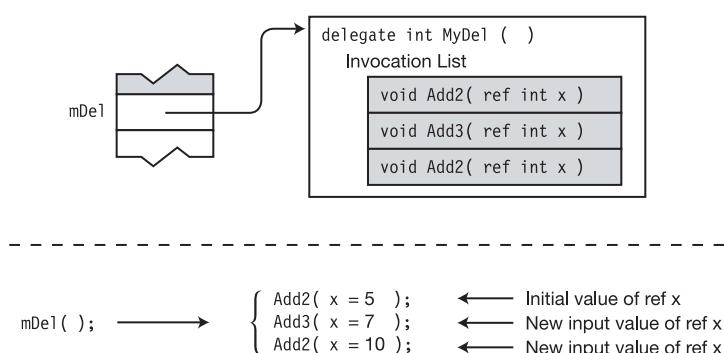
        Console.WriteLine("Value: {0}", x);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

Value: 12

---



**Figure 15-11.** The value of a reference parameter can change between calls.

## Anonymous Methods

So far, you've seen that you can use either static methods or instance methods to instantiate a delegate. In either case, the method itself can be called explicitly from other parts of the code and, of course, must be a member of some class or struct.

What if, however, the method is used only one time—to instantiate the delegate? In that case, other than the syntactic requirement for creating the delegate, there is no real need for a separate, named method. Anonymous methods allow you to dispense with the separate, named method.

- An *anonymous method* is a method that is declared inline, at the point of instantiating a delegate.

For example, Figure 15-12 shows two versions of the same class. The version on the left declares and uses a method named Add20. The version on the right uses an anonymous method instead. The nonshaded code of both versions is identical.

<pre>class Program {     public static int Add20(int x)     {         return x + 20;     }      delegate int OtherDel(int InParam);     static void Main()     {         OtherDel del = Add20;          Console.WriteLine("{0}", del(5));         Console.WriteLine("{0}", del(6));     } }</pre> <p>Named Method</p>	<pre>class Program {     delegate int OtherDel(int InParam);     static void Main()     {         OtherDel del = delegate(int x)         {             return x + 20;         };         Console.WriteLine("{0}", del(5));         Console.WriteLine("{0}", del(6));     } }</pre> <p>Anonymous Method</p>
---	--

**Figure 15-12.** Comparing a named method and an anonymous method

Both sets of code in Figure 15-12 produce the following output:

---

25  
26

---

## Using Anonymous Methods

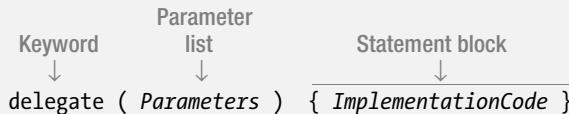
You can use an anonymous method in the following places:

- As an initializer expression when declaring a delegate variable.
- On the right side of an assignment statement when combining delegates.
- On the right side of an assignment statement adding a delegate to an event. Chapter 16 covers events.

## Syntax of Anonymous Methods

The syntax of an anonymous method expression includes the following components:

- The type keyword `delegate`
- The *parameter list*, which can be omitted if the statement block doesn't use any parameters
- The *statement block*, which contains the code of the anonymous method



## Return Type

An anonymous method does not explicitly declare a return type. The behavior of the implementation code itself, however, must match the delegate's return type by returning a value of that type. If the delegate has a return type of `void`, then the anonymous method code cannot return a value.

For example, in the following code, the delegate's return type is `int`. The implementation code of the anonymous method must therefore return an `int` on all pathways through the code.

```

Return type of delegate type
↓
delegate int OtherDel(int InParam);

static void Main()
{
    OtherDel del = delegate(int x)
    {
        return x + 20 ;                                // Returns an int
    };
}
... 
```

## Parameters

Except in the case of array parameters, the parameter list of an anonymous method must match that of the delegate in the following three characteristics:

- Number of parameters
- Types and positions of the parameters
- Modifiers

You can simplify the parameter list of an anonymous method by leaving the parentheses empty or omitting them altogether, but only if *both* of the following are true:

- The delegate's parameter list does not contain any *out* parameters.
- The anonymous method does not use *any* parameters.

For example, the following code declares a delegate that does not have any *out* parameters and an anonymous method that does not use any parameters. Since both conditions are met, you can omit the parameter list from the anonymous method.

```
delegate void SomeDel ( int X );           // Declare the delegate type.

SomeDel SDel = delegate                  // Parameter list omitted
{
    PrintMessage();
    Cleanup();
};
```

## params Parameters

If the delegate declaration's parameter list contains a `params` parameter, then the `params` keyword is omitted from the parameter list of the anonymous method. For example, in the following code, this happens:

- The delegate type declaration specifies the last parameter as a `params` type parameter.
- The anonymous method parameter list, however, must omit the `params` keyword.

```
params keyword used in delegate type declaration
↓
delegate void SomeDel( int X, params int[] Y);

params keyword omitted in matching anonymous method
↓
SomeDel mDel = delegate (int X, int[] Y)
{
    ...
};
```

## Scope of Variables and Parameters

The scopes of parameters and local variables declared inside an anonymous method are limited to the body of the implementation code, as illustrated in Figure 15-13.

For example, the following anonymous method defines parameter *y* and local variable *z*. After the close of the body of the anonymous method, *y* and *z* are no longer in scope. The last line of the code would produce a compile error.

```
delegate void MyDel( int x );
...
MyDel mDel = delegate ( int y )
{
    int z = 10;
    Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}", y, z);
};
```

Scope of y and z

Out of Scope

Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}", y, z); // Compile error.

**Figure 15-13.** Scope of variables and parameters

## Outer Variables

Unlike the named methods of a delegate, anonymous methods have access to the local variables and environment of the scope surrounding them.

- Variables from the surrounding scope are called *outer variables*.
- An outer variable used in the implementation code of an anonymous method is said to be *captured* by the method.

For example, the code in Figure 15-14 shows variable *x* defined outside the anonymous method. The code in the method, however, has access to *x* and can print its value.

```
int x = 5; ← Variable x is defined before the scope
...                                of the anonymous method.
MyDel mDel = delegate
{
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", x);
};
```

Variable x is defined before the scope  
of the anonymous method.

Using outer variable x.

Variable x can be used  
inside the scope of the  
anonymous method.

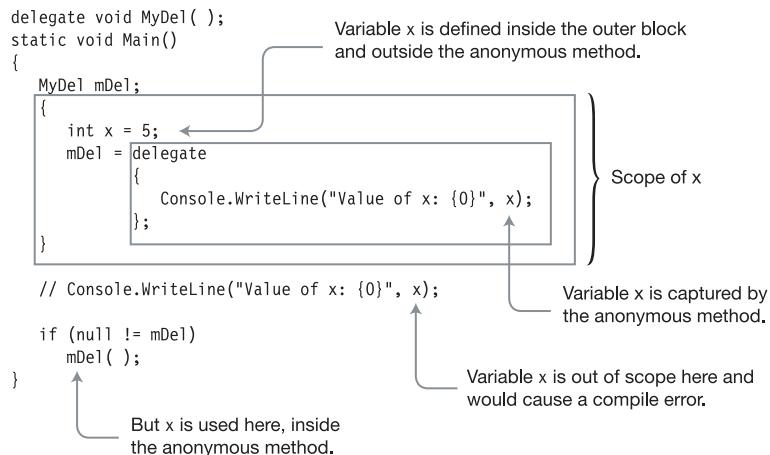
**Figure 15-14.** Using an outer variable

## Extension of Captured Variable's Lifetime

A captured outer variable remains alive as long as its capturing method is part of the delegate, even if the variable would have normally gone out of scope.

For example, the code in Figure 15-15 illustrates the extension of a captured variable's lifetime.

- Local variable `x` is declared and initialized inside a block.
- Delegate `mDel` is then instantiated, using an anonymous method that captures outer variable `x`.
- When the block is closed, `x` goes out of scope.
- If the `WriteLine` statement following the close of the block were to be uncommented, it would cause a compile error, because it references `x`, which is now out of scope.
- The anonymous method inside delegate `mDel`, however, maintains `x` in its environment and prints its value when `mDel` is invoked.



**Figure 15-15.** Variable captured in an anonymous method

The code in the figure produces the following output:

---

Value of x: 5

---

## Lambda Expressions

C# 2.0 introduced anonymous methods, which allowed you to include short bits of inline code when creating or adding to delegates. The syntax for anonymous methods, however, is somewhat verbose and requires information that the compiler itself already knows. Rather than requiring you to include this redundant information, C# 3.0 introduced *lambda expressions*, which pare down the syntax of anonymous methods. You'll probably want to use lambda expressions instead of anonymous methods. In fact, if lambda expressions had been introduced first, there never would have been anonymous methods.

In the anonymous method syntax, the `delegate` keyword is redundant because the compiler can already see that you're assigning the method to a delegate. You can easily transform an anonymous method into a lambda expression by doing the following:

- Delete the `delegate` keyword.
- Place the lambda operator, `=>`, between the parameter list and the body of the anonymous method. The lambda operator is read as “goes to.”

The following code shows this transformation. The first line shows an anonymous method being assigned to variable `del`. The second line shows the same anonymous method after having been transformed into a lambda expression, being assigned to variable `le1`.

```
MyDel del = delegate(int x) { return x + 1; } ; // Anonymous method
MyDel le1 = (int x) => { return x + 1; } ; // Lambda expression
```

---

**Note** The term *lambda expression* comes from the *lambda calculus*, which was developed in the 1920s and 1930s by mathematician Alonzo Church and others. The lambda calculus is a system for representing functions and uses the Greek letter lambda ( $\lambda$ ) to represent a nameless function. More recently, functional programming languages such as Lisp and its dialects use the term to represent expressions that can be used to directly describe the definition of a function, rather than using a name for it.

---

This simple transformation is less verbose and looks cleaner, but it only saves you six characters. There's more, however, that the compiler can infer, allowing you to simplify the lambda expression further, as shown in the following code.

- From the delegate's declaration, the compiler also knows the types of the delegate's parameters, so the lambda expression allows you to leave out the parameter types, as shown in the assignment to le2.
  - Parameters listed with their types are called *explicitly typed*.
  - Those listed without their types are called *implicitly typed*.
- If there's only a single, implicitly typed parameter, you can leave off the parentheses surrounding it, as shown in the assignment to le3.
- Finally, lambda expressions allow the body of the expression to be either a statement block or an expression. If the statement block contains a single return statement, you can replace the statement block with just the expression that follows the return keyword, as shown in the assignment to le4.

```
MyDel del = delegate(int x)    { return x + 1; } ;      // Anonymous method
MyDel le1 =          (int x) => { return x + 1; } ;      // Lambda expression
MyDel le2 =          (x) => { return x + 1; } ;      // Lambda expression
MyDel le3 =          x => { return x + 1; } ;      // Lambda expression
MyDel le4 =          x =>      x + 1      ;      // Lambda expression
```

The final form of the lambda expression has about one-fourth the characters of the original anonymous method and is cleaner and easier to understand.

The following code shows the full transformation. The first line of Main shows an anonymous method being assigned to variable del. The second line shows the same anonymous method, after having been transformed into a lambda expression, being assigned to variable le1.

```
delegate double MyDel(int par);

static void Main()
{
    MyDel del = delegate(int x) { return x + 1; } ; // Anonymous method

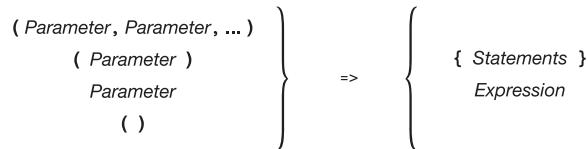
    MyDel le1 =      (int x) => { return x + 1; } ; // Lambda expression
    MyDel le2 =      (x) => { return x + 1; } ;
    MyDel le3 =      x => { return x + 1; } ;
    MyDel le4 =      x => x + 1 ;

    Console.WriteLine("{0}", del (12));
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", le1 (12)); Console.WriteLine("{0}", le2 (12));
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", le3 (12)); Console.WriteLine("{0}", le4 (12));
}
```

Some important points about lambda expression parameter lists are the following:

- The parameters in the parameter list of a lambda expression must match that of the delegate in number, type, and position.
- The parameters in the parameter list of an expression do not have to include the type (that is, *implicitly typed*) unless the delegate has either ref or out parameters—in which case the types are required (that is, *explicitly typed*).
- If there is only a single parameter and it is implicitly typed, the surrounding parentheses can be omitted. Otherwise, they are required.
- If there are no parameters, you must use an empty set of parentheses.

Figure 15-16 shows the syntax for lambda expressions.



**Figure 15-16.** The syntax for lambda expressions consists of the lambda operator with the parameter section on the left and the lambda body on the right.



# Events

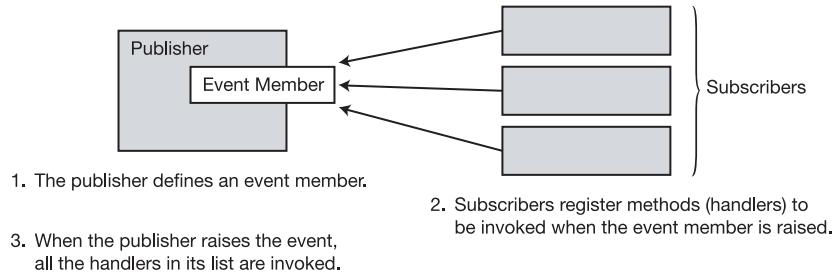
- Events Are Like Delegates
- Overview of Source Code Components
- Declaring an Event
- Raising an Event
- Subscribing to an Event
- Standard Event Usage
- The MyTimerClass Code
- Event Accessors

# Events Are Like Delegates

The preceding chapter covered delegates. Many aspects of events are similar to those of delegates. In fact, an event is like a simpler delegate that is specialized for a particular use. Figure 16-1 illustrates that, like a delegate, an event has methods registered with it and invokes those methods when it is invoked.

The following are some important terms related to events:

- *Raising an event*: The term for *invoking* or *firing* an event. When an event is raised, all the methods registered with it are invoked—in order.
- *Publisher*: A class or struct that makes an event available to other classes or structs for their use.
- *Subscriber*: A class or struct that registers methods with a publisher.
- *Event handler*: A method that is registered with an event. It can be declared in the same class or struct as the event or in a different class or struct.



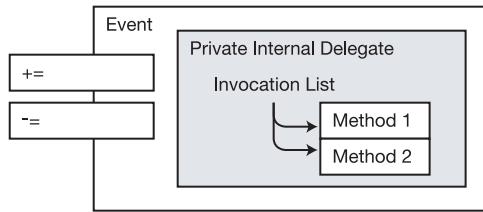
**Figure 16-1.** Publishers and subscribers

## An Event Has a Private Delegate

There's good reason for the similarities in the behaviors of delegates and events. An event contains a private delegate, as illustrated in Figure 16-2. The important things to know about an event's private delegate are the following:

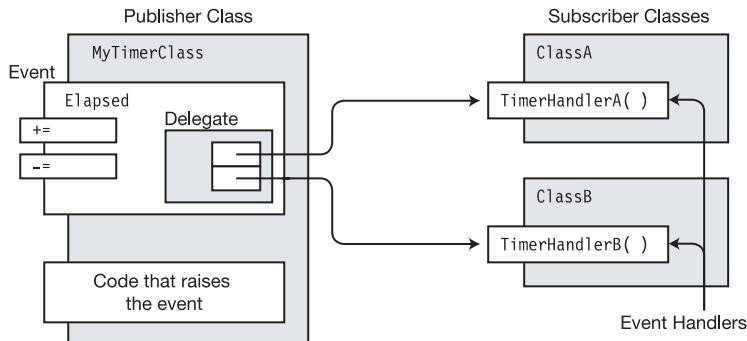
- An *event* gives structured access to its privately controlled delegate.
- Unlike the many operations available with a delegate, with an event you can only add, remove, and invoke event handlers.
- When an event is raised, it invokes the delegate, which sequentially calls the methods in the invocation list.

Notice in Figure 16-2 that only the `+=` and `-=` operators are sticking out to the left of the event. This is because they are the only operations allowed on an event.



**Figure 16-2.** An event has an encapsulated delegate

Figure 16-3 illustrates the runtime view of a publisher class with an event called `Elapsed`. `ClassA` and `ClassB`, on the right, each has an event handler registered with `Elapsed`. Inside the event you can see the delegate referencing the two event handlers. Besides the event, the publisher also contains the code that raises the event.

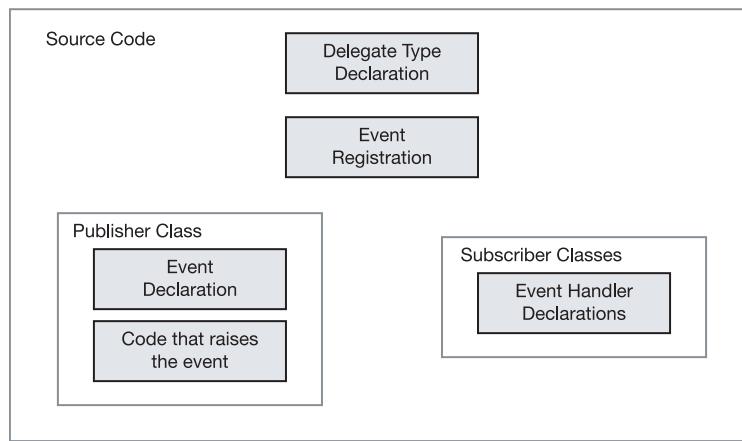


**Figure 16-3.** Structure and terminology of a class with a timer event

## Overview of Source Code Components

Five components of code need to be in place to use events. I'll cover each of them in the following sections, and they are illustrated in Figure 16-4. These components are the following:

- *Delegate type declaration*: The event and the event handlers must have a common signature and return type, which is described by the delegate type declaration.
- *Event handler declarations*: These are the declarations in the subscriber classes of the methods (event handlers) to be executed when the event is raised. These do not have to be separate methods. They can be anonymous methods or lambda expressions.
- *Event declaration*: This is the declaration in the publisher class of the event that holds and invokes the event handlers.
- *Event registration*: This is the code that connects the event handlers to the event.
- *Code that raises the event*: This is the code in the publisher that calls the event, causing it to invoke its event handlers.



**Figure 16-4.** The five source code components of using an event

## Declaring an Event

The publisher must provide the event and often provides the code to raise the event.

Creating an event is simple—it requires only a delegate type and a name. The syntax for an event declaration is shown in the following code, which declares an event called `Elapsed`. Notice the following about event `Elapsed`:

- It is declared inside a class called `MyTimerClass`.
- It accepts event handlers with the return type and signature matching the delegate type `EventHandler`.
- It is declared public so that other classes and structs can register event handlers with it.

```
class MyTimerClass
{
    Keyword           Name of event
    ↓                 ↓
    public event EventHandler Elapsed;
    ↑
    Delegate type
```

You can declare more than one event in a declaration statement by using a comma-separated list. For example, the following statement declares three events:

```
public event EventHandler MyEvent1, MyEvent2, OtherEvent;
    ↑
    Three events
```

You can also make events static, by including the `static` keyword, as shown in the following declaration:

```
public static event EventHandler Elapsed;
    ↑
    Keyword
```

## An Event Is a Member

A common error is to think of an event as a type, which it is not. An event is a *member*, and there are several important ramifications to this:

- Because a member is not a type, you do not use an object-creation expression (a new expression) to create its object.
- Because an event is a member
  - It must be declared in a class or struct, with the other members.
  - You cannot declare an event in a block of executable code.
- An event member is implicitly and automatically initialized to null with the other members.

## The Delegate Type and EventHandler

An event declaration requires the name of a *delegate type*. You can either declare one or use one that already exists. If you declare a delegate type, it must specify the signature and return type of the methods that will be stored by the event.

A better idea is to use the `EventHandler` delegate, which is a predefined delegate type used by the .NET BCL and designated as the standard for use with events. You are strongly encouraged to use it. The following code shows what `EventHandler`'s declaration looks like in the BCL. The `EventHandler` delegate is covered in more detail later in this chapter.

```
public delegate void EventHandler( object sender, EventArgs e );
```

## Raising an Event

The event member itself just holds the event handlers that need to be invoked. Nothing happens with them unless the event is raised. You need to make sure there is code to do just that, at the appropriate times.

For example, the following code raises event `Elapsed`. Notice the following about the code:

- Before raising the event, the code compares it to `null`, to see whether it contains any event handlers. If the event is `null`, it is empty.
- Raising the event itself is like invoking a function.
  - Use the name of the event, followed by the parameter list enclosed in parentheses.
  - The parameter list must match the delegate type of the event.

```
if (Elapsed != null)          // Make sure there are methods to execute.
    Elapsed (source, args);   // Raise the event.
    ↑                      ↑
Event name     Parameter list
```

Putting together the event declaration and the code to raise the event gives the following class declaration for the publisher. The code contains two members: the event and a method called `OnOneSecond`, which raises the event.

```
public class MyTimerClass
{
    public event EventHandler Elapsed;    // Declare the event.

    private void OnOneSecond(object source, EventArgs args)
    {
        if (Elapsed != null)          // Make sure there are methods to execute.
            Elapsed(source, args);
    }                                ↑
                                    Raise the event.

    // The following code makes sure that method OnOneSecond is called every
    // 1,000 milliseconds.
    ...
}
```

For now, I'll let method `OnOneSecond` be somehow, mysteriously, called once every second. Later in the chapter I'll show you how to make this happen. But for now, remember these important points:

- The publisher class has an event as a member.
- The class contains the code to raise the event.

## Subscribing to an Event

To add an event handler to an event, the handler must have the same return type and signature as the event's delegate.

- Use the `+=` operator to add an event handler to an event, as shown in the following code.
- The method can be any of the following:
  - An instance method
  - A static method
  - An anonymous method
  - A lambda expression

For example, the following code adds three methods to event `Elapsed`. The first is an instance method using the method form. The second is a static method using the method form. The third is an instance method using the delegate form.

Class instance	↓	Instance method
	↓	
mc.Elapsed += ca.TimerHandlerA;		// Method reference form
mc.Elapsed += ClassB.TimerHandlerB;		// Method reference form
↑	↑	
Event member	Static method	
mc.Elapsed += new EventHandler(cc.TimerHandlerC); // Delegate form		

Just as with delegates, you can use anonymous methods and lambda expressions to add event handlers. For example, the following code first uses a lambda expression and then uses an anonymous method.

```
mc.Elapsed += (source, args) =>                                // Lambda expression
{
    Console.WriteLine("Lambda expression.");
};

mc.Elapsed += delegate(object source, EventArgs args) // Anonymous method
{
    Console.WriteLine("Anonymous method.");
};
```

The following program uses the `MyTimerClass` class declared in the previous section. The code performs the following:

- It registers two event handlers from two different class instances.
- After registering the event handlers, it sleeps for two seconds. During that time, the timer class raises the event two times, and both event handlers are executed each time.

```
public class MyTimerClass { ... }

class ClassA
{
    public void TimerHandlerA(object source, EventArgs args)      // Event handler
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Class A handler called");
    }
}

class ClassB
{
    public static void TimerHandlerB(object source, EventArgs args) // Static
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Class B handler called");
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        ClassA ca = new ClassA();           // Create the class object.
        MyTimerClass mc = new MyTimerClass(); // Create the timer object.

        mc.Elapsed += ca.TimerHandlerA;     // Add handler A -- instance.
        mc.Elapsed += ClassB.TimerHandlerB; // Add handler B -- static.

        Thread.Sleep(2250);
    }
}
```

When supplied with the code for `MyTimerClass`, this code produces the following output:

---

```
Class A handler called
Class B handler called
Class A handler called
Class B handler called
```

---

## Removing Event Handlers

When you're done with an event handler, you should remove it from the event, to allow the garbage collector to free up that memory. You remove an event handler from an event by using the `-=` operator, as shown here:

```
mc.Elapsed -= ca.TimerHandlerA;           // Remove handler A.
```

For example, the following code removes the event handler for `ClassB` after the first two times the event is raised and then lets the program run for another two seconds.

```
...
mc.Elapsed += ca.TimerHandlerA;           // Add instance handler A.
mc.Elapsed += ClassB.TimerHandlerB;       // Add static handler B.

Thread.Sleep(2250);                      // Sleep more than 2 seconds.

mc.Elapsed -= ClassB.TimerHandlerB;       // Remove static handler B.
Console.WriteLine("Class B event handler removed");

Thread.Sleep(2250);                      // Sleep more than 2 seconds.
```

This code produces the following output. The first four lines are the result of both handlers being called twice, in the first two seconds. After the handler for `ClassB` is removed, only the handler for the instance of `ClassA` is called, during the last two seconds.

---

```
Class A handler called
Class B handler called
Class A handler called
Class B handler called
Class B event handler removed
Class A handler called
Class A handler called
```

---

## Standard Event Usage

GUI programming is event driven, which means that while the program is running, it can be interrupted at any time by events such as button clicks, key presses, or system timers. When this happens, the program needs to handle the event and then continue on its course.

Clearly, this asynchronous handling of program events is the perfect situation to use C# events. Windows GUI programming uses events so extensively that there is a standard .NET Framework pattern for using them, which you are strongly encouraged to follow.

The foundation of the standard pattern for event usage is the `EventHandler` delegate type, which is declared in the `System` namespace. The declaration of the `EventHandler` delegate type is shown in the following code:

- The first parameter is meant to hold a reference to the object that raised the event. It is of type `object` and can, therefore, match any instance of any type.
- The second parameter is meant to hold state information of whatever type is appropriate for the application.
- The return type is `void`.

```
public delegate void EventHandler(object sender, EventArgs e);
```

## Using the EventArgs Class

The second parameter in the `EventHandler` delegate type is an object of class `EventArgs`, which is declared in the `System` namespace. You might be tempted to think that, since the second parameter is meant for passing data, an `EventArgs` class object would be able to store data of some sort. You would be wrong.

- The `EventArgs` class is designed to carry no data. It is used for event handlers that do not need to pass data—and is generally ignored by them.
- If you want to pass data, you must declare a class *derived* from `EventArgs`, with the appropriate fields to hold the data you want to pass.

Even though the `EventArgs` class does not actually pass data, it is an important part of the pattern of using the `EventHandler` delegate. Class `object` and class `EventArgs` are the base classes for whatever actual types are used as the parameters. This allows `EventHandler` to provide a signature that is the lowest common denominator for all events and event handlers, allowing them to have exactly two parameters, rather than having different signatures for each case.

## Passing Data by Extending EventArgs

To pass data in the second parameter of your event handler and adhere to the standard conventions, you need to declare a custom class derived from `EventArgs` that can store the data you need passed. The name of the class should end in *EventArgs*. For example, the following code declares a custom class that can store a string in a field called `Message`:

```
Custom class name      Base class
↓                  ↓
public class MyTCEEventArgs: EventArgs
{
    public string Message;           // Stores a message
    public MyTCEEventArgs(string s)   // The constructor sets the message.
    {
        Message = s;
    }
}
```

## Using the Custom Delegate

Now that you have a custom class for passing data in the second parameter of your event handlers, you need a delegate type that uses the new custom class. There are two ways you can do this:

- The first way is to use a nongeneric delegate. To do this, do the following:
  - Create a new custom delegate using your custom class type, as shown in the following code.
  - Use the new delegate name throughout the four other sections of the event code.

```
Custom delegate name           Custom class  
↓                         ↓  
public delegate void MyTCEventHandler (object sender, MyTCEEventArgs e);
```

- The second way was introduced with C# 2.0 and uses the generic delegate `EventHandler<>`. Chapter 19 covers C# generics. To use the generic delegate, do the following, as shown in the code following:
  - Place the name of the custom class between the angle brackets.
  - Use the entire string wherever you would have used the name of your custom delegate type. For example, this is what the event declaration would look like:

```
Generic delegate using custom class  
↓  
public event EventHandler<MyTCEEventArgs> Elapsed;  
↑  
Event name
```

Use the custom class and the custom delegate, either nongeneric or generic, in the other four sections of code dealing with the event.

For example, the following code updates the `MyTimerClass` code to use a custom `EventArgs` class called `MyTCEEventArgs` and the generic `EventHandler<>` delegate.

```
public class MyTCEEventArgs: EventArgs  
{  
    public string Message;  
  
    public MyTCEEventArgs(string s) {  
        Message = s;  
    }  
}  
  
public class MyTimerClass  Generic delegate  
{  
    public event EventHandler<MyTCEEventArgs> Elapsed; // Event declaration  
  
    private void OnOneSecond(object source, EventArgs args)  
    {  
        if (Elapsed != null)  
        {  
            MyTCEEventArgs mtcea =  
                new MyTCEEventArgs("Message from OnOneSecond");  
            Elapsed(source, mtcea);  
        }  
    }  
    ... // This code is given at the end of the chapter.  
}  
  
class ClassA  
{  
    public void TimerHandlerA(object source, MyTCEEventArgs args)  
    {  
        Console.WriteLine("Class A Message: {0}", args.Message);  
    }  
}
```

Declaration of custom class

Code to raise event

Event handler

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        ClassA ca = new ClassA();
        MyTimerClass mc = new MyTimerClass();

        mc.Elapsed +=                                     // Register handler.
            new EventHandler<MyTCEEventArgs>(ca.TimerHandlerA);

        Thread.Sleep(3250);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Class A Message: Message from OnOneSecond
Class A Message: Message from OnOneSecond
Class A Message: Message from OnOneSecond
```

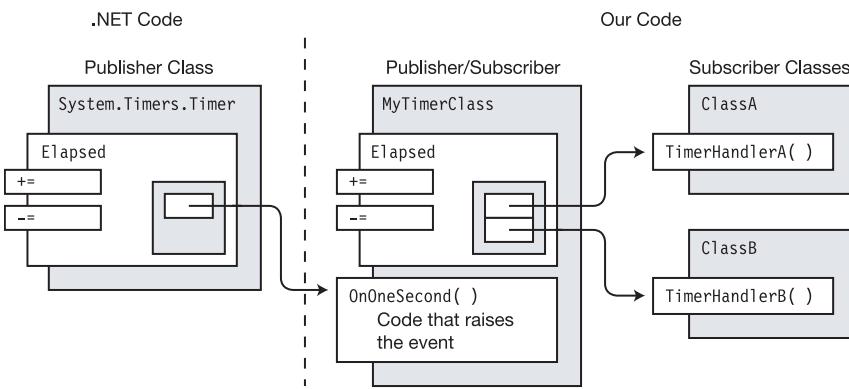
---

## The MyTimerClass Code

Now that you've seen all five components of code that need to be implemented to use an event, I can show you the full `MyTimerClass` class that the code has been using.

Most things about the class have been pretty clear—it has an event called `Elapsed` that can be subscribed to and a method called `OnOneSecond` that is called every second and raises the event. The one question remaining about it is, "What causes `OnOneSecond` to be called every second?"

The answer is that I've created method `OnOneSecond` and subscribed it as an event handler to an event in a class called `Timer`, in the `System.Timers` namespace. The event in `Timer` is raised every 1,000 milliseconds and calls event handler `OnOneSecond`, which in turn raises event `Elapsed` in class `MyTimerClass`. Figure 16-5 shows the structure of the code.



**Figure 16-5.** The code structure of `MyTimerClass`

The `Timer` class is a useful tool, so I'll mention a little more about it. First, it has a public event called `Elapsed`. If that sounds familiar, it's because I named the event in `MyTimerClass` after it. The names have no other connection than that. I could have named the event in `MyTimerClass` anything.

One of the properties of `Timer` is `Interval`, which is of type `double`, and specifies the number of milliseconds between raising the event. The other property the code uses is `Enabled`, which is of type `bool`, and starts and stops the timer.

The actual code is the following. The only things I haven't shown previously are the private timer field, called `MyPrivateTimer`, and the constructor for the class. The constructor does the work of setting up the internal timer and attaching it to event handler `OnOneSecond`.

```
public class MyTimerClass
{
    public event EventHandler Elapsed;

    private void OnOneSecond(object source, EventArgs args)
    {
        if (Elapsed != null)
            Elapsed(source, args);
    }

    //-----
    private System.Timers.Timer MyPrivateTimer;      // Private timer

    public MyTimerClass()                          // Constructor
    {
        MyPrivateTimer = new System.Timers.Timer(); // Create the private timer.

        // The following statement sets our OnOneSecond method above as an event
        // handler to the Elapsed event of class Timer. It is completely
        // unrelated to our event Elapsed, declared above.
        MyPrivateTimer.Elapsed += OnOneSecond;        // Attach our event handler.

        // Property Interval is of type double, and specifies the number of
        // milliseconds between when its event is raised.
        MyPrivateTimer.Interval = 1000;                // 1 second interval.

        // Property Enabled is of type bool, and turns the timer on and off.
        MyPrivateTimer.Enabled = true;                 // Start the timer.
    }
}
```

## Event Accessors

The last topic to cover in this chapter is event accessors. I mentioned earlier that the `+=` and `-=` operators were the only operators allowed for an event. These operators have the well-defined behavior that you've seen so far in this chapter.

You can, however, change these operators' behavior and have the event perform whatever custom code you like when they are used. You can do this by defining event accessors for the event.

- There are two accessors: `add` and `remove`.
- The declaration of an event with accessors looks similar to the declaration of a property.

The following example shows the form of an event declaration with accessors. Both accessors have an implicit value parameter called `value` that takes a reference to either an instance method or a static method.

```
public event EventHandler Elapsed
{
    add
    {
        ...
    } // Code to implement the += operator
    remove
    {
        ...
    } // Code to implement the -= operator
}
```

When event accessors are declared, the event does not contain an embedded delegate object. You must implement your own storage mechanism for storing and removing the methods registered with the event.

The event accessors act as void methods, meaning that they cannot use return statements that return a value.



# Interfaces

- What Is an Interface?
- Declaring an Interface
- Implementing an Interface
- An Interface Is a Reference Type
- Using the as Operator with Interfaces
- Implementing Multiple Interfaces
- Implementing Interfaces with Duplicate Members
- References to Multiple Interfaces
- An Inherited Member As an Implementation
- Explicit Interface Member Implementations
- Interfaces Can Inherit Interfaces

## What Is an Interface?

An *interface* is a reference type that specifies a set of function members but does not implement them. Other types—classes or structs—can implement interfaces.

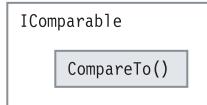
To get a feeling for interfaces, I'll start by showing one that is already defined. The BCL declares an interface called `IComparable`, the declaration of which is shown in the following code. Notice that the interface body contains the declaration of a single method, `CompareTo`, which takes a single parameter of type `object`. Although the method has a name, parameters, and a return type, there is no implementation. Instead, the implementation is replaced by a semicolon.

```

    Keyword      Interface name
    ↓            ↓
public interface IComparable
{
    int CompareTo( object obj );
}
    ↑
    Semicolon in place of method implementation

```

Figure 17-1 illustrates interface `IComparable`. The `CompareTo` method is shown in gray to illustrate that it doesn't contain an implementation.



**Figure 17-1.** Representation of interface `IComparable`

Although the interface declaration doesn't provide an implementation for method `CompareTo`, the .NET documentation of interface `IComparable` describes what the method should do, in case you create a class or struct that implements the interface. It says that when method `CompareTo` is called, it should return one of the following values:

- A negative value, if the current object is less than the parameter object
- A positive value, if the current object is greater than the parameter object
- Zero, if the two objects are considered equal in the comparison

## Example Using the IComparable Interface

To understand what this means and why it's useful, let's start by taking a look at the following code, which takes an unsorted array of integers and sorts them in ascending order.

- The first line creates an array of five integers that are in no particular order.
- The second line uses the `Array` class's static `Sort` method to sort the elements.
- The `foreach` loop prints them out, showing that the integers are now in ascending order.

```
var myInt = new [] { 20, 4, 16, 9, 2 };      // Create an array of ints.
Array.Sort(myInt);                          // Sort elements by magnitude.
foreach (var i in myInt)                   // Print them out.
    Console.WriteLine("{0} ", i);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
2 4 9 16 20
```

---

The `Array` class's `Sort` method works great on an array of `ints`, but what would happen if you were to try to use it on one of your own classes, as shown here?

```
class MyClass                         // Declare a simple class.
{
    public int TheValue;
}
...
MyClass[] mc = new MyClass[5];        // Create an array of five elements.
...                                    // Create and initialize the elements.

Array.Sort(mc);                      // Try to use Sort--raises exception
```

When you try to run this code, it raises an exception instead of sorting the elements. The reason `Sort` doesn't work with the array of `MyClass` objects is that it doesn't know how to compare user-defined objects and how to rank their order.

The algorithm used by `Sort` depends on the fact that it can use the element's `CompareTo` method to determine the order of two elements. The `int` type implements `IComparable`, but `MyClass` does not, so when `Sort` tries to call the nonexistent `CompareTo` method of `MyClass`, it raises an exception.

You can make the `Sort` method work with objects of type `MyClass` by making the class implement `IComparable`. To implement an interface, a class or struct must do two things:

- It must list the interface name in its base class list.
- It must provide an implementation for each of the interface's members.

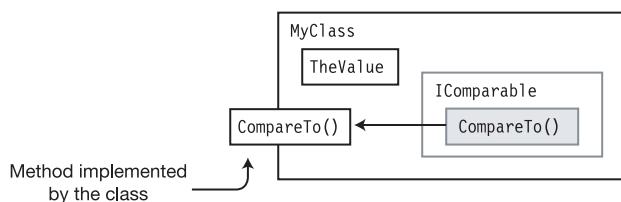
For example, the following code updates `MyClass` to implement interface `IComparable`. Notice the following about the code:

- The name of the interface is listed in the base class list of the class declaration.
- The class implements a method called `CompareTo`, whose parameter type and return type match those of the interface member.
- Method `CompareTo` is implemented to satisfy the definition given in the interface's documentation. That is, it returns a negative 1, positive 1, or 0, depending on its value compared to the object passed into the method.

```
Interface name in base class list
↓
class MyClass : IComparable
{
    public int TheValue;

    public int CompareTo(object obj)    // Implementation of interface method
    {
        MyClass mc = (MyClass)obj;
        if (this.TheValue < mc.TheValue) return -1;
        if (this.TheValue > mc.TheValue) return 1;
        return 0;
    }
}
```

Figure 17-2 illustrates the updated class. The arrow from the grayed interface method to the class method indicates that the interface method doesn't contain code but is implemented by the class-level method.



**Figure 17-2.** Implementing `IComparable` in `MyClass`

Now that `MyClass` implements `IComparable`, `Sort` will work on it just fine. It would not, by the way, have been sufficient to just declare the `CompareTo` method—it must be part of implementing the interface, which means placing the interface name in the base class list.

The following shows the complete updated code, which can now use the `Sort` method to sort an array of `MyClass` objects. `Main` creates and initializes an array of `MyClass` objects and then prints them out. It then calls `Sort` and prints them out again to show that they've been sorted.

```
class MyClass : IComparable           // Class implements interface.
{
    public int TheValue;
    public int CompareTo(object obj)      // Implement the method.
    {
        MyClass mc = (MyClass)obj;
        if (this.TheValue < mc.TheValue) return -1;
        if (this.TheValue > mc.TheValue) return 1;
        return 0;
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void PrintOut(string s, MyClass[] mc)
    {
        Console.Write(s);
        foreach (var m in mc)
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", m.TheValue);
        Console.WriteLine("");
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        var myInt = new [] { 20, 4, 16, 9, 2 };

        MyClass[] mcArr = new MyClass[5];      // Create array of MyClass objs.
        for (int i = 0; i < 5; i++)          // Initialize the array.
        {
            mcArr[i] = new MyClass();
            mcArr[i].TheValue = myInt[i];
        }
        PrintOut("Initial Order: ", mcArr); // Print the initial array.
        Array.Sort(mcArr);                // Sort the array.
        PrintOut("Sorted Order: ", mcArr); // Print the sorted array.
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Initial Order: 20 4 16 9 2
Sorted Order: 2 4 9 16 20
```

---

## Declaring an Interface

The previous section used an interface that was already declared in the BCL. In this section, you'll see how to declare interfaces.

The important things to know about declaring an interface are the following:

- An interface declaration *cannot contain data members*.
- An interface declaration can contain only declarations of the following kinds of *nonstatic* function members:
  - Methods
  - Properties
  - Events
  - Indexers
- The declarations of these function members cannot contain any implementation code. Instead, a semicolon must be used for the body of each member declaration.
- By convention, interface names begin with an uppercase *I* (for example, `ISaveable`).
- Like classes and structs, interface declarations can also be split into partial interface declarations, as described in the “Partial Classes” section of Chapter 6.

The following code shows an example of declaring an interface with two method members:

```
Keyword      Interface name
↓            ↓
interface IMyInterface1           Semicolon in place of body
{
    int DoStuff ( int nVar1, long lVar2 );
    double DoOtherStuff( string s, long x );
}
                                         ↑
                                         Semicolon in place of body
```

There is an important difference between the accessibility of an interface and the accessibility of interface members:

- An interface declaration can have any of the access modifiers `public`, `protected`, `internal`, or `private`.
- *Members* of an interface, however, are implicitly `public`, and *no* access modifiers, including `public`, are allowed.

Access modifiers are allowed on interfaces.

```
↓
public interface IMyInterface2
{
    private int Method1( int nVar1, long lVar2 );           // Error
}
```

Access modifiers are NOT allowed on interface members.

## Implementing an Interface

Only classes or structs can implement an interface. As shown in the Sort example, to implement an interface, a class or struct must

- Include the name of the interface in its base class list
- Supply implementations for each of the interface's members

For example, the following code shows a new declaration for class MyClass, which implements interface IMyInterface1, declared in the previous section. Notice that the interface name is listed in the base class list after the colon and that the class provides the actual implementation code for the interface members.

```

Colon  Interface name
      ↓    ↓
class MyClass: IMyInterface1
{
    int    DoStuff     ( int nVar1, long lVar2 )           // Implementation code
    { ... }

    double DoOtherStuff( string s, long x )                 // Implementation code
    { ... }
}
```

Some important things to know about implementing interfaces are the following:

- If a class implements an interface, it must implement *all* the members of that interface.
- If a class is derived from a base class and also implements interfaces, the name of the base class must be listed in the base class list *before* any interfaces, as shown here:

```

Base class must be first      Interface names
      ↓    ↓
class Derived : MyBaseClass, IIfc1, IEnumerable, IComparable
{
    ...
}
```

## Example with a Simple Interface

The following code declares an interface named `IIfc1`, which contains a single method named `PrintOut`. Class `MyClass` implements interface `IIfc1` by listing it in its base class list and supplying a method named `PrintOut` that matches the signature and return type of the interface member. `Main` creates an object of the class and calls the method from the object.

```
interface IIfc1    Semicolon in place of body          // Declare interface
{
    void PrintOut(string s);                         ↓
}
                                Implement interface
                                ↓
class MyClass : IIfc1           // Declare class
{
    public void PrintOut(string s)           // Implementation
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Calling through: {0}", s);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();           // Create instance
        mc.PrintOut("object");                // Call method
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Calling through: object
```

---

## An Interface Is a Reference Type

An interface is more than just a list of members for a class or struct to implement. It is a reference type.

You cannot access an interface directly through the class object's members. You can, however, get a *reference to the interface* by casting the class object reference to the type of the interface. Once you have a reference to the interface, you can use dot-syntax notation with the reference to call interface members.

For example, the following code shows an example of getting an interface reference from a class object reference.

- In the first statement, variable `mc` is a reference to a class object that implements interface `IIfc1`. The statement casts that reference to a reference to the interface and assigns it to variable `ifc`.
- The second statement uses the reference to the interface to call the implementation method.

```

Interface      Cast to interface
↓             ↓
IIfc1 ifc = (IIfc1) mc;           // Get ref to interface
↑             ↑
Interface ref    Class object ref
ifc.PrintOut ("interface");        // Use ref to interface to call member
↑
Use dot-syntax notation to call through the interface reference.

```

For example, the following code declares an interface and a class that implements it. The code in `Main` creates an object of the class and calls the implementation method through the class object. It also creates a variable of the interface type, casts the reference of the class object to the interface type, and calls the implementation method through the reference to the interface. Figure 17-3 illustrates the class and the reference to the interface.

```

interface IIfc1
{
    void PrintOut(string s);
}

class MyClass: IIfc1
{
    public void PrintOut(string s)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Calling through: {0}", s);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass(); // Create class object
        mc.PrintOut("object");     // Call class object implementation method

        IIfc1 ifc = (IIfc1)mc;    // Cast class object ref to interface ref
        ifc.PrintOut("interface"); // Call interface method
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

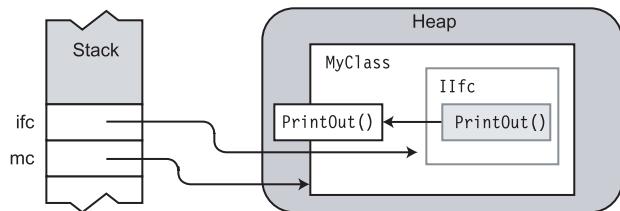
---

```

Calling through: object
Calling through: interface

```

---



**Figure 17-3.** A reference to the class object and a reference to the interface

## Using the as Operator with Interfaces

In the previous section, you saw that you can use the cast operator to get a reference to an object's interface. An even better idea is to use the as operator. The as operator is covered in detail in Chapter 18, but I'll mention it here as well, since it's a good choice to use with interfaces.

If you attempt to cast a class object reference to a reference of an interface that the class doesn't implement, the cast operation will raise an exception. You can avoid this problem by using the as operator instead. It works as follows:

- If the class implements the interface, the expression returns a reference to the interface.
- If the class doesn't implement the interface, the expression returns `null` rather than raising an exception.

The following code demonstrates the use of the as operator. The first line uses the as operator to obtain an interface reference from a class object. The result of the expression sets the value of `b` either to `null` or to a reference to an `ILiveBirth` interface.

The second line checks the value of `b` and, if it is not `null`, executes the command that calls the interface member method.

```
Class object ref    Interface name
      ↓          ↓
  ILiveBirth b = a as ILiveBirth;           // Acts like cast: (ILiveBirth)a
      ↑          ↑
Interface   Operator
      ref
if (b != null)
    Console.WriteLine("Baby is called: {0}", b.BabyCalled());
```

# Implementing Multiple Interfaces

In the examples shown so far, the classes have implemented a single interface.

- A class or struct can implement any number of interfaces.
- All the interfaces implemented must be listed in the base class list and separated by commas (following the base class name, if there is one).

For example, the following code shows class MyData, which implements two interfaces: IDataStore and IDataRetrieve. Figure 17-4 illustrates the implementation of the multiple interfaces in class MyData.

```
interface IDataRetrieve { int GetData(); }           // Declare interface
interface IDataStore { void SetData( int x ); }      // Declare interface
class MyData: IDataRetrieve, IDataStore             // Declare class
{
    int Mem1;                                     // Declare field
    public int GetData() { return Mem1; }
    public void SetData( int x ) { Mem1 = x; }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()                           // Main
    {
        MyData data = new MyData();
        data.SetData( 5 );
        Console.WriteLine("Value = {0}", data.GetData());
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---



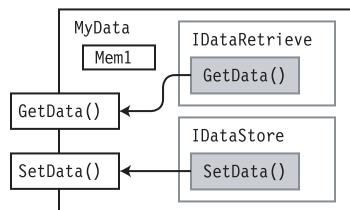
---

Value = 5

---



---



**Figure 17-4.** Class implementing multiple interfaces

## Implementing Interfaces with Duplicate Members

Since a class can implement any number of interfaces, it's possible that two or more of the interface members might have the same signature and return type. So, how does the compiler handle that situation?

For example, suppose you had two interfaces—`IIfc1` and `IIfc2`—as shown following. Each interface has a method named `PrintOut`, with the same signature and return type. If you were to create a class that implemented both interfaces, how should you handle these duplicate interface methods?

```
interface IIfc1
{
    void PrintOut(string s);
}

interface IIfc2
{
    void PrintOut(string t);
}
```

The answer is that if a class implements multiple interfaces, where several of the interfaces have members with the same signature and return type, the class can implement a single member that satisfies all the interfaces containing that duplicated member.

For example, the following code shows the declaration of class `MyClass`, which implements both `IIfc1` and `IIfc2`. Its implementation of method `PrintOut` satisfies the requirement for both interfaces.

```
class MyClass : IIfc1, IIfc2          // Implement both interfaces.
{
    public void PrintOut(string s)      // Single implementation for both
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Calling through: {0}", s);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        mc.PrintOut("object");
    }
}
```

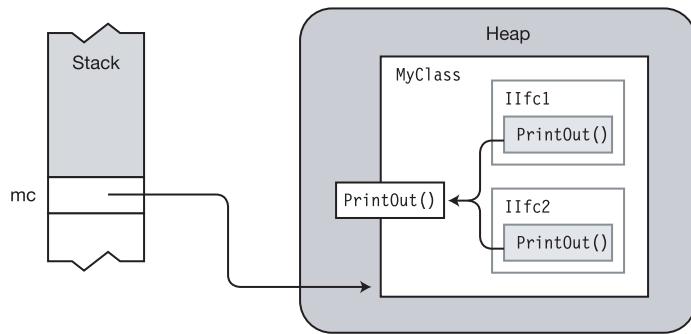
This code produces the following output:

---

Calling through: object

---

Figure 17-5 illustrates the duplicate interface methods being implemented by a single class-level method implementation.



**Figure 17-5.** Multiple interfaces implemented by the same class member

## References to Multiple Interfaces

You saw previously that interfaces are reference types and that you can get a reference to an interface by using the `as` operator or by casting an object reference to the interface type. If a class implements multiple interfaces, you can get separate references for each one.

For example, the following class implements two interfaces with the single method `PrintOut`. The code in `Main` calls method `PrintOut` in three ways:

- Through the class object
- Through a reference to the `IIfc1` interface
- Through a reference to the `IIfc2` interface

Figure 17-6 illustrates the class object and references to `IIfc1` and `IIfc2`.

```
interface IIfc1                                // Declare interface
{
    void PrintOut(string s);
}

interface IIfc2                                // Declare interface
{
    void PrintOut(string s);
}

class MyClass : IIfc1, IIfc2                  // Declare class
{
    public void PrintOut(string s)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Calling through: {0}", s);
    }
}
```

```

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();

        IIfc1 ifc1 = (IIfc1) mc;           // Get ref to IIfc1
        IIfc2 ifc2 = (IIfc2) mc;           // Get ref to IIfc2

        mc.PrintOut("object");            // Call through class object

        ifc1.PrintOut("interface 1");      // Call through IIfc1
        ifc2.PrintOut("interface 2");      // Call through IIfc2
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

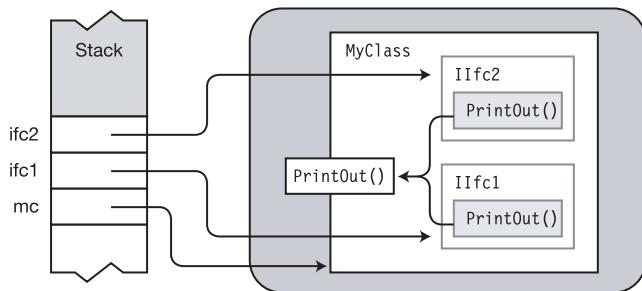
---

```

Calling through: object
Calling through: interface 1
Calling through: interface 2

```

---



**Figure 17-6.** Separate references to different interfaces in the class

## An Inherited Member As an Implementation

A class implementing an interface can inherit the code for an implementation from one of its base classes. For example, the following code illustrates a class inheriting implementation code from a base class.

- `IIfc1` is an interface with a method member called `PrintOut`.
- `MyBaseClass` contains a method called `PrintOut` that matches `IIfc1`'s method.
- Class `Derived` has an empty declaration body but derives from class `MyBaseClass` and contains `IIfc1` in its base class list.
- Even though `Derived`'s declaration body is empty, the code in the base class satisfies the requirement to implement the interface method.

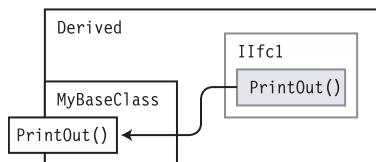
```
interface IIfc1 { void PrintOut(string s); }

class MyBaseClass                               // Declare base class.
{
    public void PrintOut(string s)              // Declare the method.
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Calling through: {0}", s);
    }
}

class Derived : MyBaseClass, IIfc1             // Declare class.
{
}

class Program {
    static void Main()
    {
        Derived d = new Derived();           // Create class object
        d.PrintOut("object.");               // Call method
    }
}
```

Figure 17-7 illustrates the preceding code. Notice that the arrow from `IIfc1` goes down to the code in the base class.



**Figure 17-7.** Implementation in the base class

## Explicit Interface Member Implementations

You saw in a previous section that a single class can implement all the members required by multiple interfaces, as illustrated in Figures 17-5 and 17-6.

But what if you want separate implementations for each interface? In this case, you can create what are called *explicit interface member implementations*. An explicit interface member implementation has the following characteristics:

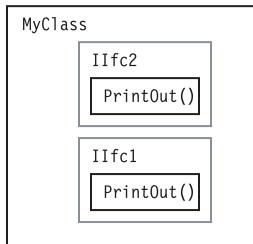
- Like all interface implementations, it is placed in the class or struct implementing the interface.
- It is declared using a *qualified interface name*, which consists of the interface name and member name, separated by a dot.

The following code shows the syntax for declaring explicit interface member implementations. Each of the two interfaces implemented by `MyClass` implements its own version of method `PrintOut`.

```
class MyClass : IIIfc1, IIIfc2
{
    Qualified interface name
    ↓
    void IIIfc1.PrintOut (string s)           // Explicit implementation
    { ... }

    void IIIfc2.PrintOut (string s)           // Explicit implementation
    { ... }
}
```

Figure 17-8 illustrates the class and interfaces. Notice that the boxes representing the explicit interface member implementations are not shown in gray, since they now represent actual code.



**Figure 17-8.** *Explicit interface member implementations*

For example, in the following code, class `MyClass` declares explicit interface member implementations for the members of the two interfaces. Notice that in this example there are only explicit interface member implementations. There is no class-level implementation.

```

interface IIfc1 { void PrintOut(string s); } // Declare interface
interface IIfc2 { void PrintOut(string t); } // Declare interface

class MyClass : IIfc1, IIfc2
{
    Qualified interface name
    ↓
    void IIfc1.PrintOut(string s)           // Explicit interface member
    {                                       //     implementation
        Console.WriteLine("IIfc1: {0}", s);
    }
    Qualified interface name
    ↓
    void IIfc2.PrintOut(string s)           // Explicit interface member
    {                                       //     implementation
        Console.WriteLine("IIfc2: {0}", s);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();          // Create class object

        IIfc1 ifc1 = (IIfc1) mc;             // Get reference to IIfc1
        ifc1.PrintOut("interface 1");         // Call explicit implementation

        IIfc2 ifc2 = (IIfc2) mc;             // Get reference to IIfc2
        ifc2.PrintOut("interface 2");         // Call explicit implementation
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---

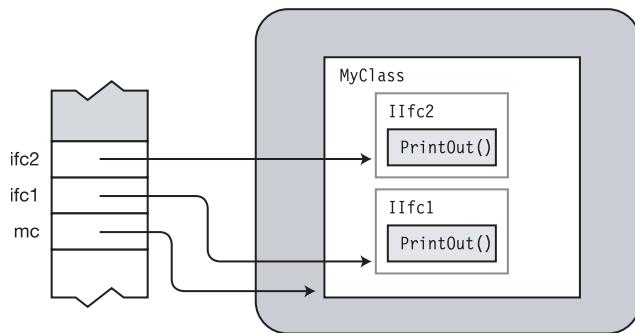
```

IIfc1: interface 1
IIfc2: interface 2

```

---

Figure 17-9 illustrates the code. Notice in the figure that the interface methods are not pointing at class-level implementations but contain their own code.



**Figure 17-9.** References to interfaces with explicit interface member implementations

When there is an explicit interface member implementation, a class-level implementation is allowed but not required. The explicit implementation satisfies the requirement that the class or struct must implement the method. You can therefore have any of the following three implementation scenarios:

- A class-level implementation
- An explicit interface member implementation
- Both a class-level and an explicit interface member implementation

## Accessing Explicit Interface Member Implementations

An explicit interface member implementation can be accessed *only* through a reference to the interface. This means that even other class members can't directly access them.

For example, the following code shows the declaration of class `MyClass`, which implements interface `IIfc1` with an explicit implementation. Notice that even `Method1`, which is also a member of `MyClass`, can't directly access the explicit implementation.

- The first two lines of `Method1` produce compile errors because the method is trying to access the implementation directly.
- Only the last line in `Method1` will compile, because it casts the reference to the current object (`this`) to a reference to the interface type and uses that reference to the interface to call the explicit interface implementation.

```
class MyClass : IIfc1
{
    void IIfc1.PrintOut(string s)      // Explicit interface implementation
    {
        Console.WriteLine("IIfc1");
    }

    public void Method1()
    {
        PrintOut(...);                // Compile error
        this.PrintOut(...);           // Compile error
        ((IIfc1)this).PrintOut(...);   // OK, call method
    }
}
```

↑  
Cast to a reference to the interface

This restriction has an important ramification for inheritance. Since other fellow class members can't directly access explicit interface member implementations, members of classes derived from the class clearly can't directly access them either. They must always be accessed through a reference to the interface.

## Interfaces Can Inherit Interfaces

You saw earlier that interface *implementations* can be inherited from base classes. But an interface itself can inherit from one or more other interfaces.

- To specify that an interface inherits from other interfaces, place the names of the base interfaces in a comma-separated list after a colon following the interface name in the interface declaration, as shown here:

```

Colon      Base interface list
↓          ↓
interface IDataIO : IDataRetrieve, IDataStore
{ ... }
```

- Unlike a class, which can have only a single class name in its base class list, an interface can have any number of interfaces in its base interface list.
  - The interfaces in the list can themselves have inherited interfaces.
  - The resulting interface contains all the members it declares, as well as all those of its base interfaces.

The code in Figure 17-10 shows the declaration of three interfaces. Interface `IDataIO` inherits from the first two. The figure on the right shows `IDataIO` encompassing the other two interfaces.

```

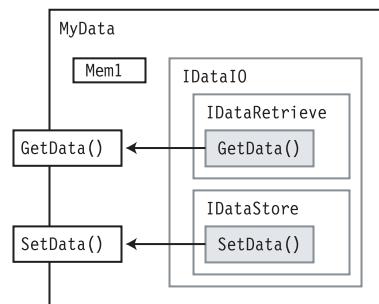
interface IDataRetrieve
{ int GetData( ); }

interface IDataStore
{ void SetData( int x ); }

// Derives from the first two interfaces
interface IDataIO: IDataRetrieve, IDataStore
{
}

class MyData: IDataIO {
    int nPrivateData;
    public int GetData( )
        { return nPrivateData; }
    public void SetData( int x )
        { nPrivateData = x; }
}

class Program {
    static void Main( ) {
        MyData data = new MyData ();
        data.SetData( 5 );
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", data.GetData());
    }
}
```



**Figure 17-10.** Class with interface inheriting multiple interfaces

## Example of Different Classes Implementing an Interface

The following code illustrates several aspects of interfaces that have been covered. The program declares a class called `Animal`, which is used as a base class for several other classes that represent various types of animals. It also declares an interface named `ILiveBirth`.

Classes `Cat`, `Dog`, and `Bird` all derive from base class `Animal`. `Cat` and `Dog` both implement the `ILiveBirth` interface, but class `Bird` does not.

In `Main`, the program creates an array of `Animal` objects and populates it with a class object of each of the three types of animal classes. The program then iterates through the array and, using the `as` operator, retrieves references to the `ILiveBirth` interface of each object that has one and calls its `BabyCalled` method.

```
interface ILiveBirth          // Declare interface
{
    string BabyCalled();
}

class Animal {}                // Base class Animal

class Cat : Animal, ILiveBirth // Declare class Cat
{
    string ILiveBirth.BabyCalled()
    { return "kitten"; }
}

class Dog : Animal, ILiveBirth // Declare class Dog
{
    string ILiveBirth.BabyCalled()
    { return "puppy"; }
}

class Bird : Animal           // Declare class Bird
{}
```

```

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Animal[] animalArray = new Animal[3]; // Create Animal array
        animalArray[0] = new Cat();           // Insert Cat class object
        animalArray[1] = new Bird();          // Insert Bird class object
        animalArray[2] = new Dog();           // Insert Dog class object
        foreach( Animal a in animalArray )   // Cycle through array
        {
            ILiveBirth b = a as ILiveBirth; // if implements ILiveBirth...
            if (b != null)
                Console.WriteLine("Baby is called: {0}", b.BabyCalled());
        }
    }
}

```

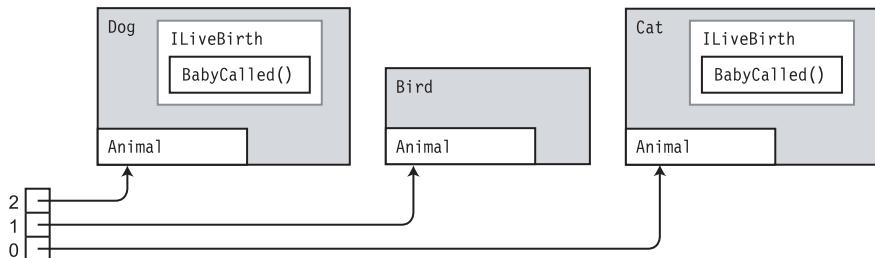
This code produces the following output:

---

```
Baby is called: kitten
Baby is called: puppy
```

---

Figure 17-11 illustrates the array and the objects in memory.



**Figure 17-11.** Different object types of base class `Animal` are interspersed in the array.





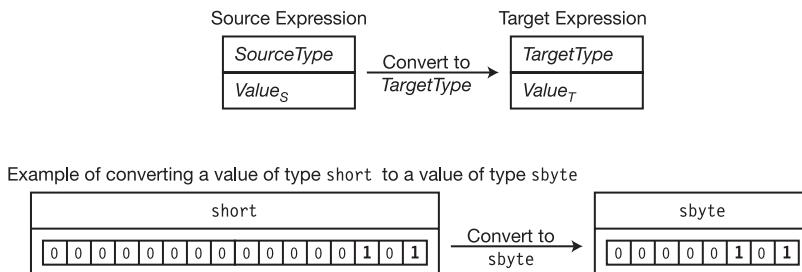
# Conversions

- What Are Conversions?
- Implicit Conversions
- Explicit Conversions and Casting
- Types of Conversions
- Numeric Conversions
- Reference Conversions
- Boxing Conversions
- Unboxing Conversions
- User-Defined Conversions
- The `is` Operator
- The `as` Operator

## What Are Conversions?

To get an understanding of what conversions are, let's start by considering the simple case in which you declare two variables of different types and then assign the value of one (the *source*) to the other (the *target*). Before the assignment can occur, the source value must be converted to a value of the target type. Figure 18-1 illustrates type conversion.

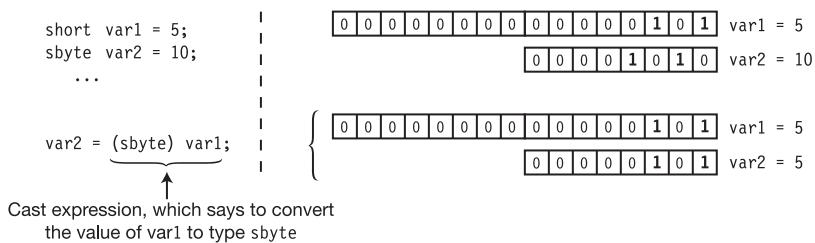
- *Conversion* is the process of taking a value of one type and *using it as* the equivalent value of another type.
- The value resulting from the conversion should be the same as the source value—but in the target type.



**Figure 18-1.** Type conversion

For example, the code in Figure 18-2 shows the declaration of two variables of different types.

- var1 is of type short, a 16-bit signed integer that is initialized to 5. var2 is of type sbyte, an 8-bit signed integer that is initialized to the value 10.
- The third line of the code assigns the value of var1 to var2. Since these are two different types, the value of var1 must be converted to a value of the same type as var2 before the assignment can be performed. This is performed using the cast expression, which you'll see shortly.
- Notice also that the value and type of var1 are unchanged. Although it is called a conversion, this only means that the source value is used as the target type—not that the source is changed into the target type.



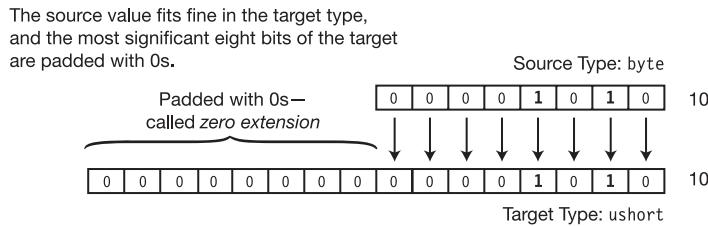
**Figure 18-2.** Converting from a short to an sbyte

## Implicit Conversions

For certain types of conversions, there is no possibility of loss of data or precision. For example, it's easy to stuff an 8-bit value into a 16-bit type with no loss of data.

- The language will do these conversions for you automatically. These are called *implicit conversions*.
- When converting from a source type with fewer bits to a target type with more bits, the extra bits in the target need to be filled with either 0s or 1s.
- When converting from a smaller unsigned type to a larger unsigned type, the extra, most significant bits of the target are filled with 0s. This is called *zero extension*.

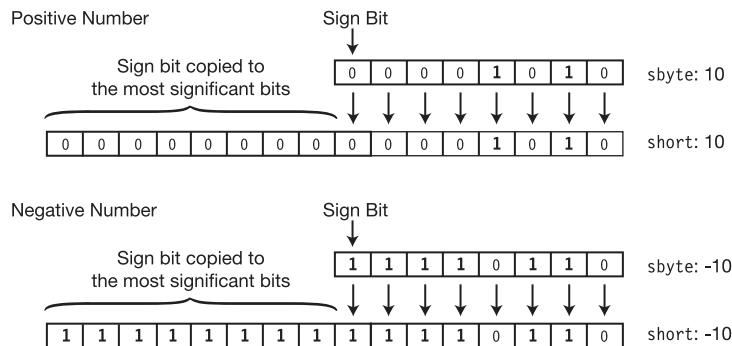
Figure 18-3 shows an example of the zero extension of an 8-bit value of 10 converted to a 16-bit value of 10.



**Figure 18-3.** Zero extension in unsigned conversions

For conversion between signed types, the extra most significant bits are filled with the sign bit of the source expression.

- This maintains the correct sign and magnitude for the converted value.
- This is called *sign extension* and is illustrated in Figure 18-4, first with 10 and then with -10.



**Figure 18-4.** Sign extension in signed conversions

## Explicit Conversions and Casting

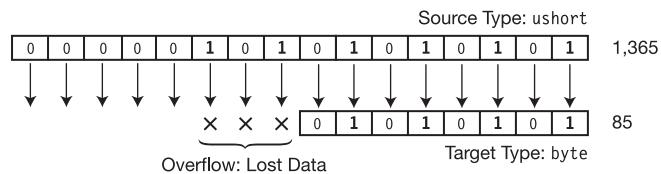
When converting from a shorter type to a longer type, it's easy for the longer type to hold all the bits of the shorter type. In other situations, however, the target type might not be able to accommodate the source value without loss of data.

For example, suppose you want to convert a `ushort` value to a `byte`.

- A `ushort` can hold any value between 0 and 65,535.
- A `byte` can only hold a value between 0 and 255.
- As long as the `ushort` value you want to convert is less than 256, there won't be any loss of data. If it is greater, however, the most significant bits will be lost.

For example, Figure 18-5 shows an attempt to convert a `ushort` with a value of 1,365 to a `byte`, resulting in a loss of data.

Not all the significant bits of the source value fit into the target type, resulting in an overflow and loss of data. The source value was 1,365, but the maximum value the target can hold is 255.



**Figure 18-5.** Attempting to convert a `ushort` to a `byte`

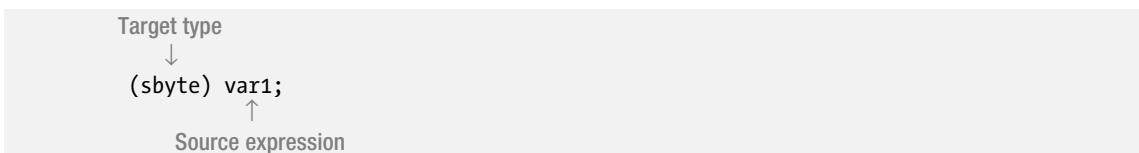
Clearly, only a relatively small number (0.4 percent) of the possible unsigned 16-bit `ushort` values can be safely converted to an unsigned 8-bit `byte` type without loss of data. The rest result in data *overflow*, yielding different values.

## Casting

For the predefined types, C# will automatically convert from one data type to another—but only between those types for which there is no possibility of data loss between the source type and the target type. That is, the language does not provide automatic conversion between two types if there is *any* value of the source type that would lose data if it were converted to the target type. If you want to make a conversion of this type, you must use an *explicit conversion*, called a *cast expression*.

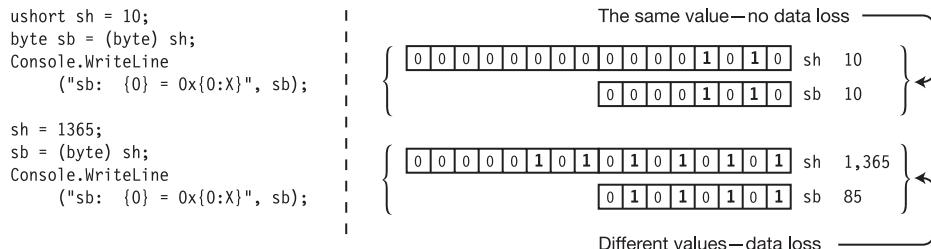
The following code shows an example of a cast expression. It converts the value of var1 to type sbyte. A cast expression consists of the following:

- A set of matching parentheses containing the name of the target type
- The source expression, following the parentheses



When you use a cast expression, you are explicitly taking responsibility for performing the operation that might lose data. Essentially, you are saying, “In spite of the possibility of data loss, I know what I’m doing, so make this conversion anyway.” (Make sure, however, that you *do* know what you’re doing.)

For example, Figure 18-6 shows cast expressions converting two values of type ushort to type byte. In the first case, there is no loss of data. In the second case, the most significant bits are lost, giving a value of 85—which is clearly not equivalent to the source value, 1,365.



**Figure 18-6.** Casting a ushort to a byte

The output of the code in the figure is the following:

---

sb: 10 = 0xA

---

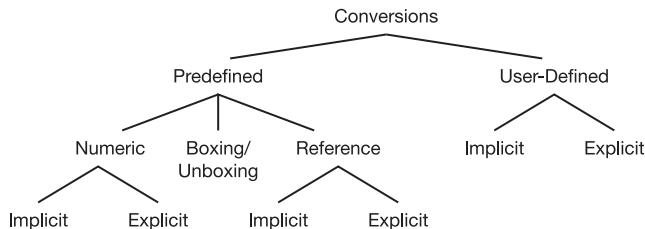
sb: 85 = 0x55

---

## Types of Conversions

There are a number of standard, predefined conversions for the numeric and reference types. The categories are illustrated in Figure 18-7.

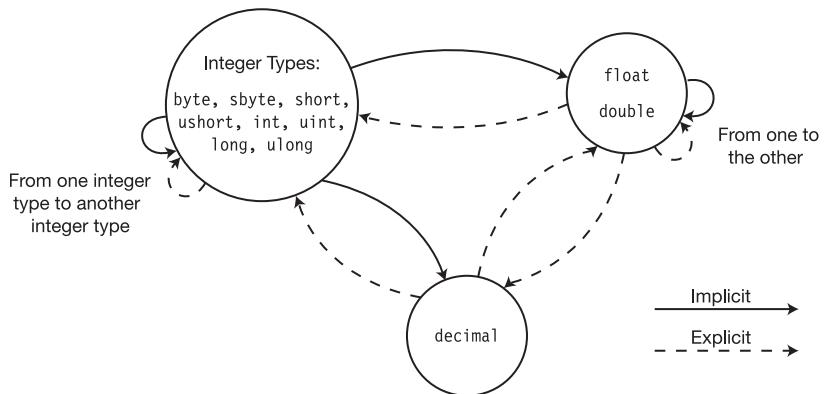
- Beyond the standard conversions, you can also define both implicit and explicit conversions for your user-defined types.
- There is also a predefined type of conversion called *boxing*, which converts any value type to either of these:
  - Type `object`
  - Type `System.ValueType`
- Unboxing converts a boxed value back to its original type.



**Figure 18-7.** Types of conversions

## Numeric Conversions

Any numeric type can be converted into any other numeric type, as illustrated in Figure 18-8. Some of the conversions are implicit conversions, and others must be explicit.



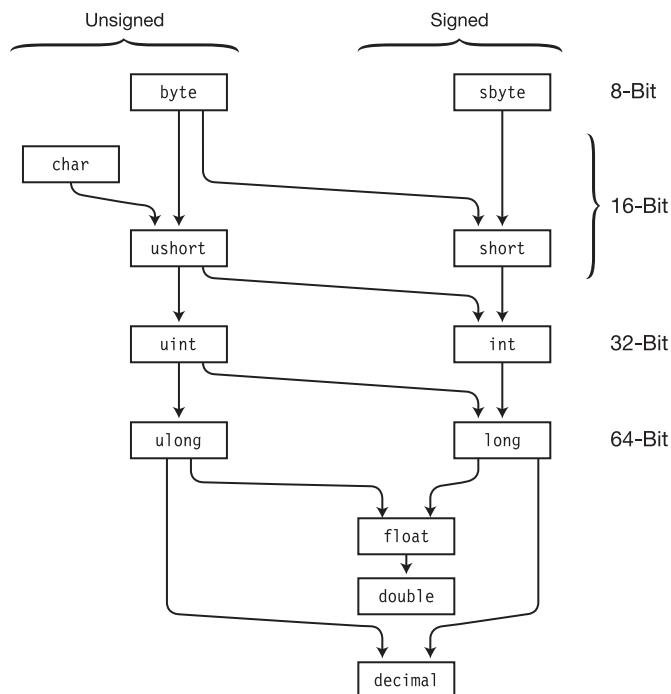
**Figure 18-8.** Numeric conversions

## Implicit Numeric Conversions

The implicit numeric conversions are shown in Figure 18-9.

- There is an *implicit conversion* from the source type to the target type if there is a path, following the arrows, from the source type to the target type.
- Any numeric conversion for which there is not a path following the arrows from the source type to the target type must be an *explicit conversion*.

The figure demonstrates that, as you would expect, there is an implicit conversion between numeric types that occupy fewer bits to those that occupy more bits.



**Figure 18-9.** The *implicit numeric conversions*

## Overflow Checking Context

You've seen that explicit conversions have the possibility of losing data and not being able to represent the source value equivalently in the target type. For integral types, C# provides you with the ability to choose whether the runtime should check the result for overflow when making these types of conversions. It does this through the checked operator and the checked statement.

- Whether a segment of code is checked or not is called its *overflow checking context*.
  - If you designate an expression or segment of code as checked, the CLR will raise an `OverflowException` exception if the conversion produces an overflow.
  - If the code is not checked, the conversion will proceed regardless of whether there is an overflow.
- The default overflow checking context is not checked.

## The checked and unchecked Operators

The checked and unchecked operators control the overflow checking context of an expression, which is placed between a set of parentheses. The expression cannot be a method. The syntax is the following:

```
checked ( Expression )
unchecked ( Expression )
```

For example, the following code executes the same conversion—first in a checked operator and then in an unchecked operator.

- In the unchecked context, the overflow is ignored, resulting in the value 208.
- In the checked context, an `OverflowException` exception is raised.

```
ushort sh = 2000;
byte sb;

sb = unchecked ( (byte) sh );           // Most significant bits lost
Console.WriteLine("sb: {0}", sb);

sb = checked ( (byte) sh );            // OverflowException raised
Console.WriteLine("sb: {0}", sb);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
sb: 208
```

```
Unhandled Exception: System.OverflowException: Arithmetic operation resulted in an overflow.  
at Test1.Test.Main() in C:\Programs\Test1\Program.cs:line 21
```

---

## The checked and unchecked Statements

The checked and unchecked *operators* that you just saw act on the single expression between the parentheses. The checked and unchecked *statements* perform the same function but control all the conversions in a block of code, rather than in a single expression.

The checked and unchecked statements can be nested to any level.

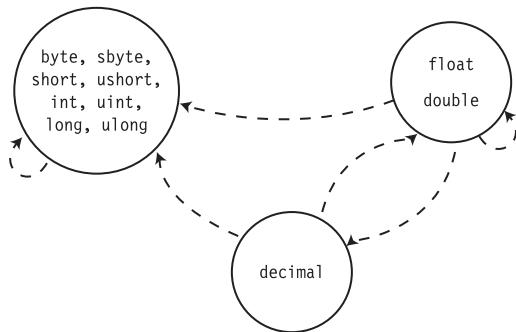
For example, the following code uses checked and unchecked statements and produces the same results as the previous example, which uses checked and unchecked expressions. In this case, however, blocks of code are affected, rather than just expressions.

```
byte sb;  
ushort sh = 2000;  
  
unchecked // Set unchecked  
{  
    sb = (byte) sh;  
    Console.WriteLine("sb: {0}", sb);  
  
    checked // Set checked  
    {  
        sb = (byte) sh;  
        Console.WriteLine("sb: {0}", sh);  
    }  
}
```

## Explicit Numeric Conversions

You've seen that the implicit conversions automatically convert from the source expression to the target type because there is no possible loss of data. With the explicit conversions, however, there is the possibility of losing data—so it's important for you as the programmer to know how a conversion will handle that loss if it occurs.

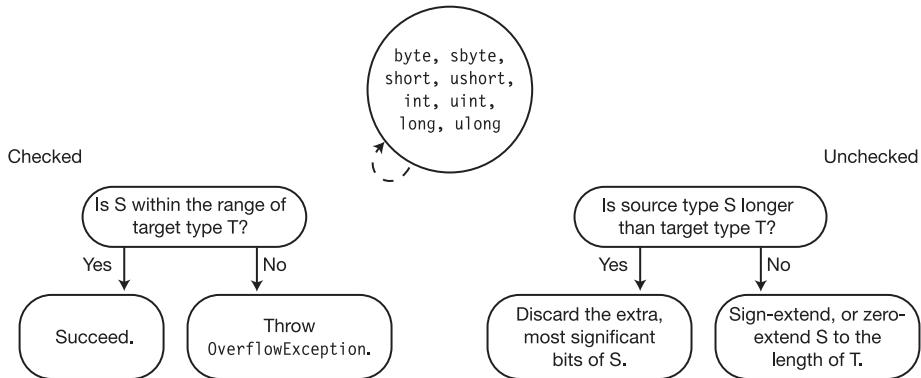
In this section, you will look at each of the various types of explicit numeric conversions. Figure 18-10 shows the subset of explicit conversions shown in Figure 18-8.



**Figure 18-10.** The explicit numeric conversions

## Integral to Integral

Figure 18-11 shows the behavior of the integral-to-integral explicit conversions. In the checked case, if the conversion loses data, the operation raises an `OverflowException` exception. In the unchecked case, any lost bits go unreported.

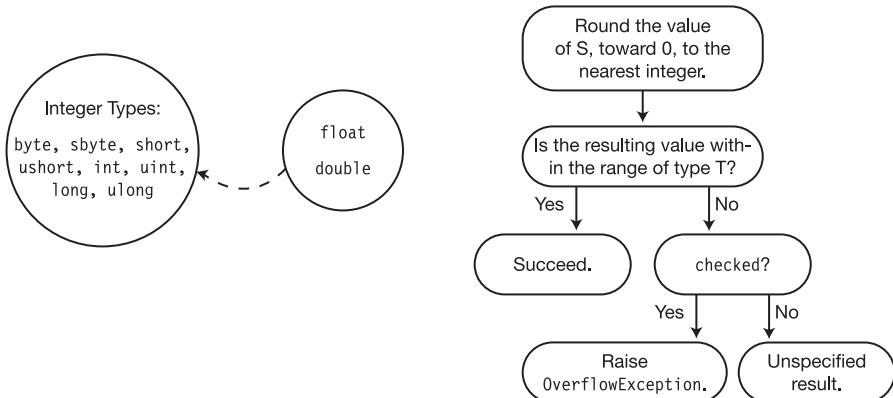


**Figure 18-11.** Integer type to integer type explicit conversions

## float or double to Integral

When converting a floating-point type to an integer type, the value is rounded toward 0 to the nearest integer. Figure 18-12 illustrates the conversion conditions. If the rounded value is not within the range of the target type, then

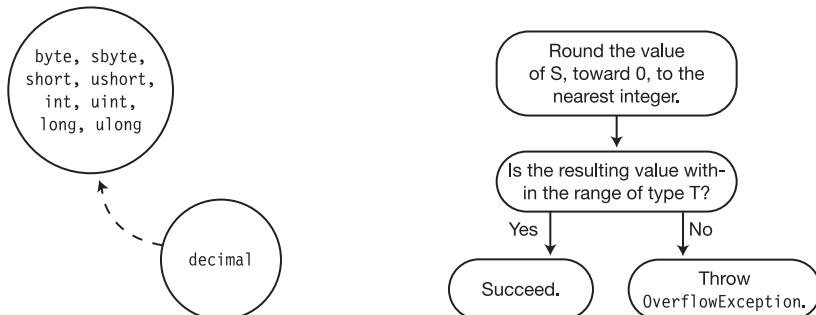
- The CLR raises an `OverflowException` exception if the overflow checking context is checked.
- C# does not define what its value should be if the context is unchecked.



**Figure 18-12.** Converting a `float` or a `double` to an integer type

## decimal to Integral

When converting from `decimal` to the integer types, the CLR raises an `OverflowException` exception if the resulting value is not within the target type's range. Figure 18-13 illustrates the conversion conditions.

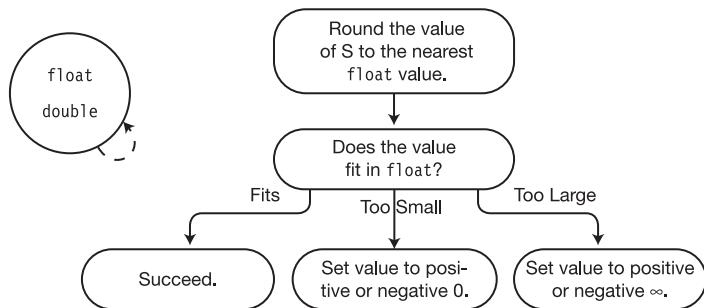


**Figure 18-13.** Converting a `decimal` to an integer type

## double to float

Values of type `float` occupy 32 bits, and values of type `double` occupy 64 bits. When a `double` is rounded to a `float`, the `double` type value is rounded to the nearest `float` type value. Figure 18-14 illustrates the conversion conditions.

- If the value is too small to be represented by a `float`, the value is set to either positive or negative 0.
- If the value is too large to be represented by a `float`, the value is set to either positive or negative infinity.

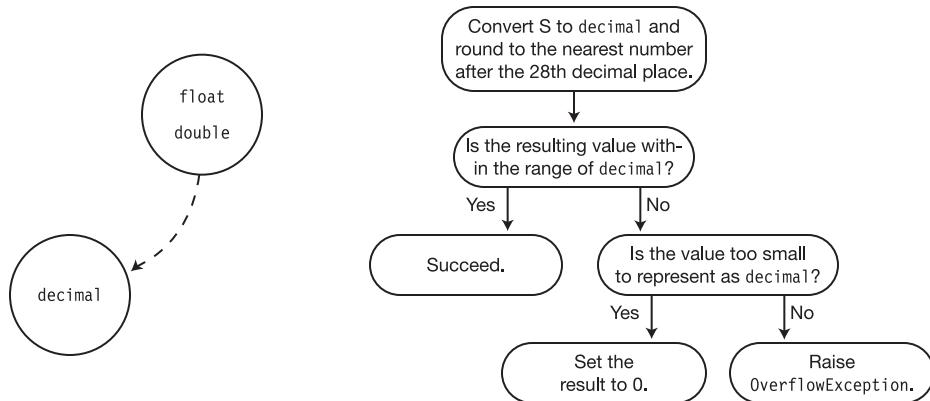


**Figure 18-14.** Converting a `double` to a `float`

## float or double to decimal

Figure 18-15 shows the conversion conditions for converting from floating-point types to decimal.

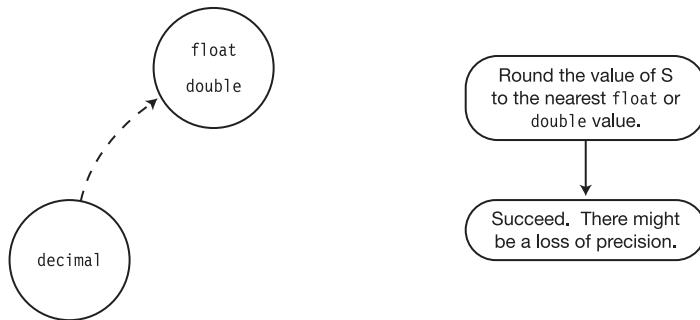
- If the value is too small to be represented by the `decimal` type, the result is set to 0.
- If the value is too large, the CLR raises an `OverflowException` exception.



**Figure 18-15.** Converting a float or double to a decimal

## decimal to float or double

Conversions from decimal to the floating-point types always succeed. There might, however, be a loss of precision. Figure 18-16 shows the conversion conditions.



**Figure 18-16.** Converting a decimal to a float or double

## Reference Conversions

As you well know by now, reference type objects comprise two parts in memory: the reference and the data.

- Part of the information held by the reference is the *type of the data it is pointing at*.
- A reference conversion takes a source reference and returns a reference pointing at the same place in the heap but “labels” the reference as a different type.

For example, the following code shows two reference variables, `myVar1` and `myVar2`, that point to the same object in memory. The code is illustrated in Figure 18-17.

- To `myVar1`, the object it references looks like an object of type B—which it is.
- To `myVar2`, the same object looks like an object of type A.
  - Even though it is actually pointing at an object of type B, it cannot see the parts of B that extend A and therefore cannot see `Field2`.
  - The second `WriteLine` statement would therefore cause a compile error.

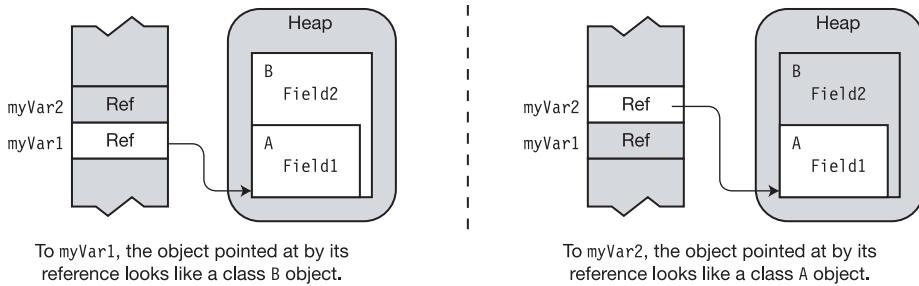
Notice that the “conversion” does not change `myVar1`.

```
class A { public int Field1; }

class B: A { public int Field2; }

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        B myVar1 = new B();
        Return the reference to myVar1 as a reference to a class A.
        ↓
        A myVar2 = (A) myVar1;
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", myVar2.Field1);           // Fine
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", myVar2.Field2);          // Compile error!
    }
}
```

↑  
myVar2 can't see Field2.

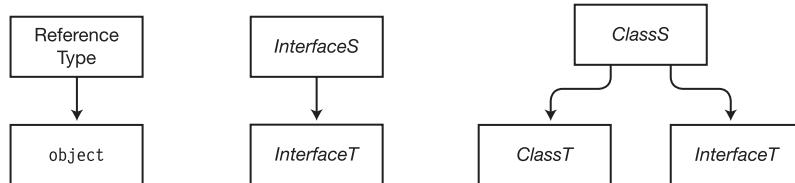


**Figure 18-17.** A reference conversion returns a different type associated to the object.

## Implicit Reference Conversions

Just as there are implicit numeric conversions that the language will automatically perform for you, there are also implicit reference conversions. These are illustrated in Figure 18-18.

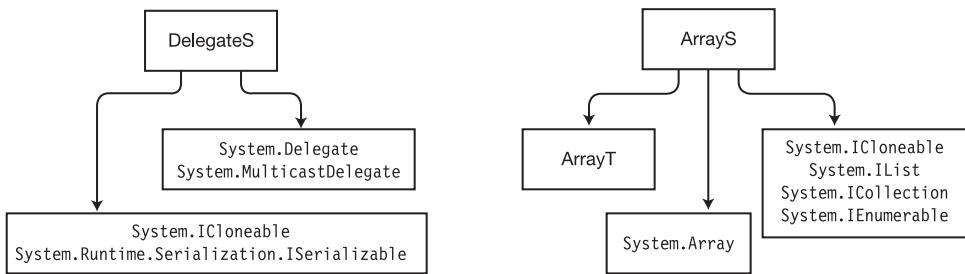
- All reference types have an implicit conversion to type `object`.
- Any interface can be implicitly converted to an interface from which it is derived.
- A class can be implicitly converted to
  - Any class in the chain from which it is derived
  - Any interface that it implements



**Figure 18-18.** Implicit conversions for classes and interfaces

A delegate can be implicitly converted to the .NET BCL classes and interfaces shown in Figure 18-19. An array, *ArrayS*, with elements of type *Ts*, can be implicitly converted to the following:

- The .NET BCL class and interfaces shown in Figure 18-19.
- Another array, *ArrayT*, with elements of type *Tt*, if *all* of the following are true:
  - Both arrays have the same number of dimensions.
  - The element types, *Ts* and *Tt*, are reference types—not value types.
  - There is an *implicit* conversion between types *Ts* and *Tt*.



**Figure 18-19.** Implicit conversions for delegates and arrays

## Explicit Reference Conversions

Explicit reference conversions are reference conversions from a general type to a more specialized type.

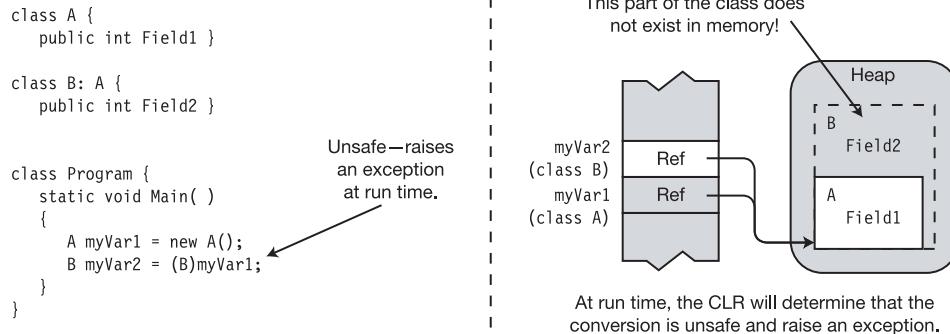
- Explicit conversions include
  - Conversions from an `object` to any reference type
  - Conversions from a base class to a class derived from it
- The explicit reference conversions are illustrated by reversing each of the arrows in Figures 18-18 and 18-19.

If this type of conversion were allowed without restriction, you could easily attempt to reference members of a class that are not actually in memory. The compiler, however, *does* allow these types of conversions. But when the system encounters them at run time, it raises an exception.

For example, the code in Figure 18-20 converts the reference of base class A to its derived class B and assigns it to variable `myVar2`.

- If `myVar2` were to attempt to access `Field2`, it would be attempting to access a field in the “B part” of the object, which doesn’t exist—causing a memory fault.
- The runtime will catch this inappropriate cast and raise an `InvalidCastException` exception.

Notice, however, that it does *not cause* a compile error.



**Figure 18-20.** *Invalid casts raise runtime exceptions.*

## Valid Explicit Reference Conversions

There are three situations in which an explicit reference conversion will succeed at run time—that is, not raise an `InvalidCastException` exception.

The first case is where the explicit conversion is unnecessary—that is, where the language would have performed an implicit conversion for you anyway. For example, in the code that follows, the explicit conversion is unnecessary because there is always an implicit conversion from a derived class to one of its base classes.

```
class A { }
class B: A { }
...
B myVar1 = new B();
A myVar2 = (A) myVar1;      // Cast is unnecessary; A is the base class of B.
```

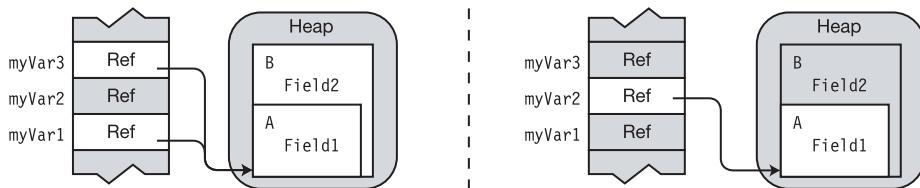
The second case is where the source reference is `null`. For example, in the following code, even though it would normally be unsafe to convert a reference of a base class to that of a derived class, the conversion is allowed because the value of the source reference is `null`.

```
class A { }
class B: A { }
...
A myVar1 = null;
B myVar2 = (B) myVar1;      // Allowed because myVar1 is null
```

The third case is where the *actual data* pointed to by the source reference could safely be converted implicitly. The following code shows an example, and Figure 18-21 illustrates the code.

- The implicit conversion in the second line makes `myVar2` “think” that it is pointing to data of type A, while it is actually pointing to a data object of type B.
- The explicit conversion in the third line is casting a reference of a base class to a reference of one of its derived classes. Normally this would raise an exception. In this case, however, the object being pointed to actually is a data item of type B.

```
B myVar1 = new B();
A myVar2 = myVar1;      // Implicitly cast myVar1 to type A.
B myVar3 = (B)myVar2;  // This cast is fine because the data is of type B.
```



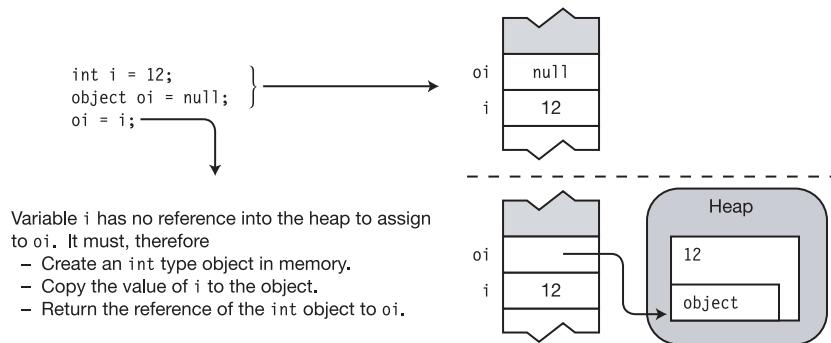
**Figure 18-21.** Casting to a safe type

## Boxing Conversions

All C# types, including the value types, are derived from type `object`. Value types, however, are efficient, lightweight types that do not, by default, include their object component in the heap. When the object component is needed, however, you can use *boxing*, which is an implicit conversion that takes a value type value, creates from it a full reference type object in the heap, and returns a reference to the object.

For example, Figure 18-22 shows three lines of code.

- The first two lines of code declare and initialize value type variable `i` and reference type variable `oi`.
- In the third line of code, you want to assign the value of variable `i` to `oi`. But `oi` is a reference type variable and must be assigned a reference to an object in the heap. Variable `i`, however, is a value type and doesn't have a reference to an object in the heap.
- The system therefore boxes the value of `i` by doing the following:
  - Creating an object of type `int` in the heap
  - Copying the value of `i` to the `int` object
  - Returning the reference of the `int` object to `oi` to store as its reference



**Figure 18-22.** Boxing creates a full reference type object from a value type.

## Boxing Creates a Copy

A common misunderstanding about boxing is that it somehow acts upon the item being boxed. It doesn't. It returns a reference type *copy* of the value. After the boxing procedure, there are two copies of the value—the value type original and the reference type copy—each of which can be manipulated separately.

For example, the following code shows the separate manipulation of each copy of the value. Figure 18-23 illustrates the code.

- The first line defines value type variable *i* and initializes its value to 10.
- The second line creates reference type variable *oi* and initializes it with the boxed copy of variable *i*.
- The last three lines of code show *i* and *oi* being manipulated separately.

```
int i = 10;                                // Create and initialize value type
    Box i and assign its reference to oi.
    ↓
object oi = i;                            // Create and initialize    reference type
Console.WriteLine("i: {0}, io: {1}", i, oi);

i = 12;
oi = 15;
Console.WriteLine("i: {0}, io: {1}", i, oi);
```

This code produces the following output:

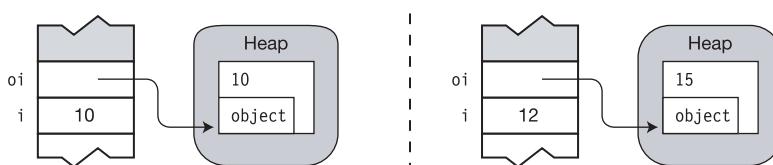
---

i: 10, io: 10

---

i: 12, io: 15

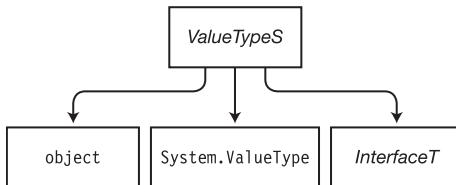
---



**Figure 18-23.** Boxing creates a copy that can be manipulated separately.

## The Boxing Conversions

Figure 18-24 shows the boxing conversions. Any value type *ValueTypeS* can be implicitly converted to any of types *object*, *System.ValueType*, or *InterfaceT*, if *ValueTypeS* implements *InterfaceT*.



**Figure 18-24.** *Boxing is the implicit conversion of value types to reference types.*

## Unboxing Conversions

*Unboxing* is the process of converting a boxed object back to its value type.

- Unboxing is an explicit conversion.
- The system performs the following steps when unboxing a value to *ValueTypeT*:
  - It checks that the object being unboxed is actually a boxed value of type *ValueTypeT* .
  - It copies the value of the object to the variable.

For example, the following code shows an example of unboxing a value.

- Value type variable *i* is boxed and assigned to reference type variable *oi*.
- Variable *oi* is then unboxed, and its value is assigned to value type variable *j*.

```

static void Main()
{
    int i = 10;
    Box i and assign its reference to oi.
    ↓
    object oi = i;
    Unbox oi and assign its value to j.
    ↓
    int j = (int) oi;
    Console.WriteLine("i: {0},    oi: {1},    j: {2}", i, oi, j);
}
  
```

This code produces the following output:

---

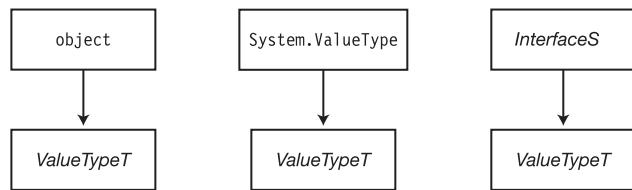
```
i: 10,  oi: 10,  j: 10
```

---

Attempting to unbox a value to a type other than the original type raises an `InvalidCastException` exception.

## The Unboxing Conversions

Figure 18-25 shows the unboxing conversions.



**Figure 18-25.** The unboxing conversions

## User-Defined Conversions

Besides the standard conversions, you can also define both implicit and explicit conversions for your own classes and structs.

The syntax for user-defined conversions is shown following.

- The syntax is the same for both implicit and explicit conversion declarations, except for the keywords `implicit` and `explicit`.
- The modifiers `public` and `static` are required.

Required	Operator	Keyword	Source
<code>↓</code>	<code>↓</code>	<code>↓</code>	<code>↓</code>
<code>public static</code>	<code>implicit operator</code>	<code>TargetType (</code>	<code>SourceType Identifier )</code>
<code>{</code>	<code>↑</code>		
<i>Implicit or explicit</i>			
<code>}</code>	<code>...</code>		
		<code>return ObjectOfTargetType;</code>	

For example, the following shows an example of the syntax of a conversion method that converts an object of type `Person` to an `int`:

```
public static implicit operator int(Person p)
{
    return p.Age;
}
```

## Constraints on User-Defined Conversions

There are some important constraints on user-defined conversions. The most important are the following:

- You can only define user-defined conversions for classes and structs.
- You cannot redefine standard implicit or explicit conversions.
- The following is true for source type *S* and target type *T*:
  - *S* and *T* must be different types.
  - *S* and *T* cannot be related by inheritance. That is, *S* cannot be derived from *T*, and *T* cannot be derived from *S*.
  - Neither *S* nor *T* can be an interface type or the type `object`.
  - The conversion operator must be a member of either *S* or *T*.
- You cannot declare two conversions, one implicit and the other explicit, with the same source and target types.

## Example of a User-Defined Conversion

The following code defines a class called Person that contains a person's name and age. The class also defines two implicit conversions. The first converts a Person object to an int value. The target int value is the age of the person. The second converts an int to a Person object.

```
class Person
{
    public string Name;
    public int    Age;
    public Person(string name, int age)
    {
        Name = name;
        Age = age;
    }

    public static implicit operator int(Person p)    // Convert Person to int.
    {
        return p.Age;
    }

    public static implicit operator Person(int i)    // Convert int to Person.
    {
        return new Person("Nemo", i);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        Person bill = new Person( "bill", 25);

        Convert a Person object to an int.
        ↓
        int age = bill;
        Console.WriteLine("Person Info: {0}, {1}", bill.Name, age);

        Convert an int to a Person object.
        ↓
        Person anon = 35;
        Console.WriteLine("Person Info: {0}, {1}", anon.Name, anon.Age);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Person Info: bill, 25
Person Info: Nemo, 35
```

---

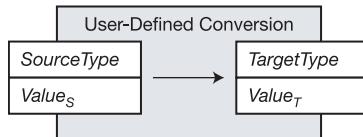
If you had defined the same conversion operators as `explicit` rather than `implicit`, then you would have needed to use cast expressions to perform the conversions, as shown here:

```
    Explicit
    ...
    ↓
public static explicit operator int( Person p )
{
    return p.Age;
}

...
static void Main( )
{
    ...
    Requires cast expression
    ↓
    int age = (int) bill;
    ...
}
```

## Evaluating User-Defined Conversions

The user-defined conversions discussed so far have directly converted the source type to an object of the target type in a single step, as shown in Figure 18-26.

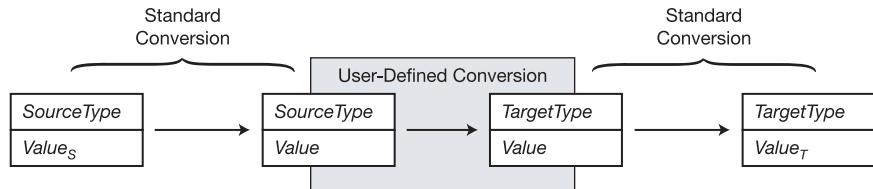


**Figure 18-26.** Single-step user-defined conversion

But user-defined conversions can have up to three steps in the full conversion. Figure 18-27 illustrates these stages, which include the following:

- The preliminary standard conversion
- The user-defined conversion
- The following standard conversion

There is *never* more than a single user-defined conversion in the chain.



**Figure 18-27.** Multistep user-defined conversion

## Example of a Multistep User-Defined Conversion

The following code declares class `Employee`, which is derived from class `Person`.

- Several sections ago, the code sample declared a user-defined conversion from class `Person` to `int`. So if there is a standard conversion from `Employee` to `Person` and one from `int` to `float`, you can convert from `Employee` to `float`.
  - There is a standard conversion from `Employee` to `Person`, since `Employee` is derived from `Person`.
  - There is a standard conversion from `int` to `float`, since that is an implicit numeric conversion.
- Since all three parts of the chain exist, you can convert from `Employee` to `float`. Figure 18-28 illustrates how the compiler performs the conversion.

```

class Employee : Person { }

class Person
{
    public string Name;
    public int    Age;

    // Convert a Person object to an int.
    public static implicit operator int(Person p)
    {
        return p.Age;
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        Employee bill = new Employee();
        bill.Name = "William";
        bill.Age  = 25;
        Convert an Employee to a float.
        ↓
        float fVar = bill;

        Console.WriteLine("Person Info: {0}, {1}", bill.Name, fVar);
    }
}

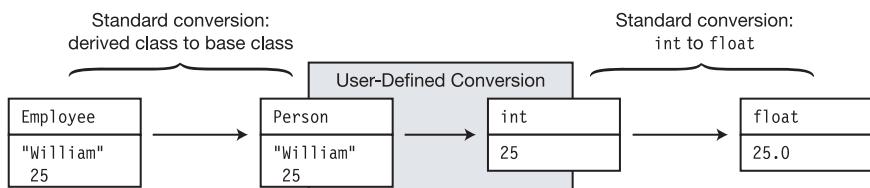
```

This code produces the following output:

---

Person Info: William, 25

---



**Figure 18-28.** Conversion of Employee to float

# The is Operator

As shown previously, some conversion attempts are not successful and raise an `InvalidCastException` exception at run time. Instead of blindly attempting a conversion, you can use the `is` operator to check whether a conversion would complete successfully.

The syntax of the `is` operator is the following, where *Expr* is the source expression:

Returns a bool  
↓  
*Expr* is *TargetType*

The operator returns `true` if *Expr* can be successfully converted to the target type through any of the following:

- A reference conversion
- A boxing conversion
- An unboxing conversion

For example, in the following code, you use the `is` operator to check whether variable `bill` of type `Employee` can be converted to type `Person`, and then you take the appropriate action.

```
class Employee : Person { }
class Person
{
    public string Name = "Anonymous";
    public int Age      = 25;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee bill = new Employee();
        Person p;

        // Check if variable bill can be converted to type Person
        if( bill is Person )
        {
            p = bill;
            Console.WriteLine("Person Info: {0}, {1}", p.Name, p.Age);
        }
    }
}
```

The `is` operator can be used only for reference conversions and boxing and unboxing conversions. It *cannot* be used for user-defined conversions.

## The as Operator

The `as` operator is like the `cast` operator, except that it does not raise an exception. If the conversion fails, rather than raising an exception, it returns `null`.

The syntax of the `as` operator is the following, where

- `Expr` is the source expression.
- `TargetType` is the target type, which must be a reference type.

```

    Returns a reference
    ↓
Expr as TargetType
```

Since the `as` operator returns a reference expression, it can be used as the source for an assignment.

For example, variable `bill` of type `Employee` is converted to type `Person`, using the `as` operator, and assigned to variable `p` of type `Person`. You then check to see whether `p` is `null` before using it.

```
class Employee : Person { }

class Person
{
    public string Name = "Anonymous";
    public int Age      = 25;
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Employee bill = new Employee();
        Person p;

        p = bill as Person;
        if( p != null )
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Person Info: {0}, {1}", p.Name, p.Age);
        }
    }
}
```

Like the `is` operator, the `as` operator can be used only for reference conversions and boxing conversions. It *cannot* be used for user-defined conversions or conversions to a value type.



# Generics

- What Are Generics?
- Generics in C#
- Generic Classes
- Declaring a Generic Class
- Creating a Constructed Type
- Creating Variables and Instances
- Constraints on Type Parameters
- Generic Methods
- Extension Methods with Generic Classes
- Generic Structs
- Generic Delegates
- Generic Interfaces
- Covariance and Contravariance in Generics

## What Are Generics?

With the language constructs you've learned so far, you can build powerful objects of many different types. You do this mostly by declaring classes that encapsulate the behavior you want and then creating instances of those classes.

All the types used in the class declarations so far have been specific types—either programmer-defined or supplied by the language or the BCL. There are times, however, when a class would be more useful if you could “distill” or “refactor” out its actions and apply them not just to the data types for which they are coded but for other types as well.

Generics allow you to do just that. You can refactor your code and add an additional layer of abstraction so that, for certain kinds of code, the data types are not hard-coded. This is particularly designed for cases in which there are multiple sections of code performing the same instructions, but on different data types.

That might sound pretty abstract, so we'll start with an example that should make things clearer.

## A Stack Example

Suppose first that you have created the following code, which declares a class called `MyIntStack`, which implements a stack of `ints`. It allows you to push `ints` onto the stack and pop them off. This, by the way, isn't the system stack.

```
class MyIntStack           // Stack for ints
{
    int StackPointer = 0;
    int[] StackArray;           // Array of int
    ↑                   int
    int
    public void Push( int x )   // Input type: int
    {
        ...
    }   int
    ↓
    public int Pop()           // Return type: int
    {
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

Suppose now that you would like the same functionality for values of type `float`. There are several ways you could achieve this. One way is to perform the following steps to produce the subsequent code:

- Cut and paste the code for class `MyIntStack`.
- Change the class name to `MyFloatStack`.
- Change the appropriate `int` declarations to `float` declarations throughout the class declaration.

```
class MyFloatStack           // Stack for floats
{
    int StackPointer = 0;
    float [] StackArray;           // Array of float
    ↑                         float
    float                      ↓
    public void Push( float x )   // Input type: float
    {
        ...
    }
    float
    ↓
    public float Pop()           // Return type: float
    {
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

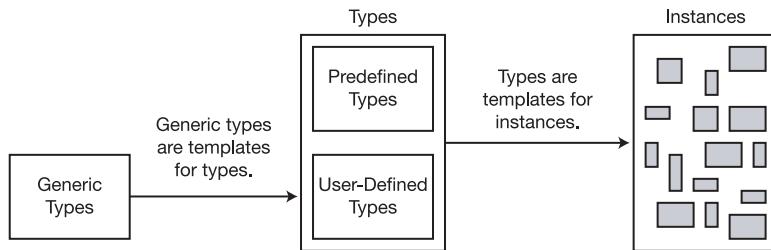
This method certainly works, but it's error-prone, and has the following drawbacks:

- You need to inspect every part of the class carefully to determine which type declarations need to be changed and which should be left alone.
- You need to repeat the process for each new type of stack class you need (`long`, `double`, `string`, and so on).
- After the process, you end up with multiple copies of nearly identical code, taking up additional space.
- Debugging and maintaining the parallel implementations is inelegant and error-prone.

## Generics in C#

With C# 2.0, Microsoft introduced the *generics* features, which offer more elegant ways of using a set of code with more than one type. Generics allow you to declare *type-parameterized* code, which you can instantiate with different types. This means you can write the code with “placeholders for types” and then supply the *actual* types when you create an instance of the class.

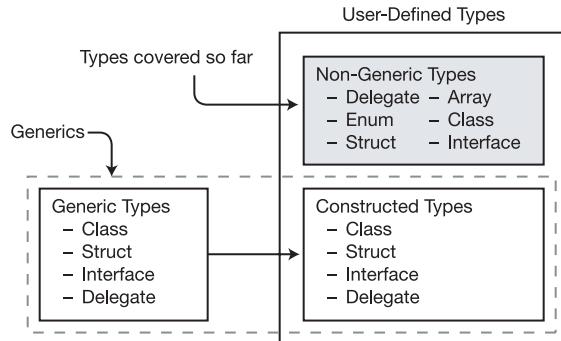
By this point in the text, you should be very familiar with the concept that a type is not an object but a template for an object. In the same way, a generic type is not a type but a template for a type. Figure 19-1 illustrates this point.



**Figure 19-1.** Generic types are templates for types.

C# provides five kinds of generics: classes, structs, interfaces, delegates, and methods. Notice that the first four are types, and methods are members.

Figure 19-2 shows how generic types fit in with the other types covered.



**Figure 19-2.** Generics and user-defined types

## Continuing with the Stack Example

In the stack example, with classes `MyIntStack` and `MyFloatStack`, the bodies of the declarations of the classes are identical except at the positions dealing with the type of the value held by the stack.

- In `MyIntStack`, these positions are occupied by type `int`.
- In `MyFloatStack`, they are occupied by `float`.

You can create a generic class from `MyIntStack` by doing the following:

- Take the `MyIntStack` class declaration, and instead of substituting `float` for `int`, substitute the type placeholder `T`.
- Change the class name to `MyStack`.
- Place the string `<T>` after the class name.

The result is the following generic class declaration. The string consisting of the angle brackets with the `T` means that `T` is a placeholder for a type. (It doesn't have to be the letter `T`—it can be any identifier.) Everywhere throughout the body of the class declaration where `T` is located, an actual type will need to be substituted by the compiler.

```
class MyStack <T>
{
    int StackPointer = 0;
    T [] StackArray;
    ↑
    ↓
    public void Push(T x) {...}
    ↓
    public T Pop() {...}
    ...
}
```

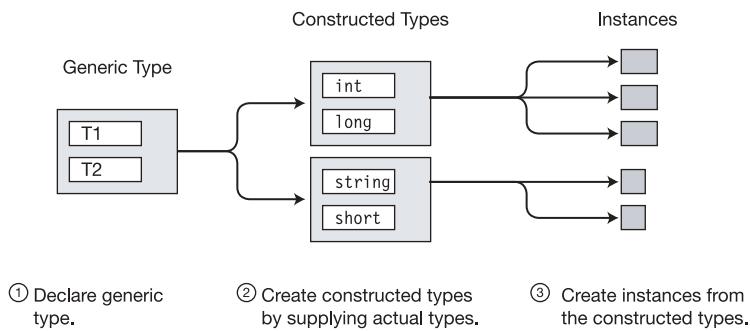
## Generic Classes

Now that you've seen a generic class, let's look at generic classes in more detail and see how they're created and used.

As you know, there are two steps for creating and using your own regular, nongeneric classes: declaring the class and creating instances of the class. But generic classes are not actual classes but templates for classes—so you must first construct actual class types from them. You can then create references and instances from these constructed class types.

Figure 19-3 illustrates the process at a high level. If it's not all completely clear yet, don't worry—we'll cover each part in the following sections.

1. Declare a class, using placeholders for some of the types.
2. Provide *actual* types to substitute in for the placeholders. This gives you an actual class definition, with all the “blanks” filled in.
3. Create instances from the “filled-in” class definition.



**Figure 19-3.** Creating instances from a generic type

## Declaring a Generic Class

Declaring a simple generic class is much like declaring a regular class, with the following differences:

- Place a matching set of angle brackets after the class name.
- Between the angle brackets, place a comma-separated list of the placeholder strings that represent the types, to be supplied on demand. These are called *type parameters*.
- Use the type parameters throughout the body of the declaration of the generic class to represent the types that should be substituted in.

For example, the following code declares a generic class called `SomeClass`. The type parameters are listed between the angle brackets and then used throughout the body of the declaration as if they were real types.

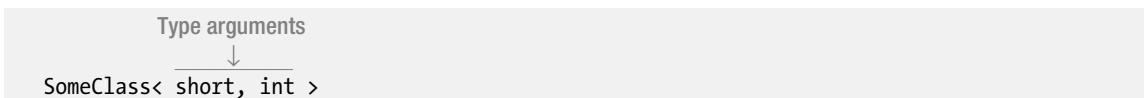
```
Type parameters  
↓  
class SomeClass < T1, T2 >  
{   Normally, types would be used in these positions.  
    ↓   ↓  
    public T1 SomeVar = new T1();  
    public T2 OtherVar = new T2();  
}  
↑   ↑  
Normally, types would be used in these positions.
```

There is no special keyword that flags a generic class declaration. Instead, the presence of the type parameter list, demarcated with angle brackets, distinguishes a generic class declaration from a regular class declaration.

## Creating a Constructed Type

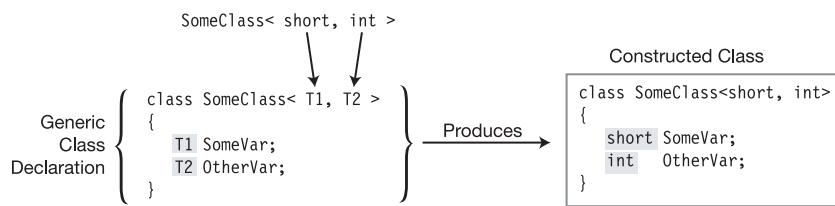
You *cannot* create class objects directly from a generic class. First, you need to tell the compiler what actual types should be substituted for the placeholders (the type parameters). The compiler takes those actual types and creates a template from which it creates actual class objects.

To construct a class type from a generic class, list the class name and supply real types between the angle brackets, in place of the type parameters. The real types being substituted for the type parameters are called *type arguments*.



The compiler takes the type arguments and substitutes them for their corresponding type parameters throughout the body of the generic class, producing the *constructed type*—from which actual class instances are created.

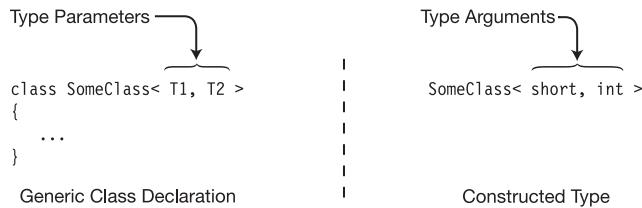
Figure 19-4 shows the declaration of generic class SomeClass on the left. On the right, it shows the constructed class created by using the type arguments short and int.



**Figure 19-4.** Supplying type arguments for all the type parameters of a generic class produces a constructed class from which actual class objects can be created.

Figure 19-5 illustrates the difference between type parameters and type arguments.

- Generic class declarations have type parameters, which act as placeholders for types.
- Type arguments are the actual types you supply when creating a constructed type.



**Figure 19-5.** Type parameters versus type arguments

## Creating Variables and Instances

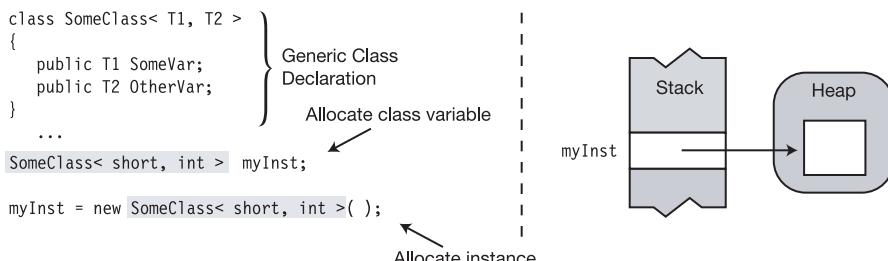
A constructed class type is used just like a regular type in creating references and instances. For example, the following code shows the creation of two class objects.

- The first line shows the creation of an object from a regular, nongeneric class. This is a form that you should be completely familiar with by now.
- The second line of code shows the creation of an object from generic class `SomeClass`, instantiated with types `short` and `int`. The form is exactly analogous to the line above it, with the constructed class forms in place of a regular class name.
- The third line is the same semantically as the second line, but rather than listing the constructed type on both sides of the equals sign, it uses the `var` keyword to make the compiler use type inference.

```
MyNonGenClass      myNGC = new MyNonGenClass      ();
                  Constructed class           Constructed class
                  ↓                           ↓
SomeClass<short, int>  mySc1 = new SomeClass<short, int>();
var                   mySc2 = new SomeClass<short, int>();
```

As with nongeneric classes, the reference and the instance can be created separately, as shown in Figure 19-6. The figure also shows that what is going on in memory is the same as for a nongeneric class.

- The first line below the generic class declaration allocates a reference in the stack for variable `myInst`. Its value is `null`.
- The second line allocates an instance in the heap and assigns its reference to the variable.



**Figure 19-6.** Using a constructed type to create a reference and an instance

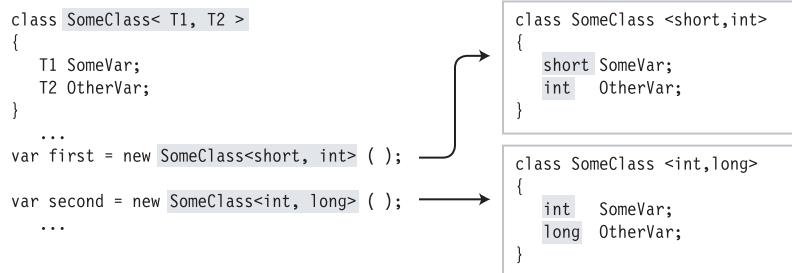
Many different class types can be constructed from the same generic class. Each one is a separate class type, just as if it had its own separate nongeneric class declaration.

For example, the following code shows the creation of two types from generic class `SomeClass`. The code is illustrated in Figure 19-7.

- One type is constructed with types `short` and `int`.
- The other is constructed with types `int` and `long`.

```
class SomeClass< T1, T2 >           // Generic class
{
    ...
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var first = new SomeClass<short, int>(); // Constructed type
        var second = new SomeClass<int, long>(); // Constructed type
        ...
    }
}
```



**Figure 19-7.** Two constructed classes created from a generic class

## The Stack Example Using Generics

The following code shows the stack example implemented using generics. Method Main defines two variables: `stackInt` and `stackString`. The two constructed types are created using `int` and `string` as the type arguments.

```
class MyStack<T>
{
    T[] StackArray;
    int StackPointer = 0;

    public void Push(T x)
    {
        if ( !IsStackFull )
            StackArray[StackPointer++] = x;
    }

    public T Pop()
    {
        return ( !IsStackEmpty )
            ? StackArray[--StackPointer]
            : StackArray[0];
    }

    const int MaxStack = 10;
    bool IsStackFull { get{ return StackPointer >= MaxStack; } }
    bool IsStackEmpty { get{ return StackPointer <= 0; } }

    public MyStack()
    {
        StackArray = new T[MaxStack];
    }

    public void Print()
    {
        for (int i = StackPointer -1; i >= 0 ; i--)
            Console.WriteLine("    Value: {0}", StackArray[i]);
    }
}
```



```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var stackInt = new MyStack<int>();
        var stackString = new MyStack<string>();

        stackInt.Push(3);
        stackInt.Push(5);
        stackInt.Push(7);

        stackInt.Print();

        stackString.Push("Generics are great!");
        stackString.Push("Hi there!");

        stackString.Print();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

---

```
Value: 7
Value: 5
Value: 3
Value: Hi there!
Value: Generics are great!
```

---

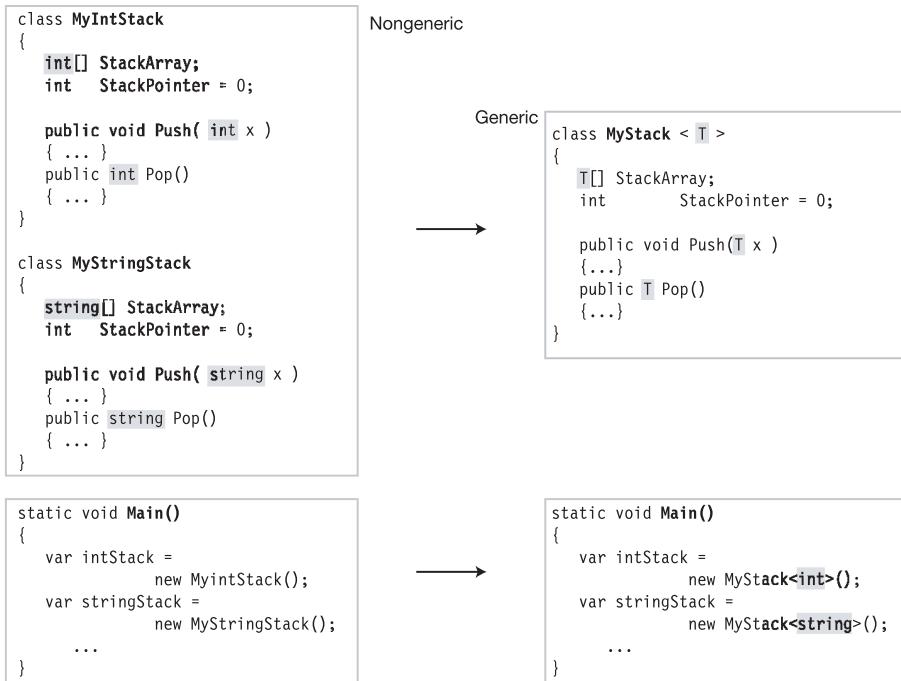
---

## Comparing the Generic and Nongeneric Stack

Table 19-1 summarizes some of the differences between the initial nongeneric version of the stack and the final generic version of the stack. Figure 19-8 illustrates some of these differences.

**Table 19-1. Differences Between the Nongeneric and Generic Stacks**

	Nongeneric	Generic
<b>Source Code Size</b>	Larger: You need a new implementation for each type.	Smaller: You need only one implementation regardless of the number of constructed types.
<b>Executable Size</b>	The compiled version of each stack is present, regardless of whether it is used.	Only types for which there is a constructed type are present in the executable.
<b>Ease of Writing</b>	Easier to write because it's more concrete.	Harder to write because it's more abstract.
<b>Difficulty to Maintain</b>	More error-prone to maintain, since all changes need to be applied for each applicable type.	Easier to maintain, because modifications are needed in only one place.



**Figure 19-8. Nongeneric stack versus generic stack**

## Constraints on Type Parameters

In the generic stack example, the stack did not do anything with the items it contained other than store them and pop them. It didn't try to add them, compare them, or do anything else that would require using operations of the items themselves. There's good reason for that. Since the generic stack doesn't know the type of the items it will be storing, it can't know what members these types implement.

All C# objects, however, are ultimately derived from class `object`, so the one thing the stack can be sure of about the items it's storing is that they implement the members of class `object`. These include methods `ToString`, `Equals`, and `GetType`. Other than that, it can't know what members are available.

As long as your code doesn't access the objects of the types it handles (or as long as it sticks to the members of type `object`), your generic class can handle any type. Type parameters that meet this constraint are called *unbounded type parameters*. If, however, your code tries to use any other members, the compiler will produce an error message.

For example, the following code declares a class called `Simple` with a method called `LessThan` that takes two variables of the same generic type. `LessThan` attempts to return the result of using the less-than operator. But not all classes implement the less-than operator, so you can't just substitute any class for `T`. The compiler, therefore, produces an error message.

```
class Simple<T>
{
    static public bool LessThan(T i1, T i2)
    {
        return i1 < i2;                                // Error
    }
    ...
}
```

To make generics more useful, therefore, you need to be able to supply additional information to the compiler about what kinds of types are acceptable as arguments. These additional bits of information are called *constraints*. Only types that meet the constraints can be substituted for the given type parameter.

## Where Clauses

Constraints are listed as where clauses.

- Each type parameter that has constraints has its own where clause.
- If a parameter has multiple constraints, they are listed in the where clause, separated by commas.

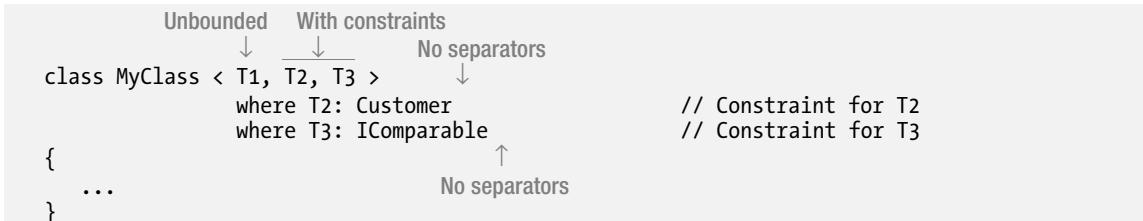
The syntax of a where clause is the following:



The important points about where clauses are the following:

- They're listed after the closing angle bracket of the type parameter list.
- They're not separated by commas or any other token.
- They can be listed in any order.
- The token `where` is a contextual keyword, so you can use it in other contexts.

For example, the following generic class has three type parameters. `T1` is unbounded. For `T2`, only classes of type `Customer`, or classes *derived from* `Customer`, can be used as type arguments. For `T3`, only classes that implement interface `IComparable` can be used as type arguments.



## Constraint Types and Order

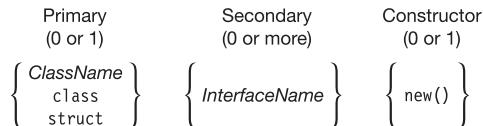
There are five types of constraints. These are listed in Table 19-2.

**Table 19-2.** *Types of Constraints*

Constraint Type	Description
<i>ClassName</i>	Only classes of this type, or classes derived from it, can be used as the type argument.
<code>class</code>	Any reference type, including classes, arrays, delegates, and interfaces, can be used as the type argument.
<code>struct</code>	Any value type can be used as the type argument.
<i>InterfaceName</i>	Only this interface, or types that implement this interface, can be used as the type argument.
<code>new()</code>	Any type with a parameterless public constructor can be used as the type argument. This is called the <i>constructor constraint</i> .

The `where` clauses can be listed in any order. The constraints in a `where` clause, however, must be placed in a particular order, as shown in Figure 19-9.

- There can be at most one primary constraint, and if there is one, it must be listed first.
- There can be any number of *InterfaceName* constraints.
- If the constructor constraint is present, it must be listed last.



**Figure 19-9.** If a type parameter has multiple constraints, they must be in this order.

The following declarations show examples of `where` clauses:

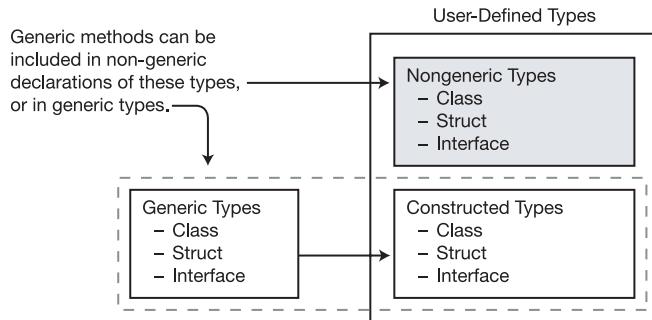
```
class SortedList<S>
    where S: IComparable<S> { ... }

class LinkedList<M,N>
    where M : IComparable<M>
    where N : ICloneable { ... }

class MyDictionary<KeyType, ValueType>
    where KeyType : IEnumerable,
    new() { ... }
```

## Generic Methods

Unlike the other generics, a method is not a type but a member. You can declare generic methods in both generic and nongeneric classes, and in structs and interfaces, as shown in Figure 19-10.

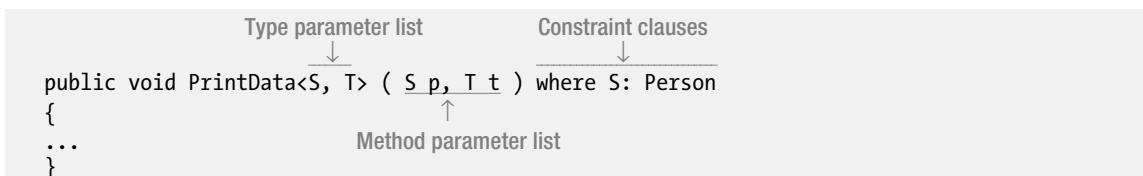


**Figure 19-10.** Generic methods can be declared in generic and nongeneric types.

## Declaring a Generic Method

Generic methods have a type parameter list and optional constraints.

- Generic methods have two parameter lists:
  - The *method parameter* list, enclosed in parentheses
  - The *type parameter* list, enclosed in angle brackets
- To declare a generic method, do the following:
  - Place the type parameter list immediately after the method name and before the method parameter list.
  - Place any constraint clauses after the method parameter list.



---

**Note** Remember that the type parameter list goes after the method name and before the method parameter list.

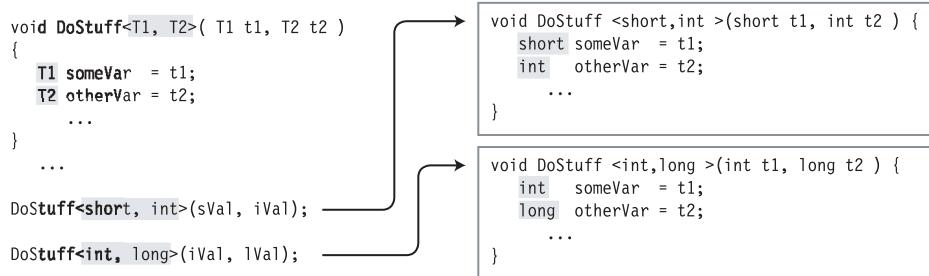
---

## Invoking a Generic Method

To invoke a generic method, supply type arguments with the method invocation, as shown here:

```
Type arguments
↓
MyMethod<short, int>();
MyMethod<int, long >();
```

Figure 19-11 shows the declaration of a generic method called `DoStuff`, which takes two type parameters. Below it are two places where the method is called, each with a different set of type parameters. Each of these constructed instances produces a different version of the method, as shown on the right of the figure.



**Figure 19-11.** A generic method with two instantiations

## Inferring Types

If you are passing parameters into a method, the compiler can sometimes infer from the types of the *method parameters* the types that should be used as the *type parameters* of the generic method. This can make the method calls simpler and easier to read.

For example, the following code declares `MyMethod`, which takes a method parameter of the same type as the type parameter.

```
public void MyMethod <T> (T myVal) { ... }  
          ↑   ↑  
          Both are of type T
```

If you invoke `MyMethod` with a variable of type `int`, as shown in the following code, the information in the type parameter of the method invocation is redundant, since the compiler can see from the method parameter that it's an `int`.

```
int myInt = 5;  
MyMethod <int> (myInt);  
          ↑   ↑  
          Both are ints
```

Since the compiler can infer the type parameter from the method parameter, you can omit the type parameter and its angle brackets from the invocation, as shown here:

```
MyMethod(myInt);
```

## Example of a Generic Method

The following code declares a generic method called ReverseAndPrint in a nongeneric class called Simple. The method takes as its parameter an array of any type. Main declares three different array types. It then calls the method twice with each array. The first time it calls the method with a particular array, it explicitly uses the type parameter. The second time, the type is inferred.

```
class Simple                                // Non-generic class
{
    static public void ReverseAndPrint<T>(T[] arr)    // Generic method
    {
        Array.Reverse(arr);
        foreach (T item in arr)                      // Use type argument T.
            Console.WriteLine("{0}, ", item.ToString());
        Console.WriteLine("");
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        // Create arrays of various types.
        var intArray = new int[] { 3, 5, 7, 9, 11 };
        var stringArray = new string[] { "first", "second", "third" };
        var doubleArray = new double[] { 3.567, 7.891, 2.345 };

        Simple.ReverseAndPrint<int>(intArray);           // Invoke method
        Simple.ReverseAndPrint(intArray);                // Infer type and invoke

        Simple.ReverseAndPrint<string>(stringArray);    // Invoke method
        Simple.ReverseAndPrint(stringArray);             // Infer type and invoke

        Simple.ReverseAndPrint<double>(doubleArray);   // Invoke method
        Simple.ReverseAndPrint(doubleArray);             // Infer type and invoke
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
11, 9, 7, 5, 3,
3, 5, 7, 9, 11,
third, second, first,
first, second, third,
2.345, 7.891, 3.567,
3.567, 7.891, 2.345,
```

---

## Extension Methods with Generic Classes

Extension methods are described in detail in Chapter 7 and work just as well with generic classes. They allow you to associate a static method in one class with a different generic class and to invoke the method as if it were an instance method on a constructed instance of the class.

As with nongeneric classes, an extension method for a generic class must satisfy the following constraints:

- It must be declared `static`.
- It must be the member of a static class.
- It must contain as its first parameter type the keyword `this`, followed by the name of the generic class it extends.

The following code shows an example of an extension method called `Print` on a generic class called `Holder<T>`:

```
static class ExtendHolder
{
    public static void Print<T>(this Holder<T> h)
    {
        T[] vals = h.GetValues();
        Console.WriteLine("{0},\t{1},\t{2}", vals[0], vals[1], vals[2]);
    }
}

class Holder<T>
{
    T[] Vals = new T[3];

    public Holder(T v0, T v1, T v2)
    { Vals[0] = v0; Vals[1] = v1; Vals[2] = v2; }

    public T[] GetValues() { return Vals; }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main(string[] args) {
        var intHolder = new Holder<int>(3, 5, 7);
        var stringHolder = new Holder<string>("a1", "b2", "c3");
        intHolder.Print();
        stringHolder.Print();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

3,	5,	7
a1,	b2,	c3

---

## Generic Structs

Like generic classes, generic structs can have type parameters and constraints. The rules and conditions for generic structs are the same as those for generic classes.

For example, the following code declares a generic struct called `PieceOfData`, which stores and retrieves a piece of data, the type of which is determined when the type is constructed. `Main` creates objects of two constructed types—one using `int` and the other using `string`.

```
struct PieceOfData<T>                                // Generic struct
{
    public PieceOfData(T value) { _data = value; }
    private T _data;
    public T Data
    {
        get { return _data; }
        set { _data = value; }
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()           Constructed type
    {
        var intData    = new PieceOfData<int>(10);
        var stringData = new PieceOfData<string>("Hi there.");
                                                ↑
                                                Constructed type
        Console.WriteLine("intData    = {0}", intData.Data);
        Console.WriteLine("stringData = {0}", stringData.Data);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
intData    = 10
stringData = Hi there.
```

---

## Generic Delegates

Generic delegates are very much like nongeneric delegates, except that the type parameters determine the characteristics of what methods will be accepted.

- To declare a generic delegate, place the type parameter list in angle brackets after the delegate name and before the delegate parameter list.

```
Type parameters  
↓  
delegate R MyDelegate<T, R>( T value );  
↑  
Return type           Delegate formal parameter
```

- Notice that there are two parameter lists: the delegate formal parameter list and the type parameter list.
- The scope of the type parameters includes the following:
  - The return type
  - The formal parameter list
  - The constraint clauses

The following code shows an example of a generic delegate. In Main, generic delegate MyDelegate is instantiated with an argument of type string and initialized with method PrintString.

```
delegate void MyDelegate<T>(T value);           // Generic delegate

class Simple
{
    static public void PrintString(string s)      // Method matches delegate
    {
        Console.WriteLine(s);
    }

    static public void PrintUpperString(string s) // Method matches delegate
    {
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", s.ToUpper());
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        var myDel =                         // Create inst of delegate
            new MyDelegate<string>(Simple.PrintString);
        myDel += Simple.PrintUpperString;       // Add a method.

        myDel("Hi There.");                  // Call delegate
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Hi There.  
HI THERE.
```

---

## Another Generic Delegate Example

Since the LINQ feature of C# 3.0 uses generic delegates extensively, it's worth showing another example before we get there. I'll cover LINQ itself, and more about its generic delegates, in Chapter 21.

The following code declares a generic delegate named Func, which takes methods with two parameters and that return a value. The method return type is represented as TR, and the method parameter types are represented as T1 and T2.

```

public delegate TR Func<T1, T2, TR>(T1 p1, T2 p2); // Generic delegate
class Simple      Delegate return type
{
    static public string PrintString(int p1, int p2) // Method matches delegate
    {
        int total = p1 + p2;
        return total.ToString();
    }
}
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var myDel =                         // Create inst of delegate
            new Func<int, int, string>(Simple.PrintString);

        Console.WriteLine("Total: {0}", myDel(15, 13)); // Call delegate
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---



---



---

Total: 28

---



---

## Generic Interfaces

Generic interfaces allow you to write interfaces where the formal parameters and return types of interface members are generic type parameters. Generic interface declarations are similar to nongeneric interface declarations but have the type parameter list in angle brackets after the interface name.

For example, the following code declares a generic interface called `IMyIfc`.

- `Simple` is a generic class that implements generic interface `IMyIfc`.
- `Main` instantiates two objects of the generic class: one with type `int` and the other with type `string`.

```

Type parameter
↓
interface IMyIfc<T>                                // Generic interface
{
    T ReturnIt(T inValue);
}
Type parameter  Generic interface
↓   ↓
class Simple<S> : IMyIfc<S>                      // Generic class
{
    public S ReturnIt(S inValue)                     // Implement generic interface
    { return inValue; }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        var trivInt     = new Simple<int>();
        var trivString = new Simple<string>();

        Console.WriteLine("{0}", trivInt.ReturnIt(5));
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", trivString.ReturnIt("Hi there."));
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---



---

5  
Hi there.

---



---

## An Example Using Generic Interfaces

The following example illustrates two additional capabilities of generic interfaces:

- Like other generics, instances of a generic interface instantiated with different type parameters are different interfaces.
  - You can implement a generic interface in a *nongeneric type*.

For example, the following code is similar to the last example, but in this case, `Simple` is a *nongeneric* class that implements a generic interface. In fact, it implements two instances of `IMyIfc`. One instance is instantiated with type `int` and the other with type `string`.

```
interface IMyIfc<T>                                // Generic interface
{
    T ReturnIt(T inValue);
}

Two different interfaces from the same generic interface
class Simple : IMyIfc<int>, IMyIfc<string>      // Non-generic class
{
    public int ReturnIt(int inValue)                // Implement interface using int
    { return inValue; }

    public string ReturnIt(string inValue)          // Implement interface using string
    { return inValue; }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Simple trivial = new Simple();

        Console.WriteLine("{0}", trivial.ReturnIt(5));
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", trivial.ReturnIt("Hi there."));
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

5

Hi there.

## Generic Interface Implementations Must Be Unique

When implementing an interface in a generic type, there must be no possible combination of type arguments that would create a duplicate interface in the type.

For example, in the following code, class `Simple` uses two instantiations of interface `IMyIfc`.

- The first one is a constructed type, instantiated with type `int`.
- The second one has a type parameter rather than an argument.

There's nothing wrong in itself with the second interface, since it's perfectly fine to use a generic interface. The problem here, though, is that it allows a possible conflict, because if `int` is used as the type argument to replace `S` in the second interface, then `Simple` would have two interfaces of the same type—which is not allowed.

```
interface IMyIfc<T>
{
    T ReturnIt(T inValue);
}

class Simple<S> : IMyIfc<int>, IMyIfc<S>      // Error!
{
    public int ReturnIt(int inValue)    // Implement first interface.
    {
        return inValue;
    }

    public S ReturnIt(S inValue)        // Implement second interface,
    {                                // but if it's int, it would be
        return inValue;                // the same as the one above.
    }
}
```

---

**Note** The names of generic interfaces do not clash with nongeneric interfaces. For example, in the preceding code, we could have also declared a nongeneric interface named `IMyIfc`.

---

## Covariance and Contravariance in Generics

As you've seen throughout this chapter, when you create an instance of a generic type, the compiler takes the generic type declaration and the type arguments and creates a constructed type. A mistake that people commonly make, however, is to assume that you can assign a delegate of a derived type to a variable of a delegate of a base type. In the following sections, we'll look at this topic, which is called variance. There are three types of variance—*covariance*, *contravariance*, and *invariance*.

We'll start by reviewing something you've already learned: every variable has a type assigned to it, and you can assign an object of a more derived type to a variable of one of its base types. This is called *assignment compatibility*. The following code demonstrates assignment compatibility with a base class `Animal` and a class `Dog` derived from `Animal`. In `Main`, you can see that the code creates an object of type `Dog` and assigns it to variable `a2` of type `Animal`.

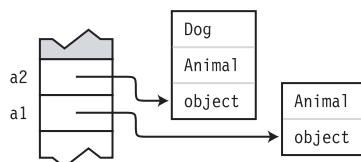
```
class Animal
{
    public int NumberOfLegs = 4;
}

class Dog : Animal
{
}

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        Animal a1 = new Animal( );
        Animal a2 = new Dog( );

        Console.WriteLine( "Number of dog legs: {0}", a2.NumberOfLegs );
    }
}
```

Figure 19-12 illustrates assignment compatibility. In this figure, the boxes showing the `Dog` and `Animal` objects also show their base classes.



**Figure 19-12.** Assignment compatibility means that you can assign a reference of a more derived type to a variable of a less derived type.

Now let's look at a more interesting case by expanding the code in the following ways as shown following:

- This code adds a generic delegate named `Factory`, which takes a single type parameter `T`, takes no method parameters, and returns an object of type `T`.

- I've added a method named `MakeDog` that takes no parameters and returns a `Dog` object. This method, therefore, matches `delegate Factory<Dog>` if we use `Dog` as the type parameter.
- The first line of `Main` creates a delegate object whose type is `delegate Factory<Dog>` and assigns its reference to variable `dogMaker`, of the same type.
- The second line attempts to assign a delegate of type `delegate Factory<Dog>` to a delegate type variable named `animalMaker` of type `delegate Factory<Animal>`.

This second line in `Main`, however, causes a problem, and the compiler produces an error message saying that it can't implicitly convert the type on the right to the type on the left.

```

class Animal      { public int Legs = 4; } // Base class
class Dog : Animal {}                      // Derived class

delegate T Factory<T>();                  ← delegate Factory

class Program
{
    static Dog MakeDog()                  ← Method that matches delegate Factory
    {
        return new Dog();
    }

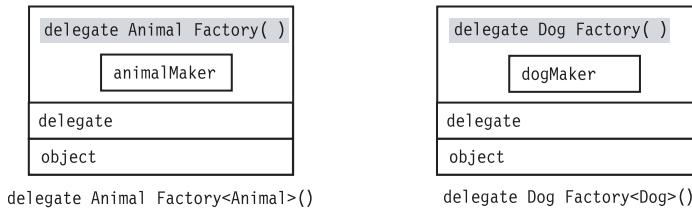
    static void Main()
    {
        Factory<Dog> dogMaker = MakeDog();   ← Create delegate object
        Factory<Animal> animalMaker = dogMaker;  ← Attempt to assign delegate object

        Console.WriteLine( animalMaker().Legs.ToString() );
    }
}

```

It seems to make sense that a delegate constructed with the base type should be able to hold a delegate constructed with the derived type. So why does the compiler give an error message? Doesn't the principle of assignment compatibility hold?

The principle *does* hold, but it doesn't apply in this situation! The problem is that although `Dog` derives from `Animal`, `delegate Factory<Dog>` does *not* derive from `delegate Factory<Animal>`. Instead, both delegate objects are peers, deriving from type `delegate`, which derives from type `object`, as shown in Figure 19-13. Neither delegate is derived from the other, so assignment compatibility doesn't apply.



**Figure 19-13.** Assignment compatibility doesn't apply because the two delegates are unrelated by inheritance.

Although the mismatch of delegate types doesn't allow assigning one type to the variable of another type, it's too bad in this situation, because in the example code, any time we would execute delegate `animalMaker`, the calling code would expect to have a reference to an `Animal` object returned. If it returned a reference to a `Dog` object instead, that would be perfectly fine since a reference to a `Dog` is a reference to an `Animal`, by assignment compatibility.

Looking at the situation more carefully, we can see that for any generic delegate, if a type parameter is used *only as an output value*, then the same situation applies. In all such situations, you would be able to use a constructed delegate type created with a derived class, and it would work fine, since the invoking code would always be expecting a reference to the base class—which is exactly what it would get.

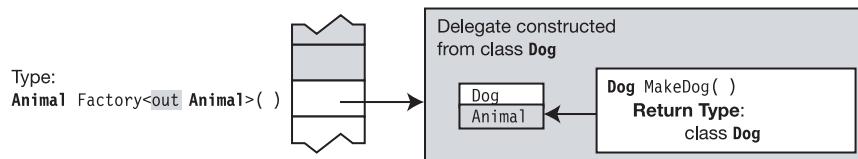
This constant *relation* between the use of a derived type only as an output value, and the validity of the constructed delegate, is called *covariance*, and is now explicitly allowed in C# 4.0. To let the compiler know that this is what you intend, you must mark the type parameter in the delegate declaration with the `out` keyword.

For example, if we change the delegate declaration in the example by adding the `out` keyword, as shown here, the code compiles and works fine.

```
delegate T Factory<out T>();  
          ↑  
Keyword specifying covariance  
of the type parameter
```

Figure 19-14 illustrates the components of covariance in this example:

- The variable on the stack on the left is of type `delegate T Factory<out T>()`, where type variable `T` is of class `Animal`.
- The actual constructed delegate in the heap, on the right, was declared with a type variable of class `Dog`, which is derived from class `Animal`.
- This is acceptable because when the delegate is called, the calling code receives an object of type `Dog`, instead of the expected object of type `Animal`. The calling code can freely operate on the `Animal` part of the object as it expects to do.



**Figure 19-14.** The covariant relation allows a more derived type to be in return and out positions.

The following code illustrates a related situation. In this example, there's a delegate, named `Action1`, which takes a single type parameter, and a single method parameter whose type is that of the type parameter, and it returns no value.

The code also contains a method called `ActOnAnimal`, whose signature and void return type match the delegate declaration.

The first line in `Main` creates a constructed delegate using type `Animal` and method `ActOnAnimal`, whose signature and void return type match the delegate declaration. In the second line, however, the code attempts to assign the reference to this delegate to a stack variable named `dog1`, of type delegate `Action1<Dog>`.

```
class Animal { public int NumberOfLegs = 4; }
class Dog : Animal { }

class Program          Keyword for Contravariance
{
    delegate void Action1<in T>( T a );

    static void ActOnAnimal( Animal a ) { Console.WriteLine( a.NumberOfLegs ); }

    static void Main( )
    {
        Action1<Animal> act1 = ActOnAnimal;
        Action1<Dog>      dog1 = act1;
        dog1( new Dog() );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---



---

4

---



---

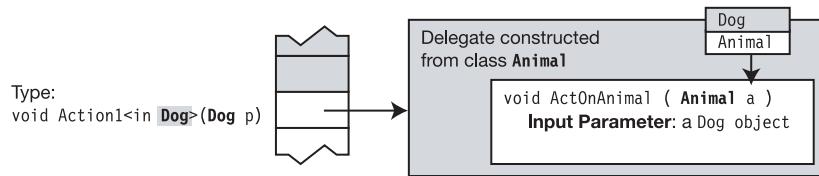
Like the previous situation, by default, you can't assign the two incompatible types. But also like the previous situation, there are situations where the assignment would work perfectly fine.

As a matter of fact, this is true whenever the type parameter is used *only as an input parameter* to the method in the delegate. The reason for this is that even though the invoking code passes in a reference to a more derived class, the method in the delegate is only expecting a reference to a less derived class—which of course it receives and knows how to manipulate.

This relation, allowing a more derived object where a less derived object is expected, is called *contravariance* and is now explicitly allowed in C# 4.0. To use it, you must use the `in` keyword with the type parameter, as shown in the code.

Figure 19-15 illustrates the components of contravariance in line 2 of Main.

- The variable on the stack on the left is of type delegate void Action1<in T>(T p), where the type variable is of class Dog.
- The actual constructed delegate, on the right, is declared with a type variable of class Animal, which is a base class of class Dog.
- This works fine because when the delegate is called, the calling code passes in an object of type Dog, to method ActOnAnimal, which is expecting an object of type Animal. The method can freely operate on the Animal part of the object as it expects to do.

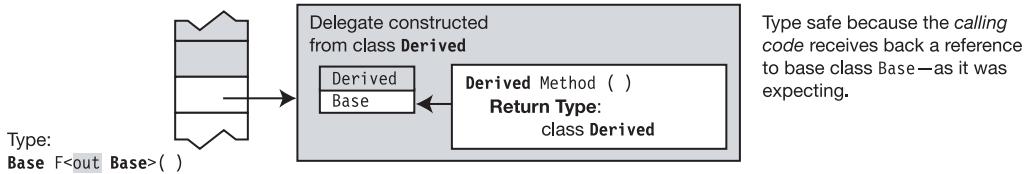


**Figure 19-15.** The contravariant relation allows more derived types to be allowed as input parameters.

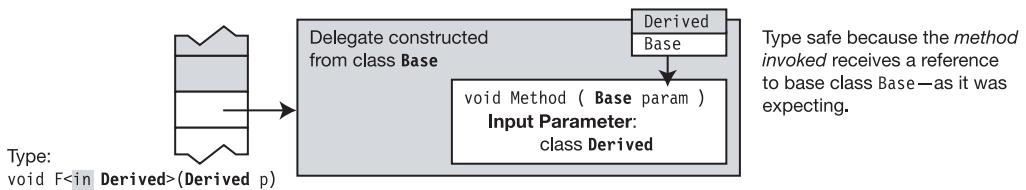
Figure 19-16 summarizes the differences between covariance and contravariance in a generic delegate.

- The top figure illustrates covariance.
  - The variable on the stack on the left is of type delegate `F<out T>()` where the type variable is of a class named `Base`.
  - The actual constructed delegate, on the right, was declared with a type variable of class `Derived`, which is derived from class `Base`.
  - This works fine because when the delegate is called, the method returns a reference to an object of the derived type, which is also a reference to the base class, which is exactly what the calling code is expecting.
- The bottom figure illustrates contravariance.
  - The variable on the stack on the left is of type `void F<in T>(T p)`, where the type parameter is of class `Derived`.
  - The actual constructed delegate, on the right was declared with a type variable of class `Base`, which is a base class of class `Derived`.
  - This works fine because when the delegate is called, the calling code passes in an object of the derived type, to the method which is expecting an object of the base type. The method can operate freely on the base part of the object as it expects to do.

#### Covariance



#### Contravariance



**Figure 19-16.** A comparison of covariance and contravariance

## Covariance and Contravariance in Interfaces

You should now have an understanding of covariance and contravariance as it applies to delegates. The same principles apply to interfaces, including the syntax using the `out` and `in` keywords in the interface declaration.

The following code shows an example of using covariance with an interface. The things to note about the code are the following:

- The code declares a generic interface with type parameter `T`. The `out` keyword specifies that the type parameter is covariant.
- Generic class `SimpleReturn` implements the generic interface.
- Method `DoSomething` shows how a method can take an *interface* as a parameter. This method takes as its parameter a generic `IMyIfc` interface constructed with type `Animal`.

The code works in the following way:

- The first two lines of `Main` create and initialize a constructed instance of generic class `SimpleReturn`, using class `Dog`.
- The next line assigns that object to a variable on the stack that is declared of constructed interface type `IMyIfc<Animal>`. Notice several things about this declaration:
  - The type on the left of the assignment is an interface type—not a class.
  - Even though the interface types don't exactly match, the compiler allows them because of the covariant `out` specifier in the interface declaration.
- Finally, the code calls method `DoSomething` with the constructed covariant class that implements the interface.

```
class Animal { public string Name; }
class Dog: Animal{ };
    Keyword for Covariance
    ↓
interface IMyIfc<out T>
{
    T GetFirst();
}

class SimpleReturn<T>: IMyIfc<T>
{
    public T[] items = new T[2];
    public T GetFirst() { return items[0]; }
}

class Program
{
    static void DoSomething(IMyIfc<Animal> returner)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(returner.GetFirst().Name);
    }

    static void Main( )
    {
        SimpleReturn<Dog> dogReturner = new SimpleReturn<Dog>();
        dogReturner.items[0] = new Dog() { Name = "Avonlea" };

        IMyIfc<Animal> animalReturner = dogReturner;

        DoSomething(dogReturner);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

Avonlea

---

## More About Variance

The previous two sections explained explicit covariance and contravariance. There is also a situation where the compiler automatically recognizes that a certain constructed delegate is covariant or contravariant and makes the type coercion automatically. That happens when the object hasn't yet had a type assigned to it. The following code shows an example.

The first line of Main creates a constructed delegate of type Factory<Animal> from a method where the return type is a Dog object, not an Animal object. In creating this delegate, the method name on the right side of the assignment operator doesn't yet have a type, and the compiler can determine that the method fits the type of the delegate except that its return type is of type Dog rather than type Animal. The compiler is smart enough to realize that this is a covariant relation and creates the constructed type and assigns it to the variable.

Compare that with the assignments in the third and fourth lines of Main. In these cases, the expressions on the right side of the equals sign already have a type and therefore need the out specifier in the delegate declaration to signal the compiler to allow them to be covariant.

```
class Animal { public int Legs = 4; }           // Base class
class Dog : Animal { }                         // Derived class

class Program
{
    delegate T Factory<out T>();

    static Dog MakeDog() { return new Dog(); }

    static void Main()
    {
        Factory<Animal> animalMaker1 = MakeDog;      // Coerced implicitly

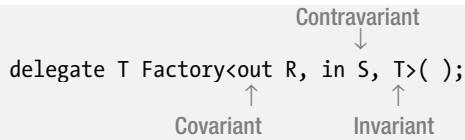
        Factory<Dog> dogMaker = MakeDog;
        Factory<Animal> animalMaker2 = dogMaker;       // Requires the out specifier

        Factory<Animal> animalMaker3
            = new Factory<Dog>(MakeDog);             // Requires the out specifier
    }
}
```

This implicit coercion implementing covariance and contravariance has been available without the in/out keywords since before C# 4.0.

Other important things you should know about variance are the following:

- As you've seen, variance deals with the issue of where it's safe to substitute a base type for a derived type, and vice versa. Variance, therefore, applies only to reference types, since value types can't be derived from.
- Explicit variance, using the `in` and `out` keywords applies only to delegates and interfaces—not classes, structs, or methods.
- Delegate and interface type parameters that don't include either the `in` or `out` keyword are called *invariant*. These types cannot be used covariantly or contravariantly.







# Enumerators and Iterators

- Enumerators and Enumerable Types
- Using the `IEnumerator` Interface
- The `IEnumerable` Interface
- The Noninterface Enumerator
- The Generic Enumeration Interfaces
- The `IEnumerator<T>` Interface
- The `IEnumerable<T>` Interface
- Iterators
- Common Iterator Patterns
- Producing `Enumerables` and `Enumerators`
- Producing Multiple `Enumerables`
- Producing Multiple `Enumerators`
- Behind the Scenes with Iterators

# Enumerators and Enumerable Types

In Chapter 14, you saw that you can use a `foreach` statement to cycle through the elements of an array. In this chapter, you'll take a closer look at arrays and see why they can be processed by `foreach` statements. You'll also look at how you can add this capability to your own user-defined classes. Later in the chapter, I'll explain the use of iterators.

## Using the `foreach` Statement

When you use a `foreach` statement with an array, the statement presents you with each element in the array, one by one, allowing you to read its value.

For example, the following code declares an array with four elements and then uses a `foreach` loop to print out the values of the items:

```
int[] arr1 = { 10, 11, 12, 13 };           // Define the array.  
foreach (int item in arr1)                // Enumerate the elements.  
    Console.WriteLine("Item value: {0}", item);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

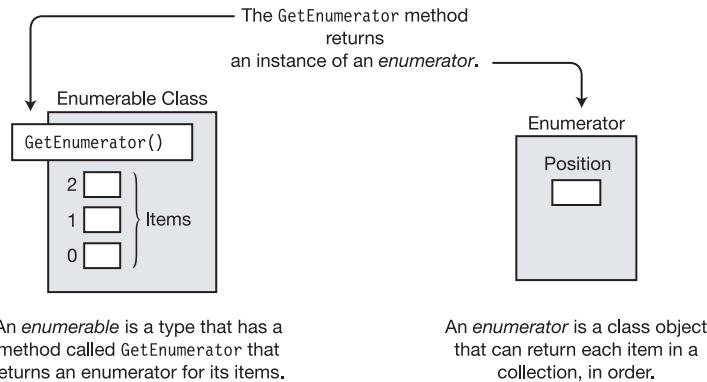
```
Item value: 10  
Item value: 11  
Item value: 12  
Item value: 13
```

---

Why does this work, apparently magically, with arrays? The reason is that an array can produce, upon request, an object called an *enumerator*. The enumerator is an object that can return the elements of the array, one by one, in order, as they are requested. The enumerator “knows” the order of the items and keeps track of where it is in the sequence. It then returns the current item when it is requested.

For types that have enumerators, there must be a way of retrieving them. The standard way of retrieving an object's enumerator in .NET is to call the object's `GetEnumerator` method. Types that implement a `GetEnumerator` method are called *enumerable types*, or just *enumerables*. Arrays are enumerables.

Figure 20-1 illustrates the relationship between enumerables and enumerators.



**Figure 20-1.** Overview of enumerators and enumerables

The `foreach` construct is designed to work with enumerables. As long as the object it is given to iterate over is an enumerable type, such as an array, it will perform the following actions:

- Get the object's enumerator by calling its `GetEnumerator` method
- Request each item from the enumerator and make it available to your code as the *iteration variable*, which your code can read (but not change).

```

    Must be enumerable
    ↓
foreach( Type VarName in EnumerableObject )
{
    ...
}
```

## Types of Enumerators

There are three variations on enumerators. They all work essentially the same way, with only slight differences. I'll discuss all three types. You can implement enumerators using the following:

- The `IEnumerator/IEnumerable` interfaces—called the *nongeneric interface* form
- The `IEnumerator<T>/IEnumerable<T>` interfaces—called the *generic interface* form
- The form that uses no interfaces

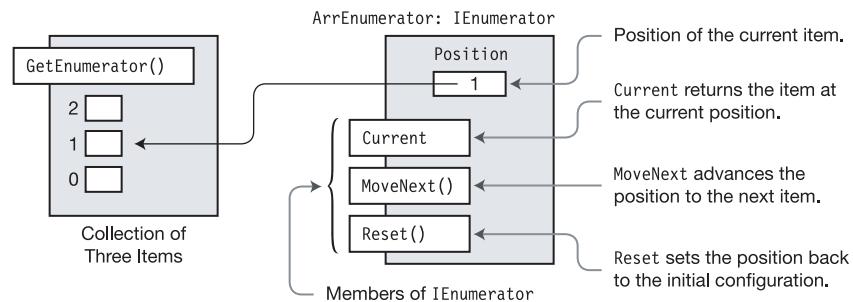
## Using the `IEnumerator` Interface

This section will start by looking at the first in the preceding list: the nongeneric interface form. This form of enumerator is a class that implements the `IEnumerator` interface. It's called *nongeneric* because it does not use C# generics.

The `IEnumerator` interface contains three function members: `Current`, `MoveNext`, and `Reset`.

- `Current` is a property that returns the item at the current position in the sequence.
  - It is a read-only property.
  - It returns a reference of type `object`, so an object of any type can be returned.
- `MoveNext` is a method that advances the enumerator's position to the next item in the collection. It also returns a Boolean value, indicating whether the new position is a valid position or is beyond the end of the sequence.
  - If the new position is valid, the method returns `true`.
  - If the new position isn't valid (that is, it's beyond the end), the method returns `false`.
  - The initial position of the enumerator is *before* the first item in the sequence. `MoveNext` must be called *before* the first access of `Current`.
- `Reset` is a method that resets the position to the initial state.

Figure 20-2 illustrates a collection of three items, which is shown on the left of the figure, and its enumerator, which is shown on the right. In the figure, the enumerator is an instance of a class called `ArrEnumerator`.



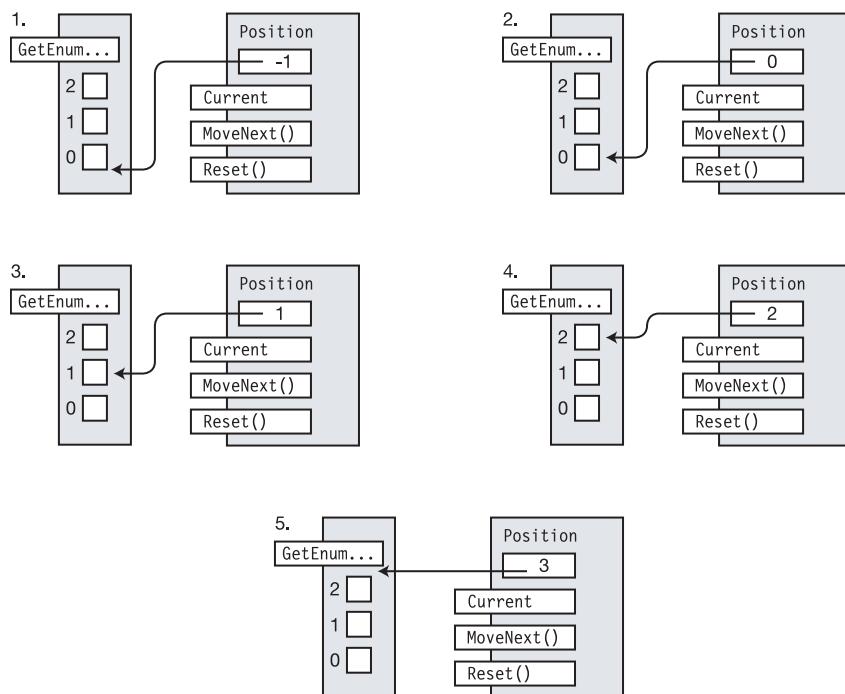
**Figure 20-2.** The enumerator for a small collection

The enumerator class is usually declared as a nested class of the class for which it is an enumerator. A *nested class* is declared inside the declaration of another class. Nested classes are described in detail in Chapter 25.

The way the enumerator keeps track of the current item in the sequence is entirely implementation-dependent. It might be implemented as a reference to an object, an index value, or something else entirely. In the case of the built-in single-dimensional array type, it's simply the index of the item.

Figure 20-3 illustrates the states of an enumerator for a collection of three items. The states are labeled 1 through 5.

- Notice that in state 1, the initial position of the enumerator is -1 (that is, before the first element of the collection).
- Each transition between states is caused by a call to `MoveNext`, which advances the position in the sequence. Each call to `MoveNext` between states 1 and 4 returns true. In the transition between states 4 and 5, however, the position ends up beyond the last item in the collection, so the method returns false.
- In the final state, any further calls to `MoveNext` return false.



**Figure 20-3.** The states of an enumerator

Given a collection's enumerator, you should be able to simulate a `foreach` loop by cycling through the items in the collection using the `MoveNext` and `Current` members. For example, you know that arrays are enumerable, so the following code does *manually* what the `foreach` statement does *automatically*. In fact, the C# compiler generates exactly this code when you write a `foreach` loop.

```
static void Main()
{
    int[] MyArray = { 10, 11, 12, 13 };           // Create an array.

    IEnumerator ie = MyArray.GetEnumerator();      // Get its enumerator.
    while ( ie.MoveNext() )                       // Move to the next item.
    {
        int i = (int) ie.Current;                 // Get the current item.
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", i);               // Write it out.
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
10
11
12
13
```

---

## Declaring an IEnumator Enumerator

To create a nongeneric interface enumerator class, you must declare a class that implements the `IEnumerator` interface. The `IEnumerator` interface has the following characteristics:

- It is a member of the `System.Collections` namespace.
- It contains the three members `Current`, `MoveNext`, and `Reset`.

The following code shows the outline of a nongeneric enumerator class. It does not show how the position is maintained. Notice that `Current` returns a reference to an object.

```
using System.Collections; // Include the namespace.

class MyEnumerator: IEnumerator
{
    Returns a reference to an object
    ↓
    public object Current { get; } // Current
    public bool MoveNext() { ... } // MoveNext
    public void Reset() { ... } // Reset
    ...
}
```

For example, the following code implements an enumerator class that lists an array of color names:

```
using System.Collections;

class ColorEnumerator: IEnumerator
{
    string[] Colors;      ↑ Implements IEnumerator
    int Position = -1;

    public object Current          // Current
    {
        get
        {
            if (Position == -1)
                throw new InvalidOperationException();
            if (Position == Colors.Length)
                throw new InvalidOperationException();

            return Colors[Position];
        }
    }

    public bool MoveNext()          // MoveNext
    {
        if (Position < Colors.Length - 1)
        {
            Position++;
            return true;
        }
        else
            return false;
    }

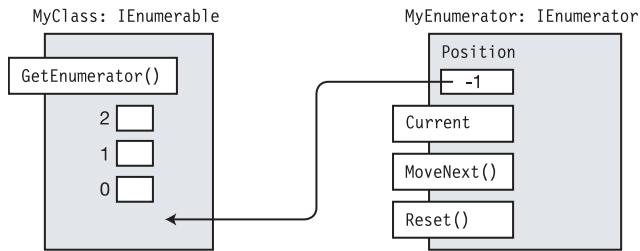
    public void Reset()             // Reset
    {
        Position = -1;
    }

    public ColorEnumerator(string[] theColors)      // Constructor
    {
        Colors = new string[theColors.Length];
        for (int i = 0; i < theColors.Length; i++)
            Colors[i] = theColors[i];
    }
}
```

## The **IEnumerable** Interface

The **IEnumerable** interface has only a single member, method **GetEnumerator**, which returns an enumerator for the object.

Figure 20-4 shows class **MyClass**, which has three items to enumerate, and implements the **IEnumerable** interface by implementing the **GetEnumerator** method.



**Figure 20-4.** The *GetEnumerator* method returns an enumerator object for the class.

The following code shows the form for the declaration of an enumerable class:

```

using System.Collections;
    Implements the IEnumerable interface
    ↓
class MyClass : IEnumerable
{
    public IEnumerator GetEnumerator { ... }
    ...
}
    Returns an object of type IEnumerator

```

The following code gives an example of an enumerable class that uses enumerator class **ColorEnumerator** from the previous example. Remember that **ColorEnumerator** implements **IEnumerator**.

```

using System.Collections;

class MyColors: IEnumerable
{
    string[] Colors = { "Red", "Yellow", "Blue" };

    public IEnumerator GetEnumerator()
    {
        return new ColorEnumerator(Colors);
    }
}
    An instance of the enumerator class

```

## Example Using IEnumerable and IEnumerator

Putting the MyColors and ColorEnumerator examples together, you can add a class called Program with a Main method that creates an instance of MyColors and uses it in a foreach loop.

```
using System;
using System.Collections;

namespace ColorCollectionEnumerator
{
    class ColorEnumerator: IEnumerator
    {
        string[] Colors;
        int Position = -1;

        public ColorEnumerator(string[] theColors)           // Constructor
        {
            Colors = new string[theColors.Length];
            for (int i = 0; i < theColors.Length; i++)
                Colors[i] = theColors[i];
        }

        public object Current                         // Current
        {
            get
            {
                if (Position == -1)
                {
                    throw new InvalidOperationException();
                }
                if (Position == Colors.Length)
                {
                    throw new InvalidOperationException();
                }

                return Colors[Position];
            }
        }

        public bool MoveNext()                      // MoveNext
        {
            if (Position < Colors.Length - 1)
            {
                Position++;
                return true;
            }
            else
                return false;
        }

        public void Reset()                        // Reset
        {
            Position = -1;
        }
    }
}
```

```
class MyColors: IEnumerable
{
    string[] Colors = { "Red", "Yellow", "Blue" };

    public IEnumerator GetEnumerator()
    {
        return new ColorEnumerator(Colors);
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyColors mc = new MyColors();
        foreach (string color in mc)
            Console.WriteLine(color);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Red
Yellow
Blue
```

---

## The Noninterface Enumerator

You've just seen how to use the `IEnumerable` and `IEnumerator` interfaces to create useful enumerables and enumerators. But there are several drawbacks to this method.

First, remember that the object returned by `Current` is of type `object`. For value types, this means that before they are returned by `Current`, they must be boxed to turn them into objects. They must then be unboxed again after they have been received from `Current`. This can exact a substantial performance penalty if it needs to be done on large amounts of data.

Another drawback of the nongeneric interface method is that you've lost type safety. The values being enumerated are being handled as objects and so can be of any type. This eliminates the safety of compile-time type checking.

You can solve these problems by making the following changes to the enumerator/enumerable class declarations.

- For the enumerator class
  - Do *not* derive the class from `IEnumerator`.
  - Implement `MoveNext` just as before.
  - Implement `Current` just as before but have as its return type the type of the items being enumerated.
  - You do not have to implement `Reset`.
- For the enumerable class
  - Do not derive the class from `IEnumerable`.
  - Implement `GetEnumerator` as before, but have its return type be the type of the enumerator class.

Figure 20-5 shows the differences. The nongeneric interface code is on the left, and the noninterface code is on the right. With these changes, the `foreach` statement will be perfectly happy to process your collection, but without the drawbacks just listed.

<pre>class SibEnumerator : IEnumator {     ...     public object Current     { get { ... } }      public bool MoveNext()     { ... }      public void Reset()     { ... } }</pre> <pre>class Siblings : IEnumerable {     ...     public IEnumerator GetEnumerator()     { ... } }</pre>	<pre>class SibEnumerator {     ...     public string Current     { get { ... } }      public bool MoveNext()     { ... } }</pre> <pre>class Siblings {     ...     public SibEnumerator GetEnumerator()     { ... } }</pre>
---	--

**Figure 20-5.** Comparing interface-based and non-interface-based enumerators

One possible problem with the noninterface enumerator implementation is that types from other assemblies might expect enumeration to be implemented using the interface method. If these objects attempt to get an enumeration of your class objects using the interface conventions, they won't be able to find them.

To solve this problem, you can implement both forms in the same classes. That is, you can create implementations for `Current`, `MoveNext`, `Reset`, and `GetEnumerator` at the class level and also create *explicit* interface implementations for them. With both sets of implementations, the type-safe, more efficient implementation will be called by `foreach` and other constructs that can use the noninterface implementations, while the other constructs will call the explicit interface implementations. An even better way, however, is to use the generic forms, which I describe next.

## The Generic Enumeration Interfaces

The third form of enumerator uses the generic interfaces `IEnumerable<T>` and `IEnumerator<T>`. They are called generic because they use C# generics. Using them is very similar to using the nongeneric forms. Essentially, the differences between the two are the following:

- With the nongeneric interface form
  - The `GetEnumerator` method of interface `IEnumerable` returns an enumerator class instance that implements `IEnumerator`.
  - The class implementing `IEnumerator` implements property `Current`, which returns a reference of type `object`, which you must then cast to the actual type of the object.
- With the generic interface form
  - The `GetEnumerator` method of interface `IEnumerable<T>` returns an instance of a class that implements `IEnumerator<T>`.
  - The class implementing `IEnumerator<T>` implements property `Current`, which returns an instance of the actual type, rather than a reference to the base class `object`.

The most important point to notice, though, is that the nongeneric interface implementations are not type-safe. They return references to type `object`, which must then be cast to the actual types. With the *generic interfaces*, however, the enumerator is type-safe, returning references to the actual types. Of the three forms of enumerations, this is the one you should implement and use. The others are for legacy code developed before C# 2.0 when generics were introduced.

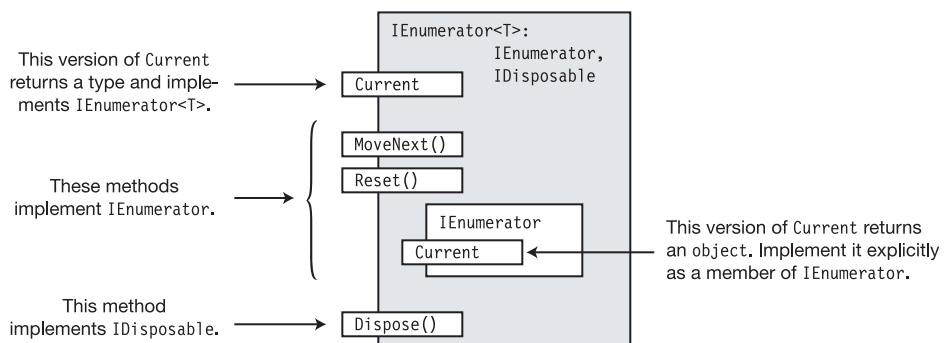
# The `IEnumerator<T>` Interface

The `IEnumerator<T>` interface uses generics to return an actual derived type, rather than a reference to an object.

The `IEnumerator<T>` interface derives from two other interfaces: the nongeneric `IEnumerator` interface and the `IDisposable` interface. It must therefore implement their members.

- You've already seen the nongeneric `IEnumerator` interface and its three members.
  - The `IDisposable` interface has a single, `void`, parameterless method called `Dispose`, which can be used to free unmanaged resources being held by the class. (The `Dispose` method was described in Chapter 6.)
  - The `IEnumerator<T>` interface itself has a single property, `Current`, which returns an instance of type `T` or derived from `T`—rather than a reference of type `object`.
  - Since both `IEnumerator<T>` and `IEnumerator` have a member named `Current`, you should explicitly implement the `IEnumerator` version and implement the generic version in the class itself, as shown in Figure 20-6.

Figure 20-6 illustrates the implementation of the interface.



**Figure 20-6.** Implementing the `IEnumerator<T>` interface

The declaration of the class implementing the interface should look something like the pattern in the following code, where T is the type returned by the enumerator:

```
using System.Collections;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class MyGenEnumerator: IEnumerator< T >
{
    public T Current { get {...} }           // IEnumerator<T>--Current
    Explicit implementation
    ↓
    object IEnumerator.Current { get { ... } } // IEnumerator--Current

    public bool MoveNext() { ... }           // IEnumerator--MoveNext

    public void Reset() { ... }             // IEnumerator--Reset

    public void Dispose() { ... }           // IDisposable--Dispose
    ...
}
```

For example, the following code implements the `ColorEnumerator` example using the generic enumerator interface:

```

using System.Collections;
using System.Collections.Generic;   Substitute type string for T
                                         ↓
class ColorEnumerator : IEnumerator<string>
{
    string[] Colors;
    int Position = -1;
        Returns the type argument type
        ↓
    public string Current          // Current--generic
    {
        get { return Colors[Position]; }
    }
        Explicit implementation
        ↓
    object IEnumerator.Current      // Current--nongeneric
    {
        get { return Colors[Position]; }
    }

    public bool MoveNext()          // MoveNext
    {
        if (Position < Colors.Length - 1)
        {
            Position++;
            return true;
        }
        else
            return false;
    }

    public void Reset()             // Reset
    { Position = -1; }

    public void Dispose() { }

    public ColorEnumerator(string[] colors)      // Constructor
    {
        Colors = new string[colors.Length];
        for (int i = 0; i < colors.Length; i++)
            Colors[i] = colors[i];
    }
}

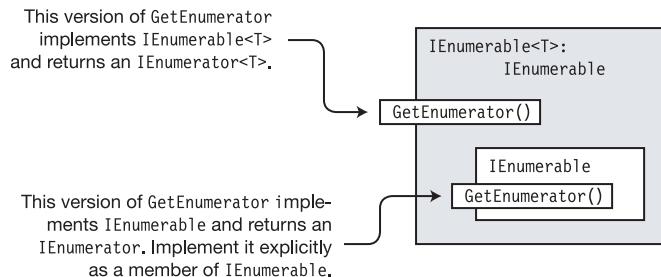
```

## The `IEnumerable<T>` Interface

The generic `IEnumerable<T>` interface is very similar to the nongeneric version, `IEnumerable`. The generic version derives from `IEnumerable`, so it must also implement the `IEnumerable` interface.

- Like `IEnumerable`, the generic version also contains a single member, a method called `GetEnumerator`. This version of `GetEnumerator`, however, returns a class object implementing the generic `IEnumerator<T>` interface.
- Since the class must implement two `GetEnumerator` methods, you should explicitly implement the nongeneric version and implement the generic version at the class level, as shown in Figure 20-7.

Figure 20-7 illustrates the implementation of the interface.



**Figure 20-7.** Implementing the `IEnumerable<T>` interface

The following code shows a pattern for implementing the generic interface. T is the type returned by the enumerator.

```
using System.Collections;
using System.Collections.Generic;

class MyGenEnumerable: IEnumerable<T>
{
    public IEnumerator<T> GetEnumerator() { ... }      // IEnumerable<T> version
    Explicit implementation
    ↓
    IEnumerator IEnumerable.GetEnumerator() { ... }   // IEnumerable version
    ...
}
```

The following code shows the use of the generic enumerable interface:

```
using System.Collections;
using System.Collections.Generic;
    Substitute actual type for T
    ↓
class MyColors : IEnumerable<string>
{
    string[] Colors = { "Red", "Yellow", "Blue" };
    Substitute actual type for T
    ↓
    public IEnumerator<string> GetEnumerator()           // IEnumerable<T> version
    {
        return new ColorEnumerator(Colors);
    }
    Explicit implementation
    ↓
    IEnumerator IEnumerable.GetEnumerator()           // IEnumerable version
    {
        return new ColorEnumerator(Colors);
    }
}
```

## Iterators

Enumerable classes and enumerators are used extensively in the .NET collection classes, so it's important that you know how they work. But now that you know how to create your own enumerable classes and enumerators, you might be pleased to learn that, starting with C# 2.0, the language got a much simpler way of creating enumerators and enumerables. In fact, the compiler will create them for you. The construct that produces them is called an *iterator*. You can use the enumerators and enumerables generated by iterators wherever you would use manually coded enumerators or enumerables.

Before I explain the details, let's take a look at two examples. The following method declaration implements an iterator that produces and returns an enumerator.

- The iterator returns a generic enumerator that returns three items of type `string`.
- The `yield return` statements declare that *this is the next item in the enumeration*.

```
Return a generic enumerator.
↓
public IEnumerable<string> BlackAndWhite() // Version 1
{
    yield return "black"; // yield return
    yield return "gray"; // yield return
    yield return "white"; // yield return
}
```

The following method declaration is another version that produces the same result:

```
Return a generic enumerator.
↓
public IEnumerable<string> BlackAndWhite() // Version 2
{
    string[] theColors = { "black", "gray", "white" };

    for (int i = 0; i < theColors.Length; i++)
        yield return theColors[i]; // yield return
}
```

I haven't explained the `yield return` statement yet, but on inspecting these code segments, you might have the feeling that something is different about this code. It doesn't seem quite right. What exactly does the `yield return` statement do?

For example, in the first version, if the method returns on the first `yield return` statement, then the last two statements can never be reached. If it doesn't return on the first statement but continues through to the end of the method, then what happens to the values? And in the second version, if the `yield return` statement in the body of the loop returns on the first iteration, then the loop will *never* get to any subsequent iterations.

And besides all that, an enumerator doesn't just return all the elements in one shot—it returns a new value with each access of the `Current` property. So, how does this give you an enumerator? Clearly this code is different from anything shown before.

## Iterator Blocks

An *iterator block* is a code block with one or more `yield` statements. Any of the following three types of code blocks can be iterator blocks:

- A method body
- An accessor body
- An operator body

Iterator blocks are treated differently than other blocks. Other blocks contain sequences of statements that are treated *imperatively*. That is, the first statement in the block is executed, followed by the subsequent statements, and eventually control leaves the block.

An iterator block, on the other hand, is not a sequence of imperative commands to be executed at one time. Instead, it's declarative; it describes the behavior of the enumerator class you want the compiler to build for you. The code in the iterator block describes how to enumerate the elements.

Iterator blocks have two special statements:

- The `yield return` statement specifies the next item in the sequence to return.
- The `yield break` statement specifies that there are no more items in the sequence.

The compiler takes this description of how to enumerate the items and uses it to build an enumerator class, including all the required method and property implementations. The resulting class is nested inside the class where the iterator is declared.

You can have the iterator produce either an enumerator or an enumerable depending on the return type you use for the iterator block, as shown in Figure 20-8.

<pre>public IEnumerator&lt;string&gt; IteratorMethod() {     ...     yield return ...; }</pre>	<pre>public IEnumerable&lt;string&gt; IteratorMethod() {     ...     yield return ...; }</pre>
An iterator that produces an enumerator	An iterator that produces an enumerable

**Figure 20-8.** You can have an iterator block produce either an enumerator or an enumerable depending on the return type you specify.

## Using an Iterator to Create an Enumerator

The following code illustrates how to use an iterator to create an enumerable class.

- MyClass uses iterator method BlackAndWhite to produce an enumerator for the class.
  - MyClass also implements method GetEnumerator, which in turn calls BlackAndWhite, and returns the enumerator that BlackAndWhite returns to it.
  - Notice that in Main, you can use an instance of the class directly in the foreach statement since the class is enumerable.

```
class MyClass
{
    public IEnumerator<string> GetEnumerator()
    {
        return BlackAndWhite(); // Returns the enumerator.
    }
    Returns an enumerator
    ↓
    public IEnumerator<string> BlackAndWhite() // Iterator
    {
        yield return "black";
        yield return "gray";
        yield return "white";
    }
}

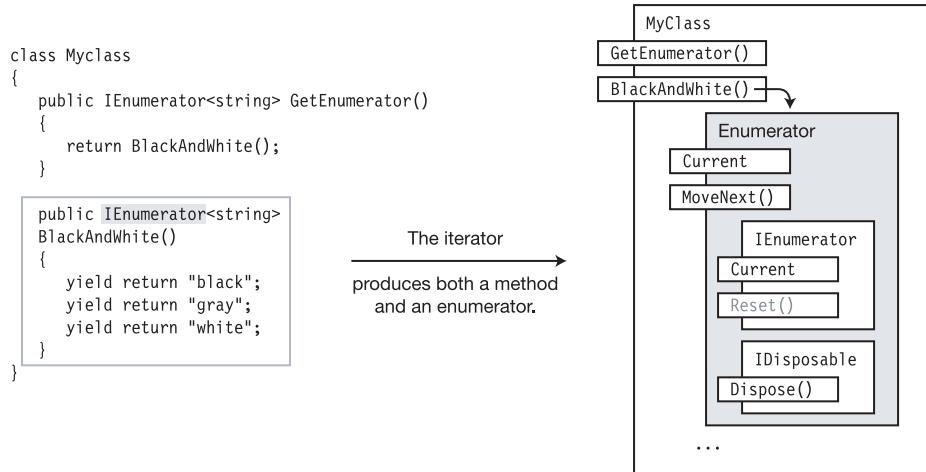
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        Use the instance of MyClass.
        ↓
        foreach (string shade in mc)
            Console.WriteLine(shade);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

black  
gray  
white

Figure 20-9 shows the code for `MyClass` on the left and the resulting objects on the right. Notice how much is built for you automatically by the compiler.

- The iterator's code is shown on the left side of the figure and shows that its return type is `IEnumerator<string>`.
- On the right side of the figure, the diagram shows that the nested class implements `IEnumerator<string>`.



**Figure 20-9.** An iterator block that produces an enumerator

## Using an Iterator to Create an Enumerable

The previous example created a class comprising two parts: the iterator that produced the enumerator and the `GetEnumerator` method that returned that enumerator. In this example, the iterator is used to create an *enumerable* rather than an *enumerator*. There are some important differences between this example and the last:

- In the previous example, iterator method `BlackAndWhite` returned an `IEnumerator<string>`, and `MyClass` implemented method `GetEnumerator` by returning the object created by `BlackAndWhite`.
- In this example, the iterator method `BlackAndWhite` returns an `IEnumerable<string>` rather than an `IEnumerator<string>`. `MyClass`, therefore, implements its `GetEnumerator` method by first calling method `BlackAndWhite` to get the enumerable object and then calling that object's `GetEnumerator` method and returning its results.
- Notice that in the `foreach` statement in `Main`, you can either use an instance of the class or call `BlackAndWhite` directly, since it returns an enumerable. Both ways are shown.

```
class MyClass
{
    public IEnumarator<string> GetEnumerator()
    {
        IEnumarable<string> myEnumarable = BlackAndWhite(); // Get enumarable
        return myEnumarable.GetEnumerator(); // Get enumerator
    }           Returns an enumarable
    ↓
    public IEnumarable<string> BlackAndWhite()
    {
        yield return "black";
        yield return "gray";
        yield return "white";
    }
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();
        Use the class object.
        ↓
        foreach (string shade in mc)
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", shade);
        Use the class iterator method.
        ↓
        foreach (string shade in mc.BlackAndWhite())
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", shade);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

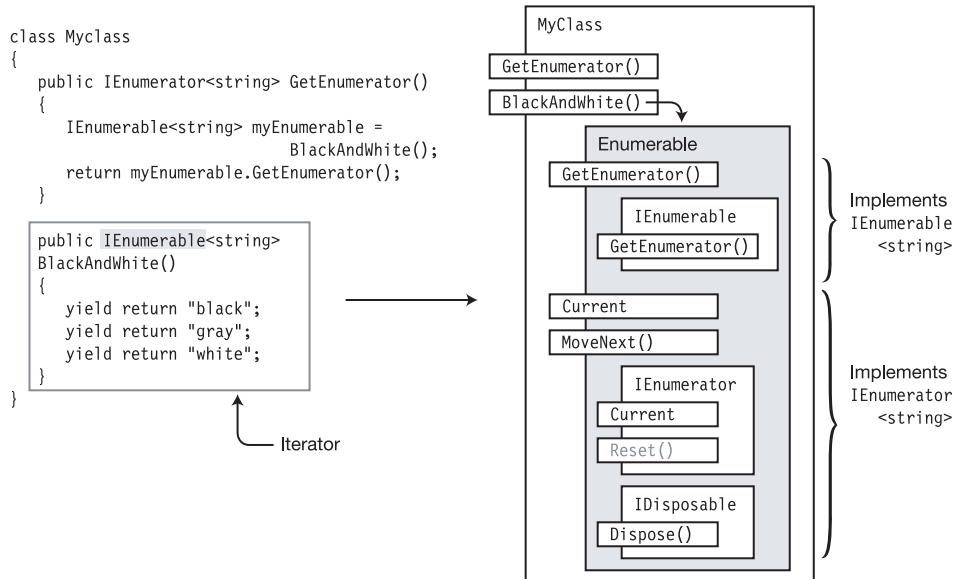
---

```
black gray white black gray white
```

---

Figure 20-10 illustrates the generic enumerable produced by the enumerable iterator in the code.

- The iterator's code is shown on the left side of the figure and shows that its return type is `IEnumerable<string>`.
- On the right side of the figure, the diagram shows that the nested class implements both `IEnumerable<string>` and `IEnumerator<string>`.



**Figure 20-10.** The compiler produces a class that is both an enumerable and an enumerator. It also produces the method, `BlackAndWhite`, that returns the `Enumerable` object.

## Common Iterator Patterns

The previous two sections showed that you can create an iterator to return either an *enumerable* or an *enumerator*. Figure 20-11 summarizes how to use the common iterator patterns.

- When you implement an iterator that returns an enumerator, you must make the *class* enumerable by implementing `GetEnumerator` so that it returns the enumerator returned by the iterator. This is shown on the left of the figure.
- In a class, when you implement an iterator that returns an enumerable, you can either make this class itself enumerable or not by either making it implement `GetEnumerator` or not.
  - If you implement `GetEnumerator`, make it call the iterator method to get an instance of the automatically generated class that implements `IEnumerable`. Next, return the enumerator built by `GetEnumerator` from this `IEnumerable` object, as shown on the right of the figure.
  - If you don't make the class itself enumerable by not implementing `GetEnumerator`, you can still use the enumerable returned by the iterator, by calling the iterator method directly, as shown in the second `foreach` statement on the right.

```
class MyClass
{
    public IEnumerator<string> GetEnumerator()
    {
        return IteratorMethod();
    }

    public IEnumerator<string> IteratorMethod()
    {
        ...
        yield return ...;
    }
}
```

```
...
Main
{
    MyClass mc = new MyClass();

    foreach( string x in mc )
    ...
}
```

The enumerator iterator pattern

```
class MyClass
{
    public IEnumerator<string> GetEnumerator()
    {
        return IteratorMethod().GetEnumerator();
    }

    public IEnumerable<string> IteratorMethod()
    {
        ...
        yield return ...;
    }
}
```

```
...
Main
{
    MyClass mc = new MyClass();

    foreach( string x in mc )
    ...
    foreach( string x in mc.IteratorMethod() )
    ...
}
```

The enumerable iterator pattern

**Figure 20-11.** The common iterator patterns

## Producing Enumerables and Enumerators

The previous examples used iterators that returned either an `IEnumerator<T>` or an `IEnumerable<T>`. You can also create iterators that return the nongeneric versions as well. The return types you can specify are the following:

- `IEnumerator<T>` (generic—substitute an actual type for `T`)
- `IEnumerable<T>` (generic—substitute an actual type for `T`)
- `IEnumerator` (nongeneric)
- `IEnumerable` (nongeneric)

For the two enumerator types, the compiler generates a nested class that contains the implementation of either the nongeneric or the generic enumerator, with the behavior specified by the iterator block.

For the two enumerable types, it does even more. It produces a nested class that is both enumerable and the enumerator. The class, therefore, implements both the enumerator interface and the `GetEnumerator` method. Notice that `GetEnumerator` is implemented as part of the *nested* class—not as part of the *enclosing* class.

## Producing Multiple Enumerables

In the following example, class `ColorCollection` has two enumerable iterators—one enumerating the items in forward order and the other enumerating them in reverse order. Notice that although it has two methods that return enumerables, the class itself is not enumerable since it doesn't implement `GetEnumerator`.

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic; // You need this namespace.

namespace ColorCollectionIterator
{
    class ColorCollection
    {
        string[] Colors={"Red", "Orange", "Yellow", "Green", "Blue", "Purple"};

        public IEnumerable<string> Forward() {           // Enumerable iterator
            for (int i = 0; i < Colors.Length; i++)
                yield return Colors[i];
        }

        public IEnumerable<string> Reverse() {           // Enumerable iterator
            for (int i = Colors.Length - 1; i >= 0; i--)
                yield return Colors[i];
        }
    }
}
```

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        ColorCollection cc = new ColorCollection();
        Return enumerable to the foreach statement
        ↓
        foreach (string color in cc.Forward())
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", color);
        Console.WriteLine();

        Return enumerable to the foreach statement
        ↓
        foreach (string color in cc.Reverse())
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", color);
        Console.WriteLine();

        // Skip the foreach and manually use the enumerable and enumerator.
        IEnumerable<string> ieable = cc.Reverse();
        IEnumerator<string> ieator = ieable.GetEnumerator();

        while (ieator.MoveNext())
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", ieator.Current);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Red Orange Yellow Green Blue Purple
Purple Blue Green Yellow Orange Red
Purple Blue Green Yellow Orange Red
```

---

## Producing Multiple Enumerators

The previous example used iterators to produce a class with two enumerables. This example shows two things. First, it uses iterators to produce a class with two enumerators. Second, it shows how iterators can be implemented as *properties* rather than methods.

The code declares two properties that define two different enumerators. The `GetEnumerator` method returns one or the other of the two enumerators, depending on the value of the Boolean variable `ColorFlag`. If `ColorFlag` is true, the `Colors` enumerator is returned. Otherwise, the `BlackAndWhite` enumerator is returned.

```
class MyClass: IEnumerable<string>
{
    bool ColorFlag = true;

    public MyClass(bool flag)                      // Constructor
    {
        ColorFlag = flag;
    }

    IEnumerator<string> BlackAndWhite           // Property--enumerator iterator
    {
        get
        {
            yield return "black";
            yield return "gray";
            yield return "white";
        }
    }

    IEnumerator<string> Colors                  // Property--enumerator iterator
    {
        get
        {
            string[] theColors = { "blue", "red", "yellow" };
            for (int i = 0; i < theColors.Length; i++)
                yield return theColors[i];
        }
    }
}
```

```
public IEnumerator<string> GetEnumerator() // GetEnumerator
{
    return ColorFlag
        ? Colors
        : BlackAndWhite; // Return Colors enumerator
    // Return BlackAndWhite enumerator
}

System.Collections.IEnumerator
System.Collections.IEnumerable.GetEnumerator()
{
    return ColorFlag
        ? Colors
        : BlackAndWhite; // Return Colors enumerator
    // Return BlackAndWhite enumerator
}
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc1 = new MyClass( true ); // Call constructor with true
        foreach (string s in mc1)
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", s);
        Console.WriteLine();

        MyClass mc2 = new MyClass( false ); // Call constructor with false
        foreach (string s in mc2)
            Console.WriteLine("{0} ", s);
        Console.WriteLine();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
blue red yellow
black gray white
```

---

## Behind the Scenes with Iterators

The following are some other important things to know about iterators:

- Iterators require the `System.Collections.Generic` namespace, so you should include it with a `using` directive.
- In the compiler-generated enumerators, the `Reset` method is not supported. It is implemented, since it is required by the interface, but the implementation throws a `System.NotSupportedException` exception if it is called. Notice that the `Reset` method is shown grayed out in Figure 20-9.

Behind the scenes, the enumerator class generated by the compiler is a state machine with four states:

*Before*: The initial state before the first call to `MoveNext`.

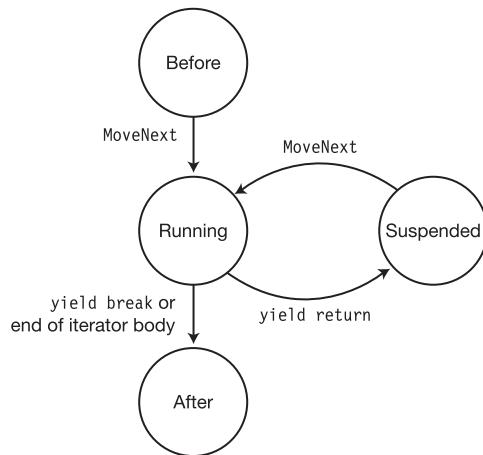
*Running*: The state entered when `MoveNext` is called. While in this state, the enumerator determines and sets the position for the next item. It exits the state when it encounters a `yield return`, a `yield break`, or the end of the iterator body.

*Suspended*: The state where the state machine is waiting for the next call to `MoveNext`.

*After*: The state where there are no more items to enumerate.

If the state machine is in either the *before or suspended states* and there is a call to the `MoveNext` method, it goes into the running state. In the *running state*, it determines the next item in the collection and sets the position.

If there are more items, the state machine goes into the *suspended state*. If there are no more items, it goes into the *after state*, where it remains. Figure 20-12 shows the state machine.



**Figure 20-12.** An iterator state machine



# Introduction to LINQ

- What Is LINQ?
- LINQ Providers
- Query Syntax and Method Syntax
- Query Variables
- The Structure of Query Expressions
- The Standard Query Operators
- LINQ to XML

## What Is LINQ?

In a relational database system, data is organized into nicely normalized tables and accessed with a very simple but powerful query language—SQL. SQL can work with any set of data in a database because the data is organized into tables, following strict rules.

In a program, as opposed to a database, however, data is stored in class objects or structs that are all vastly different. As a result, there's been no general query language for retrieving data from data structures. The method of retrieving data from objects has always been custom-designed as part of the program. LINQ, however, makes it easy to query collections of objects.

The following are the important high-level characteristics of LINQ:

- LINQ stands for *Language Integrated Query* and is pronounced *link*.
- LINQ is an extension of the .NET Framework that allows you to query collections of data in a manner similar to using SQL to query databases.
- With LINQ you can query data from databases, collections of program objects, XML documents, and more.

The following code shows a simple example of using LINQ. In this code, the data source being queried is simply an array of ints. The definition of the query is the statement with the `from` and `select` keywords. Although the query is *defined* in this statement, it is actually performed and used in the `foreach` statement at the bottom.

```
static void Main()
{
    int[] numbers = { 2, 12, 5, 15 };           // Data source

    IEnumerable<int> lowNums =                  // Define and store the query.
        from n in numbers
        where n < 10
        select n;

    foreach (var x in lowNums)                   // Execute the query.
        Console.Write("{0}, ", x);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---



---



---

2, 5,

---

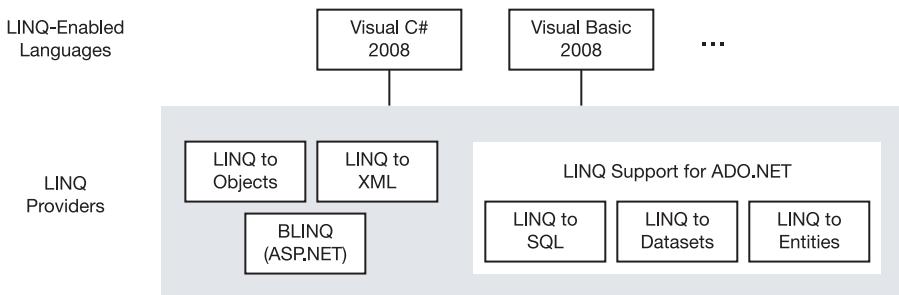


---

## LINQ Providers

In the previous example, the data source was simply an array of ints, which is an in-memory object of the program. LINQ, however, can work with many different types of data sources, such as SQL databases, XML documents, and a host of others. For every data source type, however, under the covers there must be a module of code that implements the LINQ queries in terms of that data source type. These code modules are called *LINQ providers*. The important points about LINQ providers are the following:

- Microsoft provides LINQ providers for a number of common data source types, as shown in Figure 21-1.
- You can use any LINQ-enabled language (C# in our case) to query any data source type for which there is a LINQ provider.
- New LINQ providers are constantly being produced by third parties for all sorts of data source types.



**Figure 21-1.** The architecture of LINQ, the LINQ-enabled languages, and LINQ providers

There are entire books dedicated to LINQ in all its forms and subtleties, but that's clearly beyond the scope of this chapter. Instead, this chapter will introduce you to LINQ and explain how to use it with program objects (LINQ to Objects) and XML (LINQ to XML).

## Anonymous Types

Before getting into the details of LINQ's querying features, I'll start by covering a language feature that allows you to create unnamed class types. These are called, not surprisingly, *anonymous types*.

In Chapter 6 we covered *object initializers*, which is the construct that allows you to initialize the fields and properties of a new class instance when using an object-creation expression. Just to remind you, this kind of object-creation expression consists of three components: the keyword new, the class name or constructor, and the object initializer. The object initializer consists of a comma-separated list of member initializers between a set of curly braces.

Creating a variable of an anonymous type uses the same form—but without the class name or constructor. The following line of code shows the object-creation expression form of an anonymous type:



The following code shows an example of creating and using an anonymous type. It creates a variable called `student`, with an anonymous type that has three string properties and one `int` property. Notice in the `WriteLine` statement that the instance's members are accessed just as if they were members of a named type.

```

static void Main( )
{
    var student = new { LName="Jones", FName="Mary", Age=19, Major="History" };
    ↑                               ↑
  Must use var          Object initializer
    Console.WriteLine("{0} {1}, Age {2}, Major: {3}",
                      student.FName, student.LName, student.Age, student.Major);
}
  
```

This code produces the following output:

---

Mary Jones, Age 19, Major: History

---

Important things to know about anonymous types are the following:

- Anonymous types can be used only with local variables—not with class members.
- Since an anonymous type doesn't have a name, you must use the `var` keyword as the variable type.

When the compiler encounters the object initializer of an anonymous type, it creates a new class type with a private name that it constructs. For each member initializer, it infers its type and creates a private variable of that type in the new class, and it creates a read/write property to access the variable. The property has the same name as the member initializer. Once the anonymous type is constructed, the compiler creates an object of that type.

Besides the assignment form of member initializers, anonymous type object initializers also allow two other forms: simple identifiers and member access expressions. These two forms are called *projection initializers*. The following variable declaration shows all three forms. The first member initializer is in the assignment form. The second is an identifier, and the third is a member access expression.

```
var student = new { Age = 19, Major, Other.Name };
```

For example, the following code uses all three types. Notice that the projection initializers must be defined before the declaration of the anonymous type. Major is a local variable, and Name is a static field of class Other.

```
class Other
{
    static public string Name = "Mary Jones";
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        string Major = "History";
        var student = new { Age = 19, Other.Name, Major };
        Console.WriteLine("{0}, Age {1}, Major: {2}",
                          student.Name, student.Age, student.Major);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Mary Jones, Age 19, Major: History
```

---

The projection initializer form of the object initializer just shown has exactly the same result as the assignment form shown here:

```
var student = new { Age = Age, Name = Other.Name, Major = Major};
```

Although your code cannot see the anonymous type, it's visible to object browsers. If the compiler encounters another anonymous type with the same parameter names, with the same inferred types, and in the same order, it will reuse the type and create a new instance—not create a new anonymous type.

## Query Syntax and Method Syntax

There are two syntactic forms you can use when writing LINQ queries—query syntax and method syntax.

- *Query syntax* is a *declarative form* that looks very much like an SQL statement. Query syntax is written in the form of *query expressions*.
- *Method syntax* is an *imperative form*, which uses standard method invocations. The methods are from a set called the *standard query operators*, which will be described later in the chapter.
- You can also combine both forms in a single query.

Microsoft recommends using query syntax because it's more readable, more clearly states your query intentions, and is therefore less error-prone. There are some operators, however, that can be written only using method syntax.

---

**Note** Queries expressed using query syntax are translated by the C# compiler into method invocation form.

There is no difference in runtime performance between the two forms.

---

The following code shows all three query forms. In the method syntax part, you might find that the parameter of the `Where` method looks a bit odd. It's a lambda expression, as was described in Chapter 15. I'll cover its use in LINQ a bit later in the chapter.

```
static void Main( )
{
    int[] numbers = { 2, 5, 28, 31, 17, 16, 42 };

    var numsQuery = from n in numbers
                    where n < 20
                    select n; // Query syntax

    var numsMethod = numbers.Where(x => x < 20); // Method syntax

    int numsCount = (from n in numbers
                     where n < 20
                     select n).Count(); // Combined

    foreach (var x in numsQuery)
        Console.Write("{0}, ", x);
    Console.WriteLine();

    foreach (var x in numsMethod)
        Console.Write("{0}, ", x);
    Console.WriteLine();

    Console.WriteLine(numsCount);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
2, 5, 17, 16,
2, 5, 17, 16,
4
```

---

## Query Variables

LINQ queries can return two types of results: an *enumeration*, which lists the items that satisfy the query parameters; or a single value, called a *scalar*, which is some form of summary of the results that satisfied the query.

In the following example code, the following happens:

- The first statement creates an array of ints and initializes it with three values.
- The second statement returns an `IEnumerable<int>` object, which can be used to enumerate the results of the query.
- The third statement executes a query and then calls a method (`Count`) that returns the count of the items returned from the query. We'll cover operators that return scalars, such as `Count`, later in the chapter.

```
int[] numbers = { 2, 5, 28 };

IQueryable<int> lowNums = from n in numbers           // Returns an enumerator
                          where n < 20
                          select n;

int numsCount          = (from n in numbers           // Returns an int
                          where n < 20
                          select n).Count();
```

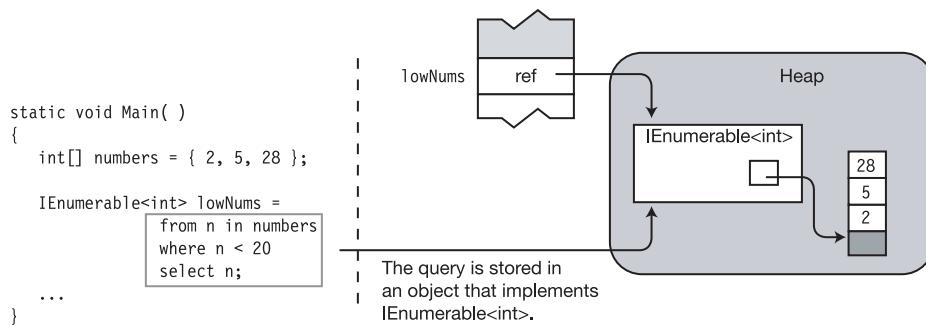
The variable on the left of the equals sign is called the *query variable*. Although the types of the query variables are given explicitly in the example statements, you could also have had the compiler infer the types of the query variables by using the `var` keyword in place of the type names.

It's important to understand the contents of query variables. After executing the preceding code, query variable `lowNums` does *not* contain the results of the query. Instead, it contains an object of type `IEnumerable<int>`, which can perform the query if it's called upon to do so later in the code. Query variable `numsCount`, however, contains an actual integer value, which can have been obtained only by actually running the query.

The differences in the timing of the execution of the queries can be summarized as follows:

- If a query expression returns an enumeration, the query is not executed until the enumeration is processed.
  - If the enumeration is processed multiple times, the query is executed multiple times.
  - If the data changes between the time the enumeration is produced and the time the query is executed, the query is run on the new data.
- If the query expression returns a scalar, the query is executed immediately, and the result is stored in the query variable.

Figure 21-2 illustrates this for the enumerable query. Variable `lowNums` contains a reference to the enumerable that can enumerate the query results from the array.

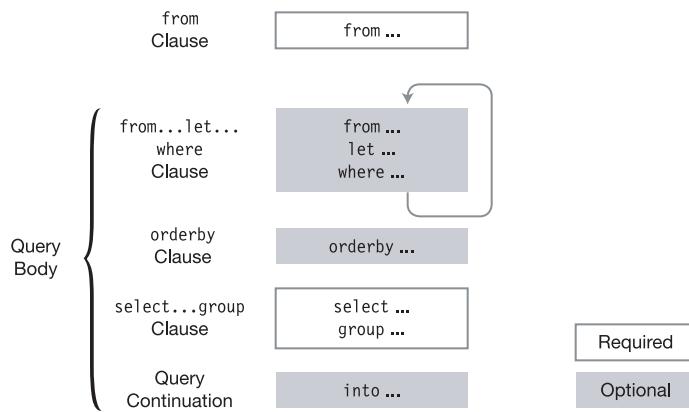


**Figure 21-2.** The compiler creates an object that implements `IEnumerable<int>` and stores the query in the object.

# The Structure of Query Expressions

A query expression consists of a `from` clause followed by a query body, as illustrated in Figure 21-3. Some of the important things to know about query expressions are the following:

- The clauses must appear in the order shown.
  - The two parts that are required are the `from` clause and the `select...group` clause.
  - The other clauses are optional.
- In a LINQ query expression, the `select` clause is at the end of the expression. This is different than SQL, where the `SELECT` statement is at the beginning of a query. One of the reasons for using this position in C# is that it allows Visual Studio's IntelliSense to give you more options while you're entering code.
- There can be any number of `from...let...where` clauses, as illustrated in the figure.



**Figure 21-3.** The structure of a query statement consists of a `from` clause followed by a query body.

## The from Clause

The `from` clause specifies the data collection that is to be used as the data source. It also introduces the iteration variable. The important points about the `from` clause are the following:

- The *iteration variable* sequentially represents each element in the data source.
- The syntax of the `from` clause is shown following, where
  - *Type* is the type of the elements in the collection. This is optional, because the compiler can infer the type from the collection.
  - *Item* is the name of the *iteration variable*.
  - *Items* is the name of the collection to be queried. The collection must be enumerable, as described in Chapter 13.

Iteration variable declaration



`from Type Item in Items`

The following code shows a query expression used to query an array of four `int`s. Iteration variable `item` will represent each of the four elements in the array and will be either selected or rejected by the `where` and `select` clauses following it. This code leaves out the optional type (`int`) of the iteration variable.

```
int[] arr1 = {10, 11, 12, 13};
             Iteration variable
             ↓
var query = from item in arr1
            where item < 13           ← Uses the iteration variable
            select item;            ← Uses the iteration variable

foreach( var item in query )
    Console.WriteLine("{0}, ", item );
```

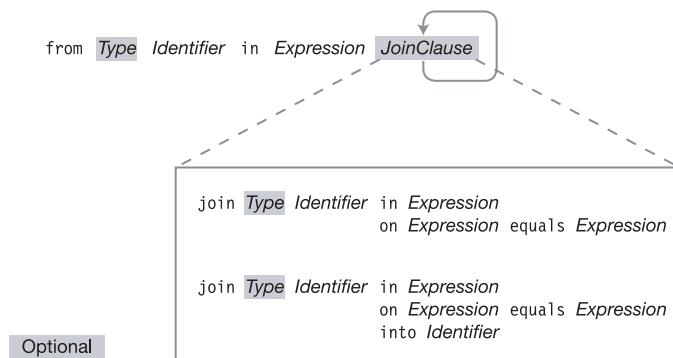
This code produces the following output:

---

10, 11, 12,

---

Figure 21-4 shows the syntax of the `from` clause. The type specifier is optional, since it can be inferred by the compiler. There can be any number of optional join clauses.



**Figure 21-4.** The syntax of the `from` clause

Although there is a strong similarity between the LINQ `from` clause and the `foreach` statement, there are several major differences:

- The `foreach` statement executes its body at the point in the code where it is encountered. The `from` clause, on the other hand, does not execute anything. It creates an enumerable object that's stored in the query variable. The query itself might or might not be executed later in the code.
- The `foreach` statement imperatively specifies that the items in the collection are to be considered in order, from the first to the last. The `from` clause declaratively states that each item in the collection must be considered but does not assume an order.

## The join Clause

The join clause in LINQ is much like the JOIN clause in SQL. If you're familiar with joins from SQL, then joins in LINQ will be nothing new for you conceptually, except for the fact that you can now perform them on collections of objects as well as database tables. If you're new to joins or need a refresher, then the next section should help clear things up for you.

The first important things to know about a join are the following:

- A join operation takes two collections and creates a new temporary collection of objects, where each object contains all the fields from an object from both initial collections.
- Use a join to combine data from two or more collections.

The syntax for a join is shown here. It specifies that the second collection is to be joined with the collection in the previous clause.

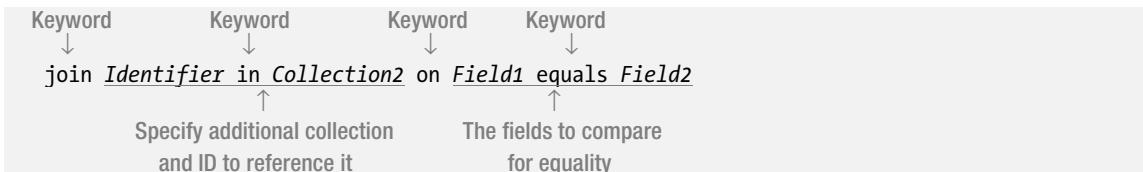


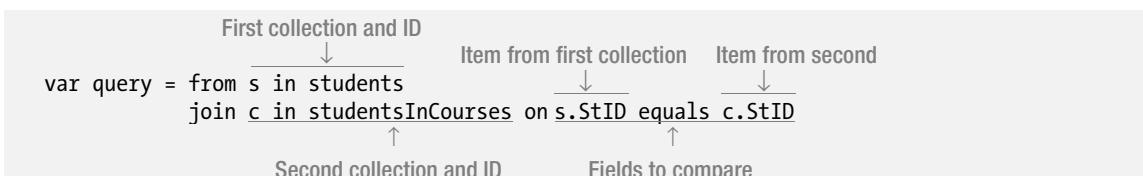
Figure 21-5 illustrates the syntax for the join clause.

```
join Type Identifier in Expression
      on Expression equals Expression
```

```
join Type Identifier in Expression
      on Expression equals Expression
      into Identifier
```

**Figure 21-5.** Syntax for the join clause

The following annotated statement shows an example of the join clause:



## What Is a Join?

A join in LINQ takes two collections and creates a new collection where each element has members from the elements of the two original collections.

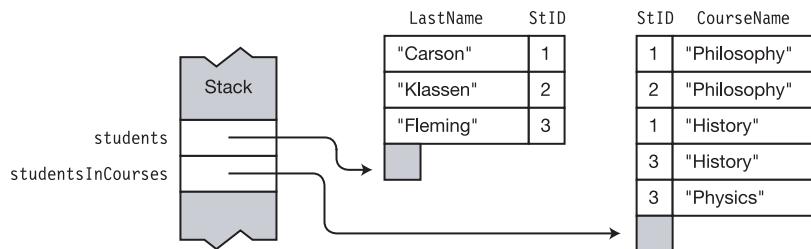
For example, the following code declares two classes: `Student` and `CourseStudent`.

- Objects of type `Student` contain a student's last name and student ID number.
- Objects of type `CourseStudent` represent a student that is enrolled in a course and contain the course name and a student ID number.

```
public class Student
{
    public int StID;
    public string LastName;
}

public class CourseStudent
{
    public string CourseName;
    public int StID;
}
```

Figure 21-6 shows the situation in a program where there are three students and three courses, and the students are enrolled in various courses. The program has an array called `students`, of `Student` objects, and an array called `studentsInCourses`, of `CourseStudent` objects, which contains one object for every student enrolled in each course.

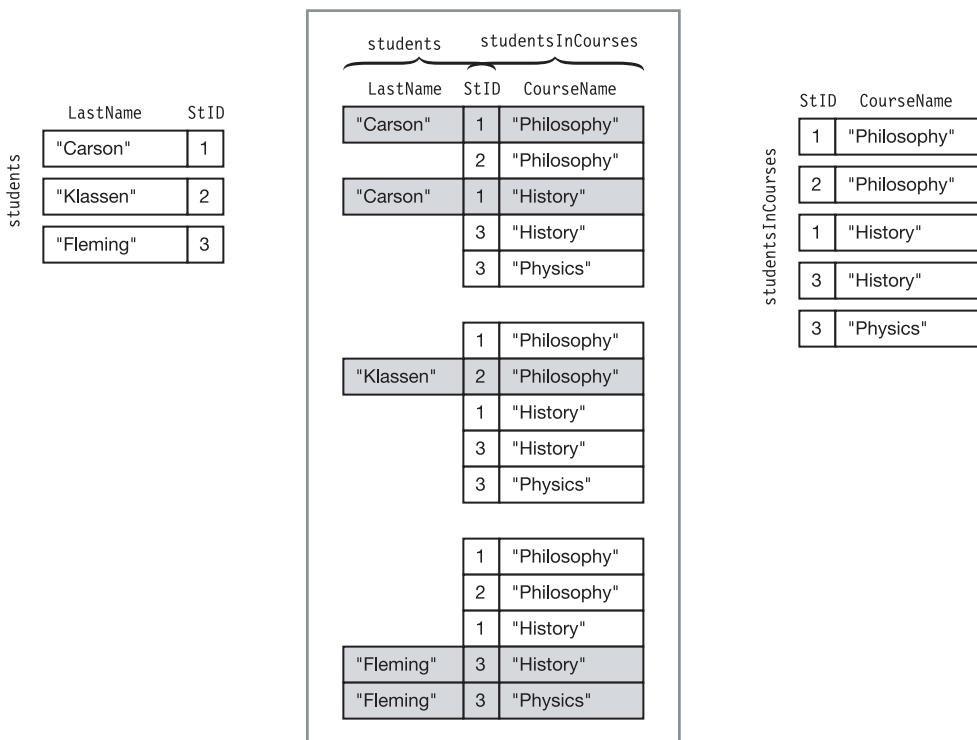


**Figure 21-6.** Students enrolled in various courses

Suppose now that you want to get the last name of every student in a particular course. The `students` array has the last names, and the `studentsInCourses` array has the course enrollment information. To get the information, you must combine the information in the arrays, based on the `studentID` field, which is common to objects of both types. You can do this with a join on the `StID` field.

Figure 21-7 shows how the join works. The left column shows the `students` array, and the right column shows the `studentsInCourses` array. If we take the first student record and compare its ID with the `studentID` in each `studentsInCourses` object, we find that two of them match, as shown at the top of the center column. If we then do the same with the other two students, we find that the second student is taking one course, and the third student is taking two courses.

The five grayed objects in the middle column represent the join of the two arrays on field `StID`. Each object contains three fields: the `LastName` field from the `Students` class, the `CourseName` field from the `CourseStudent` class, and the `StID` field common to both classes.



**Figure 21-7.** Two arrays of objects and their join on field `StId`

The following code puts the whole example together. The query finds the last names of all the students taking the history course.

```

class Program
{
    public class Student {                               // Declare classes.
        public int StID;
        public string LastName;
    }

    public class CourseStudent {                      // Initialize arrays.
        public string CourseName;
        public int StID;
    }
}

static CourseStudent[] studentsInCourses = new CourseStudent[] {
    new CourseStudent { CourseName = "Art",           StID = 1 },
    new CourseStudent { CourseName = "Art",           StID = 2 },
    new CourseStudent { CourseName = "History",       StID = 1 },
    new CourseStudent { CourseName = "History",       StID = 3 },
    new CourseStudent { CourseName = "Physics",       StID = 3 },
};

static Student[] students = new Student[] {
    new Student { StID = 1, LastName = "Carson" },
    new Student { StID = 2, LastName = "Klassen" },
    new Student { StID = 3, LastName = "Fleming" },
};

static void Main( )
{
    // Find the last names of the students taking history.
    var query = from s in students
                join c in studentsInCourses on s.StID equals c.StID
                where c.CourseName == "History"
                select s.LastName;

    // Display the names of the students taking history.
    foreach (var q in query)
        Console.WriteLine("Student taking History: {0}", q);
}
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---

```

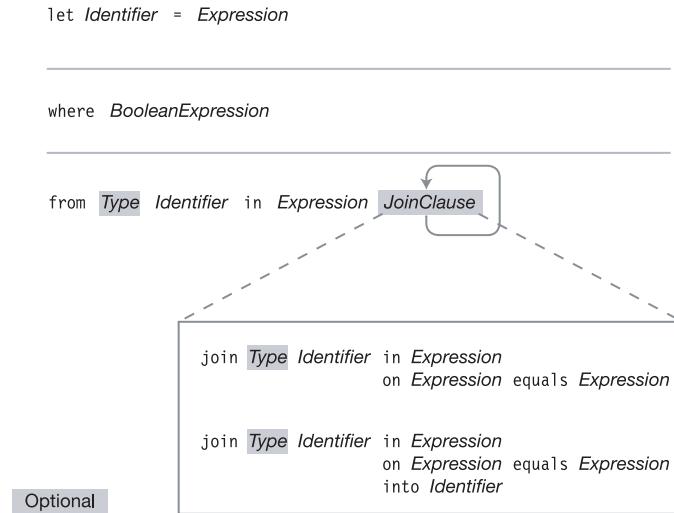
Student taking History: Carson
Student taking History: Fleming

```

---

## The from . . . let . . . where Section in the Query Body

The optional `from...let...where` section is the first section of the query body. It can have any number of any of the three clauses that comprise it—the `from` clause, the `let` clause, and the `where` clause. Figure 21-8 summarizes the syntax of the three clauses.



**Figure 21-8.** The syntax of the `from . . . let . . . where` clause

## The from Clause

You saw that a query expression starts with a required `from` clause, which is followed by the query body. The body itself can start with any number of additional `from` clauses, where each subsequent `from` clause specifies an additional source data collection and introduces a new iteration variable for use in further evaluations. The syntax and meanings of all the `from` clauses are the same.

The following code shows an example of this use.

- The first `from` clause is the required clause of the query expression.
- The second `from` clause is the first clause of the query body.
- The `select` clause creates objects of an anonymous type.

```
static void Main()
{
    var groupA = new[] { 3, 4, 5, 6 };
    var groupB = new[] { 6, 7, 8, 9 };

    var someInts = from a in groupA
                   from b in groupB
                   where a > 4 && b <= 8
                   select new {a, b, sum = a + b}; ← Object of anonymous type

    foreach (var a in someInts)
        Console.WriteLine(a);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
{ a = 5, b = 6, sum = 11 }
{ a = 5, b = 7, sum = 12 }
{ a = 5, b = 8, sum = 13 }
{ a = 6, b = 6, sum = 12 }
{ a = 6, b = 7, sum = 13 }
{ a = 6, b = 8, sum = 14 }
```

---

## The let Clause

The let clause takes the evaluation of an expression and assigns it to an identifier to be used in other evaluations. The syntax of the let clause is the following:

```
let Identifier = Expression
```

For example, the query expression in the following code pairs each member of array groupA with each element of array groupB. The where clause eliminates each set of integers from the two arrays where the sum of the two is not equal to 12.

```
static void Main()
{
    var groupA = new[] { 3, 4, 5, 6 };
    var groupB = new[] { 6, 7, 8, 9 };

    var someInts = from a in groupA
                   from b in groupB
                   let sum = a + b           ← Store result in new variable
                   where sum == 12
                   select new {a, b, sum};

    foreach (var a in someInts)
        Console.WriteLine(a);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
{ a = 3, b = 9, sum = 12 }
{ a = 4, b = 8, sum = 12 }
{ a = 5, b = 7, sum = 12 }
{ a = 6, b = 6, sum = 12 }
```

---

## The where Clause

The where clause eliminates items from further consideration if they don't meet the specified condition. The syntax of the where clause is the following:

```
where BooleanExpression
```

Important things to know about the where clause are the following:

- A query expression can have any number of where clauses, as long as they are in the from...let...where section.
- An item must satisfy all the where clauses to avoid elimination from further consideration.

The following code shows an example of a query expression that contains two where clauses. The where clauses eliminate each set of integers from the two arrays where the sum of the two is not greater than or equal to 11, and the element from groupA is not the value 4. Each set of elements selected must satisfy the conditions of *both* where clauses.

```
static void Main()
{
    var groupA = new[] { 3, 4, 5, 6 };
    var groupB = new[] { 6, 7, 8, 9 };

    var someInts = from int a in groupA
                   from int b in groupB
                   let sum = a + b
                   where sum >= 11           ← Condition 1
                   where a == 4             ← Condition 2
                   select new {a, b, sum};

    foreach (var a in someInts)
        Console.WriteLine(a);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
{ a = 4, b = 7, sum = 11 }
{ a = 4, b = 8, sum = 12 }
{ a = 4, b = 9, sum = 13 }
```

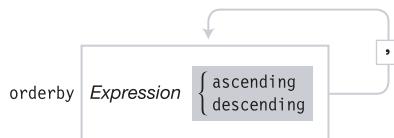
---

## The orderby Clause

The `orderby` clause takes an expression and returns the result items in order according to the expression.

Figure 21-9 shows the syntax of the `orderby` clause. The optional keywords `ascending` and `descending` set the direction of the order. *Expression* is generally a field of the items.

- The default ordering of an `orderby` clause is ascending. You can, however, explicitly set the ordering of the elements to either ascending or descending, using the `ascending` and `descending` keywords.
- There can be any number of `orderby` clauses, and they must be separated by commas.



**Figure 21-9.** The syntax of the `orderby` clause

The following code shows an example of student records ordered by the ages of the students. Notice that the array of student information is stored in an array of anonymous types.

```

static void Main( ) {
    var students = new [ ]           // Array of objects of an anonymous type
    {
        new { LName="Jones",     FName="Mary",     Age=19, Major="History" },
        new { LName="Smith",      FName="Bob",       Age=20, Major="CompSci" },
        new { LName="Fleming",    FName="Carol",     Age=21, Major="History" }
    };

    var query = from student in students
                orderby student.Age           ← Order by Age.
                select student;

    foreach (var s in query) {
        Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}: {2} - {3}",
                           s.LName, s.FName, s.Age, s.Major);
    }
}
  
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```

Jones, Mary: 19 - History
Smith, Bob: 20 - CompSci
Fleming, Carol: 21 - History
  
```

---

## The select . . . group Clause

There are two types of clauses that make up the `select...group` section—the `select` clause and the `group...by` clause. While the clauses that precede the `select...group` section specify the data sources and which objects to choose, the `select...group` section does the following:

- The `select` clause specifies which parts of the chosen objects should be selected. It can specify any of the following:
  - The entire data item
  - A field from the data item
  - A new object comprising several fields from the data item (or any other value, for that matter).
- The `group...by` clause is optional and specifies how the chosen items should be grouped. We'll cover the `group...by` clause later in the chapter.

Figure 21-10 shows the syntax for the `select...group` clause.

```
select Expression
_____
group Expression1 by Expression2
```

**Figure 21-10.** *The syntax of the select . . . group clause*

The following code shows an example of using the `select` clause to select the entire data item. First, the program creates an array of objects of an anonymous type. The query expression then uses the `select` statement to select each item in the array.

```
using System;
using System.Linq;
class Program {
    static void Main() {
        var students = new[]           // Array of objects of an anonymous type
        {
            new { LName="Jones",     FName="Mary",  Age=19, Major="History" },
            new { LName="Smith",      FName="Bob",   Age=20, Major="CompSci" },
            new { LName="Fleming",    FName="Carol",  Age=21, Major="History" }
        };

        var query = from s in students
                    select s;

        foreach (var q in query)
            Console.WriteLine("{0}, {1}: Age {2}, {3}",
                q.LName, q.FName, q.Age, q.Major);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Jones, Mary: Age 19, History
Smith, Bob: Age 20, CompSci
Fleming, Carol: Age 21, History
```

---

You can also use the `select` clause to choose only particular fields of the object. For example, the `select` clause in the following code selects only the last name of the student.

```
var query = from s in students
            select s.LName;

foreach (var q in query)
    Console.WriteLine(q);
```

When you substitute these two statements for the corresponding two statements in the preceding full example, the program produces the following output:

---

```
Jones
Smith
Fleming
```

---

## Anonymous Types in Queries

The result of a query can consist of items from the source collections, fields from the items in the source collections, or anonymous types.

You can create an anonymous type in a select clause by placing curly braces around a comma-separated list of fields you want to include in the type. For example, to make the code in the previous section select just the names and majors of the students, you could use the following syntax:

```
select new { s.LastName, s.FirstName, s.Major };
           ↑
           Anonymous type
```

The following code creates an anonymous type in the select clause and uses it later in the `WriteLine` statement.

```
using System;
using System.Linq;

class Program {
    static void Main()
    {
        var students = new[]          // Array of objects of an anonymous type
        {
            new { LName="Jones",    FName="Mary",  Age=19, Major="History" },
            new { LName="Smith",    FName="Bob",   Age=20, Major="CompSci" },
            new { LName="Fleming",   FName="Carol",  Age=21, Major="History" }
        };

        var query = from s in students
                    select new { s.LName, s.FName, s.Major };
                           ↑
                           Create anonymous type

        foreach (var q in query)
            Console.WriteLine("{0} {1} -- {2}",
                               q.FName, q.LName, q.Major );
    }
}
```

↑  
Access fields of anonymous type

This code produces the following output:

---



---

```
Mary Jones -- History
Bob Smith -- CompSci
Carol Fleming -- History
```

---



---

## The group Clause

The group clause groups the selected objects according to some criterion. For example, with the array of students in the previous examples, the program could group the students according to their majors.

The important things to know about the group clause are the following:

- When items are included in the result of the query, they're placed in groups according to the value of a particular field. The value on which items are grouped is called the *key*.
- Unlike the select clause, the group clause *does not return an enumerable that can enumerate the items* from the original source. Instead, it returns an enumerable that enumerates the *groups of items* that have been formed.
- The groups themselves are enumerable and can enumerate the actual items.

An example of the syntax of the group clause is the following:

```
group student by student.Major;
      ↑          ↑
Keyword    Keyword
```

For example, the following code groups the students according to their majors:

```
static void Main( )
{
    var students = new[]           // Array of objects of an anonymous type
    {
        new { LName="Jones",   FName="Mary",   Age=19, Major="History" },
        new { LName="Smith",    FName="Bob",    Age=20, Major="CompSci" },
        new { LName="Fleming",   FName="Carol",  Age=21, Major="History" }
    };

    var query = from student in students
                group student by student.Major;

    foreach (var s in query)           // Enumerate the groups.
    {
        Console.WriteLine("{0}", s.Key);
        ↑
        Grouping key
        foreach (var t in s)           // Enumerate the items in the group.
            Console.WriteLine("    {0}, {1}", t.LName, t.FName);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

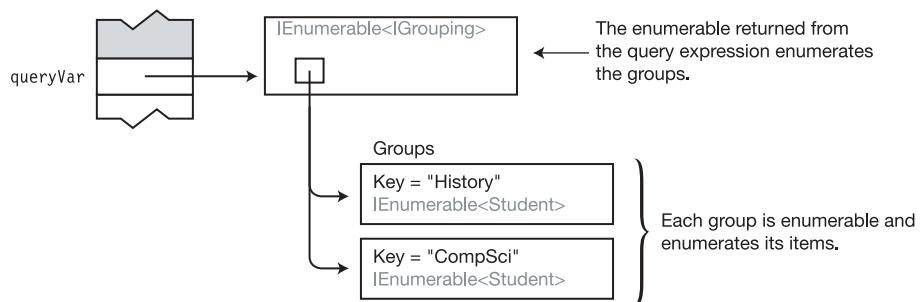
---

```
History
  Jones, Mary
  Fleming, Carol
CompSci
  Smith, Bob
```

---

Figure 21-11 illustrates the object that is returned from the query expression and stored in the query variable.

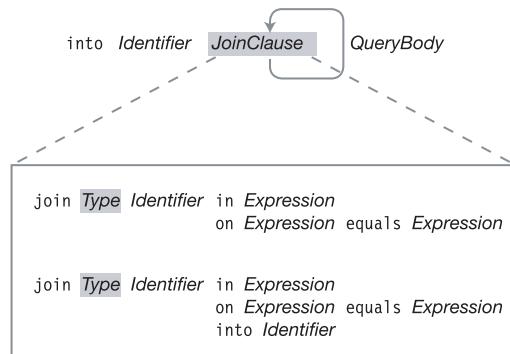
- The object returned from the query expression is an enumerable that enumerates the groups resulting from the query.
- Each group is distinguished by a field called Key.
- Each group is itself enumerable and can enumerate its items.



**Figure 21-11.** The `group` clause returns a collection of collections of objects rather than a collection of objects.

## Query Continuation

A query continuation clause takes the result of one part of a query and assigns it a name so that it can be used in another part of the query. Figure 21-12 shows the syntax for query continuation.



**Figure 21-12.** The syntax of the query continuation clause

For example, the following query joins groupA and groupB and names the join groupAandB. It then performs a simple select from groupAandB.

```
static void Main()
{
    var groupA = new[] { 3, 4, 5, 6 };
    var groupB = new[] { 4, 5, 6, 7 };

    var someInts = from a in groupA
                  join b in groupB on a equals b
                  into groupAandB
                  from c in groupAandB
                  select c;

    foreach (var a in someInts)
        Console.Write("{0} ", a);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

4 5 6

# The Standard Query Operators

The standard query operators comprise a set of methods called an application programming interface (API) that lets you query any .NET array or collection. Important characteristics of the standard query operators are the following:

- The collection objects queried are called *sequences* and must implement the `IEnumerable<T>` interface, where `T` is a type.
  - The standard query operators use method syntax.
  - Some operators return `IEnumerable` objects (or other sequences), while others return scalars. Operators that return scalars execute their queries immediately and return a value instead of an enumerable object to be iterated over later.

For example, the following code shows the use of operators `Sum` and `Count`, which return `ints`. Notice the following about the code:

- The operators are used as methods *directly on the sequence objects*, which in this case is array numbers.
  - The return type is not an IEnumerable object but an int.

```
class Program
{
    static int[] numbers = new int[] {2, 4, 6};

    static void Main( )
    {
        int total    = numbers.Sum();
        int howMany = numbers.Count();
        ↑           ↑           ↑
        Scalar      Sequence   Operator
        object

        Console.WriteLine("Total: {0}, Count: {1}", total, howMany);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

Total: 12, Count: 3

There are 47 standard query operators that fall into 14 different categories. These categories are shown in Table 21-1.

**Table 21-1.** Categories of the Standard Query Operators

Name	Number of Operators	Description
Restriction	1	Returns a subset of the objects of the sequence, based on selection criteria
Projection	2	Selects which parts of the objects of a sequence are finally returned
Partitioning	4	Skips or returns objects from a sequence
Join	2	Returns an <code>IEnumerable</code> object that joins two sequences, based on some criterion
Concatenation	1	Produces a single sequence from two separate sequences
Ordering	2	Orders a sequence based on supplied criteria
Grouping	1	Groups a sequence based on supplied criteria
Set	4	Performs set operations on a sequence
Conversion	7	Converts sequences to various forms such as arrays, lists, and dictionaries
Equality	1	Compares two sequences for equality
Element	9	Returns a particular element of a sequence
Generation	3	Generates sequences
Quantifiers	3	Returns Boolean values specifying whether a particular predicate is true about a sequence
Aggregate	7	Returns a single value representing characteristics of a sequence

## Query Expressions and the Standard Query Operators

As mentioned at the beginning of the chapter, every query expression can also be written using method syntax with the standard query operators. The set of standard query operators is a set of methods for performing queries. The compiler translates every query expression into standard query operator form.

Clearly, since all query expressions are translated into the standard query operators—the operators can perform everything done by query expressions. But the operators also give additional capabilities that aren't available in query expression form. For example, operators `Sum` and `Count`, which were used in the previous example, can be expressed only using the method syntax.

The two forms, query expressions and method syntax, however, can be combined. For example, the following code shows a query expression that also uses operator `Count`. Notice that the query expression part of the statement is inside parentheses, which is followed by a dot and the name of the method.

```
static void Main()
{
    var numbers = new int[] { 2, 6, 4, 8, 10 };

    int howMany = (from n in numbers
                  where n < 7
                  select n).Count();
                  ↑          ↑
                  Query expression   Operator

    Console.WriteLine("Count: {0}", howMany);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

---

Count: 3

---

---

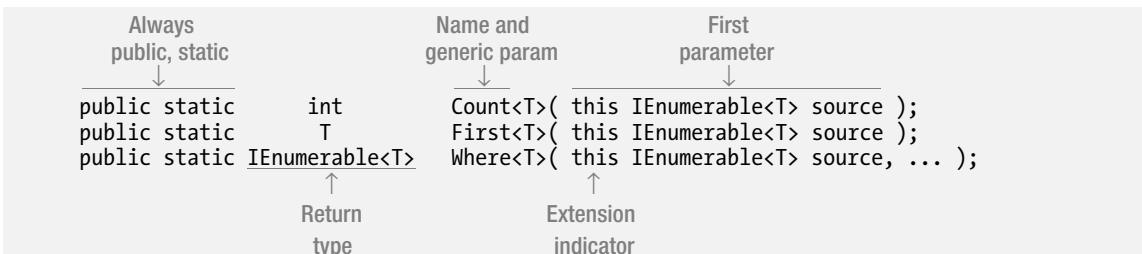
## Signatures of the Standard Query Operators

The standard query operators are methods declared in class `System.Linq.Enumerable`. These methods, however, aren't just any methods—they are extension methods that extend generic class `IEnumerable<T>`.

Extension methods were covered in Chapters 7 and 19, but the most important thing to remember about them is that they are `public`, `static` methods that, although defined in one class, are designed to add functionality to a *different* class—the one listed as the first formal parameter. This formal parameter must be preceded by the keyword `this`.

For example, the following are the signatures of three of the operators: `Count`, `First`, and `Where`. At first glance, the signatures of the operators can be somewhat intimidating. Notice the following about the signatures:

- Since the operators are generic methods, they have a generic parameter (`T`) associated with their names.
- Since the operators are *extension methods* that extend `IEnumerable<T>`, they must satisfy the following syntactic requirements:
  - They must be declared `public` and `static`.
  - They must have the `this` extension indicator before the first parameter.
  - They must have `IEnumerable<T>` as the first parameter type.



For example, the following code shows the use of operators Count and First. Both operators take only a single parameter—the reference to the `IEnumerable<T>` object.

- The Count operator returns a single value, which is the count of all the elements in the sequence.
  - The First operator returns the first element of the sequence.

The first two times the operators are used in this code, they are called directly, just like normal methods, passing the name of the array as the first parameter. In the following two lines, however, they are called using the extension method syntax, as if they were method members of the array, which is enumerable. Notice that in this case no parameter is supplied. Instead, the array name has been moved from the parameter list to before the method name. There it is used as if it contained a declaration of the method.

The direct syntax calls and the extension syntax calls are completely equivalent in effect—only their syntax is different.

```
using System.Linq;
...
static void Main( )
{
    int[] intArray = new int[] { 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 };
    var count1      = Enumerable.Count(intArray);           // Called directly
    var firstNum1  = Enumerable.First(intArray);           // Called directly

    var count2      = intArray.Count();                    // Called as extension
    var firstNum2  = intArray.First();                     // Called as extension

    Console.WriteLine("Count: {0}, FirstNumber: {1}", count1, firstNum1);
    Console.WriteLine("Count: {0}, FirstNumber: {1}", count2, firstNum2);
}
```

↑  
Array as extended object

This code produces the following output:

Count: 6, FirstNumber: 3  
Count: 6, FirstNumber: 3

## Delegates As Parameters

As you just saw in the previous section, the first parameter of every operator is a reference to an `IEnumerable<T>` object. The parameters following it can be of any type. Many operators take *generic delegates* as parameters. (Generic delegates were explained in Chapter 19.) The most important thing to recall about generic delegates as parameters is the following:

- Generic delegates are used to supply user-defined code to the operator.

To explain this, I'll start with an example showing several ways you might use the `Count` operator. The `Count` operator is overloaded and has two forms. The first form, which was used in the previous example, has a single parameter, as shown here:

```
public static int Count<T>(this IEnumerable<T> source);
```

Like all extension methods, you can use it in the standard static method form or in the form of an instance method on an instance of the class it extends, as shown in the following two lines of code:

```
var count1 = Linq.Enumerable.Count(intArray);           // Static method form
```

```
var count2 = intArray.Count();                          // Instance method form
```

In these two instances, the query counts the number of ints in the given integer array. Suppose, however, that you only want to count the odd elements of the array. To do that, you must supply the `Count` method with code that determines whether an integer is odd.

To do this, you would use the second form of the `Count` method, which is shown following. It has a generic delegate as its second parameter. At the point it is invoked, you must supply a delegate object that takes a single input parameter of type `T` and returns a Boolean value. The return value of the delegate code must specify whether the element should be included in the count.

```
public static int Count<T>(this IEnumerable<T> source,
                           Func<T, bool> predicate );
```

↑  
Generic delegate

For example, the following code uses the second form of the Count operator to instruct it to include only those values that are odd. It does this by supplying a lambda expression that returns true if the input value is odd and false otherwise. (Lambda expressions were covered in Chapter 15.) At each iteration through the collection, Count calls this method (represented by the lambda expression) with the current value as input. If the input is odd, the method returns true, and Count includes the element in the total.

```
static void Main()
{
    int[] intArray = new int[] { 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 };

    var countOdd = intArray.Count(n => n % 2 == 1);
    ↑
    Lambda expression identifying the odd values
    Console.WriteLine("Count of odd numbers: {0}", countOdd);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Count of odd numbers: 4
```

---

## The LINQ Predefined Delegate Types

Like the `Count` operator from the previous example, many of the LINQ operators require you to supply code that directs how the operator performs its operation. You can do this by using delegate objects as parameters.

Remember from Chapter 15 that you can think of a delegate object as an object that contains a method or list of methods with a particular signature and return type. When the delegate is invoked, the methods it contains are invoked in sequence.

LINQ defines two families of generic delegate types for use with the standard query operators. These are the `Func` delegates and the `Action` delegates. Each set has 17 members.

- The delegate objects you create for use as actual parameters must be of these delegate types or of these forms.
- `TR` represents the return type and is always *last* in the list of type parameters.

The first four generic `Func` delegates are listed here. The first form takes no method parameters and returns an object of the return type. The second takes a single method parameter and returns a value, and so forth. Notice that the return type parameter has the `out` keyword, making it covariant. It can therefore accept the type declared or any type derived from that type. The input parameters have the `in` keyword, making them contravariant. They, therefore, can accept the declared type, or any type derived from that type.

```
public delegate TR Func<out TR>();  
public delegate TR Func<in T1, out TR>(T1 a1);  
public delegate TR Func<in T1, in T2, out TR>(T1 a1, T2 a2);  
public delegate TR Func<in T1, in T2, in T3, out TR>(T1 a1, T2 a2, T3 a3);
```

↑	↑	↑
Return type	Type parameters	Method parameters

With this in mind, if you look again at the declaration of `Count`, which follows, you can see that the second parameter must be a delegate object that takes a single value of some type `T` as the method parameter and returns a value of type `bool`.

```
public static int Count<T>(this IEnumerable<T> source,  
                           Func<T, bool> predicate);
```

↑	↑
Parameter type	Return type

A parameter delegate that produces a Boolean value is called a *predicate*.

The first four `Action` delegates are the following. They're the same as the `Func` delegates except that they have no return value and hence no return value type parameter. All their type parameters are contravariant.

```
public delegate void Action();  
public delegate void Action<in T1>(T1 a1);  
public delegate void Action<in T1, in T2>(T1 a1, T2 a2);  
public delegate void Action<in T1, in T2, in T3>(T1 a1, T2 a2, T3 a3);
```

## Example Using a Delegate Parameter

Now that you better understand `Count`'s signature and LINQ's use of generic delegate parameters, you'll be better able to understand a full example.

The following code first declares method `IsOdd`, which takes a single parameter of type `int` and returns a `bool` value stating whether the input parameter was odd. Method `Main` does the following:

- It declares an array of `ints` as the data source.
- It creates a delegate object called `MyDel` of type `Func<int, bool>`, and it uses method `IsOdd` to initialize the delegate object. Notice that you don't need to declare the `Func` delegate type because, as you saw, it's already predefined by LINQ.
- It calls `Count` using the delegate object.

```
class Program
{
    static bool IsOdd(int x)      // Method to be used by the delegate object
    {
        return x % 2 == 1;        // Return true if x is odd.
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        int[] intArray = new int[] { 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 };

        Func<int, bool> myDel = new Func<int, bool>(IsOdd); // Delegate object
        var countOdd = intArray.Count(myDel);                  // Use delegate

        Console.WriteLine("Count of odd numbers: {0}", countOdd);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Count of odd numbers: 4
```

---

## Example Using a Lambda Expression Parameter

The previous example used a separate method and a delegate to attach the code to the operator. This required declaring the method, declaring the delegate object, and then passing the delegate object to the operator. This works fine and is exactly the right approach to take if either of the following conditions is true:

- If the method must be called from somewhere else in the program than just in the place it's used to initialize the delegate object
- If the code in the method body is more than just a statement or two long

If neither of these conditions is true, however, you probably want to use a more compact and localized method of supplying the code to the operator, using a lambda expression as described in Chapter 15.

We can modify the previous example to use a lambda expression by first deleting the `IsOdd` method entirely and placing the equivalent lambda expression directly at the declaration of the delegate object. The new code is shorter and cleaner and looks like this:

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        int[] intArray = new int[] { 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 };
        Lambda expression
        ↓
        var countOdd = intArray.Count( x => x % 2 == 1 );
        Console.WriteLine("Count of odd numbers: {0}", countOdd);
    }
}
```

Like the previous example, this code produces the following output:

---

```
Count of odd numbers: 4
```

---

We could also have used an anonymous method in place of the lambda expression, as shown following. This is more verbose, though, and since lambda expressions are equivalent semantically and are less verbose, there's little reason to use anonymous methods anymore.

```
class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        int[] intArray = new int[] { 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9 };
        Func<int, bool> myDel = delegate(int x)
        {
            return x % 2 == 1;
        };
        var countOdd = intArray.Count(myDel);

        Console.WriteLine("Count of odd numbers: {0}", countOdd);
    }
}
```

Anonymous method  
↓

## LINQ to XML

Extensible Markup Language (XML) is an important method of storing and exchanging data. LINQ adds features to the language that make working with XML much easier than previous methods such as XPath and XSLT. If you’re familiar with these methods, you might be pleased to hear that LINQ to XML simplifies the creation, traversal, and manipulation of XML in a number of ways, including the following:

- You can create an XML tree in a top-down fashion, with a single statement.
- You can create and manipulate XML in-memory without having an XML document to contain the tree.
- You can create and manipulate string nodes without having a `Text` subnode.

Although I won’t give a complete treatment of XML, I will start by giving a very brief introduction to it before describing some of the XML manipulation features supplied by LINQ.

## Markup Languages

A *markup language* is a set of tags placed in a document to give information *about the information* in the document. That is, the markup tags are not the data of the document—they contain data *about* the data. Data about data is called *metadata*.

A markup language is a defined set of tags designed to convey particular types of metadata about the contents of a document. HTML, for example, is the most widely known markup language. The metadata in its tags contains information about how a web page should be rendered in a browser and how to navigate among the pages using the hypertext links.

While most markup languages contain a predefined set of tags, XML contains only a few defined tags, and the rest are defined by the programmer to represent whatever kinds of metadata are required by a particular document type. As long as the writer and reader of the data agree on what the tags mean, the tags can contain whatever useful information the designers want.

## XML Basics

Data in an XML document is contained in an XML tree, which consists mainly of a set of nested elements.

The *element* is the fundamental constituent of an XML tree. Every element has a name and can contain data. Some can also contain other, nested elements. Elements are demarcated by opening and closing tags. Any data contained by an element must be between its opening and closing tags.

- An opening tag starts with an open angle bracket, followed by the element name, followed optionally by any attributes, followed by a closing angle bracket.

```
<PhoneNumber>
```

- A closing tag starts with an open angle bracket, followed by a slash character, followed by the element name, followed by a closing angle bracket.

```
</PhoneNumber>
```

- An element with no content can be represented by a single tag that starts with an open angle bracket, followed by the name of the element, followed by a slash, and is terminated with a closing angle bracket.

```
<PhoneNumber />
```

The following XML fragment shows an element named `EmployeeName` followed by an empty element named `PhoneNumber`.

```
<EmployeeName>Sally Jones</EmployeeName>
  ↑      ↑      ↑
  Opening tag    Content    Closing tag
<PhoneNumber />   ← Element with no content
```

Other important things to know about XML are the following:

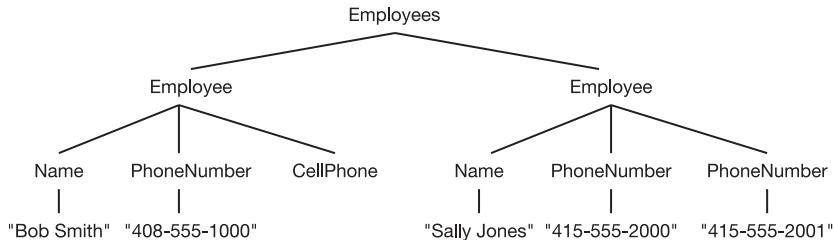
- XML documents must have a single root element that contains all the other elements.
- XML tags must be properly nested.
- Unlike HTML tags, XML tags are case sensitive.
- XML *attributes* are name/value pairs that contain additional metadata about an element. The value part of an attribute must always be enclosed in quotation marks, which can be either double quotation marks or single quotation marks.
- Whitespace within an XML document is maintained. This is unlike HTML, where whitespace is consolidated to a single space in the output.

The following XML document is an example of XML that contains information about two employees. This XML tree is extremely simple in order to show the elements clearly. The important things to notice about the XML tree are the following:

- The tree contains a root node of type Employees that contains two child nodes of type Employee.
- Each Employee node contains nodes containing the name and phone numbers of an employee.

```
<Employees>
  <Employee>
    <Name>Bob Smith</Name>
    <PhoneNumber>408-555-1000</PhoneNumber>
    <CellPhone />
  </Employee>
  <Employee>
    <Name>Sally Jones</Name>
    <PhoneNumber>415-555-2000</PhoneNumber>
    <PhoneNumber>415-555-2001</PhoneNumber>
  </Employee>
</Employees>
```

Figure 21-13 illustrates the hierarchical structure of the sample XML tree.



**Figure 21-13.** Hierarchical structure of the sample XML tree

## The XML Classes

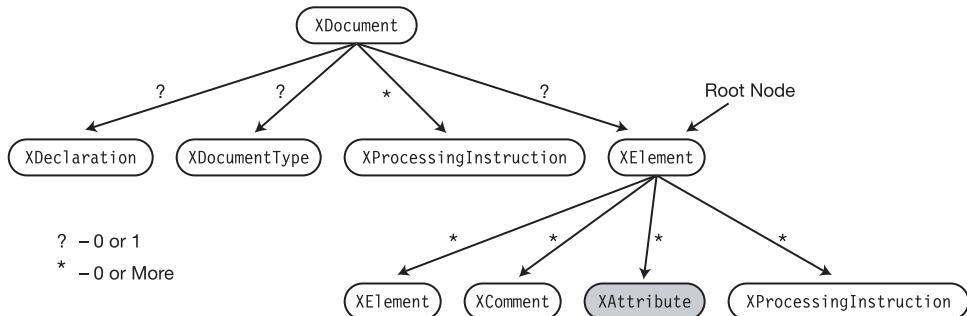
LINQ to XML can be used to work with XML in two ways. The first way is as a simplified XML manipulation API. The second way is to use the LINQ query facilities you've seen throughout the earlier part of this chapter. I'll start by introducing the LINQ to XML API.

The LINQ to XML API consists of a number of classes that represent the components of an XML tree. The three most important classes you'll use are `XElement`, `XAttribute`, and `XDocument`. There are other classes as well, but these are the main ones.

In Figure 21-13, you saw that an XML tree is a set of nested elements. Figure 21-14 shows the classes used to build an XML tree and how they can be nested.

For example, the figure shows the following:

- An `XDocument` node can have the following as its direct child nodes:
  - At most, one of each of the following node types: an `XDeclaration` node, an `XDocumentType` node, and an `XElement` node
  - Any number of `XProcessingInstruction` nodes
- If there is a top-level `XElement` node under the `XDocument`, it is the root of the rest of the elements in the XML tree.
- The root element can in turn contain any number of nested `XElement`, `XComment`, or `XProcessingInstruction` nodes, nested to any level.



**Figure 21-14.** The containment structure of XML nodes

Except for the `XAttribute` class, most of the classes used to create an XML tree are derived from a class called `XNode` and are referred to generically in the literature as “`XNodes`.” Figure 21-14 shows the `XNode` classes in white clouds, while the `XAttribute` class is shown in a gray cloud.

## Creating, Saving, Loading, and Displaying an XML Document

The best way to demonstrate the simplicity and usage of the XML API is to show simple code samples. For example, the following code shows how simple it is to perform several of the important tasks required when working with XML.

It starts by creating a simple XML tree consisting of a node called Employees, with two subnodes containing the names of two employees. Notice the following about the code:

- The tree is created with a single statement that creates all the nested elements in place in the tree. This is called *functional construction*.
- Each element is created in place using an object creation expression, using the constructor of the type of the node.

After creating the tree, the code saves it to a file called EmployeesFile.xml, using XDocument's Save method. It then reads the XML tree back from the file using XDocument's static Load method and assigns the tree to a new XDocument object. Finally, it uses WriteLine to display the structure of the tree held by the new XDocument object.

```
using System;
using System.Xml.Linq; // Required namespace

class Program {
    static void Main( ) {
        XDocument employees1 =
            new XDocument( // Create the XML document.
                new XElement("Employees", // Create the root element.
                    new XElement("Name", "Bob Smith"), // Create element
                    new XElement("Name", "Sally Jones") // Create element
                )
            );
        employees1.Save("EmployeesFile.xml"); // Save to a file

        // Load the saved document into a new variable.
        XDocument employees2 = XDocument.Load("EmployeesFile.xml");
        ↑
        Static method
        Console.WriteLine(employees2); // Display document
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<Employees>
  <Name>Bob Smith</Name>
  <Name>Sally Jones</Name>
</Employees>
```

---

## Creating an XML Tree

In the previous example, you saw that you can create an XML document in-memory by using constructors for `XDocument` and `XElement`. In the case of both constructors

- The first parameter is the name of the object.
- The second and following parameters contain the nodes of the XML tree. The second parameter of the constructor is a `params` parameter, and so can have any number of parameters.

For example, the following code produces an XML tree and displays it using the `Console.WriteLine` method:

```
using System;
using System.Xml.Linq; // This namespace is required.

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        XDocument employeeDoc =
            new XDocument(
                new XElement("Employees", // Create the root element.

                    new XElement("Employee", // First employee element
                        new XElement("Name", "Bob Smith"),
                        new XElement("PhoneNumber", "408-555-1000") ),

                    new XElement("Employee", // Second employee element
                        new XElement("Name", "Sally Jones"),
                        new XElement("PhoneNumber", "415-555-2000"),
                        new XElement("PhoneNumber", "415-555-2001") )
                );
        Console.WriteLine(employeeDoc); // Displays the document
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<Employees>
<Employee>
<Name>Bob Smith</Name>
<PhoneNumber>408-555-1000</PhoneNumber>
</Employee>
<Employee>
<Name>Sally Jones</Name>
<PhoneNumber>415-555-2000</PhoneNumber>
<PhoneNumber>415-555-2001</PhoneNumber>
</Employee>
</Employees>
```

---

## Using Values from the XML Tree

The power of XML becomes evident when you traverse an XML tree and retrieve or modify values. Table 21-2 shows the main methods used for retrieving data.

**Table 21-2. Methods for Querying XML**

Method Name	Class	Return Type	Description
Nodes	Xdocument	IEnumerable<object>	Returns all the children of the current node, regardless of their type
	XElement		
Elements	Xdocument	IEnumerable< XElement >	Returns all the current node's XElement child nodes or all the child nodes with a specific name
	XElement		
Element	Xdocument	XElement	Returns the current node's first XElement child node or the first child node with a specific name
	XElement		
Descendants	XElement	IEnumerable< XElement >	Returns all the descendant XElement nodes or all the descendant XElement nodes with a specific name, regardless of their level of nesting below the current node
DescendantsAndSelf	XElement	IEnumerable< XElement >	Same as Descendants but also includes the current node
Ancestors	XElement	IEnumerable< XElement >	Returns all the ancestor XElement nodes or all the ancestor XElement nodes above the current node that have a specific name
AncestorsAndSelf	XElement	IEnumerable< XElement >	Same as Ancestors but also includes the current node
Parent	XElement	XElement	Returns the parent node of the current node

Some of the important things to know about the methods in Table 21-2 are the following:

- **Nodes:** The `Nodes` method returns an object of type `IEnumerable<object>`, because the nodes returned might be of different types, such as `XElement`, `XComment`, and so on. You can use the type parameterized method `OfType<type>` to specify what type of nodes to return. For example, the following line of code retrieves only the `XComment` nodes:

```
IEnumerable<XComment> comments = xd.Nodes().OfType<XComment>();
```

- **Elements:** Since retrieving `XElements` is such a common requirement, there is a shortcut for expression `Nodes().OfType< XElement >()`—the `Elements` method.
  - Using the `Elements` method with no parameters returns all the child `XElements`.
  - Using the `Elements` method with a single name parameter returns only the child `XElements` with that name. For example, the following line of code returns all the child `XElement` nodes with the name *PhoneNumber*.

```
IEnumerable< XElement > empPhones = emp.Elements("PhoneNumber");
```

- **Element:** This method retrieves just the first child `XElement` of the current node. Like the `Elements` method, it can be called with either one or no parameters. With no parameters, it gets the first child `XElement` node. With a single name parameter, it gets the first child `XElement` node of that name.
- **Descendants and Ancestors:** These methods work like the `Elements` and `Parent` methods, but instead of returning the immediate child elements or parent element, they include the elements below or above the current node, regardless of the difference in nesting level.

The following code illustrates the `Element` and `Elements` methods:

```
using System;
using System.Collections.Generic;
using System.Xml.Linq;

class Program {
    static void Main( ) {
        XDocument employeeDoc =
            new XDocument(
                new XElement("Employees",
                    new XElement("Employee",
                        new XElement("Name", "Bob Smith"),
                        new XElement("PhoneNumber", "408-555-1000")),
                    new XElement("Employee",
                        new XElement("Name", "Sally Jones"),
                        new XElement("PhoneNumber", "415-555-2000"),
                        new XElement("PhoneNumber", "415-555-2001"))
                )
            );
            Get first child XElement named "Employees"
            ↓
        XElement root = employeeDoc.Element("Employees");
        IEnumerable<XElement> employees = root.Elements();

        foreach ( XElement emp in employees)
            {Get first child XElement named "Name"
            ↓
                XElement empNameNode = emp.Element("Name");
                Console.WriteLine(empNameNode.Value);
                Get all child elements named "PhoneNumber"
                ↓
                IEnumerable<XElement> empPhones = emp.Elements("PhoneNumber");
                foreach ( XElement phone in empPhones)
                    Console.WriteLine(" {0}", phone.Value);
            }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Bob Smith
408-555-1000
Sally Jones
415-555-2000
415-555-2001
```

---

## Adding Nodes and Manipulating XML

You can add a child element to an existing element using the `Add` method. The `Add` method allows you to add as many elements as you like in a single method call, regardless of the node types you are adding.

For example, the following code creates a simple XML tree and displays it. It then uses the `Add` method to add a single node to the root element. Following that, it uses the `Add` method a second time to add three elements—two `XElements` and an `XComment`. Notice the results in the output:

```
using System;
using System.Xml.Linq;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        XDocument xd = new XDocument(
            new XElement("root",
                new XElement("first"))
        );
        Console.WriteLine("Original tree");
        Console.WriteLine(xd); Console.WriteLine(); // Display the tree.

        XElement rt = xd.Element("root");           // Get the first element.
        rt.Add( new XElement("second"));           // Add a child element.

        rt.Add( new XElement("third"),
            new XComment("Important Comment"),
            new XElement("fourth"));

        Console.WriteLine("Modified tree");
        Console.WriteLine(xd);                     // Display modified tree
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<root>
  <first />
</root>

<root>
  <first />
  <second />
  <third />
  <!--Important Comment-->
  <fourth />
</root>
```

---

The Add method places the new child nodes after the existing child nodes, but you can place the nodes before and between the child nodes as well, using the AddFirst, AddBeforeSelf, and AddAfterSelf methods.

Table 21-3 lists some of the most important methods for manipulating XML. Notice that some of the methods are applied to the parent node and others to the node itself.

**Table 21-3.** Methods for Manipulating XML

Method Name	Call From	Description
Add	Parent	Adds new child nodes after the existing child nodes of the current node
AddFirst	Parent	Adds new child nodes before the existing child nodes of the current node
AddBeforeSelf	Node	Adds new nodes before the current node at the same level
AddAfterSelf	Node	Adds new nodes after the current node at the same level
Remove	Node	Deletes the currently selected node and its contents
RemoveNodes	Node	Deletes the currently selected XElement and its contents
SetElement	Parent	Sets the contents of a node
ReplaceContent	Node	Replaces the contents of a node

## Working with XML Attributes

Attributes give additional information about an `XElement` node. They're placed in the opening tag of the XML element.

When you functionally construct an XML tree, you can add attributes by just including `XAttribute` constructors within the scope of the `XElement` constructor. There are two forms of the `XAttribute` constructor; one takes a name and a value, and the other takes a reference to an already existing `XAttribute`.

The following code adds two attributes to `root`. Notice that both parameters to the `XAttribute` constructor are strings; the first specifies the name of the attribute, and the second gives the value.

```
XDocument xd = new XDocument(
    new XElement("root",
        new XAttribute("color", "red"),           // Attribute constructor
        new XAttribute("size", "large"),          // Attribute constructor
        new XElement("first"),
        new XElement("second"))
);
Console.WriteLine(xd);
```

This code produces the following output. Notice that the attributes are placed inside the opening tag of the element.

---

```
<root color="red" size="large">
  <first />
  <second />
</root>
```

---

To retrieve an attribute from an XElement node, use the `Attribute` method, supplying the name of the attribute as the parameter. The following code creates an XML tree with a node with two attributes—`color` and `size`. It then retrieves the values of the attributes and displays them.

```
static void Main( )
{
    XDocument xd = new XDocument(
        new XElement("root",
            new XAttribute("color", "red"),
            new XAttribute("size", "large"),
            new XElement("first")
        )
    );
    Console.WriteLine(xd); Console.WriteLine(); // Create XML tree
    XElement rt = xd.Element("root"); // Display XML tree
    XAttribute color = rt.Attribute("color"); // Get the element.
    XAttribute size = rt.Attribute("size"); // Get the attribute.
    Console.WriteLine("color is {0}", color.Value); // Display attr. value
    Console.WriteLine("size is {0}", size.Value); // Display attr. value
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<root color="red" size="large">
  <first />
</root>
```

```
color is red
size is large
```

---

To remove an attribute, you can select the attribute and use the `Remove` method or use the `SetAttributeValue` method on its parent and set the attribute value to `null`. The following code demonstrates both methods:

```
static void Main( ) {
    XDocument xd = new XDocument(
        new XElement("root",
            new XAttribute("color", "red"),
            new XAttribute("size", "large"),
            new XElement("first")
        )
    );

    XElement rt = xd.Element("root");           // Get the element.

    rt.Attribute("color").Remove();             // Remove the color attribute.
    rt.SetAttributeValue("size", null);          // Remove the size attribute.

    Console.WriteLine(xd);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<root>
  <first />
</root>
```

---

To add an attribute to an XML tree or change the value of an attribute, you can use the `SetAttributeValue` method, as shown in the following code:

```
static void Main( ) {
    XDocument xd = new XDocument(
        new XElement("root",
            new XAttribute("color", "red"),
            new XAttribute("size", "large"),
            new XElement("first")));

    XElement rt = xd.Element("root");           // Get the element.

    rt.SetAttributeValue("size", "medium");      // Change attribute value
    rt.SetAttributeValue("width", "narrow");       // Add an attribute.

    Console.WriteLine(xd); Console.WriteLine();
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<root color="red" size="medium" width="narrow">
  <first />
</root>
```

---

## Other Types of Nodes

Three other types of nodes used in the previous examples are `XComment`, `XDeclaration`, and `XProcessingInstruction`. They're described in the following sections.

### XComment

Comments in XML consist of text between the `<!--` and `-->` tokens. The text between the tokens is ignored by XML parsers. You can insert text in an XML document using the `XComment` class, as shown in the following line of code:

```
new XComment("This is a comment")
```

### XDeclaration

XML documents start with a line that includes the version of XML used, the type of character encoding used, and whether the document depends on external references. This is information about the XML, so it's actually metadata about the metadata! This is called the *XML declaration* and is inserted using the `XDeclaration` class. The following shows an example of an `XDeclaration` statement:

```
new XDeclaration("1.0", "utf-8", "yes")
```

### XProcessingInstruction

An XML processing instruction is used to supply additional data about how an XML document should be used or interpreted. Most commonly, processing instructions are used to associate a style sheet with the XML document.

You can include a processing instruction using the `XProcessingInstruction` constructor, which takes two string parameters—a target and a data string. If the processing instruction takes multiple data parameters, those parameters must be included in the second parameter string of the `XProcessingInstruction` constructor, as shown in the following constructor code. Notice that in this example, the second parameter is a verbatim string, and literal double quotes inside the string are represented by sets of two contiguous double quote marks.

```
new XProcessingInstruction( "xml-stylesheet",
                           @"href=""stories""", type=""text/css""")
```

The following code uses all three constructs:

```
static void Main( )
{
    XDocument xd = new XDocument(
        new XDeclaration("1.0", "utf-8", "yes"),
        new XComment("This is a comment"),
        new XProcessingInstruction("xml-stylesheet",
            @"href=""stories.css"" type=""text/css"""),
        new XElement("root",
            new XElement("first"),
            new XElement("second"))
    );
}
```

This code produces the following output in the output file. Using a `WriteLine` of `xd`, however, would not show the declaration statement, even though it is included in the document file.

---

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8" standalone="yes"?>
<!--This is a comment-->
<?xml-stylesheet href="stories.css" type="text/css"?>
<root>
    <first />
    <second />
</root>
```

---

## Using LINQ Queries with LINQ to XML

You can combine the LINQ XML API with LINQ query expressions to produce simple yet powerful XML tree searches.

The following code creates a simple XML tree, displays it to the screen, and then saves it to a file called `SimpleSample.xml`. Although there's nothing new in this code, we'll use this XML tree in the following examples.

```
static void Main( )
{
    XDocument xd = new XDocument(
        new XElement("MyElements",
            new XElement("first",
                new XAttribute("color", "red"),
                new XAttribute("size", "small")),
            new XElement("second",
                new XAttribute("color", "red"),
                new XAttribute("size", "medium")),
            new XElement("third",
                new XAttribute("color", "blue"),
                new XAttribute("size", "large"))));

    Console.WriteLine(xd);                                // Display XML tree
    xd.Save("SimpleSample.xml");                         // Save XML tree
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
<MyElements>
  <first color="red" size="small" />
  <second color="red" size="medium" />
  <third color="blue" size="large" />
</MyElements>
```

---

The following example code uses a simple LINQ query to select a subset of the nodes from the XML tree and then displays them in several ways. This code does the following:

- It selects from the XML tree only those elements whose names have five characters. Since the names of the elements are *first*, *second*, and *third*, only node names *first* and *third* match the search criterion, and therefore those nodes are selected.
- It displays the names of the selected elements.
- It formats and displays the selected nodes, including the node name and the values of the attributes. Notice that the attributes are retrieved using the *Attribute* method, and the values of the attributes are retrieved with the *Value* property.

```
static void Main( )
{
    XDocument xd = XDocument.Load("SimpleSample.xml"); // Load the document.
    XElement rt = xd.Element("MyElements");           // Get the root element.

    var xyz = from e in rt.Elements()
              where e.Name.ToString().Length == 5        // Select elements whose
              select e;                                // names have 5 chars.

    foreach ( XElement x in xyz)                      // Display the
        Console.WriteLine(x.Name.ToString());          // selected elements.

    Console.WriteLine();
    foreach ( XElement x in xyz)
        Console.WriteLine("Name: {0}, color: {1}, size: {2}",
                           x.Name,
                           x.Attribute("color").Value,
                           x.Attribute("size") .Value);
                           ↑             ↑
}                                         Get the attribute.   Get the attribute's value.
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
first
third

Name: first, color: red, size: small
Name: third, color: blue, size: large
```

---

The following code uses a simple query to retrieve all the top-level elements of the XML tree and creates an object of an anonymous type for each one. The first use of the `WriteLine` method shows the default formatting of the anonymous type. The second `WriteLine` statement explicitly formats the members of the anonymous type objects.

```
using System;
using System.Linq;
using System.Xml.Linq;

static void Main( )
{
    XDocument xd = XDocument.Load("SimpleSample.xml"); // Load the document.
    XElement rt = xd.Element("MyElements");           // Get the root element.

    var xyz = from e in rt.Elements()
              select new { e.Name, color = e.Attribute("color") };
    ↑
    foreach (var x in xyz)      Create an anonymous type.
        Console.WriteLine(x);   // Default formatting

    Console.WriteLine();
    foreach (var x in xyz)
        Console.WriteLine("{0,-6},  color: {1, -7}", x.Name, x.color.Value);
}

```

This code produces the following output. The first three lines show the default formatting of the anonymous type. The last three lines show the explicit formatting specified in the format string of the second `WriteLine` method.

---

```
{ Name = first, color = color="red" }
{ Name = second, color = color="red" }
{ Name = third, color = color="blue" }

first ,  color: red
second,  color: red
third ,  color: blue
```

---

From these examples, you can see that you can easily combine the XML API with the LINQ query facilities to produce powerful XML querying capabilities.



# Introduction to Asynchronous Programming

- Processes, Threads, and Asynchronous Programming
- Parallel Loops
- The BackgroundWorker Class
- Asynchronous Programming Patterns
- BeginInvoke and EndInvoke
- Timers

# Processes, Threads, and Asynchronous Programming

In this chapter, we're going to introduce four methods you can use to add multithreading to your programs. This chapter is a bit different from the previous chapters in that it goes beyond just the language features. Instead, we'll also include classes from the BCL and include some programming techniques. In spite of the fact that these things are a bit beyond just the language features, I want to do this because it's imperative that we as programmers increase our use of multiprocessing in our code—and I think a first book on C# is a good place to start.

When you start a program, the system creates a new *process* in memory. A process is the set of resources that comprise a running program. These include the virtual address space, file handles, and a host of other things required for the program to run.

Inside the process, the system creates a kernel object, called a *thread*, which represents the actual executing program. (*Thread* is short for “thread of execution.”) Once the process is set up, the system starts execution of the thread at the first statement in method `Main`.

Some important things to know about threads are the following:

- By default, a process contains only a single thread, which executes from the beginning of the program to the end.
- A thread can spawn other threads so that at any time, a process might have multiple threads in various states, executing different parts of the program.
- If there are multiple threads in a process, they all share the process's resources.
- It's threads, not processes, that are the units scheduled by the system for execution on the processor.

All the sample programs shown so far in this book have used only a single thread and have executed sequentially from the first statement in the program to the last. This is called *synchronous programming*. *Asynchronous programming* refers to programs that spawn multiple threads, which are, at least conceptually, executed at the same time. (They might not *actually* be executed at the same time.)

If the program is running on a multiprocessor system, the different threads might actually be executing at the same time on different processors. This can considerably improve performance, and as multicore processors become the norm, we need to write our programs to take advantage of this opportunity.

On a single-processor system, though, clearly only one instruction can be executed by the processor at a time. In this case, the operating system coordinates the threads so that the processor is shared among them. Each thread gets the processor for a short time, called a *time slice*, before being kicked off the processor and sent to the back of the line. This round-robin sharing of the processor lets all the threads work their ways through the code.

## Multithreading Considerations

Using multiple threads in a program, called *multithreading*, or just *threading*, creates program overhead and additional program complexity. Here are some examples:

- There are time and resource costs in both creating and destroying threads.
- The time required for scheduling threads, loading them onto the processor, and storing their states after each time slice is pure overhead.
- Since the threads in a process all share the same resources and heap, it adds additional programming complexity to ensure that they're not stepping on each other's work.
- Debugging multithreaded programs can be quite difficult, since the timing on each run of the program can be different, producing different results. And the act of running the program in a debugger blows the timing out of the water.

In spite of these considerations, the benefits of threading can outweigh its costs, as long as it's used wisely—and not overused. For example, you've already seen that on a multiprocessor system, if the different threads can be placed on different processors, it can result in a much more efficient execution.

To help alleviate some of the costs associated with creating and destroying threads, the CLR maintains a *thread pool* for each process. Initially, a process's thread pool is empty, but after a thread is created and used by a process and then the thread completes its execution, it isn't destroyed but instead added to the process's thread pool. Later, if the process needs another thread, the CLR recycles one from the pool, saving a significant amount of time.

Another common example where multithreading is crucial is in *graphical user interface (GUI)* programming, where users expect a quick response any time they click a button or use the keyboard. In this case, if the program needs to perform an operation that's going to take any appreciable time, it should perform that operation on another thread, leaving the main thread available to respond to the user's input. It would be totally unacceptable to have the program unresponsive during that time.

## The Complexity of Multithreading

Although multithreading is conceptually easy, getting all the details right can be frustratingly difficult on nontrivial programs. The areas that need to be considered are the following:

- *Communicating between the threads*: There are few built-in mechanisms for communicating between threads, so this is often done simply using their shared memory, since the memory space is visible and accessible by all threads in the same process.
- *Coordinating threads*: Although it's easy to create threads, you also need to be able to coordinate their actions. For example, a thread might need to wait for one or more other threads to complete before it can continue its execution.
- *Synchronization of resource usage*: Since all the threads in a process share the same resources and memory, you need to make sure that the different threads aren't accessing and changing them at the same time, causing state inconsistencies.

The `System.Threading` namespace contains classes and types that you can use to build complex multithreaded systems. These include the `Thread` class itself and classes such as `Mutex`, `Semaphore`, and `Monitor`, which are used to synchronize resource usage. The use, complexities, and nuances of this tricky subject are beyond the scope of this text, and you'd be better advised to settle down with an in-depth book on the subject.

## Parallel Loops

.NET 4.0 has introduced a new library, called the Task Parallel Library, which greatly simplifies parallel programming. This is a huge advance and includes a large amount of material—far more than I can cover in this chapter. So unfortunately, I've had to settle by just whetting your appetite by introducing just two of its very simple constructs that you can learn and use quickly and easily. These are the `Parallel.For` loop and the `Parallel.ForEach` loop. These constructs are in the `System.Threading.Tasks` namespace.

By this point in the book I'm sure you're quite familiar with C#'s standard `for` and `foreach` loops. These are common and tremendously powerful constructs. Many times when using these constructs, each iteration depends on a calculation or action in the previous iteration. But this isn't always the case. When the iterations are independent, it would be a huge advantage if you could put different iterations on different processors and process them in parallel. This is exactly what the `Parallel.For` and `Parallel.ForEach` constructs do.

These constructs are in the form of methods with input parameters. There are 12 overloads of the `Parallel.For` method, but the simplest has the following signature:

- The *fromInclusive* parameter is the first integer in the iteration series.
- The *toExclusive* parameter is an integer that is *one greater than the last index* in the iteration series. That is, it's the same as comparing on the expression `index < ToExclusive`.
- The *body* is a delegate that takes a single input parameter. The code of *body* is executed once per iteration.

```
void Parallel.For( int fromInclusive, int toExclusive, Action body );
```

The following code is an example using the `Parallel.For` construct. It iterates from 0 to 15 and prints out the iteration index and the square of the index. Notice that it fits the requirement that each iteration is independent of any other iteration. Notice also that you must use the `System.Threading.Tasks` namespace.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;           // Must use this namespace

namespace ExampleParallelFor
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main( )
        {
            Parallel.For( 0, 15, i =>
                Console.WriteLine( "The square of {0} is {1}", i, i * i ) );
        }
    }
}
```

One run of this code on a PC with a two-core processor produced the following output. Notice that you're not guaranteed any particular order of the iterations.

---

```
The square of 0 is 0
The square of 7 is 49
The square of 8 is 64
The square of 9 is 81
The square of 10 is 100
The square of 11 is 121
The square of 12 is 144
The square of 13 is 169
The square of 3 is 9
The square of 4 is 16
The square of 5 is 25
The square of 6 is 36
The square of 14 is 196
The square of 1 is 1
The square of 2 is 4
```

---

Another example is the following code. This program fills an integer array, in parallel, with the square of the iteration index.

```
class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        const int maxValues = 50;
        int[] squares = new int[maxValues];

        Parallel.For( 0, maxValues, i => squares[i] = i * i );
    }
}
```

Unlike the previous example, even though the iterations might be executed in parallel and in any order, the end result is an array containing the first 50 squares.

The other parallel loop construct is the `Parallel.ForEach` method. There are more than a dozen overloads for this method, but the simplest is the following:

- The `TSource` is the type of object in the collection.
- The `source` is the collection of `TSource` objects.
- The `body` is the lambda expression to be applied to each element of the collection.

```
static ParallelLoopResult ForEach<TSource>( IEnumerable<TSource> source,
                                             Action<TSource> body)
```

An example of using the `Parallel.ForEach` method is the following code. In this case, `TSource` is `string`, and the `source` is a `string[]`.

```
using System;
using System.Threading.Tasks;

namespace ParallelForeach1
{
    class Program
    {
        static void Main()
        {
            string[] squares = new string[]
            {
                "We", "hold", "these", "truths", "to", "be", "self-evident",
                "that", "all", "men", "are", "created", "equal"
            };

            Parallel.ForEach( squares,
                i => Console.WriteLine( string.Format("{0} has {1} letters", i, i.Length) ) );
        }
    }
}
```

One run of this code on a PC with a two-core processor produced the following output, but the order might change each time:

---

```
"We" has 2 letters
"equal" has 5 letters
"truths" has 6 letters
"to" has 2 letters
"be" has 2 letters
"that" has 4 letters
"hold" has 4 letters
"these" has 5 letters
"all" has 3 letters
"men" has 3 letters
"are" has 3 letters
"created" has 7 letters
"self-evident" has 12 letters
```

---

## The BackgroundWorker Class

Although much of asynchronous programming is complex, the `BackgroundWorker` class makes it simple to perform a task in the background on a separate thread. This class was designed primarily for GUI programming (Windows Forms and WPF) to allow them to offload time-consuming tasks from the main thread to a background thread. Figure 22-1 illustrates the key members of the class. The following is an overview of these members:

- The first two properties shown in the figure are used to set whether the background task can report its progress to the main thread and whether it supports cancellation from the main thread. You use the third property to find out whether the background task is running.
- The class has three events, which are used to signal different program events and states. You need to write event handlers for these events to take whatever actions are appropriate for your program.
  - The `DoWork` event is raised when the background thread starts.
  - The `ProgressChanged` event is raised when the background task reports progress.
  - The `RunWorkerCompleted` event is raised when the background worker exits.
- The three methods are used to initiate actions or change state.
  - Calling the `RunWorkerAsync` method retrieves a background thread that executes the `DoWork` event handler.
  - Calling the `CancelAsync` method sets the `CancellationPending` property to true, potentially, although not necessarily, canceling the thread. It is the responsibility of the `DoWork` event handler to inspect this property to determine whether it should stop its processing.
  - The `ReportProgress` method can be called by the `DoWork` event handler (from the *background thread*) when it wants to report its progress to the main thread.

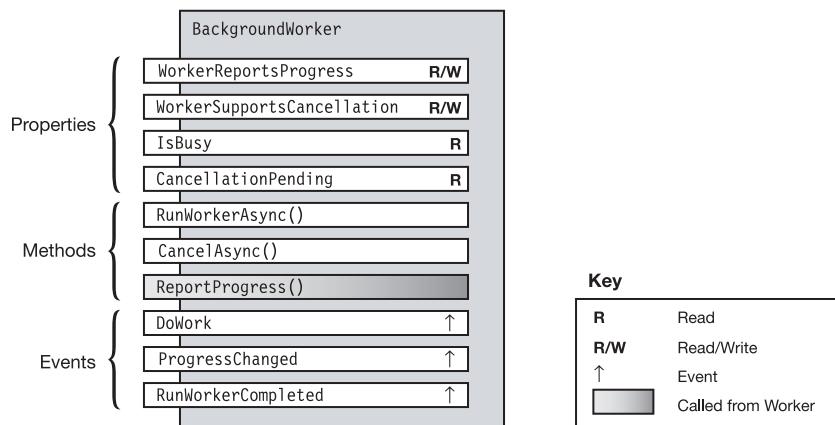
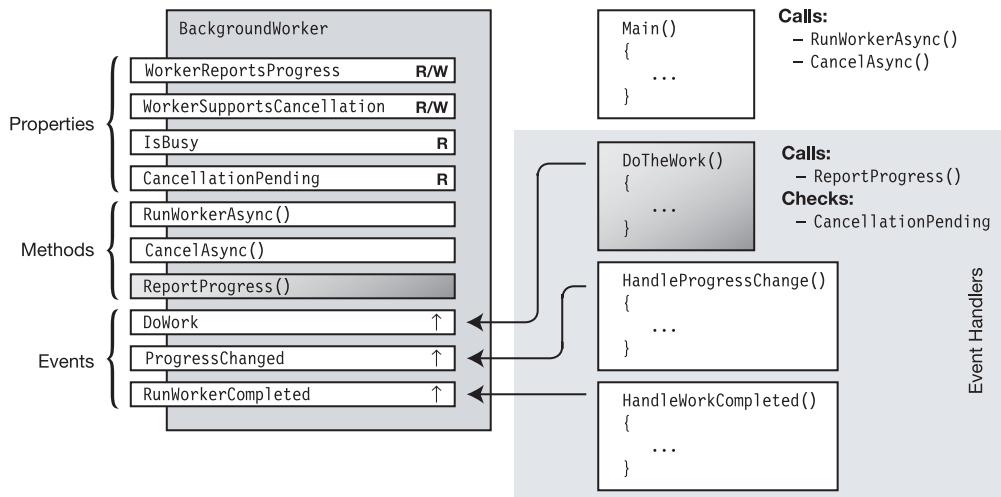


Figure 22-1. The key members of the `BackgroundWorker` class

To use a `BackgroundWorker` class object, you need to write the following event handlers. The first is required since it contains the code you want to be executed by the background thread, but the other two are optional, depending on the needs of your program.

- The handler attached to the `DoWork` event contains the code you want executed in the background on a separate thread.
  - In Figure 22-2, this handler is named `DoTheWork` and is in a gradient-shaded box to illustrate that it's executed in the separate thread.
  - The `DoWork` event is raised when the main thread calls the `RunWorkerAsync` method.
- The handler attached to the `ProgressChanged` event should contain the code to be executed on the main thread when the background task reports its progress.
  - The `ProgressChanged` event is raised when *the background process* calls the `ReportProgress` method.
  - Calling the `ReportProgress` method is how the background thread communicates with the main thread.
- The handler attached to the `RunWorkerCompleted` event should contain the code to be executed on the main thread after the background thread completes the execution of the `DoWork` event handler.

Figure 22-2 shows the structure of your program, with the event handlers attached to the events of the `BackgroundWorker` object.

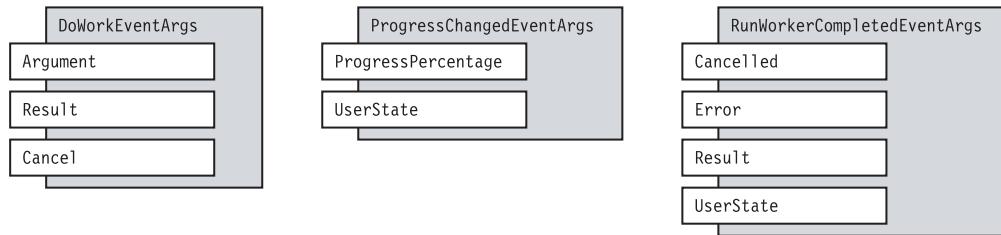


**Figure 22-2.** Your code supplies event handlers for the events that control the flow through execution of the tasks.

The delegates for these event handlers are the following. Each takes an object reference as the first parameter and a specialized subclass of the EventArgs class as the second parameter.

```
void DoWorkEventHandler          ( object sender, DoWorkEventArgs e )
void ProgressChangedEventHandler ( object sender, ProgressChangedEventArgs e )
void RunWorkerCompletedEventHandler ( object sender, RunWorkerCompletedEventArgs e )
```

Figure 22-3 illustrates the structure of the EventArg classes used by these event handlers.



**Figure 22-3.** The EventArg classes used by the BackgroundWorker event handlers

When you have the event handlers written and attached to their events, you can use the class by doing the following:

- Start by creating an object of the BackgroundWorker class and configuring it.
  - If you want the worker thread to communicate progression to the main thread, then set the WorkerReportsProgress property to true.
  - If you want to be able to cancel the worker thread from the main thread, then set the WorkerSupportsCancellation property to true.
- Now that the object is configured, you can start it by calling the object's RunWorkerAsync method. This retrieves a background thread that raises the DoWork event and executes the event's handler in the background.

Now you have both the main thread and the background thread running. While the background thread is running, you can continue processing on the main thread.

- In the main thread, if you've enabled the `WorkerSupportsCancellation` property, then you can call the object's `CancelAsync` method. *This does not cancel the background thread!* Instead, it sets the object's `CancellationPending` property to true that needs to be checked by the `DoWork` event handler code running on the background thread.
- The background thread, in the meantime, continues to perform its computational tasks, as well as doing the following:
  - If the `WorkerReportsProgress` property is true and the background thread has progress to report to the main thread, then it must call the `BackgroundWorker` object's `ReportProgress` method. When the background thread calls the `ReportProgress` method, this raises the `ProgressChanged` event in the main thread, which runs the corresponding event handler.
  - If the `WorkerSupportsCancellation` property is enabled, then the `DoWork` event handler code should regularly check the `CancellationPending` property to determine whether it has been canceled. If so, it should exit.
  - If the background thread finishes its processing without being canceled, it can return a result to the main thread by setting the `Result` field in the `DoWorkEventArgs` parameter shown previously, in Figure 22-3.
- When the background thread exits, the `RunWorkerCompleted` event is raised, and its handler is executed on the main thread. The `RunWorkerCompletedEventArgs` parameter can contain information from the now completed background thread, such as the return value and whether the thread was canceled.

## Example Code Using the BackgroundWorker Class

Although the `BackgroundWorker` class was designed for GUI programming, I'll start by showing its use with a console program since that's what we've used throughout the book. In the next section, I'll show an example with a GUI program.

This program creates a background thread that sums a sequence of numbers. Several times during the process it checks to see whether it has been canceled. If it finds it's been canceled, it cleans up and exits. Otherwise, if it goes to completion, it stores the total in the `Result` field and exits.

Meanwhile, the main thread sums its own sequence of numbers and reports its total, along with the result from the background thread.

```
using System;
using System.ComponentModel; // Must have this namespace
using System.Threading; // Must have this namespace

namespace ConsoleBackgroundWorker
{
    class DoBackgroundwork
    {
        BackgroundWorker bgWorker = new BackgroundWorker();

        public long BackgroundTotal { get; private set; }
        public bool CompletedNormally { get; private set; }

        // Constructor
        public DoBackgroundwork()
        {
            // Set BackgroundWorker properties
            bgWorker.WorkerReportsProgress = true;
            bgWorker.WorkerSupportsCancellation = true;

            // Connect handlers to BackgroundWorker object.
            bgWorker.DoWork += DoWork_Handler;
            bgWorker.ProgressChanged += ProgressChanged_Handler;
            bgWorker.RunWorkerCompleted += RunWorkerCompleted_Handler;
        }

        public void StartWorker()
        {
            if ( !bgWorker.IsBusy )
                bgWorker.RunWorkerAsync();
        }

        // This just calculates the sum of the integers from 0 to the input value.
        public static long CalculateTheSequence( long value )
        {
            long total = 0;
            for ( int i=0; i < value; i++ )
                total += i;
            return total;
        }
    }
}
```

```
public void DoWork_Handler( object sender, DoWorkEventArgs args )
{
    BackgroundWorker worker = sender as BackgroundWorker;

    // Do the background calculation
    long total = 0;
    for ( int i = 1; i <= 5; i++ )
    {
        // Each time through the loop, check to see if we've been cancelled
        if ( worker.CancellationPending )
        {
            args.Cancel = true;
            worker.ReportProgress( -1 );
            break;
        }
        else
        {
            // If we haven't been cancelled, then continue the calculation.
            total += CalculateTheSequence( i * 10000000 );
            worker.ReportProgress( i * 20 );

            // Slow the program down to a more comfortable output rate
            // just for this demo.
            Thread.Sleep( 300 );
        }
    }

    args.Result = total;      // Store the result and exit.
}

// Handle input from background thread.
private void ProgressChanged_Handler
    ( object sender, ProgressChangedEventArgs args )
{
    string output
        = args.ProgressPercentage == -1
            ? "Cancelled"
            : string.Format( "{0}%", args.ProgressPercentage );

    Console.WriteLine( output );
}

// On completion of background thread, summarize and store the result.
private void RunWorkerCompleted_Handler
    ( object sender, RunWorkerCompletedEventArgs args )
{
    CompletedNormally = !args.Cancelled;
    BackgroundTotal   = args.Cancelled
        ? 0
        : (long) args.Result;    // Cast from object
}
```

```
public void Cancel()
{
    if( bgWorker.IsBusy )
        bgWorker.CancelAsync();
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        GiveInstructionsToTheUser();
        OutputTheSummaryHeaders();

        // Create and Start the background worker
        DoBackgroundwork bgw = new DoBackgroundwork();
        bgw.StartWorker();

        // Start the computation on the main thread.  Each time through the loop,
        // check to see whether the user has cancelled the background thread.
        // After the calculation, add a short sleep, just to slow the program
        // down enough so the main thread doesn't run faster than the background.
        long mainTotal = 0;
        for ( int i = 0; i < 5; i++ )
        {
            if ( Program.CheckForCancelInput() )
                bgw.Cancel();

            mainTotal += DoBackgroundwork.CalculateTheSequence( 100000000 );
            Thread.Sleep( 200 );
            Console.WriteLine( "    {0}%", (i+1) * 20 );
        }

        SummarizeResults( bgw, mainTotal );
        Console.ReadLine();
    }

    private static void GiveInstructionsToTheUser()
    {
        Console.WriteLine( "Press <Enter> to start background worker." );
        Console.WriteLine( "Press <Enter> again to cancel background worker." );
        Console.ReadLine();
    }

    private static void OutputTheSummaryHeaders()
    {
        Console.WriteLine( "    Main    Background" );
        Console.WriteLine( "-----" );
    }
}
```



```

private static void SummarizeResults( DoBackgroundwork bgw, long mainTotal )
{
    if ( bgw.CompletedNormally )
    {
        Console.WriteLine( "\nBackground completed Normally" );
        Console.WriteLine( "Background total = {0}", bgw.BackgroundTotal );
    }
    else
    {
        Console.WriteLine( "\nBackground      Cancelled" );
    }

    Console.WriteLine( "Main total      = {0}", mainTotal );
}

private static bool CheckForCancelInput()
{
    bool doCancel = Console.KeyAvailable;
    if ( doCancel )
        Console.ReadKey();
    return doCancel;
}
}
}

```

This code produces the following results when allowed to run to completion.

---

Press <Enter> to start background worker.  
Press <Enter> again to cancel background worker.

Main	Background
<hr/>	
	20%
	40%
20%	60%
40%	80%
60%	100%
80%	
100%	

Background completed Normally  
Background total = 2749999925000000  
Main total = 2499999975000000

---

## Example of the BackgroundWorker Class in a WPF Program

Since the `BackgroundWorker` class is primarily used with GUI programming, the following program shows its use in a simple WPF program rather than the console programs we've used throughout the text. WPF is Microsoft's replacement for the Windows Forms GUI programming framework. For further information about WPF programming, please see my book *Illustrated WPF*, also published by Apress.

This program produces the window shown on the left in Figure 22-4. When you click the Process button, it starts the background thread, which reports to the main thread every half second and increments the progress bar at the top by 10 percent. At completion, it shows the dialog box on the right of Figure 22-4.



**Figure 22-4.** The example WPF program using the `BackgroundWorker` class

To create this WPF program in Visual Studio 2010, do the following:

1. Select the File ➤ New ➤ Project menu item, which pops up the New Project window.
2. In the pane on the left of the window, open the Installed Templates section, if it's not already open.
3. Under the C# category, click the Windows entry. This populates the center pane with the installed Windows program templates.
4. Click WPF Application, and then at the bottom of the window enter **SimpleWorker** in the Name text box. Below that, select a location, and click the OK button.

There are only two files you'll modify—`MainWindow.xaml` and `MainWindow.xaml.cs`. Modify your `MainWindow.xaml` file to match the following listing:

```
<Window x:Class="SimpleWorker.MainWindow"
    xmlns="http://schemas.microsoft.com/winfx/2006/xaml/presentation"
    xmlns:x="http://schemas.microsoft.com/winfx/2006/xaml"
    Title="MainWindow" Height="150" Width="250">
<StackPanel>
    <ProgressBar Name="progressBar" Height="20" Width="200" Margin="10"/>
    <Button Name="btnProcess" Width="100" Click="btnProcess_Click"
        Margin="5">Process</Button>
    <Button Name="btnCancel" Width="100" Click="btnCancel_Click"
        Margin="5">Cancel</Button>
</StackPanel>
</Window>
```

Modify your MainWindow.xaml.cs file to match the following listing:

```
using System.Windows;
using System.ComponentModel;
using System.Threading;

namespace SimpleWorker
{
    public partial class MainWindow : Window
    {
        BackgroundWorker bgWorker = new BackgroundWorker();

        public MainWindow()
        {
            InitializeComponent();

            // Set BackgroundWorker properties
            bgWorker.WorkerReportsProgress      = true;
            bgWorker.WorkerSupportsCancellation = true;

            // Connect handlers to BackgroundWorker object.
            bgWorker.DoWork          += DoWork_Handler;
            bgWorker.ProgressChanged += ProgressChanged_Handler;
            bgWorker.RunWorkerCompleted += RunWorkerCompleted_Handler;
        }

        private void btnProcess_Click( object sender, RoutedEventArgs e )
        {
            if ( !bgWorker.IsBusy )
                bgWorker.RunWorkerAsync();
        }

        private void ProgressChanged_Handler( object sender,
                                              ProgressChangedEventArgs args )
        {
            progressBar.Value = args.ProgressPercentage;
        }
    }
}
```



```
private void DoWork_Handler( object sender, DoWorkEventArgs args )
{
    BackgroundWorker worker = sender as BackgroundWorker;

    for ( int i = 1; i <= 10; i++ )
    {
        if ( worker.CancellationPending )
        {
            args.Cancel = true;
            break;
        }
        else
        {
            worker.ReportProgress( i * 10 );
            Thread.Sleep( 500 );
        }
    }
}

private void RunWorkerCompleted_Handler( object sender,
                                         RunWorkerCompletedEventArgs args )
{
    progressBar.Value = 0;

    if ( args.Cancelled )
        MessageBox.Show( "Process was cancelled.", "Process Cancelled" );
    else
        MessageBox.Show( "Process completed normally.", "Process Completed" );
}

private void btnCancel_Click( object sender, RoutedEventArgs e )
{
    bgWorker.CancelAsync();
}
}
```

## Asynchronous Programming Patterns

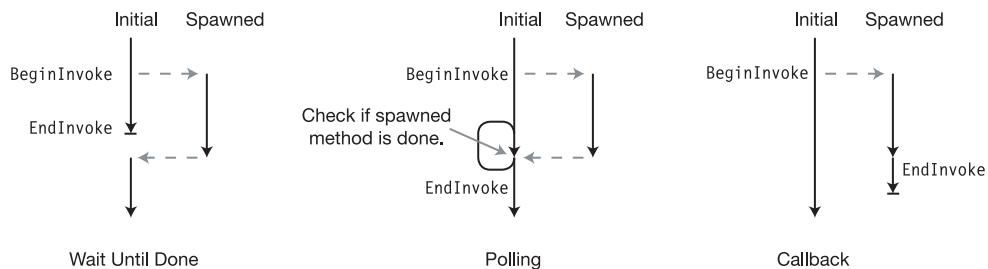
In Chapter 15, we covered the topic of delegates, and you saw that when a delegate object is invoked, it invokes the methods contained in its invocation list. This is done synchronously, just as if the methods had been called by the program.

If a delegate object has only a single method (which I'll call the *referenced method*) in its invocation list, it can execute that method asynchronously. The delegate class has two methods, called `BeginInvoke` and `EndInvoke`, that are used to do this. You use these methods in the following way:

- When you call the delegate's `BeginInvoke` method, it starts its referenced method executing on a separate thread from the thread pool and then returns immediately to the initial thread. The initial thread then continues on while the referenced method executes in parallel.
- When your program wants to retrieve the results of the completed asynchronous method, it either checks the `IsCompleted` property of the `IAsyncResult` returned by `BeginInvoke` or calls the delegate's `EndInvoke` method to wait for the delegate to finish.

Figure 22-5 shows the three standard patterns for using this process. In all three patterns, the initial thread initiates an asynchronous method call and then does some additional processing. The patterns differ, however, in the ways in which the initial thread receives the information that the spawned thread has completed.

- In the *wait-until-done* pattern, after spawning the asynchronous method and doing some additional processing, the initial thread halts and waits for the spawned thread to finish before continuing.
- In the *polling* pattern, the initial thread checks periodically whether the spawned thread has completed, and if not, it continues additional processing.
- In the *callback* pattern, the initial thread continues execution without waiting or checking whether the spawned thread has completed. Instead, when the referenced method in the spawned thread finishes, it calls a callback method, which handles the results of the asynchronous method before calling `EndInvoke`.



**Figure 22-5.** The standard patterns for asynchronous method calls

## BeginInvoke and EndInvoke

Before we look at examples of these asynchronous programming patterns, let's take a closer look at the `BeginInvoke` and `EndInvoke` methods. Some of the important things to know about `BeginInvoke` are the following:

- When calling `BeginInvoke`, the actual parameters in the parameter list consist of the following:
  - The parameters required by the referenced method
  - Two additional parameters, called the `callback` parameter and the `state` parameter
- `BeginInvoke` retrieves a thread from the thread pool and starts the referenced method running on the new thread.
- `BeginInvoke` returns to the calling thread a reference to an object implementing the `IAsyncResult` interface. This interface reference contains information about the current state of the asynchronous method. The initial thread then continues execution.

The following code shows an example of calling a delegate's `BeginInvoke` method. The first line declares a delegate type called `MyDel`. The next line declares a method called `Sum`, which matches the delegate.

- The following line declares a delegate object called `del`, of the delegate type `MyDel`, and initializes its invocation list with the `Sum` method.
- Finally, the last line of code calls the `BeginInvoke` method of the delegate object and supplies it with the two delegate parameters `3` and `5` and the two `BeginInvoke` parameters `callback` and `state`, which are set to `null` in this example. When executed, the `BeginInvoke` method performs two actions:
  - It gets a thread from the thread pool and starts method `Sum` running on the new thread, supplying it with `3` and `5` as its actual parameters.
  - It collects information about the state of the new thread and makes it available through a reference to an interface of type `IAsyncResult`, which it returns to the calling thread. The calling thread, in this example, stores it in a variable called `iar`.

```
delegate long MyDel( int first, int second ); // Delegate declaration
...
static long Sum(int x, int y){ ... }           // Method matching delegate
...
MyDel del = new MyDel(Sum);                   // Create delegate object
IAsyncResult iar = del.BeginInvoke( 3, 5, null, null );

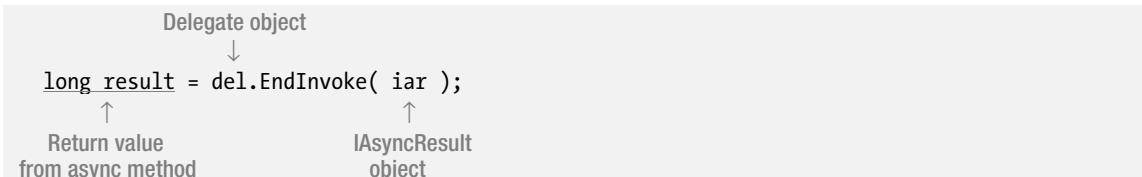
```

↑                      ↑                      ↑                      ↑  
 Information about    Invoke delegate    Delegate            Extra  
 new thread            asynchronously    params            params

You use the `EndInvoke` method to retrieve the values returned by the asynchronous method call and to release resources used by the thread. `EndInvoke` has the following characteristics:

- It takes as a parameter the reference to the `IAsyncResult` returned by the `BeginInvoke` method and finds the thread it refers to.
- If the thread pool thread has exited, `EndInvoke` does the following:
  - It cleans up the exited thread's loose ends and disposes of its resources.
  - It finds the value returned by the referenced method and returns that value as its return value.
- If the thread pool thread is still running when `EndInvoke` is called, the calling thread stops and waits for it to finish before cleaning up and returning the value. Because `EndInvoke` cleans up after the spawned thread, you must make sure that an `EndInvoke` is called for each `BeginInvoke`.
- If the asynchronous method triggers an exception, the exception is raised when `EndInvoke` is called.

The following line of code shows an example of calling `EndInvoke` to retrieve the value from an asynchronous method. You must always include the reference to the `IAsyncResult` object as a parameter.



`EndInvoke` supplies all the output from the asynchronous method call, including `ref` and `out` parameters. If a delegate's referenced method has `ref` or `out` parameters, they must be included in `EndInvoke`'s parameter list before the reference to the `IAsyncResult` object, as shown here:



## The Wait-Until-Done Pattern

Now that you understand the `BeginInvoke` and `EndInvoke` delegate methods, we can look at the asynchronous programming patterns. The first one we'll look at is the wait-until-done pattern. In this pattern, the initial thread initiates an asynchronous method call, does some additional processing, and then stops and waits until the spawned thread finishes. It's summarized as follows:

```
IAsyncResult iar = del.BeginInvoke( 3, 5, null, null );
    // Do additional work in the calling thread, while the method
    // is being executed asynchronously in the spawned thread.
...
long result = del.EndInvoke( iar );
```

The following code shows a full example of this pattern. This code uses the `Sleep` method of the `Thread` class to suspend itself for 100 milliseconds (1/10 of a second). The `Thread` class is in the `System.Threading` namespace.

```
using System;
using System.Threading;                                // For Thread.Sleep()

delegate long MyDel( int first, int second );        // Declare delegate type

class Program {
    static long Sum(int x, int y)                      // Declare method for async
    {
        Console.WriteLine("                           Inside Sum");
        Thread.Sleep(100);

        return x + y;
    }

    static void Main( )
    {
        MyDel del = new MyDel(Sum);

        Console.WriteLine( "Before BeginInvoke" );
        IAsyncResult iar = del.BeginInvoke(3, 5, null, null); // Start async
        Console.WriteLine( "After  BeginInvoke" );

        Console.WriteLine( "Doing stuff" );

        long result = del.EndInvoke( iar );      // Wait for end and get result
        Console.WriteLine( "After  EndInvoke: {0}", result );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Before BeginInvoke
After  BeginInvoke
Doing stuff
                           Inside Sum
After  EndInvoke: 8
```

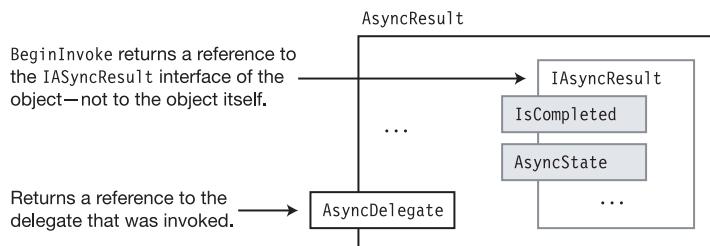
---

## TheAsyncResult Class

Now that you've seen `BeginInvoke` and `EndInvoke` in action in their simplest forms, it's time to take a closer look at `IAsyncResult`, which is an integral part of using these methods.

`BeginInvoke` returns a reference to an `IAsyncResult` interface that is inside a class object of type `AsyncResult`. The `AsyncResult` class represents the state of the asynchronous method. Figure 22-6 shows a representation of some of the important parts of the class. The important things to know about the class are the following:

- When you call a delegate object's `BeginInvoke` method, the system creates an object of the class `AsyncResult`. It doesn't, however, return a reference to the class object. Instead, it returns a reference to the *interface* contained in the object—`IAsyncResult`.
- An `AsyncResult` object contains a property called `AsyncDelegate`, which returns a reference to the delegate that was invoked to start the asynchronous method. This property, however, is part of the class object but not part of the interface.
- The `IsCompleted` property returns a Boolean value indicating whether the asynchronous method has completed.
- The `AsyncState` property returns a reference to the object that was listed as the `state` parameter in the `BeginInvoke` method invocation. It returns a reference of type `object`. I'll explain this in the section on the callback pattern.



**Figure 22-6.** An `AsyncResult` class object

## The Polling Pattern

In the polling pattern, the initial thread initiates an asynchronous method call, does some additional processing, and then uses the `IsCompleted` method of the `IAsyncResult` object to check periodically whether the spawned thread has completed. If the asynchronous method has completed, the initial thread calls `EndInvoke` and continues. Otherwise, it does some additional processing and checks again later. The “processing” in this example just consists of counting from 0 to 10,000,000.

```

delegate long MyDel(int first, int second);

class Program
{
    static long Sum(int x, int y)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("                Inside Sum");
        Thread.Sleep(100);

        return x + y;
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        MyDel del = new MyDel(Sum);  Spawn async method
                                    ↓
        IAsyncResult iar = del.BeginInvoke(3, 5, null, null); // Start async.
        Console.WriteLine("After BeginInvoke");
        Check whether the async method is done.
        ↓
        while ( !iar.IsCompleted )
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Not Done");

            // Continue processing, even though in this case it's just busywork.
            for (long i = 0; i < 10000000; i++)
                ;                                // Empty statement
        }
        Console.WriteLine("Done");
        Call EndInvoke to get result and clean up.
        ↓
        long result = del.EndInvoke(iar);
        Console.WriteLine("Result: {0}", result);
    }
}

```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
After BeginInvoke
Not Done
    Inside Sum
Not Done
Not Done
Done
Result: 8
```

---

## The Callback Pattern

In the previous two patterns, wait-until-done and polling, the initial thread continues with its flow of control only after it knows that the spawned thread has completed. It then retrieves the results and continues.

The callback pattern is different in that once the initial thread spawns the asynchronous method, it goes on its way without synchronizing with it again. When the asynchronous method call completes, the system invokes a user-supplied method to handle its results and to call the delegate's `EndInvoke` method. This user-defined method is called a *callback method*, or just a *callback*.

The two extra parameters at the end of the `BeginInvoke` parameter list are used with the callback method as follows:

- The first of the two parameters, the `callback` parameter, is the name of the callback method.
- The second parameter, the `state` parameter, can be either `null` or a reference to an object you want passed into the callback method. You'll be able to access this object through the method's `IAsyncResult` parameter using its `AsyncState` property. The type of this parameter is `object`.

## The Callback Method

The signature and return type of the callback method must be of the form described by the  `AsyncCallback` delegate type. This form requires that the method take a single parameter of type `IAsyncResult` and have a `void` return type, as shown here:

```
void AsyncCallback( IAsyncResult iar )
```

There are several ways you can supply the callback method to the `BeginInvoke` method. Since the `callback` parameter in `BeginInvoke` is a delegate of type  `AsyncCallback`, you can supply it as a delegate, as shown in the first code statement that follows. Or you can just supply the name of the callback method and let the compiler create the delegate for you. Both forms are semantically equivalent.

```
Create a delegate with the callback method.  
IAsyncResult iar1 = _____ ↓  
    del.BeginInvoke(3, 5, new AsyncCallback(CallWhenDone), null);  
Just use the callback method's name.  
_____ ↓  
IAsyncResult iar2 = del.BeginInvoke(3, 5, CallWhenDone, null);
```

The second `BeginInvoke` parameter is used to send an object to the callback method. It can be an object of any type, but the parameter is of type `object`, so inside the callback method you'll have to cast it to the correct type.

## Calling EndInvoke Inside the Callback Method

Inside the callback method, your code should call the delegate's EndInvoke method and take care of handling the output results of the asynchronous method execution. To call the delegate's EndInvoke method, though, you need a reference to the delegate object, which is in the initial thread—not here in the spawned thread.

If you're not using BeginInvoke's state parameter for anything else, you can use it to send the delegate reference to the callback method, as shown here:

```

    Delegate object           Send delegate object as state param
    ↓                         ↓
IASyncResult iar = del.BeginInvoke(3, 5, CallWhenDone, del);
```

Otherwise, you can extract the delegate's reference from the IAsyncResult object sent into the method as the parameter. This is shown in the following code and illustrated in Figure 22-7.

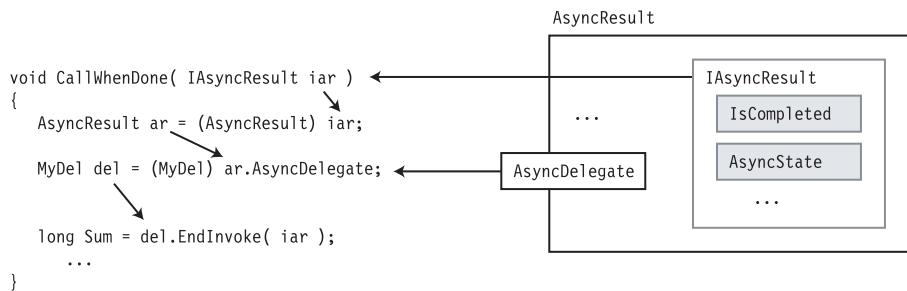
- The single parameter to the callback method is a reference to the IAsyncResult interface of the asynchronous method that has just completed. Remember that the IAsyncResult interface object is inside theAsyncResult class object.
- Although the IAsyncResult interface doesn't have a reference to the delegate object, theAsyncResult class object enclosing it *does* have a reference to the delegate object. So, the first line inside the example method body gets a reference to the class object by casting the interface reference to the class type. Variable ar now has a reference to the class object.
- With the reference to the class object, you can now use the AsyncDelegate property of the class object and cast it to the appropriate delegate type. This gives you the delegate reference, which you can then use to call EndInvoke.

```

using System.Runtime.Remoting.Messaging;      // ContainsAsyncResult class

void CallWhenDone( IAsyncResult iar )
{
   AsyncResult ar = (AsyncResult) iar;          // Get class object reference
    MyDel del = (MyDel) ar.AsyncDelegate;       // Get reference to delegate

    long Sum = del.EndInvoke( iar );            // Call EndInvoke
    ...
}
```



**Figure 22-7.** Extracting the delegate's reference inside the callback method

The following code puts it all together and is an example of using the callback pattern.

```
using System;
using System.Runtime.Remoting.Messaging;      // To access the AsyncResult type
using System.Threading;

delegate long MyDel(int first, int second);

class Program
{
    static long Sum(int x, int y)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("                           Inside Sum");
        Thread.Sleep(100);
        return x + y;
    }

    static void CallWhenDone(IAsyncResult iar)
    {
        Console.WriteLine("                           Inside CallWhenDone.");
        AsyncResult ar = (AsyncResult) iar;
        MyDel del = (MyDel)ar.AsyncDelegate;

        long result = del.EndInvoke(iar);
        Console.WriteLine
            ("                           The result is: {0}.", result);
    }

    static void Main()
    {
        MyDel del = new MyDel(Sum);

        Console.WriteLine("Before BeginInvoke");
        IAsyncResult iar =
            del.BeginInvoke(3, 5, new AsyncCallback(CallWhenDone), null);

        Console.WriteLine("Doing more work in Main.");
        Thread.Sleep(500);
        Console.WriteLine("Done with Main. Exiting.");
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Before BeginInvoke
Doing more work in Main.
                           Inside Sum
                           Inside CallWhenDone.
                           The result is: 8.
Done with Main. Exiting.
```

---

## Timers

Timers provide another way to run an asynchronous method on a regular, recurring basis. Although there are several Timer classes available in the .NET BCL, I'll describe the one in the `System.Threading` namespace.

The important things to know about this timer class are the following:

- The timer uses a callback method that is called each time the timer expires. The callback method must be in the form of the `TimerCallback` delegate, which has the following form. It takes a single parameter of type `object` and has a `void` return type.

```
void TimerCallback( object state )
```

- When the timer expires, the system sets up the callback method on a thread from the thread pool, supplies the `state` object as its parameter, and starts it running.
- You can set a number of the timer's characteristics, including the following:
  - The `dueTime` is the amount of time before the first call of the callback method. If `dueTime` is set to the special value `Timeout.Infinite`, the timer will not start. If it's set to 0, the callback is called immediately.
  - The `period` is the amount of time between each successive call of the callback method. If its value is set to `Timeout.Infinite`, the callback won't be called after the first time.
  - The `state` is either `null` or a reference to an object to be passed to the callback method each time it's executed.

The constructor for the `Timer` class takes as parameters the name of the callback method, the `dueTime`, the `period`, and the `state`. There are several constructors for `Timer`; the one that's probably the most commonly used has the following form:

```
Timer( TimerCallback callback, object state, uint dueTime, uint period)
```

The following code statement shows an example of the creation of a `Timer` object:

<code>Name of the callback</code> ↓ <code>Timer myTimer = new Timer ( MyCallback, someObject, 2000, 1000 );</code>	<code>Call first time after 2000 milliseconds</code> ↓ <code>Object to pass to the callback</code> ↑ <code>Call every 1000 milliseconds</code>
--	--

Once a `Timer` object is created, you can change its `dueTime` or `period` using the `Change` method.

The following code shows an example of using a timer. The `Main` method creates the timer so that it will call the callback for the first time after two seconds and once every second after that. The callback method simply prints out a message, including the number of times it's been called.

```
using System;
using System.Threading;

namespace Timers
{
    class Program
    {
        int TimesCalled = 0;

        void Display (object state)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("{0} {1}",(string)state, ++TimesCalled);
        }

        static void Main( )
        {
            Program p = new Program();           First callback at
                                                2 seconds
            Timer myTimer = new Timer          ↓
                (p.Display, "Processing timer event", 2000, 1000);
            Console.WriteLine("Timer started.");   ↑
            Console.ReadLine();               Repeat every
                                              second
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output before being terminated after about five seconds:

---

```
Timer started.
Processing timer event 1
Processing timer event 2
Processing timer event 3
Processing timer event 4
```

---

There are several other timer classes supplied by the .NET BCL, each having its own uses. The other timer classes are the following:

- `System.Windows.Forms.Timer`: This class is used in Windows Forms applications to periodically place WM\_TIMER messages into the program's message queue. When the program gets the message from the queue, it processes the handler *synchronously* on the main user interface thread. This is extremely important in Windows Forms applications.
- `System.Timers.Timer`: This class is more extensive and contains a number of members for manipulating the timer through properties and methods. It also has a member event called `Elapsed`, which is raised when each period expires. This timer can run on either a user interface thread or a worker thread.



# Preprocessor Directives

- What Are Preprocessor Directives?
- General Rules
- The #define and #undef Directives
- Conditional Compilation
- The Conditional Compilation Constructs
- Diagnostic Directives
- Line Number Directives
- Region Directives
- The #pragma warning Directive

# What Are Preprocessor Directives?

The source code specifies the definition of a program. The *preprocessor directives* instruct the compiler how to treat the source code. For example, under certain conditions, you might want the compiler to ignore portions of the code, and under other conditions, you might want that code compiled. The preprocessor directives give you those options and several others.

In C and C++ there is an actual preprocessor phase, in which the preprocessor goes through the source code and prepares an output stream of text to be processed by the subsequent compilation phase. In C# there is no actual preprocessor. The “preprocessor” directives are handled by the compiler. The term, however, remains.

## General Rules

Some of the most important syntactic rules for preprocessor directives are the following:

- Preprocessor directives must be on lines separate from C# code.
- Unlike C# statements, preprocessor directives are not terminated with a semicolon.
- Every line containing a preprocessor directive must start with the # character.
  - There can be space before the # character.
  - There can be space between the # character and the directive.
- End-of-line comments are allowed.
- Delimited comments are *not* allowed in a preprocessor directive line.

Here are some examples illustrating the rules:

```

No semicolon
↓
#define PremiumVersion // OK

Space before
↓
#define BudgetVersion // OK
# define MediumVersion // OK
↑
Space between           Delimited comments are not allowed.
↓
#define PremiumVersion /* all bells & whistles */
End-of-line comments are fine.
↓
#define BudgetVersion // Stripped-down version

```

The preprocessor directives are listed in Table 23-1.

**Table 23-1. Preprocessor Directives**

Directive	Summary of Meaning
#define identifier	Defines a compilation symbol
#undef identifier	Undefines a compilation symbol
#if expression	If the expression is true, compiles the following section
#elif expression	If the expression is true, compiles the following section
#else	If the previous #if or #elif expression is false, compiles the following section
#endif	Marks the end of an #if construct
#region name	Marks the beginning of a region of code; has no compilation effect
#endregion name	Marks the end of a region of code; has no compilation effect
#warning message	Displays a compile-time warning message
#error message	Displays a compile-time error message
#line indicator	Changes the line numbers displayed in compiler messages
#pragma text	Specifies information about the program context

## The #define and #undef Directives

A *compilation symbol* is an identifier that has only two possible states. It is either *defined* or *undefined*. A compilation symbol has the following characteristics:

- It can be any identifier except true or false. This includes C# keywords and identifiers declared in your C# code—both of which are fine.
- It has no value. Unlike in C and C++, it does not represent a string.

As shown in Table 23-1:

- The #define directive declares a compilation symbol.
- The #undef directive undefines a compilation symbol.

```
#define PremiumVersion
#define EconomyVersion
...
#undef PremiumVersion
```

The #define and #undef directives can be used only at the top of a source file, before any C# code is listed. After the C# code has started, the #define and #undef directives can no longer be used.

```
using System;           // First line of C# code
#define PremiumVersion // Error

namespace Eagle
{
    #define PremiumVersion // Error
    ...
}
```

The scope of a compilation symbol is limited to a single source file. Redefining a symbol that is already defined is perfectly fine—as long as it’s before any C# code, of course.

```
#define AValue
#define BValue

#define AValue           // Redefinition is fine.
```

## Conditional Compilation

Conditional compilation allows you to mark a section of source code to be either compiled or skipped, depending on whether a particular compilation symbol is defined.

There are four directives for specifying conditional compilation:

- `#if`
- `#else`
- `#elif`
- `#endif`

A *condition* is a simple expression that returns either true or false.

- A condition can consist of a single compilation symbol or an expression of symbols and operators, as summarized in Table 23-2. Subexpressions can be grouped with parentheses.
- The literals `true` and `false` can also be used in conditional expressions.

**Table 23-2.** Conditions Used in the `#if` and `#elif` Directives

Parameter Type	Meaning	Evaluation
Compilation symbol	Identifier, defined (or not) using the <code>#define</code> directive	True: If the symbol has been defined using a <code>#define</code> directive False: Otherwise
Expression	Constructed using symbols and the operators <code>!, ==, !=, &amp;&amp;,   </code>	True: If the expression evaluates to <code>true</code> False: Otherwise

The following are examples of conditional compilation conditions:

```

Expression
↓
#if !DemoVersion
...
#endif      Expression
↓
#if (LeftHanded && OemVersion) || FullVersion
...
#endif

#if true    // The following code segment will always be compiled.
...
#endif

```

# The Conditional Compilation Constructs

The `#if` and `#endif` directives are the matching demarcations of a conditional compilation construct. Whenever there is an `#if` directive, there must also be a matching `#endif`.

Figure 23-1 illustrates the `#if` and `#if...#else` constructs.

- If the condition in the `#if` construct evaluates to true, the code section following it is compiled. Otherwise, it is skipped.
- In the `#if...#else` construct, if the condition evaluates to true, *CodeSection1* is compiled. Otherwise, *CodeSection2* is compiled.



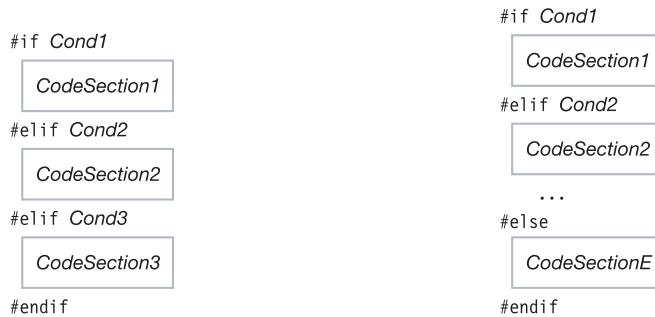
**Figure 23-1.** The `#if` and `#else` constructs

For example, the following code illustrates a simple `#if...#else` construct. If the symbol `RightHanded` is defined, the code between the `#if` and the `#else` will be compiled. Otherwise, the code between the `#else` and the `#endif` will be compiled.

```
...
#if RightHanded
    // Code implementing right-handed functionality
...
#else
    // Code implementing left-handed functionality
...
#endif
```

Figure 23-2 illustrates the `#if...#elif` and `#if...#elif...#else` constructs.

- In the `#if...#elif` construct, if *Cond1* evaluates to true, *CodeSection1* is compiled, and compilation continues after the `#endif`.
  - Otherwise, if *Cond2* evaluates to true, *CodeSection2* is compiled, and compilation continues after the `#endif`.
  - This continues until either a condition evaluates to true or all the conditions have returned false. If that's the case, none of the code sections in the construct are compiled, and compilation continues after the `#endif`.
- The `#if...#elif...#else` construct works the same way, except that if no condition is true, then the code section after the `#else` is then compiled, and compilation continues after the `#endif`.



**Figure 23-2.** The `#elif` construct

The following code demonstrates the #if...#elif...#else construct. The string containing the description of the version of the program is set to various values, depending on which compilation symbol is defined.

```
#define DemoVersionWithoutTimeLimit
    ...
    const int intExpireLength = 30;
    string strVersionDesc = null;
    int    intExpireCount = 0;

#if   DemoVersionWithTimeLimit
    intExpireCount = intExpireLength;
    strVersionDesc = "This version of Supergame Plus will expire in 30 days";

#elif DemoVersionWithoutTimeLimit
    strVersionDesc = "Demo Version of Supergame Plus";

#elif OEMVersion
    strVersionDesc = "Supergame Plus, distributed under license";

#else
    strVersionDesc = "The original Supergame Plus!!";

#endif

Console.WriteLine( strVersionDesc );
    ...
```

# Diagnostic Directives

Diagnostic directives produce user-defined compile-time warning and error messages.

The following is the syntax of the diagnostic directives. The messages are strings, but notice that unlike normal C# strings, they do not have to be enclosed in quotation marks.

```
#warning Message
```

```
#error Message
```

When the compiler reaches a diagnostic directive, it writes out the associated message. The diagnostic directive messages are listed by the compiler along with any compiler-generated warning and error messages.

For example, the following code shows an #error directive and a #warning directive.

- The #error directive is inside an #if construct so that it will be generated only if the conditions on the #if directive are met.
- The #warning directive is a reminder to the programmer to come back and clean up a section of code.

```
#define RightHanded
#define LeftHanded

#if RightHanded && LeftHanded
#error Can't build for both RightHanded and LeftHanded
#endif

#warning Remember to come back and clean up this code!
```

## Line Number Directives

Line number directives can do several things, including the following:

- Change the apparent line numbers reported by the compiler's warning and error messages
- Change the apparent file name of the source file being compiled
- Hide a sequence of lines from the interactive debugger

The syntax for the #line directives is the following:

```
#line integer           // Sets line number of next line to value of integer
#line "filename"       // Sets the apparent filename
#line default           // Restores real line number and filename

#line hidden            // Hides the following code from stepping debugger
#line                   // Stops hiding from debugger
```

The #line directive with an integer parameter causes the compiler to consider that value to be the line number of the following line of code. Numbering of the subsequent lines continues, based on that line number.

- To change the apparent file name, use the file name, inside double quotes, as the parameter. The double quotes are required.
- To return to true line numbering and the true file name, use default as the parameter.
- To hide a segment of code from the step-through-code feature of the interactive debugger, use hidden as the parameter. To stop hiding, use the directive with no parameter. This feature has, so far, mostly been used in ASP.NET and WPF for hiding compiler-generated code.

The following code shows examples of the line number directives:

```
#line 226
    x = y + z; // Now considered by the compiler to be line 226
    ...
#line 330 "SourceFile.cs" // Changes the reported line number and filename
    var1 = var2 + var3;
    ...
#line default           // Restores true line numbers and filename
```

## Region Directives

The region directive allows you to mark, and optionally name, a section of code. The characteristics of the #region directive are the following:

- It is placed on the line above the section of code you want to mark.
- It can take an optional string of text following it on the line, which serves as its name.
- It must be terminated by an #endregion directive, further down in the code.

Although region directives are ignored by the compiler, they can be used by source code tools. Visual Studio, for example, allows you to easily hide or display regions.

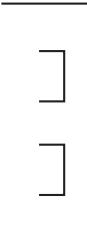
As an example, the following code has a region called Constructors, which encloses the two constructors of class MyClass. In Visual Studio, you could collapse this region to a single line when you didn't want to see it in the code and then expand it again when you needed to work on it or add another constructor.

```
#region Constructors
    MyClass()
    {
        ...
    }

    MyClass(string s)
    {
        ...
    }
#endregion
```

Regions can be nested, as shown in Figure 23-3.

```
static void Main( )
{
    ...
    #region first
        ...
        #region second
            ...
            #endregion
        #region third
            ...
            #endregion
        #endregion
    }
```



**Figure 23-3.** Nested regions

## The `#pragma warning` Directive

The `#pragma warning` directive allows you to turn off warning messages and to turn them back on.

- To turn off warning messages, use the `disable` form with a comma-separated list of warning numbers you want to turn off.
- To turn warning messages back on, use the `restore` form with a list of the warning numbers you want to turn back on.

For example, the following code turns off two warning messages: 618 and 414. Further down in the code, it turns on messages for 618 but leaves the messages for 414 turned off.

```
Warning messages to turn off
↓
#pragma warning disable 618, 414
...      Messages for the listed warnings are off in this section of code.
#pragma warning restore 618
```

If you use either form without a warning number list, the command then applies to all warnings. For example, the following code turns off, and then restores, all warning messages.

```
#pragma warning disable
...      All warning messages are turned off in this section of code.

#pragma warning restore
...      All warning messages are turned back on in this section of code.
```



# Reflection and Attributes

- Metadata and Reflection
- The Type Class
- Getting a Type Object
- What Is an Attribute?
- Applying an Attribute
- Predefined, Reserved Attributes
- More About Applying Attributes
- Custom Attributes
- Accessing an Attribute

## Metadata and Reflection

Most programs are written to work on data. They read, write, manipulate, and display data. (Graphics are a form of data.) The types that you as the programmer create and use are designed for these purposes, and it is you, at design time, who must understand the characteristics of the types you use.

For some types of programs, however, the data they manipulate is not numbers, text, or graphics but information about programs and program types.

- Data about programs and their types is called *metadata* and is stored in the programs' assemblies.
- A program can look at the metadata of other assemblies or of itself, while it's running. When a running program looks at its own metadata, or that of other programs, it's called *reflection*.

An object browser is an example of a program that displays metadata. It can read assemblies and display the types they contain, along with all the characteristics and members.

This chapter will look at how your programs can reflect on data using the `Type` class and how you can add metadata to your types using *attributes*.

**Note** To use reflection, you must use the `System.Reflection` namespace.

## The Type Class

Throughout this text I've described how to declare and use the types available in C#. These include the predefined types (`int`, `long`, `string`, and so on), types from the BCL (`Console`, `IEnumerable`, and so on), and user-defined types (`MyClass`, `MyDel`, and so on). Every type has its own members and characteristics.

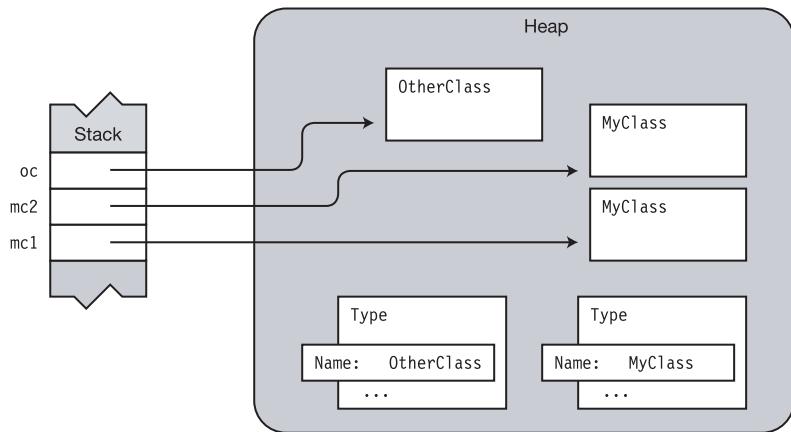
The BCL declares an abstract class called `Type`, which is designed to contain the characteristics of a type. Using objects of this class allows you to get information about the types your program is using.

Since `Type` is an abstract class, it cannot have actual instances. Instead, at run time, the CLR creates instances of a class *derived* from `Type` (`RuntimeType`) that contains the type information. When you access one of these instances, the CLR returns a reference, not of the derived type but of the base class `Type`. For simplicity's sake, though, throughout the rest of the chapter, I'll call the object pointed at by the reference an object of type `Type`, although technically it's an object of a derived type that is internal to the BCL.

Important things to know about `Type` are the following:

- For every type used in a program, the CLR creates a `Type` object that contains the information about the type.
- Every type used in a program is associated with a separate `Type` object.
- Regardless of the number of instances of a type that are created, there is only a single `Type` object associated with all the instances.

Figure 24-1 shows a running program with two `MyClass` objects and an `OtherClass` object. Notice that although there are two instances of `MyClass`, there is only a single `Type` object representing it.



**Figure 24-1.** The CLR instantiates objects of type `Type` for every type used in a program.

You can get almost anything you need to know about a type from its `Type` object. Table 24-1 lists some of the more useful members of the class.

**Table 24-1.** Selected Members of Class `System.Type`

Member	Member Type	Description
<code>Name</code>	Property	Returns the name of the type.
<code>Namespace</code>	Property	Returns the namespace containing the type declaration.
<code>Assembly</code>	Property	Returns the assembly in which the type is declared. If the type is generic, it returns the assembly in which the type is defined.
<code>GetFields</code>	Method	Returns a list of the type's fields.
<code>GetProperties</code>	Method	Returns a list of the type's properties.
<code>GetMethods</code>	Method	Returns a list of the type's methods.

## Getting a Type Object

There are several ways to get a Type object. We'll look at using the `GetType` method and using the `typeof` operator.

Type object contains a method called `GetType`, which returns a reference to an instance's Type object. Since every type is ultimately derived from `object`, you can call the `GetType` method on an object of any type to get its Type object, as shown here:

```
Type t = myInstance.GetType();
```

The following code shows the declarations of a base class and a class derived from it. Method `Main` creates an instance of each class and places the references in an array called `bca` for easy processing. Inside the outer `foreach` loop, the code gets the Type object and prints out the name of the class. It then gets the fields of the class and prints them out. Figure 24-2 illustrates the objects in memory.

```
using System;
using System.Reflection; // Must use this namespace

class BaseClass
{ public int BaseField = 0; }

class DerivedClass : BaseClass
{ public int DerivedField = 0; }

class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        var bc = new BaseClass();
        var dc = new DerivedClass();
        BaseClass[] bca = new BaseClass[] { bc, dc };

        foreach (var v in bca)
        {
            Type t = v.GetType(); // Get the type.
            Console.WriteLine("Object type : {0}", t.Name);

            FieldInfo[] fi = t.GetFields(); // Get the field info.
            foreach (var f in fi)
                Console.WriteLine("      Field : {0}", f.Name);
            Console.WriteLine();
        }
    }
}
```

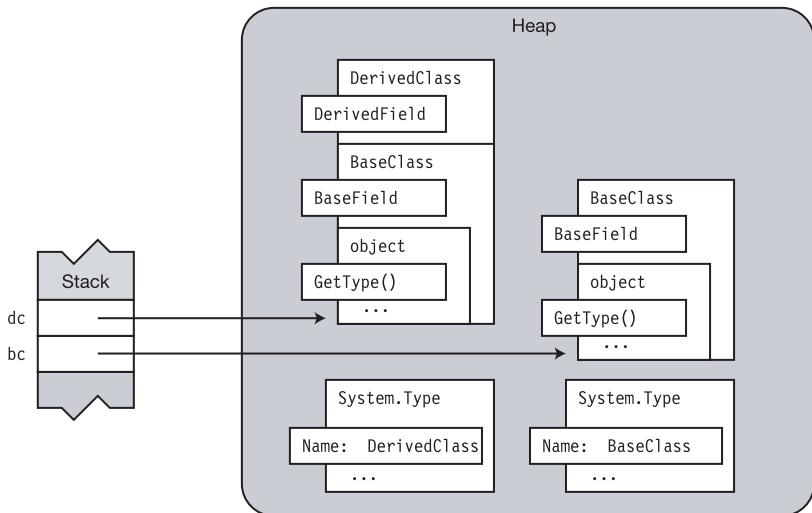
This code produces the following output:

---

```
Object type : BaseClass
  Field : BaseField

Object type : DerivedClass
  Field : DerivedField
  Field : BaseField
```

---



**Figure 24-2.** The base class and derived class objects along with their Type objects

You can also use the `typeof` operator to get a `Type` object. Just supply the name of the type as the operand, and it returns a reference to the `Type` object, as shown here:

```
Type t = typeof( DerivedClass );
      ↑          ↑
      Operator    Type you want the Type object for
```

The following code shows a simple example of using the `typeof` operator:

```
using System;
using System.Reflection; // Must use this namespace

namespace SimpleReflection
{
    class BaseClass
    { public int MyFieldBase; }

    class DerivedClass : BaseClass
    { public int MyFieldDerived; }

    class Program
    {
        static void Main( )
        {
            Type tbc = typeof(DerivedClass); // Get the type.
            Console.WriteLine("Result is {0}.", tbc.Name);

            Console.WriteLine("It has the following fields:"); // Use the type.
            FieldInfo[] fi = tbc.GetFields();
            foreach (var f in fi)
                Console.WriteLine("    {0}", f.Name);
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Result is DerivedClass.
It has the following fields:
    MyFieldDerived
    MyFieldBase
```

---

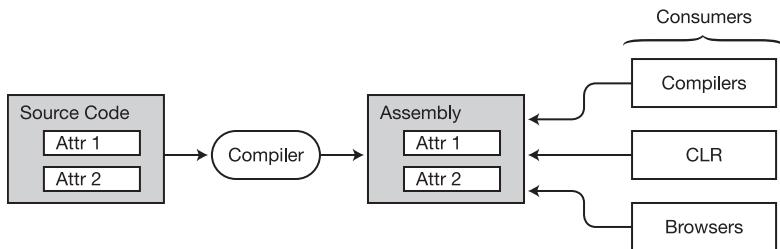
## What Is an Attribute?

An *attribute* is a language construct that allows you to add metadata to a program's assembly. It's a special type of class for storing information about program constructs.

- The program construct to which you apply an attribute is called its *target*.
- Programs designed to retrieve and use metadata, such as object browsers, are said to be *consumers* of the attributes.
- There are attributes that are predefined in .NET, and you can also declare custom attributes.

Figure 24-3 is an overview of the components involved in using attributes and illustrates the following points about them:

- You *apply* attributes to program constructs in the source code.
- The compiler takes the source code and produces metadata from the attributes and places that metadata in the assembly.
- Consumer programs can access the metadata of the attributes along with the metadata for the rest of the components of the program. Notice that the compiler both produces and consumes attributes.



**Figure 24-3.** The components involved with creating and using attributes

By convention, attribute names use Pascal casing and end with the suffix `Attribute`. When applying an attribute to a target, you can leave off the suffix. For example, for attributes `SerializableAttribute` and `MyAttributeAttribute`, you can use the short names `Serializable` and `MyAttribute` when applying them to a construct.

## Applying an Attribute

The purpose of an attribute is to tell the compiler to emit a certain set of metadata about a program construct to the assembly. You do this by *applying* the attribute to the construct.

- You apply an attribute by placing an *attribute section* immediately before the construct.
- An *attribute section* consists of square brackets enclosing an attribute name and sometimes a parameter list.

For example, the following code shows the headings of two classes. The first few lines of code show an attribute named `Serializable` applied to class `MyClass`. Notice that `Serializable` has no parameter list. The second class declaration has an attribute called `MyAttribute`, which has a parameter list with two string parameters.

```
[ Serializable ]                                // Attribute
public class MyClass
{
    ...
[ MyAttribute("Simple class", "Version 3.57") ]  // Attribute with parameters
public class MyOtherClass
{
    ...
```

Some important things to know about attributes are the following:

- Most attributes apply only to the construct immediately following the attribute section or sections.
- A construct with an attribute applied to it is said to be *decorated*, or *adorned*, with the attribute. Both terms are common.

# Predefined, Reserved Attributes

Before looking at how you can define your own attributes, this section describes two attributes predefined and reserved by .NET: the `Obsolete` and `Conditional` attributes.

## The `Obsolete` Attribute

The `Obsolete` attribute allows you to mark a program construct as obsolete and to display a helpful warning message when the code is compiled. The following code shows an example of its use:

```
class Program      Apply attribute
{
    [Obsolete("Use method SuperPrintOut")]
    static void PrintOut(string str)
    {
        Console.WriteLine(str);
    }

    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        PrintOut("Start of Main");           // Invoke obsolete method
    }
}
```

Notice that method `Main` calls `PrintOut` even though it's marked as obsolete. In spite of this, the code compiles and runs fine and produces the following output:

---

Start of Main

---

During compilation, though, the compiler produces the following CS0618 warning message to inform you that you're using an obsolete construct:

---

'AttrObs.Program.PrintOut(string)' is obsolete: 'Use method SuperPrintOut'

---

Another overload of the `Obsolete` attribute takes a second parameter of type `bool`. This parameter specifies whether use of the target should be flagged as an error instead of just a warning. The following code specifies that it should be flagged as an error:

```
Flag as an error
↓
[ Obsolete("Use method SuperPrintOut", true) ] // Apply attribute to method
static void PrintOut(string str)
{ ... }
```

## The Conditional Attribute

The `Conditional` attribute allows you to either include or exclude all the *invocations* of a particular method. To use the `Conditional` attribute, apply it to the method declaration, along with a compilation symbol as a parameter.

- If the compilation symbol is defined, the compiler includes the code for all the invocations of the method, the way it would for any normal method.
- If the compilation symbol is *not* defined, the compiler *omits* all the method invocations throughout the code.

The CIL code defining the method itself is always included in the assembly. It's just the invocations that are either inserted or omitted.

For example, in the following code, the `Conditional` attribute is applied to the declaration of a method called `TraceMessage`. The attribute has a single parameter, which in this case is the string `DoTrace`.

- When the compiler is compiling the code, it checks whether there is a compilation symbol named `DoTrace` defined.
- If `DoTrace` is defined, the compiler includes all the calls to method `TraceMessage`, as usual.
- If there is no `DoTrace` compilation symbol defined, it doesn't output code for any of the calls to `TraceMessage`.

```
Compilation symbol
↓
[Conditional( "DoTrace" )]
static void TraceMessage(string str)
{
    Console.WriteLine(str);
}
```

## Example of the Conditional Attribute

The following code shows a full example of using the `Conditional` attribute.

- Method `Main` contains two calls to method `TraceMessage`.
- The declaration for method `TraceMessage` is decorated with the `Conditional` attribute, which has the compilation symbol `DoTrace` as its parameter. So if `DoTrace` is defined, the compiler will include the code for all the calls to `TraceMessage`.
- Since the first line of code defines a compilation symbol named `DoTrace`, the compiler will include the code for both calls to `TraceMessage`.

```
#define DoTrace
using System;
using System.Diagnostics;

namespace AttributesConditional
{
    class Program
    {
        [Conditional( "DoTrace" )]
        static void TraceMessage(string str)
        { Console.WriteLine(str); }

        static void Main( )
        {
            TraceMessage("Start of Main");
            Console.WriteLine("Doing work in Main.");
            TraceMessage("End of Main");
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Start of Main
Doing work in Main.
End of Main
```

---

If you comment out the first line so that `DoTrace` is not defined, the compiler will not insert the code for the two calls to `TraceMessage`. This time, when you run the program, it produces the following output:

---

```
Doing work in Main.
```

---

## Predefined Attributes

The .NET Framework predefines a number of attributes that are understood and interpreted by the compiler and the CLR. Table 24-2 lists some of these. The table uses the short names, without the “Attribute” suffix. For example, the full name of `CLSCompliant` is `CLSCompliantAttribute`.

**Table 24-2.** *Important Attributes Defined in .NET*

Attribute	Meaning
<code>CLSCompliant</code>	Declares that the publicly exposed members should be checked by the compiler for compliance with the CLS. Compliant assemblies can be used by any .NET-compliant language.
<code>Serializable</code>	Declares that the construct can be serialized.
<code>NonSerialized</code>	Declares that the construct cannot be serialized.
<code>Obsolete</code>	Declares that the construct should not be used. The compiler also produces a compile-time warning or error message, if the construct is used.
<code>DLLImport</code>	Declares that the implementation is unmanaged code.
<code>WebMethod</code>	Declares that the method should be exposed as part of an XML web service.
<code>AttributeUsage</code>	Declares what types of program constructs the attribute can be applied to. This attribute is applied to attribute declarations.

## More About Applying Attributes

The simple attributes shown so far have used a single attribute applied to a method. This section describes other types of attribute usage.

### Multiple Attributes

You can apply multiple attributes to a single construct.

- Multiple attributes can be listed in either of the following formats:
  - Separate attribute sections stacked on top of each other
  - A single attribute section, with the attributes separated by commas
- You can list the attributes in any order.

For example, the following two sections of code show the two ways of applying multiple attributes. The sections of code are equivalent.

```
[ Serializable ]                                     // Stacked
[ MyAttribute("Simple class", "Version 3.57") ]  
  
[ MyAttribute("Simple class", "Version 3.57"), Serializable ] // Commas
    ↑                                         ↑
    Attribute          Attribute
```

## Other Types of Targets

Besides classes, you can also apply attributes to other program constructs such as fields and properties. The following declaration shows an attribute on a field, and multiple attributes on a method:

```
[MyAttribute("Holds a value", "Version 3.2")] // On a field
public int MyField;

[Obsolete]
[MyAttribute("Prints out a message.", "Version 3.6")]
public void PrintOut()
{
    ...
}
```

You can also explicitly label attributes to apply to a particular target construct. To use an explicit target, place the target type, followed by a colon, at the beginning of the attribute section. For example, the following code decorates the *method* with an attribute and also applies an attribute to the *return value*.

Explicit target  
↓

```
[method: MyAttribute("Prints out a message.", "Version 3.6")]
[return: MyAttribute("This value represents ...", "Version 2.3")]
public long ReturnSetting()
{
    ...
}
```

The C# language defines ten standard attribute targets, which are listed in Table 24-3. Most of the target names are self-explanatory, but *type* covers classes, structs, delegates, enums, and interfaces. The *typevar* target name specifies type parameters to constructs that use generics.

**Table 24-3. Attribute Targets**

event	field
method	param
property	return
type	typevar
assembly	module

## Global Attributes

You can also use an explicit target to set attributes at the assembly and module level, by using the assembly and module target names. (Assemblies and modules were explained in Chapter 10.) Some important points about assembly-level attributes are the following:

- Assembly-level attributes must be placed outside any namespace scope and are usually placed in the `AssemblyInfo.cs` file.
- The `AssemblyInfo.cs` file usually contains metadata about the company, product, and copyright information.

The following are lines from an `AssemblyInfo.cs` file:

```
[assembly: AssemblyTitle("SuperWidget")]
[assembly: AssemblyDescription("Implements the SuperWidget product.")]
[assembly: AssemblyConfiguration("")]
[assembly: AssemblyCompany("McArthur Widgets, Inc.")]
[assembly: AssemblyProduct("Super Widget Deluxe")]
[assembly: AssemblyCopyright("Copyright © McArthur Widgets 2010")]
[assembly: AssemblyTrademark("")]
[assembly: AssemblyCulture("")]
```

## Custom Attributes

You've probably noticed that the syntax for applying an attribute is very different from anything you've seen so far. From that, you might get the impression that attributes are an entirely different type of construct. They're not—they're just a special kind of class.

Some important points about attribute classes are the following:

- User-defined attribute classes are called *custom attributes*.
- All attribute classes are derived from class `System.Attribute`.

## Declaring a Custom Attribute

Declaring an attribute class is, for the most part, the same as declaring any other class. There are, however, several things to be aware of:

- To declare a custom attribute, do the following:
  - Declare a class derived from `System.Attribute`.
  - Give it a name ending with the suffix `Attribute`.
- For security, it's generally suggested that you declare your attribute classes as sealed.

For example, the following code shows the beginning of the declaration of attribute `MyAttributeAttribute`:

```
public sealed class MyAttributeAttribute : System.Attribute
{
    ...
}
```

Since an attribute holds information about the target, the public members of an attribute class generally consist only of the following:

- Fields
- Properties
- Constructors

## Using Attribute Constructors

Attributes, like other classes, have constructors. Every attribute must have at least one public constructor.

- As with other classes, if you don't declare a constructor, the compiler will produce an implicit, public, parameterless constructor for you.
- Attribute constructors, like other constructors, can be overloaded.
- When declaring the constructor, you must use the full class name, including the suffix. You can use the shortened name only when *applying* an attribute.

For example, with the following constructor, the compiler would produce an error message if the name did not include the suffix:

```


public MyAttributeAttribute(string desc, string ver)
{
    Description = desc;
    VersionNumber = ver;
}
```

## Specifying the Constructor

When you apply an attribute to a target, you are specifying which constructor should be used to create the instance of the attribute. The parameters listed in the attribute application are the actual parameters for the constructor.

For example, in the following code, `MyAttribute` is applied to a field and to a method. For the field, the declaration specifies a constructor with a single `string` parameter. For the method, it specifies a constructor with two `string` parameters.

```

[MyAttribute("Holds a value")]           // Constructor with one string
public int MyField;

[MyAttribute("Version 1.3", "Sal Martin")] // Constructor with two strings
public void MyMethod()
{ ... }
```

Other important points about attribute constructors are the following:

- When applying an attribute, the actual parameters for the constructor must be constant expressions whose values can be determined at compile time.
- If you apply an attribute constructor with no parameters, you can leave off the parentheses. For example, both classes in the following code use the parameterless constructor for the attribute `MyAttr`. The meanings of the two forms are the same.

```
[MyAttr]
class SomeClass ...

[MyAttr()]
class OtherClass ...
```

## Using the Constructor

You cannot call the constructor explicitly. An instance of an attribute is created, and a constructor called, only when an attribute consumer accesses the attribute. This is very different from other class instances, which are created at the position where you use an object-creation expression. Applying an attribute is a declarative statement that does not determine when an object of the attribute class should be constructed.

Figure 24-4 compares the use of a constructor for a regular class and the use of a constructor with attributes.

- The imperative statement says, in effect, “Create a new class object here.”
- The declarative statement says, “This attribute is associated with this target, and in case the attribute needs to be constructed, use this constructor.”

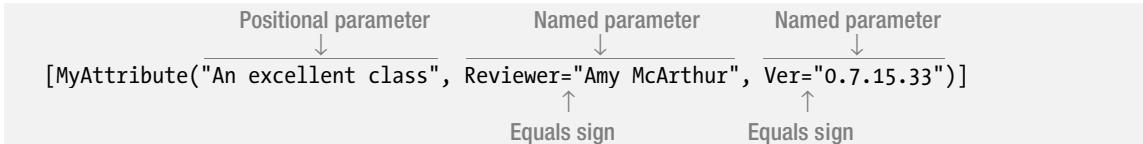
<pre> MyClass mc = new MyClass("Hello", 15);</pre>	<pre> [MyAttribute("Holds a value")]</pre>
Imperative Statement	Declarative Statement

**Figure 24-4.** Comparing the use of constructors

## Positional and Named Parameters in Constructors

Like the methods and constructors of regular classes, the attribute constructors can also use positional and named parameters.

The following code shows the application of an attribute using a positional parameter and two named parameters:



The following code shows the declaration of the attribute class, as well as its application on class `MyClass`. Notice that the constructor *declaration* lists only a single formal parameter. And yet, by using named parameters, you can give the constructor three actual parameters. The two named parameters set the values of fields `Ver` and `Reviewer`.

```
public sealed class MyAttributeAttribute : System.Attribute
{
    public string Description;
    public string Ver;
    public string Reviewer;

    public MyAttributeAttribute(string desc) // Single formal parameters
    { Description = desc; }
}                                     Three actual parameters
                                         ↓
[MyAttribute("An excellent class", Reviewer="Amy McArthur", Ver="7.15.33")]
class MyClass
{ ... }
```

---

**Note** If the constructor requires any positional parameters, they must be placed before any named parameters.

---

## Restricting the Usage of an Attribute

You've seen that you can apply attributes to classes. But attributes *themselves* are classes, and there is one important predefined attribute that you can apply to your custom attributes. It's the `AttributeUsage` attribute. You can use it to restrict the usage of an attribute to a specific set of target types.

For example, if you want your custom attribute `MyAttribute` to be applied only to methods, you could use the following form of `AttributeUsage`:

```

    Only to methods
    ↓
[ AttributeUsage( AttributeTarget.Method ) ]
public sealed class MyAttributeAttribute : System.Attribute
{ ... }
```

`AttributeUsage` has three important public properties, which are listed in Table 24-4. The table shows the names of the properties and their meanings. For the second two properties, it also shows their default values.

**Table 24-4. Public Properties of `AttributeUsage`**

Name	Meaning	Default
<code>ValidOn</code>	Stores a list of the types of targets to which the attribute can be applied. The first parameter of the constructor must be an enum value of type <code>AttributeTarget</code> .	
<code>Inherited</code>	A Boolean value that specifies whether the attribute can be inherited by derived classes of the decorated type.	true
<code>AllowMultiple</code>	A Boolean value that specifies whether the target can have multiple instances of the attribute applied to it.	false

## The Constructor for AttributeUsage

The constructor for `AttributeUsage` takes a single, positional parameter that specifies which target types are allowed for the attribute. It uses this parameter to set the `ValidOn` property. The acceptable target types are members of the `AttributeTarget` enumeration. Table 24-5 shows the complete set of the members of the `AttributeTarget` enumeration.

You can combine the usage types by using the bitwise OR operator. For example, the attribute declared in the following code can be applied only to methods and constructors.

```

Targets
↓
[ AttributeUsage( AttributeTarget.Method | AttributeTarget.Constructor ) ]
public sealed class MyAttributeAttribute : System.Attribute
{ ... }
```

**Table 24-5. Members of `Enum AttributeTarget`**

All	Assembly	Class	Constructor
Delegate	Enum	Event	Field
GenericParameter	Interface	Method	Module
Parameter	Property	ReturnValue	Struct

When you apply `AttributeUsage` to an attribute declaration, the constructor will have at least the one required parameter, which contains the target types to be stored in `ValidOn`. You can also optionally set the `Inherited` and `AllowMultiple` properties by using named parameters. If you don't set them, they'll have their default values, as shown in Table 24-4.

As an example, the next code block specifies the following about `MyAttribute`:

- `MyAttribute` must be applied only to classes.
- `MyAttribute` is not inherited by classes derived from classes to which it is applied.
- There cannot be multiple instances of `MyAttribute` applied to the same target.

```

[ AttributeUsage( AttributeTarget.Class,           // Required, positional
                  Inherited = false,          // Optional, named
                  AllowMultiple = false ) ]  // Optional, named
public sealed class MyAttributeAttribute : System.Attribute
{ ... }
```

## Suggested Practices for Custom Attributes

The following practices are strongly suggested when writing custom attributes:

- The attribute class should represent some state of the target construct.
- If the attribute *requires* certain fields, include a constructor with positional parameters to collect that data, and let optional fields be initialized with named parameters, as needed.
- Don't implement public methods or other function members other than properties.
- For additional security, declare the attribute class as `sealed`.
- Use the `AttributeUsage` attribute on your attribute declaration to explicitly specify the set of attribute targets.

The following code illustrates these guidelines:

```
[AttributeUsage( AttributeTargets.Class )]
public sealed class ReviewCommentAttribute : System.Attribute
{
    public string Description { get; set; }
    public string VersionNumber { get; set; }
    public string ReviewerID { get; set; }

    public ReviewCommentAttribute(string desc, string ver)
    {
        Description = desc;
        VersionNumber = ver;
    }
}
```

## Accessing an Attribute

At the beginning of the chapter, you saw that you can access information about a type using its `Type` object. You can access custom attributes in the same way. There are two methods of `Type` that are particularly useful in this: `IsDefined` and `GetCustomAttributes`.

### Using the `IsDefined` Method

You can use the `IsDefined` method of the `Type` object to determine whether a particular attribute is applied to a particular class.

For example, the following code declares an attributed class called `MyClass` and also acts as its own attribute consumer by accessing an attribute declared and applied in the program itself. At the top of the code are declarations of the attribute `ReviewComment` and the class `MyClass`, to which it is applied. The code does the following:

- First, Main creates an object of the class. It then retrieves a reference to the `Type` object by using the `GetType` method, which it inherited from its base class, `object`.
- With the reference to the `Type` object, it can call the `IsDefined` method to find out whether attribute `ReviewComment` is applied to this class.
  - The first parameter takes a `Type` object of the *attribute* you are checking for.
  - The second parameter is of type `bool` and specifies whether to search the inheritance tree of `MyClass` to find the attribute.

```
[AttributeUsage(AttributeTargets.Class)]
public sealed class ReviewCommentAttribute : System.Attribute
{ ... }

[ReviewComment("Check it out", "2.4")]
class MyClass { }

class Program {
    static void Main() {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass(); // Create an instance of the class.
        Type t = mc.GetType(); // Get the Type object from the instance.
        bool isDefined = // Check the Type for the attribute.
            t.IsDefined(typeof(ReviewCommentAttribute), false);

        if( isDefined )
            Console.WriteLine("ReviewComment is applied to type {0}", t.Name);
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

ReviewComment is applied to type MyClass

---

## Using the GetCustomAttributes Method

The `GetCustomAttributes` method returns an array of the attributes applied to a construct.

- The actual object returned is an array of objects, which you must then cast to the correct attribute type.
- The Boolean parameter specifies whether to search the inheritance tree to find the attribute.

```
object[] AttArr = t.GetCustomAttributes(false);
```
- When the `GetCustomAttributes` method is called, an instance of each attribute associated with the target is created.

The following code uses the same attribute and class declarations as the previous example. But in this case, it doesn't just determine whether an attribute is applied to the class. Instead, it retrieves an array of the attributes applied to the class and cycles through them, printing out their member values.

```
static void Main()
{
    Type t = typeof(MyClass);
    object[] AttArr = t.GetCustomAttributes(false);

    foreach (Attribute a in AttArr)
    {
        ReviewCommentAttribute attr = a as ReviewCommentAttribute;
        if (null != attr)
        {
            Console.WriteLine("Description : {0}", attr.Description);
            Console.WriteLine("Version Number : {0}", attr.VersionNumber);
            Console.WriteLine("Reviewer ID : {0}", attr.ReviewerID);
        }
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Description : Check it out
Version Number : 2.4
Reviewer ID :
```

---



# Other Topics

- Overview
- Strings
- Parsing Strings to Data Values
- More About the Nullable Types
- Method Main
- Documentation Comments
- Nested Types
- External Methods
- Interoperating With COM

## Overview

In this chapter, I'll cover a number of other topics that are important in using C# but that don't fit neatly into one of the other chapters. These include string handling, nullable types, the `Main` method, documentation comments, and nested types.

## Strings

0s and 1s are fine for internal computation, but for human-readable input and output, we need strings of characters. The BCL provides a number of classes that make string handling easy.

The C# predefined type `string` represents the .NET class `System.String`. The most important things to know about strings are the following:

- Strings are arrays of Unicode characters.
- Strings are immutable—they cannot be changed.

The `string` type has many useful string-manipulation members, including those that allow you to determine their length, change their case, concatenate strings, and perform many other useful tasks. Table 25-1 shows some of the most useful members.

**Table 25-1. Useful Members of the `string` Type**

Member	Type	Meaning
Length	Property	Returns the length of the string
Concat	Static method	Returns a string that is the concatenation of its argument strings
Contains	Method	Returns a <code>bool</code> value indicating whether the argument is a substring of the object string
Format	Static method	Returns a formatted string
Insert	Method	Takes as parameters a string and a position and creates and returns a new copy of the object string, with the parameter string inserted at the given position.
Remove	Method	Returns a copy of the object string in which a substring has been removed
Replace	Method	Returns a copy of the object string in which a substring has been replaced
Substring	Method	Retrieves a substring from the object string
ToUpper	Method	Returns a copy of the object string in which the alphabetic characters are all uppercase
ToLower	Method	Returns a copy of the object string in which the alphabetic characters are all lowercase

The names of many of the methods in Table 25-1 sound as if they are changing the string object. Actually, they're not changing the strings but returning new copies. For a string, any "change" allocates a new immutable string.

For example, the following code declares and initializes a string called s. The first `WriteLine` statement calls the `ToUpper` method on s, which returns a copy of the string in all uppercase. The last line prints out the value of s, showing that it is unchanged.

```
string s = "Hi there.";  
Console.WriteLine("{0}", s.ToUpper());           // Print uppercase copy  
Console.WriteLine("{0}", s);                     // String is unchanged
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
HI THERE.  
Hi there.
```

---

## Using Class StringBuilder

The `StringBuilder` class helps you dynamically and efficiently produce strings without too many copies being made.

- The `StringBuilder` class is a member of the BCL, in namespace `System.Text`.
- A `StringBuilder` object is a *mutable* array of Unicode characters.

For example, the following code declares and initializes a `StringBuilder` and prints its resulting string value. The fourth line changes the actual object by replacing part of the internal array of characters. Now when you print its string value by implicitly calling `ToString`, you can see that, unlike an object of type `string`, the `StringBuilder` object has actually been changed.

```
using System.Text;

StringBuilder sb = new StringBuilder("Hi there.");
Console.WriteLine("{0}", sb);           // Print string
sb.Replace("Hi", "Hello");            // Replace a substring
Console.WriteLine("{0}", sb);           // Print changed string
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
Hi there.
Hello there.
```

---

When a `StringBuilder` object is created based on a given string, the class allocates a buffer longer than the actual current string length. As long as the changes made to the string can fit in the buffer, no new memory is allocated. If changes to the string require more space than is available in the buffer, a new, larger buffer is allocated, and the characters are copied to it. Like the original buffer, this new buffer also has extra space.

To get the `string` corresponding to the `StringBuilder` content, you simply call its `ToString` method.

## Formatting Numeric Strings

Throughout the text, the sample code has used the `WriteLine` method to display values. Each time, it used the simple substitution marker consisting of curly braces surrounding an integer. Many times, however, you'll want to present the output of a text string in a format more appropriate than just a plain number. For example, you might want to display a value as currency or as a fixed-point value with a certain number of decimal places. You can do these things by using format strings.

For example, the following code consists of two statements that print out the value 500. The first line prints out the number without any additional formatting. In the second line, the format string specifies that the number should be formatted as currency.

```
Console.WriteLine("The value: {0}.", 500);           // Print out number
Console.WriteLine("The value: {0:C}.", 500);         // Format as currency
                                                 ↑
                                                 Format as currency
```

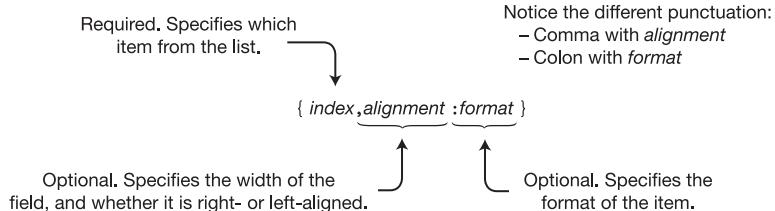
This code produces the following output:

---

```
The value: 500.
The value: $500.00.
```

---

The difference between the two statements is that the format item includes additional information in the form of a format specifier. The syntax for a format specifier consists of three fields inside the set of curly braces: the index, the alignment specifier, and the format specifier. Figure 25-1 shows the syntax.



**Figure 25-1.** Syntax for a format item

The first thing in the format item is the index. As you well know by now, the index specifies which item from the list following the format string should be formatted. The index is required, and the numbering of the list items starts at 0.

## The Alignment Specifier

The alignment specifier represents the *minimum width* of the field in terms of characters. The alignment specifier has the following characteristics:

- It is optional and separated from the index with a comma.
- It consists of a positive or negative integer.
  - The integer represents the minimum number of characters to use for the field.
  - The sign represents either right or left alignment. Positive specifies right alignment; negative specifies left alignment.

```

Index—use 0th item in the list
↓
Console.WriteLine("{0, 10}", 500);
↑
Alignment specifier—right-align in a field of ten characters

```

For example, the following code shows two format items, formatting the value of int variable `myInt`. In the first case, the value of `myInt` is displayed as a right-aligned string of ten characters. In the second case, it's left-aligned. The format items are between two vertical bars, just to show in the output their limits on each side.

```

int myInt = 500;
Console.WriteLine("|{0, 10}|", myInt);           // Aligned right
Console.WriteLine("|{0,-10}|", myInt);          // Aligned left

```

This code produces the following output; there are ten characters between the vertical bars:

---

	500	
--	-----	--

---

The actual representation of the value might take more or fewer characters than specified in the alignment specifier:

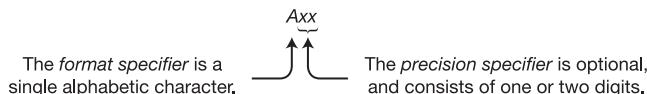
- If the representation takes fewer characters than specified in the alignment specifier, the remaining characters are padded with spaces.
- If the representation takes more characters than specified, the alignment specifier is ignored, and the representation uses as many characters as are needed.

## The Format Component

The format component specifies the form that the numeric representation should take. For example, should it be represented as currency, in decimal format, in hexadecimal format, or in fixed-point notation?

The format component has two parts, as shown in Figure 25-2:

- The *format specifier* is a single alphabetic character, from a set of nine built-in character formats. The character can be uppercase or lowercase. The case is significant for some specifiers but not for others.
- The *precision specifier* is optional and consists of one or two digits. Its actual meaning depends on the format specifier.



**Figure 25-2.** Standard format specifier string

The following code shows an example of the syntax of the format string component:

```
Index—use 0th item in the list
↓
Console.WriteLine("{0: F4}", 12.345678);
↑
Format component—fixed-point, four decimal places
```

The following code shows examples of different format strings:

```
double myDouble = 12.345678;
Console.WriteLine("{0,-10:G} -- General", myDouble);
Console.WriteLine("{0,-10} -- Default, same as General", myDouble);
Console.WriteLine("{0,-10:F4} -- Fixed Point, 4 dec places", myDouble);
Console.WriteLine("{0,-10:C} -- Currency", myDouble);
Console.WriteLine("{0,-10:E3} -- Sci. Notation, 3 dec places", myDouble);
Console.WriteLine("{0,-10:x} -- Hexadecimal integer", 1194719 );
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
12.345678 -- General
12.345678 -- Default, same as General
12.3457 -- Fixed Point, 4 dec places
$12.35 -- Currency
1.235E+001 -- Sci. Notation, 3 dec places
123adf -- Hexadecimal integer
```

---

## Standard Numeric Format Specifiers

The Regional and Language Options applet of the Windows Control Panel can affect the resulting formats of some of the specifiers. For example, the currency symbol of the country or region specified will be used by the currency format specifier. You can do the same in code by creating a `CultureInfo` and assigning it to the `Thread.CurrentThread.CurrentCulture` property.

Table 25-2 summarizes the nine standard numeric format specifiers. The first column lists the name of the specifier followed by the specifier characters. If the specifier characters have different output depending on their case, they are marked *case sensitive*.

**Table 25-2. Standard Numeric Format Specifiers**

Name and Characters	Meaning
Currency C, c	Formats the value as a currency, using a currency symbol. Precision specifier: The number of decimal places.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :C}", 12.5);</code> Output: \$12.50
Decimal D, d	A string of decimal digits, with a negative sign, if appropriate. Can be used only with integral types. Precision specifier: The minimum number of digits to use in the output string. If the number has fewer digits, it will be padded with 0s on the left.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :D4}", 12);</code> Output: 0012
Fixed-point F, f	A string of decimal digits with a decimal point. Can also include a negative sign, if appropriate. Precision specifier: The number of decimal places.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :F4}", 12.3456789);</code> Output: 12.3457
General G, g	A compact fixed-point representation or a scientific notation representation, depending on the value. This is the default, if no specifier is listed. Precision specifier: Depends on the value.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :G4}", 12.3456789);</code> Output: 12.35
Hexadecimal X, x	A string of hexadecimal digits. The hex digits A through F will match the case of the specifier. Precision specifier: The minimum number of digits to use in the output string. If the number has fewer digits, it will be padded with 0s on the left.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :x}", 180026);</code> Output: 2bf3a
Case sensitive	

---

Number N, n	Similar to fixed-point representation but includes separators between each group of three digits, starting at the decimal point and going left. Precision specifier: The number of decimal places.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :N2}", 12345678.54321);</code> Output: 12,345,678.54
Percent P, p	A string that represents percent. The number is multiplied by 100. Precision specifier: The number of decimal places  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :P2}", 0.1221897);</code> Output: 12.22 %
Round-trip R, r	The output string is chosen so that if the string is converted back to a numeric value using a Parse method, the result will be the original value. Precision specifier: Ignored.  Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :R}", 1234.21897);</code> Output: 1234.21897
Scientific E, e	Scientific notation with a mantissa and an exponent. The exponent is preceded by the letter E. The E will be the same case as the specifier. Precision specifier: The number of decimal places.
Case sensitive	Sample: <code>Console.WriteLine("{0 :e4}", 12.3456789);</code> Output: 1.2346e+001

---

# Parsing Strings to Data Values

Strings are arrays of Unicode characters. For example, string "25.873" is six characters long and is *not* a number. Although it looks like a number, you cannot perform arithmetic functions on it. "Adding" two strings produces their concatenation.

- *Parsing* allows you to take a string that represents a value and convert it into an actual value.
  - All the predefined, simple types have a static method called `Parse`, which takes a string value representing the type and converts it into an actual value of the type.
  - If the string cannot be parsed, the system raises an exception.

The following statement shows an example of the syntax of using a Parse method. Notice that Parse is static, so you need to invoke it by using the name of the target type.

```
double d1 = double.Parse("25.873");  
          ↑           ↑  
Target type      String to be converted
```

The following code shows an example of parsing two strings to values of type double and then adding them:

```
static void Main()
{
    string s1 = "25.873";
    string s2 = "36.240";

    double d1 = double.Parse(s1);
    double d2 = double.Parse(s2);

    double total = d1 + d2;
    Console.WriteLine("Total: {0}", total);
}
```

This code produces the following output:

Total: 62.113

**Note** A common misconception about Parse is that since it operates on a string, it is thought of as a member of the `string` class. It is not. `Parse` is not a single method at all but a number of methods implemented by the *target types*.

The disadvantage of the Parse methods is that they throw an exception if they can't successfully parse the string to the target type. Exceptions are expensive operations, and you should try to programmatically avoid them if you can. The TryParse method allows you to do that. The important things to know about TryParse are the following:

- Every built-in type that has a Parse method also has a TryParse method (and you should use the TryParse).
- The TryParse method takes two parameters and returns a bool.
  - The first parameter is the string you're trying to parse.
  - The second is an out parameter of a reference to a variable of the target type.
  - If the TryParse succeeds, it returns true. Otherwise, it returns false.

The following code shows an example of using a TryParse method:

```
class Program
{
    static void Main( )
    {
        bool success;
        string parseResultSummary;

        string stringFirst = "28";
        int intFirst;           Input string      Output variable
                               ↓                         ↓
        success = int.TryParse( stringFirst, out intFirst );

        parseResultSummary = success
                           ? "was successfully parsed"
                           : "was not successfully parsed";
        Console.WriteLine( "String {0} {1}", stringFirst, parseResultSummary );

        string stringSecond = "vt750";
        int intSecond;          Input string      Output variable
                               ↓                         ↓
        success = int.TryParse( stringSecond, out intSecond );

        parseResultSummary = success
                           ? "was successfully parsed"
                           : "was not successfully parsed";
        Console.WriteLine( "String {0} {1}", stringSecond, parseResultSummary );
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
String 28 was successfully parsed
String vt750 was not successfully parsed
```

---

## More About the Nullable Types

In Chapter 3 you got an introduction to nullable types. As you'll remember, nullable types allow you to create a value type variable that can be marked as valid or invalid, effectively letting you set a value type variable to "null." I wanted to introduce nullable types in Chapter 3 with the other built-in types, but now that you know more about C#, it's a good time to cover their more intricate aspects.

Just to review, a nullable type is always based on another type, called the *underlying type*, that has already been declared.

- You can create a nullable type from any value type, including the predefined, simple types.
- You cannot create a nullable type from a reference type or another nullable type.
- You do not explicitly declare a nullable type in your code. Instead, you declare a *variable of a nullable type*. The compiler implicitly creates the nullable type for you.

To create a variable of a nullable type, simply add a question mark to the end of the name of the underlying type, in the variable declaration.

For example, the following code declares a variable of the nullable int type. Notice that the suffix is attached to the *type* name—not the variable name.

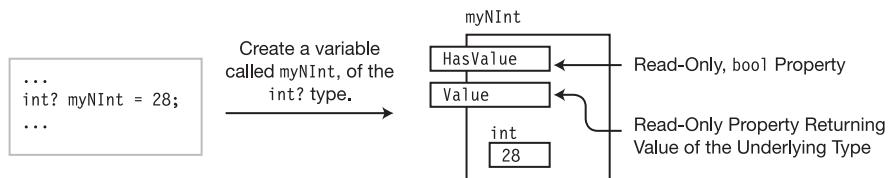
```

    Suffix
    ↓
int? myNInt = 28;
    ↑
The name of the nullable type includes the suffix.

```

With this declaration statement, the compiler takes care of both producing the nullable type and the variable of that type. Figure 25-3 shows the structure of this nullable type. It contains the following:

- An instance of the underlying type
- Several important read-only properties:
  - Property HasValue is of type bool and indicates whether the value is valid.
  - Property Value is the same type as the underlying type and returns the value of the variable—if the variable is valid.



**Figure 25-3.** A nullable type contains an object of the underlying type in a struct, with two read-only properties.

You can use the two read-only properties explicitly as follows. Reading a variable of a nullable type returns its value. You must, however, make sure that the variable is not null. Attempting to read the value of a null variable produces an exception.

```
int? myInt1 = 15;  
Explicitly use the property.  
↓  
if (myInt1.HasValue )  
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", myInt1.Value);  
↑  
Explicitly use the property.
```

A better method, however, is to use the shortcut forms, as shown in the following code.

- To check whether a nullable type has a value, you can compare it to `null`.
- Like any variable, to retrieve its value, you can just use its name.

```
Compare to null  
↓  
if (myInt1 != null )  
    Console.WriteLine("{0}", myInt1);  
↑  
Use variable name
```

Both sets of code produce the following output:

## The Null Coalescing Operator

The standard arithmetic and comparison operators also handle nullable types. There is also a special operator called the null *coalescing operator*, which returns a non-null value to an expression, in case a nullable type variable is `null`.

The null coalescing operator consists of two contiguous question marks and has two operands:

- The first operand is a variable of a nullable type.
- The second is a non-nullable value of the same underlying type.
- If, at run time, the first operand evaluates to `null`, the second operand is returned as the result of the operation.

Null coalescing operator

```
int? myI4 = null;           ↓
Console.WriteLine("myI4: {0}", myI4 ?? -1);

myI4 = 10;
Console.WriteLine("myI4: {0}", myI4 ?? -1);
```

This code produces the following output:

---

```
myI4: -1
myI4: 10
```

---

The equality comparison operators, `==` and `!=`, have an interesting characteristic you need to be aware of. If you compare two values of the same nullable type and both are `null`, the equality comparison operators consider them equal. For example, in the following code, the two nullable ints are set to `null`. The equality comparison operator declares them equal.

```
int? i1 = null, i2 = null;           // Both are null.

if (i1 == i2)                      // Operator returns true.
    Console.WriteLine("Equal");
```

## Using Nullable User-Defined Types

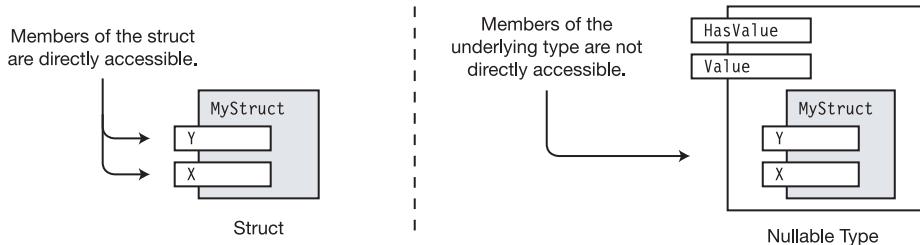
So far, you've seen nullable forms of the predefined, simple types. You can also create nullable forms of user-defined value types. These bring up additional issues that don't come up when using the simple types.

The main issue is access to the members of the encapsulated underlying type. A nullable type doesn't directly expose any of the members of the underlying type. For example, take a look at the following code and its representation in Figure 25-4. The code declares a struct (which is a value type) called `MyStruct`, with two public fields.

- Since the fields of the struct are public, they can easily be accessed in any instance of the struct, as shown on the left of the figure.
- The nullable version of the struct, however, exposes the underlying type only through the `Value` property and doesn't *directly* expose any of its members. Although the members are public to the struct, they are not public to the nullable type, as shown on the right of the figure.

```
struct MyStruct // Declare a struct.
{
    public int X; // Field
    public int Y; // Field
    public MyStruct(int xVal, int yVal) // Constructor
    {
        X = xVal;
        Y = yVal;
    }
}

class Program {
    static void Main()
    {
        MyStruct? mSNull = new MyStruct(5, 10);
        ...
    }
}
```



**Figure 25-4.** The accessibility of the members of a struct is different from that of the nullable type.

For example, the following code uses this struct and creates variables of both the struct and the corresponding nullable type. In the third and fourth lines of code, the values of the struct's variables are read directly. In the fifth and sixth lines, they must be read from the value returned by the nullable's `Value` property.

```
MyStruct mSStruct = new MyStruct(6, 11);      // Variable of struct
MyStruct? mSNull = new MyStruct(5, 10);        // Variable of nullable type
                                                Struct access
                                                ↓
Console.WriteLine("mSStruct.X: {0}", mSStruct.X);
Console.WriteLine("mSStruct.Y: {0}", mSStruct.Y);

Console.WriteLine("mSNull.X: {0}", mSNull.Value.X);
Console.WriteLine("mSNull.Y: {0}", mSNull.Value.Y);
                                                ↑
                                                Nullable type access
```

## Nullable<T>

Nullable types are implemented by using a .NET type called `System.Nullable<T>`, which uses the C# generics feature.

The question mark syntax of C# nullable types is just shortcut syntax for creating a variable of type `Nullable<T>`, where `T` is the underlying type. `Nullable<T>` takes the underlying type, embeds it in a structure, and provides the structure with the properties, methods, and constructors of the nullable type.

You can use either the generics syntax of `Nullable<T>` or the C# shortcut syntax. The shortcut syntax is easier to write and to understand and is less prone to errors.

The following code uses the `Nullable<T>` syntax with struct `MyStruct`, declared in the preceding example, to create a variable called `mSNull` of type `Nullable<MyStruct>`:

```
Nullable<MyStruct> mSNull = new Nullable<MyStruct>();
```

The following code uses the question mark syntax but is semantically equivalent to the `Nullable<T>` syntax:

```
MyStruct? mSNull = new MyStruct();
```

## Method Main

Every C# program must have one entry point—a method that must be called `Main`.

In the sample code throughout this text, I've used a version of `Main` that takes no parameters and returns no value. There are, however, four forms of `Main` that are acceptable as the entry point to a program. These forms are the following:

- `static void Main() { ... }`
- `static void Main( string[] args) { ... }`
- `static int Main() { ... }`
- `static int Main( string[] args) { ... }`

The first two forms don't return a value to the execution environment when the program terminates. The second two forms return an `int` value. A return value, if one is used, is generally used to report success or failure of the program, where 0 is generally used to indicate success.

The second and fourth forms allow you to pass actual parameters, also called *arguments*, from the command line into the program, when it starts. Some important characteristics of command-line arguments are the following:

- There can be zero or more command-line arguments. Even if there are no arguments, the `args` parameter is not `null`. Instead, it is an array with no elements.
- The arguments are separated by spaces or tabs.
- Each argument is interpreted by the program as a string, but you don't need to enclose them in quotation marks on the command line.

For example, the following program, called `CommandLineArgs`, accepts command-line arguments and prints out each argument supplied:

```
class Program
{
    static void Main(string[] args)
    {
        foreach (string s in args)
            Console.WriteLine(s);
    }
}
```

The following command line executes program `CommandLineArgs` with five arguments:

<code>CommandLineArgs</code>	<code>Jon</code>	<code>Peter</code>	<code>Beth</code>	<code>Julia</code>	<code>Tammi</code>
↑	↑				
Executable Name		Arguments			

The preceding program and command line produce the following output:

---

```
Jon
Peter
Beth
Julia
Tammi
```

---

Other important things to know about `Main` are the following:

- `Main` must always be declared `static`.
- `Main` can be declared in either a class or a struct.

A program can contain only one declaration of the four acceptable entry point forms of `Main`. You can, however, legally declare other methods named `Main`, as long as they don't have any of the four entry point forms—but doing this is inviting confusion.

## Accessibility of Main

`Main` can be declared `public` or `private`:

- If `Main` is declared `private`, other assemblies cannot access it, and only the execution environment can start the program.
- If `Main` is declared `public`, other assemblies can call it.

The execution environment, however, *always* has access to `Main`, regardless of its declared access level or the declared access level of the class or struct in which it is declared.

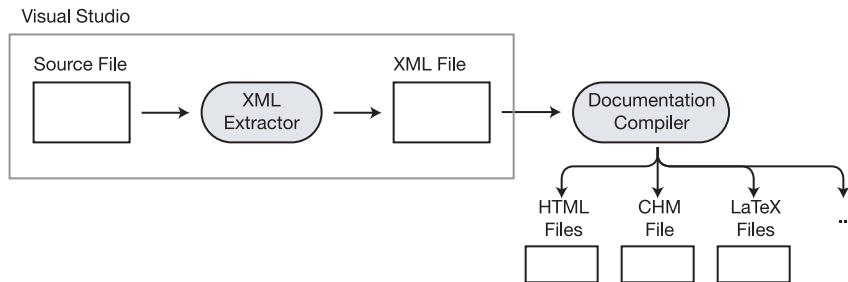
By default, when Visual Studio creates a project, it creates a program outline where `Main` is implicitly `private`. You can always add the `public` modifier if you need to do so.

## Documentation Comments

The documentation comments feature allows you to include documentation of your program in the form of XML elements. Visual Studio even assists you in inserting the elements and will read them from your source file and copy them to a separate XML file for you. This section does not cover the topic of XML but presents the overall process of using documentation comments.

Figure 25-5 gives an overview of using XML comments. This includes the following steps:

- You can use Visual Studio to produce the source file with the embedded XML. Visual Studio can automatically insert most of the important XML elements.
- Visual Studio reads the XML from the source code file and copies the XML code to a new file.
- Another program, called a documentation compiler, can take the XML file and produce various types of documentation files from it.



**Figure 25-5.** The XML comments process

Earlier versions of Visual Studio contained an elementary documentation compiler, but it was removed before the release of Visual Studio 2005. Microsoft has developed a new documentation compiler called Sandcastle, which they already use to generate the .NET Framework documentation. You can learn more about it and download it for free from <http://sandcastle.codeplex.com>.

## Inserting Documentation Comments

Documentation comments start with three consecutive forward slashes.

- The first two slashes indicate to the compiler that this is an end-of-line comment and should be ignored in the parsing of the program.
- The third slash indicates that it's a documentation comment.

For example, in the following code, the first four lines show documentation comments about the class declaration. They use the `<summary>` XML tag. Above the declaration of the field are three lines documenting the field—again using the `<summary>` tag.

```
/// <summary>      ← Open XML tag for the class
/// This is class MyClass, which does the following wonderful things, using
/// the following algorithm. ... Besides those, it does these additional
/// wonderful things.
/// </summary>      ← Close XML tag
class MyClass                                // Class declaration
{
    /// <summary>      ← Open XML tag for the field
    /// Field1 is used to hold the value of ...
    /// </summary>      ← Close XML tag
    public int Field1 = 10;                      // Field declaration
    ...
}
```

Each XML element is inserted by Visual Studio automatically when you type three slashes above the declaration of a language feature, such as a class or a class member.

For example, the following code shows two slashes above the declaration of class MyClass:

```
//
class MyClass
{ ... }
```

As soon as you add the third slash, Visual Studio immediately expands the comment to the following code, without your having to do anything. You can then type anything you want on the documentation comment lines between the tags.

```
/// <summary>      Automatically inserted
///
/// </summary>      Automatically inserted
class MyClass
{ ... }
```

## Using Other XML Tags

In the preceding examples, you saw the use of the `summary` XML tag. There are also a number of other tags that C# recognizes. Table 25-3 lists some of the most important.

**Table 25-3.** Documentation Code XML Tags

Tag	Meaning
<code>&lt;code&gt;</code>	Format the enclosing lines in a font that looks like code.
<code>&lt;example&gt;</code>	Mark the enclosing lines as an example.
<code>&lt;param&gt;</code>	Mark a parameter for a method or constructor and allow a description.
<code>&lt;remarks&gt;</code>	Describe a type declaration.
<code>&lt;returns&gt;</code>	Describe a return value.
<code>&lt;seealso&gt;</code>	Create a <i>See Also</i> entry in the output document.
<code>&lt;summary&gt;</code>	Describe a type or a type member.
<code>&lt;value&gt;</code>	Describe a property.

## Nested Types

Types are usually declared directly inside a namespace. You can, however, also declare types inside a class or struct declaration.

- Types declared inside another type declaration are called *nested types*. Like all type declarations, nested types are templates for an instance of the type.
- A nested type is declared like a member of the *enclosing type*.
  - A nested type can be any type.
  - An enclosing type can be either a class or a struct.

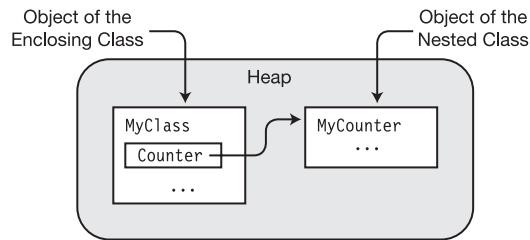
For example, the following code shows class `MyClass`, with a nested class called `MyCounter`.

```
class MyClass           // Enclosing class
{
    class MyCounter   // Nested class
    {
        ...
    }
    ...
}
```

Declaring a type as a nested type often makes sense if it's only meant to be used as a helper for the enclosing type.

Don't be confused by the term *nested*. Nested refers to the location of the *declaration*—not the location of any *instances*. Although a nested type's declaration is inside the enclosing type's declaration, objects of the nested type are not necessarily enclosed in objects of the enclosing type. Objects of the nested type—if any are created at all—are located wherever they would have been located had they not been declared inside another type.

For example, Figure 25-6 shows objects of types `MyClass` and `MyCounter`, as outlined in the preceding code. The figure additionally shows a field called `Counter`, in class `MyClass`, that is a reference to an object of the nested class, which is located elsewhere in the heap.



**Figure 25-6.** Nesting refers to the location of the declaration, not the location of the object.

## Example of a Nested Class

The following code fleshes out classes `MyClass` and `MyCounter` into a full program. `MyCounter` implements an integer counter that starts at 0 and can be incremented using the `++` operator. When the constructor for `MyClass` is called, it creates an instance of the nested class and assigns the reference to the field. Figure 25-7 illustrates the structure of the objects in the code.

```
class MyClass
{
    class MyCounter                         // Nested class
    {
        private int _Count = 0;
        public int Count                      // Read-only property
        {
            get { return _Count; }
        }

        public static MyCounter operator++( MyCounter current )
        {
            current._Count++;
            return current;
        }
    }

    private MyCounter counter;               // Field of nested class

    public MyClass() { counter = new MyCounter(); } // Constructor

    public int Incr() { return (counter++.Count); } // Increment method
    public int GetValue() { return counter.Count; } // Get counter value
}

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        MyClass mc = new MyClass();           // Create object

        mc.Incr(); mc.Incr(); mc.Incr();       // Increment it.
        mc.Incr(); mc.Incr(); mc.Incr();       // Increment it.

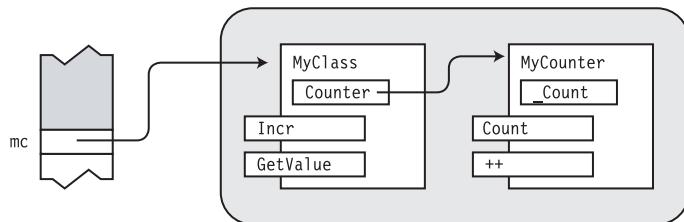
        Console.WriteLine("Total: {0}", mc.GetValue()); // Print its value.
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

---

Total: 6

---



**Figure 25-7.** Objects of a nested class and its enclosing class

## Visibility and Nested Types

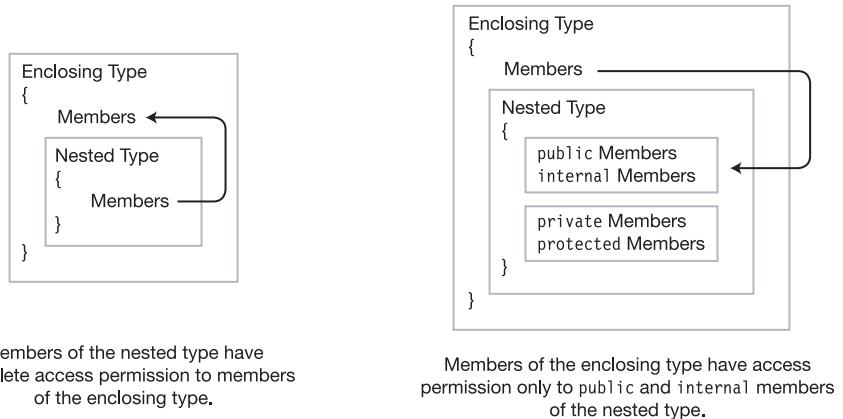
In Chapter 7, you learned that classes, and types in general, can have an access level of either `public` or `internal`. Nested types, however, are different in that they have *member accessibility* rather than *type accessibility*. Therefore, the following are true:

- A nested type declared inside a class can have any of the five class member accessibility levels `public`, `protected`, `private`, `internal`, or `protected internal`.
- A nested type declared inside a struct can have one of the three struct member accessibility levels `public`, `internal`, or `private`.

In both cases, the default access level of a nested type is `private`, which means it cannot be seen outside the enclosing type.

The relationship between the members of the enclosing class and the nested class is a little less straightforward and is illustrated in Figure 25-8. The nested type has complete access to the members of the enclosing type, regardless of their declared accessibility, including members that are `private` and `protected`.

The relationship, however, is not symmetrical. Although the members of the enclosing type can always see the nested type declaration and create variables and instances of it, they do not have complete access to its members. Instead, their access is limited to the declared access of the nested class members—just as if the nested type were a separate type. That is, they can access the `public` and `internal` members but cannot access the `private` or `protected` members of the nested type.



**Figure 25-8.** Accessibility between nested type members and enclosing type members

You can summarize this relationship as follows:

- The members of a nested type always have full access rights to members of the enclosing type.
- The members of an enclosing type
  - Always have access to the nested type itself
  - Only have the *declared access* rights to members of the nested type

The visibility of nested types can also affect the inheritance of base members. If the enclosing class is a derived class, a nested type can hide a base class member with the same name. Use the `new` modifier with the declaration of the nested class to make the hiding explicit.

A *this* reference within a nested type refers to the *object of the nested type*—not the object of the enclosing type. If an object of the nested type needs access to the enclosing type, it must have a reference to it. You can have the enclosing object supply its *this* reference as a parameter to the nested type's constructor, as shown in the following code:

```
class SomeClass // Enclosing class
{
    int Field1 = 15, Field2 = 20; // Fields of enclosing class
    MyNested mn = null; // Reference to nested class

    public void PrintMyMembers()
    {
        mn.PrintOuterMembers(); // Call method in nested class
    }

    public SomeClass() // Constructor
    {
        mn = new MyNested(this); // Create instance of nested class
    }
}

class MyNested // Nested class declaration
{
    SomeClass sc = null; // Reference to enclosing class

    public MyNested(SomeClass SC) // Constructor of the nested class
    {
        sc = SC; // Store reference to enclosing class
    }

    public void PrintOuterMembers()
    {
        Console.WriteLine("Field1: {0}", sc.Field1); // Enclosing field
        Console.WriteLine("Field2: {0}", sc.Field2); // Enclosing field
    }
}

class Program {
    static void Main( ) {
        SomeClass MySC = new SomeClass();
        MySC.PrintMyMembers();
    }
}
```

This code produces the following output:

Field1: 15  
Field2: 20

## Interoperating with COM

Although this text doesn't cover COM programming, C# 4.0 added several syntactic changes to the language specifically to make COM programming easier. One of these changes is called the "omit ref" feature and allows you to call a COM method without using the `ref` keyword, when you don't need to use the value passed back by the method.

For example, if Microsoft Word is installed on the machine your program is running on, you can use Word's spell checker functionality in your own program. The method you would use to do this is the `CheckSpelling` method on the `Document` class, which is in the `Microsoft.Office.Tools.Word` namespace. This method has 12 parameters, and all of them are `ref` parameters. This means previously you would have had to supply reference variables for each of the parameters, even if you didn't need to use them to pass data to the method or to receive data back from the method. Omitting the `ref` keyword *only works with COM methods*—with anything else, you'll still get a compile error.

This code might look something like the following. Notice the following about this code:

- I'm only using the second and third parameters, which are Booleans, but I have to create two variables, `ignoreCase` and `alwaysSuggest` of type `object` to hold the values, since the method requires `ref` parameters.
- I've created an `object` variable called `optional` for the other ten parameters.

```
object ignoreCase    = true;
object alwaysSuggest = false;           Objects to hold Boolean variables
object optional      = Missing.Value;   ↓   ↓
tempDoc.CheckSpelling( ref optional, ref ignoreCase, ref alwaysSuggest,
                      ref optional, ref optional, ref optional, ref optional,
                      ref optional, ref optional, ref optional );
```

With the "omit ref" feature we can clean this up considerably, since we don't have to use the `ref` keyword on those parameters from which we don't need the output, and we can use inline bools for the two parameters we care about. The simplified code looks like the following:

```
bool    bool
object optional = Missing.Value;   ↓   ↓
tempDoc.CheckSpelling( optional, true, false,
                      optional, optional, optional,
                      optional, optional, optional, optional );
```

If, beyond the "omit ref" feature, we add the fact that the parameters are optional, we can use the `option` parameters feature of C# 4.0. This looks like the following, which is much less cumbersome than the original:

```
tempDoc.CheckSpelling( Missing.Value, true, false );
```

The following code includes this method in a complete program. To compile this code, you need to have Visual Studio Tools for Office installed on your machine, and you must add a reference in your project to the Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word assembly. For the compiled code to run, you must have Microsoft Word installed on your machine.

```
using System;
using System.Reflection;
using Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word;

class Program
{
    static void Main()
    {
        Console.WriteLine( "Enter a string to spell-check: " );
        string stringToSpellCheck = Console.ReadLine();

        string spellingResults;
        int errors = 0;
        if ( stringToSpellCheck.Length == 0 )
            spellingResults = "No string to check";
        else
        {
            Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word.Application app =
                new Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word.Application();

            Console.WriteLine( "\nChecking the string for misspellings ..." );
            app.Visible = false;

            Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word._Document tempDoc = app.Documents.Add( );

            tempDoc.Words.First.InsertBefore( stringToSpellCheck );
            Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word.ProofreadingErrors
                spellErrorsColl = tempDoc.SpellingErrors;
            errors = spellErrorsColl.Count;

            //1. Before C# 4.0
            //object ignoreCase      = true;
            //object alwaysSuggest   = false;
            //object optional        = Missing.Value;
            //tempDoc.CheckSpelling( ref optional, ref ignoreCase, ref alwaysSuggest,
            //                      ref optional, ref optional, ref optional, ref optional,
            //                      ref optional, ref optional, ref optional );
        }
    }
}
```

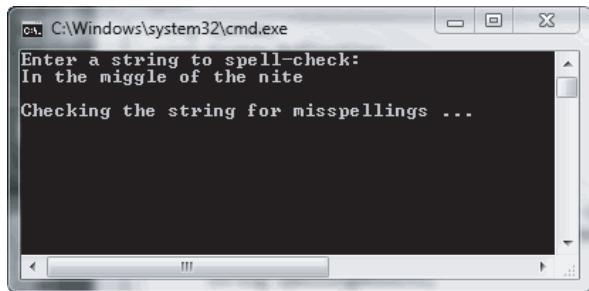
```
//2. Using the "omit ref" feature of C# 4.0
object optional = Missing.Value;
tempDoc.CheckSpelling(
    optional, true, false, optional, optional, optional,
    optional, optional, optional, optional, optional );
//3. Using "omit ref" and optional parameters
//tempDoc.CheckSpelling( Missing.Value, true, false );

app.Quit(false);

spellingResults = errors + " errors found";
}

Console.WriteLine( spellingResults );
Console.WriteLine( "\nPress <Enter> to exit program." );
Console.ReadLine();
}
}
```

When you run this code, it produces a console window, shown in Figure 25-9, that asks you to enter a string that you want run through the spell checker. When it receives the string, it opens Word and runs the spell checker on it. When that happens, you'll see Word's spell checker window appear, as shown in Figure 25-10.



**Figure 25-9.** The console window that asks for the string to send to Word's spell checker



**Figure 25-10.** Word's spell checker created using COM calls from the console program

# Index



## Symbols and Numerics

! operator, 219  
#define directive, 629–630  
#elif construct, 629, 633  
#else construct, 629, 632  
#endif directive, 629, 632  
#endregion directive, 629, 637  
#error directive, 629, 635  
#if construct, 629, 632  
#if directive, 632, 635  
#if.#elif construct, 633, 635  
#if.#elif.#else construct, 633–634  
#if.#else construct, 632  
#line directive, 629, 636  
#pragma text directive, 629  
#pragma warning directive, 638  
#region name directive, 629  
#undef directive, 629–630  
#warning directive, 629, 635  
% operator, 213  
%= operator, 225  
& operator, 221  
&& operator, 219  
&= operator, 225  
\* operator, 212  
/ operator, 212  
/= operator, 225, 227  
| operator, 221  
|| operator, 219  
|= operator, 225  
~ operator, 221  
+ operator, 212, 229  
++ operator, 217  
< operator, 214

## A

A class, 363  
a1 variable, 85, 88, 91  
a2 variable, 85, 88, 91, 494  
AbClass class, 193  
abstract classes, 192–194  
abstract keyword, 20, 191  
abstract members, 190–191  
access modifiers, for classes, 60–62  
example of, 62  
private and public access, 60–62  
accessibility  
of Main method, 680  
of static constructors, 137  
accessors  
for events, 408  
for properties, 122  
acronyms, for .NET Framework, 13  
Action delegate, 571  
Action1 delegate, 497  
Action1<Dog> delegate, 497  
ActOnAnimal method, 497–498  
actual parameters, for methods  
example of, 82  
overview, 81–82  
parameter arrays as, 96  
add accessor, 408  
add keyword, 20  
Add method, 160, 584–585  
Add20 method, 383  
AddAfterSelf method, 585  
AddBeforeSelf method, 585  
AddFirst method, 585, 590  
Additive operator category, 209  
AddValues method, 97  
alert character, 206  
alignment specifier, for formatting numeric strings, 668  
allocating memory, for classes, 57–58  
AllowMultiple property, 658–659

alwaysSuggest variable, 689  
**A**  
 Ancestors method, 581–582  
 AncestorsAndSelf method, 581  
 AND operation, 333  
 Animal class, 432–433, 494, 496–498, 500, 502  
 animalMaker delegate, 496  
 animalMaker variable, 495  
 Animation bit, 334  
 Animation flag, 336  
 anonymous methods, 383–387  
   scope in, 386–387  
     extension of captured variable  
       lifetime, 387  
     of outer variables, 386  
   syntax of, 384–385  
     parameters for, 385  
     params parameter for, 385  
     return type for, 384  
   using, 383  
 anonymous types, for LINQ, 540–541, 560  
 API (application programming interface), 566  
 args parameter, 679  
 arithmetic operators, 212  
 Array class, 411  
 Array type, 42, 96  
 arrays, 341–368  
   array covariance, 363  
   elements in, accessing, 347  
   facts about, 342  
   foreach statement, 358–362  
     iteration variable is read-only, 360  
     with multidimensional arrays,  
       361–362  
   inherited members for, 364–367  
   initializing, 348–352  
     example of, 352  
     implicitly typed, 351  
     shortcut syntax, 350  
   jagged, 353–356  
     declaring, 354  
     instantiating, 355  
     vs. rectangular, 357  
     shortcut instantiation, 354  
     subarrays in, 356  
   as object, 344  
   one-dimensional, 345  
     declaring, 345  
     explicit initialization of, 348  
     instantiating, 346  
   overview, 342  
   rectangular, 345  
     declaring, 345  
     explicit initialization of, 349  
     instantiating, 346  
     syntax points for initializing, 349–350  
   types of, 343–368

ArrEnumerator class, 508  
 as keyword, 20  
 as operator  
   for conversions, 464  
   using with interfaces, 420  
 ascending keyword, 20, 557  
 assemblies  
   and configuration files, 294  
   delayed signing of, 295  
   GAC, 292–293  
     installing assemblies into, 292  
     side-by-side execution in, 293  
   identity of, 287–288  
   inheritance between, 182–183  
   private deployment of, 291  
   referencing others, 270–274  
   strongly named, 289–290  
   structure of, 285–286  
 Assembly directory, 292  
 Assembly property, 641  
 Assembly1.cs file, 182  
 Assembly2.cs file, 183  
 AssemblyInfo.cs file, 653  
 Assignment operator category, 210  
 assignment operators, 225–226  
 associated fields, and properties, 125–126  
 associativity, in expressions, 210–211  
 AsyncCallback delegate, 620  
 AsyncDelegate property, 617, 621  
 asynchronous programming, 595–626  
   BackgroundWorker class, 602–612  
     example of, 606–609  
     example of in WPF program,  
       610–612  
   BeginInvoke and EndInvoke delegate  
     methods, 614–623  
     and AsyncResult class, 617  
     callback pattern, 620–623  
     polling pattern, 618–619  
     wait-until-done pattern, 616  
   multithreading  
     complexity of, 598  
     considerations, 597  
   overview, 596  
   parallel loops, 599–601  
   patterns for, 613  
   timers for, 624  
 AsyncResult class, and BeginInvoke and  
   EndInvoke delegate methods, 617  
 AsyncState property, 617, 620  
 Attribute method, 587, 593  
 attributes  
   accessing, 661–662  
     using GetCustomAttributes method,  
       662  
   using IsDefined method, 661

applying  
     to other program constructs, 652–653  
     overview, 646  
 custom, 654–660  
     constructors for, 655–656  
     declaring, 654  
     guidelines for using, 660  
     restricting usage of, 658–659  
 global, 653  
 multiple to single construct, 651  
 overview, 645  
 predefined, 647–650  
     Conditional attribute, 648–649  
     Obsolete attribute, 647  
     summary of, 650  
     for XML, 586–589  
 AttributeTarget enumeration, 659  
 AttributeTarget type, 658  
 AttributeUsage attribute, 650, 658–660  
 automatic initialization, declaring  
     variables, 44  
 Average method, 198–200

**B**

B class, 363  
 b parameter, 100  
 BabyCalled method, 432  
 BackgroundWorker class, 602–612  
     example of, 606–609  
     example of in WPF program, 610–612  
 backslash character, 207  
 backspace character, 206  
 base access expression, 167  
 Base class, 499  
 Base Class Library (BCL), 3, 6  
 base class library, of .NET Framework, 6  
 base class, references to, 168–175  
     override methods, 170–174  
     overriding other member types, 175  
     virtual methods, 170–171  
 base keyword, 20, 167, 178  
 BaseClassNS namespace, 182  
 BCL (Base Class Library), 3, 6  
 BeginInvoke and EndInvoke delegate methods, 614–623  
     andAsyncResult class, 617  
     callback pattern, 620–623  
         calling EndInvoke inside callback  
             method, 621–623  
         method for, 620  
     polling pattern, 618–619  
     wait-until-done pattern, 616  
 BeginInvoke method, 613  
 bill variable, 463–464  
 BinarySearch method, 364

Bird class, 432  
 bit flags, and enumerations, 332–338  
     example of, 337–338  
     Flags attribute for, 335–336  
 Bitwise AND operator, 221  
 Bitwise negation operator, 221  
 Bitwise OR operator, 221  
 Bitwise XOR operator, 221  
 BlackAndWhite enumerator, 534  
 BlackAndWhite method, 526, 528–529  
 blocks, 22  
 bool keyword, 20  
 bool type, 37, 42, 203, 227, 243, 254, 406, 571, 647, 661  
 boxing  
     conversions, 454–456  
     structs, 324  
 break keyword, 20  
 break statement, 74, 245, 257  
 Browse tab, 271  
 by keyword, 20  
 Byte keyword, 20  
 byte type, 37, 42, 438–439

**C**

C1 class, 62  
 Calc method, 99  
 callback parameter, 614, 620  
 callback pattern, for BeginInvoke and  
     EndInvoke delegate methods, 620–623  
     calling EndInvoke inside callback  
         method, 621–623  
     method for, 620  
 calling indexers, 152  
 CancelAsync method, 602, 605  
 CancellationPending property, 602, 605  
 Card class, 51  
 CardSuit enumeration, 331  
 carriage return character, 207  
 case keyword, 20  
 cast operator, and explicit conversion, 232  
 casting and explicit conversions, 439  
 Cat class, 432  
 catch block, 300, 304, 314  
 catch clause, 303–305  
 catch keyword, 20  
 catch section, 311  
 catch statement, 313–314  
 Change method, 624  
 char keyword, 20  
 char type, 37, 42, 206  
 character literals, 206  
 checked case, 444

checked context, 442, 445  
 checked expression, 443  
 checked keyword, 20  
 checked operators, for numeric conversions, 442–443  
 checked statements, for numeric conversions, 443  
**CheckSpelling** method, 689  
 Church, Alonzo, 388  
**CIL** (Common Intermediate Language), compiling .NET Framework to, 7  
**CircleWidget** class, 273–274  
 class access modifiers, 181  
 class keyword, 20, 157  
 Class Library template, 270  
 class type, 42, 233, 480  
**Class1** class, 140, 154  
**ClassA** class, 393, 400  
**ClassB** class, 393, 400  
 classes, 49–66, 109–160  
     access modifiers for, 60–62  
         example of, 62  
         private and public access, 60–62  
     and access modifiers on accessors, 156  
     accessing members of  
         from inside class, 63  
         from outside class, 64  
     allocating memory for, 57–58  
     constructors for, 144  
     creating instances of, 56  
     declaring, 52  
     destructors for, 140–144  
         calling, 141–142  
         standard Dispose pattern, 143  
     example of, 51, 65–66  
     for exceptions, 301–302  
     indexers for, 148–155  
         calling, 152  
         declaring, 150  
         example of, 153–154  
         get accessor for, 152  
         overloading, 155  
         overview, 149  
         and properties, 149  
         set accessor for, 151  
     inheritance of, 162  
     instance constructors in, 133–135  
         default, 135  
         with parameters, 134  
     instance members for, 59  
     is active data structure, 50  
     member constants in, 118–120  
     members of, 53–55, 110–111  
         fields, 53–54  
         methods, 55  
         order of modifiers for, 110–111  
     members of class instance, 112  
     object initializers for, 138–139  
     partial, 157–160  
     properties in, 121–132  
         and associated fields, 125–126  
         automatically implemented, 131  
         and databases, 130  
         declarations and accessors for, 122  
         example of, 123–127  
         implementing, 124  
         vs. public fields, 130  
         read-only, 128  
         static, 132  
         write-only, 128  
     readonly modifier for, 145–146  
     static constructors in, 136–137  
         accessibility of, 137  
         example of, 137  
     static fields in, 113–115  
     static function members in, 116–117  
     static member types in, 117  
     and this keyword, 147  
     for XML, 578  
**ClassName** type, 480  
**Clear** method, 364  
**CLI** (Common Language Infrastructure), for .NET Framework, 11–12  
**Clone** method, 364  
**CLR** (Common Language Runtime), 3, 10  
**CLS** (Common Language Specification), 12  
**CLSCompliant** attribute, 650  
 code execution, in methods, 69  
 <code> tag, 683  
 color attribute, 587  
**ColorCollection** class, 532  
**ColorEnumerator** class, 513  
 ColorFlag variable, 534  
 Colors enumerator, 534  
**COM** (Component Object Model)  
     interoperating with, 689–692  
     not required for .NET Framework, 5  
 combining delegates, 376  
**CommandLineArgs** program, 679  
 comments, 681–683  
     documentation comments, 28  
     inserting, 682  
     overview, 27–28  
     using other XML tags, 683  
**Common Intermediate Language (CIL)**, compiling .NET Framework to, 7  
**Common Language Infrastructure.** *See CLI*  
**Common Language Runtime (CLR)**, 3, 10  
**Common Language Specification (CLS)**, 12  
**Common Type System (CTS)**, 12  
**CompareTo** method, 410–413  
 comparison operators, 214–216

compiling .NET Framework  
to CIL, 7  
to native code and execution, 8–9

Component Object Model. *See* COM

components, of .NET Framework, 3

compound assignment operators, 226

Concat method, 664

Conditional AND operator category, 210

Conditional attribute, 648–649

conditional compilation, preprocessor  
directives for  
constructs for, 632–634  
overview, 631

Conditional operator category, 210

conditional operators, 219–220, 227–228

Conditional OR operator category, 210

configuration files, and assemblies, 294

Console class, 17, 23–24, 273, 283–284

Console.WriteLine method, 580

const field, 145

const keyword, 20, 73

constraints  
on generics, 478–480  
types of, 480  
where clause for, 479

on user-defined conversions, 458

constructor initializers, 178–180

constructors  
for classes, 144  
for custom attributes, 655–657  
execution of, 176–181  
    class access modifiers, 181  
    constructor initializers, 178–180  
for structs  
    instance constructors for, 321–322  
    static constructors for, 323  
    summary of constructors and  
        destructors, 323

Constructors region, 637

constructs, applying attributes to, 651–653

Contains method, 664

continuation clause, for LINQ, 563

continue keyword, 20

continue statement, 74, 258

conversions, 435–464  
    boxing, 454–456  
    explicit, 438–439  
    implicit, 437  
    is operator, 463  
    numeric, 440–447  
        checked and unchecked operators,  
            442–443  
        checked and unchecked statements, 443  
        decimal to double, 447  
        decimal to float, 447  
        decimal to integral, 445

double to decimal, 446

double to float, 446

double to integral, 445

explicit, 444

float to decimal, 446

float to integral, 445

implicit, 441

integral to integral, 444

as operator, 464

overview, 436

reference, 448–453  
    explicit, 451  
    implicit, 449–450

types of, 440

unboxing, 456–457

user-defined, 458–462  
    constraints on, 458  
    evaluating, 461  
    example of, 459–460  
        example of multistep, 461–462

Count method, 106–107, 544, 569

Count operator, 564, 567–570, 573

Counter field, 684

CourseName field, 551

CourseStudent class, 550–551

covariance  
of arrays, 363  
and contravariance, in generics, 494,  
    502–503

cs1 variable, 320

cs2 variable, 320

csc compiler, 18

CSimple class, 319

CTS (Common Type System), 12

Current property, 508, 510, 516, 518–519, 526

custom attributes, 654–660  
    constructors for, 655–657  
    declaring, 654  
    guidelines for using, 660  
    restricting usage of, 658–659

Customer class, 479

## D

D class, 113–115

data members, of types, 34

databases, and properties, 130

DateTime class, 133

DaysTemp class, 64

Dealer class, 51, 56–57

decimal keyword, 20

decimal type, conversions of  
    to double, 447  
    to float, 447  
    to integral, 445

Deck class, 51

declarations, for properties, 122  
 declaring  
     classes, 52  
     custom attributes, 654  
     events, 395–396  
         event is member, 396  
         EventHandler delegate for, 396  
     generic classes, 471  
     generic methods, 482  
     indexers, 150  
     interfaces, 414–415  
     jagged arrays, 354  
     one-dimensional arrays, 345  
     rectangular arrays, 345  
     variables, 43–44  
         automatic initialization, 44  
         initializers for, 44  
         multiple, 45  
 decrement operators, 217–218  
 default keyword, 20  
 default parameter, 636  
 default section, 245, 248  
 del variable, 388, 390  
 delayed signing, of assemblies, 295  
 DelaySignAttribute attribute, 295–296  
 delegate Factory<Animal> type, 495  
 delegate Factory<Dog> type, 495  
 delegate keyword, 20, 372, 384, 388  
 delegate type, 42, 495, 497  
 Delegate type declaration, 394  
 delegates, 369–390  
     and anonymous methods, 383–387  
         scope in, 386–387  
         syntax of, 384–385  
         using, 383  
     assigning, 375  
     combining, 376  
     creating object, 373–374  
     declaring type for, 372  
     example of, 380  
     invoking, 379  
         with reference parameters, 382  
         with return values, 381  
     and lambda expressions, 388  
 methods in  
     adding to, 377  
     removing from, 378  
 overview, 370–371  
     as parameters, 569–570  
     types of, 571  
 Delimited comment type, 29  
 delVar variable, 375, 377, 379  
 deployment, of .NET Framework, 6  
 Derived class, 426, 499  
 derived variable, 168–169  
 DerivedClass class, 183, 187, 193  
 Descendants method, 581–582  
 DescendantsAndSelf method, 581  
 descending keyword, 20, 557  
 destructors, for classes, 140–144  
     calling, 141–142  
     standard Dispose pattern, 143  
 diagnostic directives, 635  
 Dijkstra, Edsger, 261  
 directives. *See also* preprocessor directives  
 DisplayRadii method, 73  
 Dispose method, 141–143, 262–264,  
     266, 519  
 disposed field, 141  
 disposed flag, 141  
 DivideByZeroException catch clause, 311  
 DivideByZeroException class, 304, 311  
 DLLImport attribute, 650  
 do keyword, 20  
 do loop, 251–252  
 do statement, 74  
 Document class, 689  
 documentation. *See comments*  
 Documentation comment type, 29  
 documentation comments, 28  
 Dog class, 432, 494–496, 498, 500, 502  
 dog1 variable, 497  
 dogMaker variable, 495  
 DoSomething method, 500  
 DoStuff method, 483  
 DoTrace symbol, 648–649  
 double keyword, 20  
 double quote character, 207  
 double type, conversions of  
     to decimal, 446  
     to float, 446  
     to integral, 445  
 DoWork event, 602–604  
 DoWorkEventArgs parameter, 605  
 dynamic keyword, 20, 45  
 dynamic type, 35, 37, 42

## ■ E

e parameter, 303  
 Elapsed event, 393, 395, 397–398, 406, 626  
 Element method, 581–583  
 elements, in arrays, 347  
 Elements method, 581–583  
 else keyword, 20  
 Employee class, 148, 152–153, 461–462  
 Employee node, 577  
 Employee type, 463–464, 577  
 EmployeeName element, 576  
 EmployeesFile.xml file, 579  
 Enabled property, 406

- EndInvoke method, 613. *See also* BeginInvoke and EndInvoke delegate methods
- enum keyword, 20
- enum type, 42, 216
- enumerations, 327–340
  - and bit flags, 332–338
  - example of, 337–338
  - Flags attribute for, 335–336
  - implicit member numbering in, 331
  - setting type for, 330
- enumerators
  - foreach statement with, 506–507
  - generic interfaces, 518
  - IEnumerable interface, 513–515
  - IEnumerable<T> interface, 522–523
  - IEnumerator interface, 508–512
    - declaring enumerator with, 511–512
    - example of, 514–515
  - IEnumerator<T> interface, 519–521
- iterators for
  - common patterns for, 530
  - considerations for, 536
  - creating enumerable using, 528–529
  - creating enumerator using, 526–527
  - iterator blocks, 525
  - producing enumerables, 531
  - producing enumerators, 531
  - producing multiple enumerables, 532–533
  - producing multiple enumerators, 534–535
- noninterface, 516–517
- types of, 507
- environment, of .NET Framework, 4–6
  - automatic garbage collection, 4
  - base class library, 6
  - interoperability, 4–5
  - no COM required, 5
  - object-oriented, 4
  - simplified deployment, 6
  - type safety, 6
- Equality operator category, 209
- equals keyword, 20
- Equals method, 478
- evaluating user-defined conversions, 461
- evaluation, order of in expressions, 209–211
  - associativity, 210–211
  - precedence, 209–210
- Event declaration, 394, 403
- Event handler declaration, 394
- event handlers, removing, 400
- event keyword, 20
- Event registration, 394
- EventArgs class
  - overview, 401
  - passing data by extending, 402
- EventHandler delegate, for events, 396
- events, 391–408
  - accessors for, 408
  - declaring, 395–396
  - have private delegate, 393
  - MyTimerClass example, 406–407
  - overview, 392–393
  - raising, 397
  - source code components for, 394
  - subscribing to, 398–400
  - using, 401–405
    - custom delegate for, 403–405
    - EventArgs class, 401
    - passing data by extending
    - EventArgs, 402
- <example> tag, 683
- Exception type, 302
- exceptions, 297–315
  - catch clause, 303–305
  - classes for, 301–302
  - finally block, 306
  - finding handler for, 307–311
    - example of searching down call stack, 310–311
    - general algorithm of, 309
  - overview, 298
  - throwing
    - overview, 313
    - without exception object, 314
  - try statement, 299–300
- explicit conversions, 438–439
  - and cast operator, 232
  - and casting, 439
- explicit initialization
  - of one-dimensional arrays, 348
  - of rectangular arrays, 349
- explicit interface member implementations, 427–430
- explicit keyword, 20, 458
- explicit numeric conversions, 444
- explicit reference conversions, 451–453
- expression statements, 241
- expressions
  - literals in, 203–208
    - character literals, 206
    - integer literals, 204–205
    - real literals, 205
    - string literals, 207–208
  - order of evaluation in, 209–211
    - associativity, 210–211
    - precedence, 209–210
  - overview, 202
  - ExtendMyData class, 198–200

Extensible Markup Language. *See XML*, LINQ to  
extension methods, with generic classes,  
486  
extern keyword, 20

## F

f1 variable, 88, 91  
f2 variable, 88, 91  
FaceCards enumeration, 331  
Factory delegate, 494–495  
Factory<Animal> delegate, 495, 502  
Factory<Dog> delegate, 495  
false keyword, 20  
FancyNumbers bit, 334, 336  
FancyNumbers flag, 333, 336  
FCL (Framework Class Library), 6  
field initializers, not allowed for  
    structs, 324  
Field1 field, 163, 165, 167  
Field2 field, 163  
fields, 53–54  
finally block, 299, 306–308  
finally clause, 311  
finally keyword, 20  
First operator, 567–568  
fixed keyword, 20  
Flags attribute, 332, 335–336  
float keyword, 20  
float type, conversions of  
    to decimal, 446  
    to integral, 445  
flow of control  
    and methods, 74  
    statements, 242  
for keyword, 20  
for loop, 253–256  
    multiple expressions in, 256  
    scope of variables in, 255  
for statement, 74  
foreach construct, 507  
foreach keyword, 20  
foreach loop, 411, 506, 510, 514, 599, 642  
foreach statement, 358–362, 506–507  
    iteration variable is read-only, 360  
    with multidimensional arrays, 361–362  
        example with jagged array, 362  
        example with rectangular array, 361  
form feed character, 206  
formal parameters, for methods, 80  
Format method, 664  
format string  
    multiple markers in, 26  
    overview, 25

formatting numeric strings, 666–671  
    alignment specifier for, 668  
    format specifier for, 669  
    standard format specifiers for, 670–671  
Framework Class Library (FCL), 6  
from clause, for LINQ, 547–548, 554  
from keyword, 20, 538  
fromInclusive parameter, 599  
from.let.where clause, 546  
Func delegate, 490, 571  
Func<int, bool> type, 572  
function members, of types, 34

## G

GAC (global assembly cache), 292–293  
    installing assemblies into, 292  
    side-by-side execution in, 293  
gacutil.exe utility, 292  
garbage collection, in .NET Framework, 4  
GC (garbage collector), 4, 40, 375  
GC.SuppressFinalize method, 141  
generic enumeration interfaces, 518  
generics, 465–503  
    in C#, 468–469  
    classes, 470–471  
    constraints on, 478–480  
        types of, 480  
        where clause for, 479  
covariance and contravariance in,  
    494–503  
creating constructed type for, 472  
creating instances of, 473–477  
    generic and nongeneric stacks, 477  
    stack example, 475–476  
delegates, 488–490  
interfaces, 491–493  
    example of, 492  
    implementations of must be  
        unique, 493  
methods, 481–485  
    declaring, 482  
    example of, 485  
    extension methods with generic  
        classes, 486  
    invoking, 483–484  
overview, 466–467  
    structs, 487  
get accessor, 122–123, 127–128, 129–130, 131,  
    149, 152–153, 156  
get keyword, 20  
GetCustomAttributes method, 662  
GetCylinderVolume method, 99  
GetEnumerator method, 506–507, 513, 516,  
    518, 528, 530–532, 534  
GetFields method, 641

GetHour method, 76–77  
 GetLength method, 364  
 GetLength(int n) method, 356  
 GetMethods method, 641  
 GetProperties method, 641  
 GetType method, 238, 478, 642, 661  
 GetUpperBound method, 364  
 GetValueFromDatabase method, 130  
 global assembly cache. *See GAC*  
 global attributes, 653  
 global keyword, 20  
 goto keyword, 20  
 goto statement, 261  
 graphical user interface (GUI), 597  
 group clause, for LINQ, 561–562  
 group keyword, 20  
 group.by clause, 558  
 GUI (graphical user interface), 597

## H

handlers, finding for exceptions, 307–311  
 example of searching down call stack, 310–311  
 general algorithm of, 309  
 HasFlag method, 334  
 HasFlags method, 334  
 HasValue property, 674  
 HelpLink property, 302  
 hiding members of base class, 165–166  
 Holder<T> class, 486  
 horizontal tab character, 206  
 HRESULT data type, 5  
 Hypotenuse property, 129

## I

i flag, gacutil.exe utility, 292  
 i variable, 455  
 iar variable, 614  
 IAsyncResult interface, 614, 617, 621  
 IAsyncResult parameter, 620  
 IComparable interface, 410–413, 479  
 IDataIO interface, 431  
 IDataRetrieve interface, 421  
 IDataStore interface, 421  
 identifiers, 18  
 identity, of assemblies, 287–288  
 IDisposable interface, 141, 262, 264, 519  
 IEnumerable interface, 507, 513–515  
 IEnumerable<int> type, 544  
 IEnumerable<object> type, 581–582  
 IEnumerable<T> interface, 507, 518–519, 522–523  
 IEnumerable<XElement> type, 581

IEnumerator interface, 508–512  
 declaring enumerator with, 511–512  
 example of, 514–515  
 IEnumerator<T> interface, 507, 519–521  
 if keyword, 20  
 if statement, 74, 243  
 ifc variable, 418  
 if.else construct, 227–228  
 if.else statement, 74, 228, 244  
 ignoreCase variable, 689  
 IIIfc1 interface, 417–418, 422, 424, 426, 430  
 IIIfc2 interface, 422, 424  
 IL (Intermediate Language), 7  
 ILiveBirth interface, 420, 432  
 implementing interfaces, 416–417  
 implicit conversions, 437  
     numeric conversions, 441  
     reference conversions, 449–450  
 implicit keyword, 20, 458  
 implicit member numbering, in  
     enumerations, 331  
 implicitly typed arrays, 351  
 IMyIfc interface, 491–493, 500  
 IMyIfc<Animal> interface, 500  
 IMyInterface1 interface, 416  
 in keyword, 20, 500, 502–503, 571  
 increment operators, 217–218  
 index parameter, 153  
 indexers, 148–155  
     calling, 152  
     declaring, 150  
     example of, 153–154  
     get accessor for, 152  
     overloading, 155  
     overview, 149  
     and properties, 149  
     set accessor for, 151  
 IndexOf method, 364  
 IndexOutOfRangeException class, 303, 311  
 inheritance  
     abstract classes, 192–194  
     abstract members, 190–191  
     accessing inherited members, 163–164  
     between assemblies, 182–183  
     base access expression, 167  
     of classes, 162  
     and constructor execution, 176–181  
         class access modifiers, 181  
         constructor initializers, 178–180  
     extension methods, 197  
     hiding members of base class, 165–166  
     of interfaces, 431–433  
     member access modifiers, 184–189  
         internal members, 187  
         private members, 186  
         protected internal members, 188

- inheritance (*continued*)  
 member access modifiers (*continued*)  
   protected members, 187  
   public members, 186  
   regions accessing, 185  
   summary of, 188–189  
 references to base class, 168–175  
   override methods, 170–174  
   overriding other member types, 175  
   virtual methods, 170–171  
 sealed classes, 195  
 static classes, 196  
 inherited members  
   accessing, 163–164  
   for arrays, 364–367  
 Inherited property, 658–659  
 initialization, of fields, 54  
 initializers, for declaring variables, 44  
 initializing, arrays, 348–352  
   example of, 352  
   implicitly typed, 351  
   shortcut syntax, 350  
 InnerException property, 302, 305  
 Insert method, 664  
 instance constructors, 133–135  
   default, 135  
   with parameters, 134  
 instance members, for classes, 59  
 instances, of classes, 56  
 instantiating  
   jagged arrays, 355  
   one-dimensional arrays, 346  
   rectangular arrays, 346  
   types, 33  
 int field, 147, 154  
 int keyword, 20  
 int method, 76  
 int parameter, 92, 147, 155, 178, 321, 372  
 int property, 540  
 integer literals, 204–205  
 integral type, conversions of, 444  
 interface keyword, 20, 157  
 interface type, 42  
 InterfaceName type, 480  
 interfaces, 409–433  
   are reference type, 418–419  
   covariance and contravariance in, 500–501  
   declaring, 414–415  
   explicit interface member  
     implementations, 427–430  
   implementing, 416–417  
     with duplicate members, 422–423  
     example of, 417  
     multiple, 421  
   inheritance of, 431–433  
 inherited member as, 426  
 overview, 410–413  
 references to multiple, 424–425  
 using as operator with, 420  
 using IComparable interface, 411–413  
 Intermediate Language (IL), 7  
 internal access level, 686  
 internal access modifier, 181, 184, 188  
 internal keyword, 20  
 internal members, member access  
   modifiers, 187  
 interoperability, of .NET Framework, 4–5  
 Interval property, 406  
 into keyword, 20  
 intVar variable, 227  
 inVal parameter, 107  
 inVal variable, 306  
 InvalidCastException exception, 451–452, 457, 463  
 inVals parameter, 92, 95  
 invoking  
   delegates, 379–382  
     with reference parameters, 382  
     with return values, 381  
   generic methods, 483–484  
   methods  
     overview, 75  
     with parameter arrays, 93–95  
 is keyword, 20  
 is operator, for conversions, 463  
 IsCompleted method, 618  
 IsCompleted property, 613, 617  
 IsDefined method, 661  
 IsOdd method, 572–573  
 item variable, 359, 547  
 iteration variable, foreach statement, 360  
 iterators  
   common patterns for, 530  
   considerations for, 536  
   creating enumerable using, 528–529  
   creating enumerator using, 526–527  
   iterator blocks, 525  
   producing enumerables, 531  
   producing enumerators, 531  
   producing multiple enumerables, 532–533  
   producing multiple enumerators, 534–535  
 IUnknown interface, 5  
 iVal variable, 220

**J**

- j variable, 456  
 jagged arrays, 353–356  
   declaring, 354  
   foreach statement with, 362  
   instantiating, 355

vs. rectangular, 357  
 shortcut instantiation, 354  
 subarrays in, 356  
**JIT** (Just-in-Time), 8, 285  
**join** clause, for LINQ, 549–552  
**join** keyword, 20  
**jump statements**  
 break statement, 257  
 continue statement, 258  
 overview, 257  
**Just-in-Time (JIT)**, 8, 285

## K

**Key field**, 562  
**keywords**, 20

## L

**labeled statements**, 259–260  
 labels, 259  
 scope of, 260  
**labels**, for switch statement, 249  
**lambda expressions**, and delegates, 388  
**lambda operator**, 388  
**Language Integrated Query**. *See LINQ*  
**last-in, first-out (LIFO)**, 39  
**LastName** field, 551  
**le1** variable, 388, 390  
**le3** variable, 389  
**le4** variable, 389  
**Left shift operator**, 223  
**Length** property, 344, 364, 664  
**LessThan** method, 478  
**let** clause, for LINQ, 555  
**let** keyword, 20  
**lifetimes**, of static members, 115  
**LIFO** (last-in, first-out), 39  
**LimitedInt** class, 233, 235  
**LimitedInt** type, 230, 232  
**line number directives**, 636  
**LINQ** (Language Integrated Query),  
 537–594  
 anonymous types, 540–541  
 method syntax, 542–543  
 overview, 538  
 providers for, 539–541  
 query operators, 564–574  
 delegate types, 571  
 delegates as parameters, 569–570  
 example using delegate  
 parameter, 572  
 example using lambda expression  
 parameter, 573–574  
 list of, 566  
 signatures of, 567–568

**query syntax**, 542–563  
 anonymous types in, 560  
 from clause, 547–548, 554  
 continuation clause in, 563  
 group clause, 561–562  
 join clause, 549  
 let clause, 555  
 orderby clause, 557  
 select-group clause, 558–559  
 where clause, 556  
**query variables**, 544–545  
**to XML**, 575–594  
 basics of, 576–577  
 classes for, 578  
 creating tree, 580  
 and markup languages, 575  
 using queries with, 592  
 using values from tree, 581–589  
 working with documents, 579  
**XComment** node, 590  
**XDeclaration** node, 590  
**XProcessingInstruction** node,  
 590–591  
**ListInts** method, 93–94, 96  
**literals**, 203  
 character literals, 206  
 integer literals, 204–205  
 real literals, 205  
 string literals, 207–208  
**Load** method, **XDocument** node, 579  
**local constants**, 73  
**local variables**, 70–72  
 inside nested blocks, 72  
 and var keyword, 71  
**lock** keyword, 20  
**Logical AND operator** category, 209, 219  
**logical NOT operator**, 219  
**logical operators**, 221–222  
**logical OR operator**, 219  
**Logical OR operator** category, 210  
**Logical XOR operator** category, 210  
**long** keyword, 20  
**long** type, 37, 42, 204, 474  
**lowNums** variable, 544–545

## M

**Main** method, 21, 679–680  
**MainWindow.xaml** file, 610  
**MainWindow.xaml.cs** file, 610  
**Major** variable, 541  
**MakeDog** method, 495  
**markers**, multiple in format string, 26  
**markup languages**, and XML, 575  
**mc** variable, 418  
**mDel** delegate, 387

Mem1 field, 112–113  
 Mem2 field, 113, 115  
 member access modifiers, 184–189  
     internal members, 187  
     private members, 186  
     protected internal members, 188  
     protected members, 187  
     public members, 186  
     regions accessing, 185  
     summary of, 188–189  
 member constants, 118–120  
 members  
     accessing inherited, 163–164  
     of class instance, 112  
     of classes, 53–55, 110–111  
         accessing from inside class, 63  
         accessing from outside class, 64  
         fields, 53–54  
         methods, 55  
         order of modifiers for, 110–111  
     hiding of, 165–166  
 Message field, 402  
 Message property, 302  
 metadata. *See also* attributes  
 metadata, and reflection, 640  
 method syntax, for LINQ,  
     542–543  
 Method1 method, 163, 430  
 Method2 method, 163  
 MethodA method, 104  
 MethodB method, 104  
 methods, 55–67, 107  
     in delegates  
         adding to, 377  
         removing from, 378  
     and flow of control, 74  
     invoking, 75  
     local constants for, 73  
     local variables for, 70–72  
         inside nested blocks, 72  
         and var keyword, 71  
     overloading, 97  
     parameter arrays for, 92–96  
         as actual parameters, 96  
         invoking method with, 93–95  
     parameters for  
         actual, 81–82  
         formal, 80  
         named, 98–99  
         optional, 100–103  
         output, 89–91  
         reference, 86–88  
         summary of, 96  
         value, 83–85  
     recursion of, 106  
     return values for, 76–79  
     stack frames for, 104–105  
     structure of, 68–69  
 MFC (Microsoft Foundation Classes), 2  
 Microsoft Intermediate Language (MSIL), 7  
 Microsoft.Office.Interop.Word  
     assembly, 690  
 Microsoft.Office.Tools.Word  
     namespace, 689  
 Monitor class, 598  
 MoveNext method, 508–510, 516, 536  
 mscorlib library, 273–274  
 mscorlib.dll file, 273  
 MSIL (Microsoft Intermediate Language), 7  
 msNull variable, 678  
 multidimensional arrays, foreach statement  
     with, 361–362  
     example with jagged array, 362  
     example with rectangular array, 361  
 multiple attributes, applying to single  
     construct, 651  
 multiple expressions, in for loop, 256  
 multiple interfaces, references to, 424–425  
 Multiplicative operator category, 209  
 multithreading. *See also* asynchronous  
     programming  
     complexity of, 598  
     considerations for, 597  
 Mutex class, 598  
 MyAttr attribute, 656  
 MyAttribute attribute, 646, 655, 658–659  
 MyAttributeAttribute attribute, 654  
 MyBaseClass() constructor, 176  
 MyBaseClass class, 168–169, 172–174, 182–  
     183, 426  
 mybc variable, 168, 170  
 MyCorp.SuperLib namespace, 277  
 MyCounter class, 684–685  
 MyData class, 197–200, 421  
 MyDel delegate, 372, 374, 614  
 MyDelegate delegate, 489  
 MyDerived class, 174  
 MyDerivedClass class, 168–169, 172, 176, 178  
 MyExcellentClass class, 71  
 MyField field, 53  
 MyField1 field, 177  
 MyField2 field, 177  
 MyFloatStack class, 467, 469  
 myInst variable, 473  
 myInt variable, 668  
 MyIntStack class, 466–467, 469  
 MyLibrary.dll file, 293–294  
 MyM1 method, 374  
 MyMethod method, 69, 84, 87, 89–90, 91, 484  
 MyNamespace namespace, 282  
 MyNamespace.OtherNS namespace, 282

MyPrivateTimer field, 407  
 MyProgram.exe application, 294  
 MyProperty property, 175, 190  
 MyStack class, 469  
 MyStruct struct, 677–678  
 MyTCEEventArgs class, 403  
 MyTimerClass class, 395, 399, 403,  
     406–407  
 MyValue property, 121, 123, 125–126, 132  
 myVar1 variable, 448, 451  
 myVar2 variable, 448, 451, 453  
 MyWidgets program, 271–274, 278  
 MyWidgets.cs file, 271

## N

Name field, 59, 541  
 Name property, 641  
 named parameters, for methods, 98–99  
 namespace keyword, 20  
 Namespace property, 641  
 namespaces, 275–282  
     names for, 279  
     nesting of, 282  
     spreading across files, 281  
     and types in, 280  
 naming conventions, 19  
 native code and execution, compiling .NET Framework to, 8–9  
 Native Image Generator tool, 8  
 nested blocks, local variables inside, 72  
 nested types, 684–688  
     example of, 685  
     and visibility, 686–688  
 nesting  
     of namespaces, 282  
     of using statement, 265  
 .NET Framework, 1–13  
     acronyms for, 13  
     CLI, 11–12  
     CLR, 10  
     compiling  
         to CIL, 7  
         to native code and execution, 8–9  
     components of, 3  
     environment for, 4–6  
         automatic garbage collection, 4  
         base class library, 6  
         interoperability, 4–5  
         no COM required, 5  
         object-oriented, 4  
         simplified deployment, 6  
         type safety, 6  
     prior to, 2  
 new() type, 480  
 new expression, 396

new keyword, 20, 57, 138, 540  
 new line character, 206  
 new modifier, 165–166, 174, 324, 687  
 new operator, 57, 134, 321–322, 346, 373  
 Ngen tool, 8  
 nodes, XML, 584–585  
 Nodes method, 581–582  
 noninterface enumerators, 516–517  
 NonSerialized attribute, 650  
 Now property, 133  
 null character, 206  
 null coalescing operator, for nullable types, 676  
 null coalescing operator, 48  
 null keyword, 20  
 nullable types, 46–48, 674–678  
     assigning to, 48  
     creating, 46–47  
     null coalescing operator for, 676  
     user-defined, 677–678  
 Nullable<MyStruct> type, 678  
 Nullable<T> type, 678  
 NullReferenceException class, 305  
 NumberOfSides field, 146  
 numeric conversions, 440–447  
     checked and unchecked operators, 442–443  
     checked and unchecked statements, 443  
 decimal to double, 447  
 decimal to float, 447  
 decimal to integral, 445  
 double to decimal, 446  
 double to float, 446  
 double to integral, 445  
 explicit, 444  
 float to decimal, 446  
 float to integral, 445  
 implicit, 441  
 integral to integral, 444  
 numsCount variable, 544

## O

object class, 5, 12, 324, 401, 478, 518, 661  
 object initializers, for classes, 138–139  
 object keyword, 20  
 object type, 35, 37, 410, 440, 449, 478, 508,  
     516, 518–519  
 object variable, 689  
 object-oriented, .NET Framework, 4  
 objects, array as, 344  
 Obsolete attribute, 647, 650  
 OfType<type> method, 582  
 oi variable, 455–456  
 on keyword, 20

one-dimensional arrays, 345  
 declaring, 345  
 explicit initialization of, 348  
 instantiating, 346  
**OnOneSecond** method, 397, 406–407  
**operator** keyword, 20  
**operator x** method, 233  
**operators**  
 assignment, 225–226  
 comparison, 214–216  
 conditional logical, 219–220  
 conditional operator, 227–228  
 decrement, 217–218  
 increment, 217–218  
 for LINQ, 564–574  
   delegate types, 571  
   delegates as parameters, 569–570  
   example using delegate  
     parameter, 572  
   example using lambda expression  
     parameter, 573–574  
   list of, 566  
   signatures of, 567–568  
 logical, 221–222  
 overloading, 233–236  
   example of, 235–236  
   restrictions on, 234  
 remainder operator, 213  
 shift, 223–224  
 simple arithmetic, 212  
**typeof** operator, 236–238  
 unary arithmetic, 229  
 and user-defined type conversions,  
   230–232

**ops** flag word, 334  
**ops** variable, 335  
 optional parameters, for methods, 100–103  
 optional variable, 689  
 order of evaluation, in expressions, 209–211  
   associativity, 210–211  
   precedence, 209–210  
 order of modifiers, for members of classes,  
   110–111

orderby clause, for LINQ, 557  
**orderby** keyword, 20  
**OtherClass** class, 162–163, 166–167, 181  
**OtherM2** method, 374  
**OtherNs** namespace, 282  
**out** keyword, 20, 500, 502–503, 571  
**out** modifier, 89, 96  
**out** parameter, 159, 325, 385, 390, 673  
 outer variables, of anonymous methods, 386  
 output parameters, for methods, 89–91  
 output text, 23  
 Output type, 96  
**OverflowException** exception, 442, 444–446

overloading  
 indexers, 155  
 methods, 97  
 operators, 233–236  
   example of, 235–236  
   restrictions on, 234  
**override** keyword, 20, 192  
**override** methods, 170–174  
   print with new example, 174  
   print with override example, 172–173  
**override** modifier, 170–171, 174, 191, 324  
**override Print** method, 170

## ■ P

parallel loops, 599–601  
**Parallel.For** construct, 599  
**Parallel.For** loop, 599  
**Parallel.For** method, 599  
**Parallel.ForEach** construct, 599  
**Parallel.ForEach** loop, 599  
**Parallel.ForEach** method, 601  
**<param>** tag, 683  
 parameter arrays, for methods, 92–96  
   as actual parameters, 96  
   invoking method with, 93–95  
 parameters  
   for anonymous methods, 385  
   in constructors for custom attributes, 657  
   instance constructors with, 134  
   for methods  
     actual, 81–82  
     formal, 80  
     named, 98–99  
     optional, 100–103  
     output, 89–91  
     reference, 86–88  
     summary of, 96  
     value, 83–85  
   struct as, 325  
**params** keyword, 20, 385  
**params** modifier, 92–93, 96  
**params** parameter, for anonymous  
   methods, 385  
**Parent** method, 581  
**Parse** method, 671–673  
 parsing strings, to data values, 672–673  
 partial classes, 157–160  
 partial keyword, 20, 159  
 partial methods, in partial classes, 159  
 partial modifier, 157  
 patterns, for asynchronous programming, 613  
**Person** class, 461  
**Person** type, 458, 463–464  
**PhoneNumber** element, 576  
**PI** constant, 73

- PI field, 119, 146  
 PieceOfData struct, 487  
 P/Invoke (platform invoke), 5  
 platform invoke (P/Invoke), 5  
 Player class, 51, 59  
 Point class, 138  
 Point struct, 318  
 polling pattern, for BeginInvoke and EndInvoke delegate methods, 618–619  
 precedence, in expressions, 209–210  
 predefined attributes, 647–650
  - Conditional attribute, 648–649
  - Obsolete attribute, 647
  - summary of, 650
 predefined types, 35–37  
 preprocessor directives, 627–638
  - #define directive, 630
  - #pragma warning directive, 638
  - #undef directive, 630
  - conditional compilation
    - constructs for, 632–634
    - overview, 631
  - diagnostic directives, 635
  - line number directives, 636
  - overview, 628
  - region directives, 637
  - syntactic rules for, 628–629
 Primary operator category, 209  
 Print method, 170, 172–174, 176, 486  
 PrintArg method, 313  
 PrintDateAndTime method, 75  
 PrintMe method, 182–183  
 PrintNums method, 55  
 PrintOut method, 417, 422, 424, 426–427, 647  
 PrintString method, 489  
 PrintStuff method, 190  
 PrintSum method, 80–81, 160  
 private access, access modifiers for classes, 60–62  
 private access level, 186  
 private access modifier, 60, 188  
 private deployment, of assemblies, 291  
 private keyword, 20  
 private members, member access modifiers, 186  
 processes. *See also* asynchronous programming  
 Program class, 17, 56, 64, 514  
 ProgressChanged event, 602–603, 605  
 properties, 121–132
  - and associated fields, 125–126
  - automatically implemented, 131
  - and databases, 130
  - declarations and accessors for, 122
 example of, 123–127  
 implementing, 124  
 and indexers, 149  
 vs. public fields, 130  
 read-only, 128–129  
 static, 132  
 write-only, 128  
 protected access level, 187  
 protected access modifier, 188  
 protected internal access modifier, 188  
 protected internal members, member access modifiers, 188  
 protected keyword, 20  
 protected members, member access modifiers, 187  
 protected modifier, 143  
 providers, for LINQ, 539–541  
 public access, access modifiers for classes, 60–62  
 public access level, 190, 686  
 public access modifier, 61, 181, 184, 188, 230, 233, 415, 680  
 public constructor, 180  
 public fields, vs. properties, 130  
 public keyword, 20  
 public members, member access modifiers, 186  
 public modifier, 461  
 public property, 125
- Q**
- query syntax, for LINQ, 542–563
  - anonymous types in, 560
  - from clause, 547–554
  - continuation clause in, 563
  - group clause, 561–562
  - join clause, 549
  - let clause, 555
  - orderby clause, 557
  - select/group clause, 558–559
  - where clause, 556
 query variables, for LINQ, 544–545
- R**
- raising events, 397  
 Random class, 137  
 RandomKey field, 137  
 Rank property, 345, 364  
 readonly field, 145, 149–150, 179  
 readonly keyword, 20  
 readonly modifier, for classes, 145–146  
 read-only properties
  - example of, 129
  - overview, 128

real literals, 205  
 rectangular arrays, 345–350  
     declaring, 345  
     explicit initialization of, 349  
     foreach statement with, 361  
     instantiating, 346  
     vs. jagged arrays, 357  
     syntax points for initializing, 349–350  
 recursion, of methods, 106  
 ref keyword, 20, 86  
 ref modifier, 89, 96  
 ref parameter, 325, 390  
 reference conversions, 448–453  
     explicit  
         overview, 451  
         valid conversions for, 452–453  
     implicit, 449–450  
 reference parameters  
     invoking delegates with, 382  
     for methods, 86–88  
 reference types, 41–42  
     categorizing C# types, 42  
     interfaces are, 418–419  
     storing members of, 41–42  
 references, to base class, 168–175  
     override methods, 170–174  
     overriding other member types, 175  
     virtual methods, 170–171  
 References folder, 271, 273  
 referencing other assemblies, 270–274  
 reflection. See also attributes  
     and metadata, 640  
     and Type class, 640–641  
         using GetType method, 642  
         using typeof operator, 644  
 region directives, 637  
 Relational operator category, 209  
 remainder operator, 213  
 <remarks> tag, 683  
 remove accessor, 408  
 remove keyword, 20  
 Remove method, 585, 588, 664  
 RemoveNodes method, 585  
 removing event handlers, 400  
 Replace method, 664  
 ReplaceContent method, 585  
 ReportProgress method, 602–603, 605  
 Reset method, 508, 516, 536  
 resources, with using statement, 263–265  
 restrictions  
     on overloading of operators, 234  
     on usage of custom attributes, 658–659  
 Result field, 605–606  
 return keyword, 20, 389  
 return statement, 74, 76, 122, 246, 306  
 return type, for anonymous methods, 384  
 return values  
     invoking delegates with, 381  
     for methods, 76–79  
     struct as, 325  
 <returns> tag, 683  
 Reverse method, 364  
 ReverseAndPrint method, 485  
 ReviewComment attribute, 661  
 Reviewer field, 657  
 Right shift operator, 223  
 RightTriangle class, 129  
 RunWorkerAsync method, 602–604  
 RunWorkerCompleted event, 602–603, 605  
 RunWorkerCompletedEventArgs  
     parameter, 605

## ■ S

Save method, XDocument node, 579  
 sbyte keyword, 20  
 sbyte type, 37, 42, 436, 439  
 scope  
     of anonymous methods, 386–387  
         extension of captured variable  
         lifetime, 387  
         of outer variables, 386  
     of labeled statements, 260  
 sealed classes, 195  
 sealed keyword, 20  
 sealed modifier, 195  
 SecondDerived class, 172–174  
 <seealso> tag, 683  
 select clause, 546–547, 554, 558–560  
 select keyword, 20, 538  
 SELECT statement, 546  
 select.group clause, for LINQ, 558–559  
 Semaphore class, 598  
 Serializable attribute, 646, 650  
 set accessor, 122, 127–129, 131, 149,  
     151–153, 156  
 set keyword, 20  
 SetAttributeValue method, 588–589  
 SetElement method, 585  
 SetValueInDatabase method, 130  
 Shape class, 146  
 Shift operator category, 209  
 shift operators, 223–224  
 short keyword, 20  
 short type, 37, 42, 436, 473–474  
 shortcut instantiation, jagged arrays, 354  
 shortcut syntax, for arrays, 350  
 side-by-side execution, in GAC, 293  
 Sign the Assembly check box, 290  
 Signing tab, 290

Simple class, 478, 485, 491–493  
 Simple namespace, 17  
 Simple struct, 319, 322  
 SimpleProgram example, 16–18  
 SimpleProgram.cs file, 18  
 SimpleReturn class, 500  
 SimpleSample.xml file, 592  
 single quote character, 207  
 Single-line comment type, 29  
 size attribute, 587  
 sizeof keyword, 20  
 Sleep method, Thread class, 616  
 SomeClass class, 70, 162–163, 166, 237, 471–474  
 SomeMethod method, 78  
 Sort method, 364, 411, 413  
 Source property, 302  
 SquareWidget class, 270–271, 273–275, 277  
 ss1 variable, 320  
 ss2 variable, 320  
 stack, 39  
 stack frames, for methods, 104–105  
 stackalloc keyword, 20  
 stackInt variable, 475  
 stackString variable, 475  
 StackTrace property, 302  
 standard Dispose pattern, for classes, 143  
 state parameter, 614, 617, 620–621  
 statements, 22, 239–267
 

- do loop, 251–252
- expression statements, 241
- flow-of-control statements, 242
- goto statement, 261
- if statement, 243
- if.else statement, 244
- jump statements, 257–258
  - break statement, 257
  - continue statement, 258
- labeled statements, 259–260
  - labels, 259
  - scope of, 260
- for loop, 253–256
  - multiple expressions in, 256
  - scope of variables in, 255
- overview, 240–241
- switch statement, 245–249
  - example of, 247
  - labels for, 249
- using statement, 262–266
  - example of, 264–266
  - multiple resources in, 265
  - nesting of, 265
  - using resource with, 263
- while loop, 250

- static access modifier, 230, 233
- static classes, 196

static constructors, 136–137  
 accessibility of, 137  
 example of, 137  
 static fields  
 accessing from outside class, 114–115  
 example of, 114–115  
 and lifetimes of static members, 115  
 overview, 113  
 static function members, 116–117  
 static keyword, 20, 136, 395  
 static member types, 117  
 static modifier, 84, 113, 458  
 static properties, 132  
 static typing, 45  
 StID field, 551  
 string keyword, 20  
 string literals, 207–208  
 string parameter, 178, 655  
 string property, 540  
 StringBuilder class, 666  
 strings, 664–671
 

- formatting numeric, 666–671
  - alignment specifier for, 668
  - format specifier for, 669
  - standard format specifiers for, 670–671
- parsing to data values, 672–673
- using StringBuilder class, 666

- strongly named assemblies, 289–290
- struct keyword, 20, 157  
 struct method, 69  
 struct type, 42, 233, 480  
 structs, 317–325
- are sealed, 324
- are value types, 319
- assigning to, 320
- boxing and unboxing, 324
- constructors and destructors for, 323
- instance constructors for, 321–322
- static constructors for, 323
- field initializers not allowed for, 324
- overview, 318  
 as parameter, 325  
 as return value, 325
- structure
- of assemblies, 285–286
- of methods, 68–69
- Student class, 550  
 student variable, 540  
 Students class, 551  
 subarrays, in jagged arrays, 356  
 subscribing, to events, 398–400  
 Substring method, 664  
 Sum method, 197  
 Sum operator, 564  
 sum variable, 80

summary tag, 682–683  
 SuperLib assembly, 271, 273–274  
 SuperLib.cs file, 270  
 SuppressFinalize method, 141  
 switch keyword, 20  
 switch statement, 245–249  
     example of, 247  
     goto statement inside of, 261  
     labels for, 249  
 syntactic rules, for preprocessor directives, 628–629  
 System namespace, 17, 23, 137, 237, 283–284, 401  
 System.Array class, 345, 356, 364  
 System.Attribute class, 654  
 System.Boolean type, 37  
 System.Byte type, 37  
 System.Char type, 37  
 System.Collections namespace, 511  
 System.Collections.Generic namespace, 536  
 System.Console class, 284  
 System.Console.WriteLine method, 284  
 System.Decimal type, 37  
 System.Double type, 37  
 System.Exception class, 301  
 System.IDisposable interface, 262  
 System.Int16 type, 37  
 System.Int32 type, 37  
 System.Int64 type, 37  
 System.IO namespace, 264  
 System.Linq.Enumerable class, 569  
 System.NotSupportedException exception, 536  
 System.Nullable<T> type, 678  
 System.Object type, 37  
 System.Reflection namespace, 640  
 System.SByte type, 37  
 System.Single type, 37  
 System.String class, 664  
 System.String type, 37  
 System.Text namespace, 666  
 System.Threading namespace, 598, 616, 624  
 System.Threading.Tasks namespace, 599  
 System.Timers namespace, 406  
 System.Timers.Timer class, 626  
 System.UInt16 type, 37  
 System.UInt32 type, 37  
 System.UInt64 type, 37  
 System.ValueType class, 324  
 System.ValueType type, 440, 456  
 System.Windows.Forms.Timer class, 626

**T**

T Factory<out T>() delegate, 496  
 t1 variable, 65  
 t2 variable, 65  
 templates, types are, 33  
 Test class, 380  
 text output, 23  
 TextWriter class, 264  
 theDealer variable, 56  
 TheRealValue field, 123, 125, 127  
 this accessor, 136  
 this keyword, 20, 147, 150, 178, 199, 486, 567  
 Thread class, 598, 616  
 Thread.CurrentThread.CurrentCulture property, 670  
 threads. *See also* asynchronous programming  
 throw keyword, 20  
 throw statement, 313–314  
 throwing exceptions  
     overview, 313  
     without exception object, 314  
 TimeOfInstantiation field, 133  
 Timer class, 406, 624  
 TimerCallback delegate, 624  
 timers, for asynchronous programming, 624  
 toExclusive parameter, 599  
 ToLower method, 664  
 ToString method, 335–336, 478, 666  
 ToUpper method, 664–665  
 TraceMessage method, 648–650  
 TrafficLight enum, 328, 330  
 TrafficLight type, 328–329, 339  
 trees, XML  
     overview, 580  
     using values from, 581–589  
         adding nodes, 584–585  
         attributes for, 586–589  
         methods for manipulating, 585–589  
 true keyword, 20  
 try block, 263, 299–300, 304, 306, 308, 313  
 try keyword, 20  
 try statement, 299–300, 311  
 TryParse method, 673  
 type, setting for enumerations, 330  
 Type class, 640–641  
     using GetType method, 642  
     using typeof operator, 644  
 type conversions, 230–232  
 type operator category, 209  
 type safety, of .NET Framework, 6  
 typeof keyword, 20  
 typeof operator  
     overview, 236–238  
     for Type class, 644  
 types  
     of arrays, 343–368  
     C# program as set of type declarations, 32

data members, 34  
 for delegates, 372  
 function members, 34  
 instantiating, 33  
 in namespaces, 280  
 nullable, 46–48  
     assigning to, 48  
     creating, 46–47  
 predefined, 35–37  
 reference types, 41–42  
     categorizing C# types, 42  
     storing members of, 41–42  
 as templates, 33  
 user-defined, 38  
 value types, 41–42

## U

u flag, gacutil.exe utility, 292  
 uint keyword, 20  
 uint type, 37, 42, 204, 332  
 ulong keyword, 20  
 ulong type, 37, 42, 204  
 UltraLib assembly, 273–274, 278  
 unary arithmetic operators, 229  
 Unary operator category, 209  
 unboxing  
     conversions, 456–457  
     structs, 324  
 unchecked case, 444  
 unchecked context, 442, 445  
 unchecked expression, 443  
 unchecked keyword, 20  
 unchecked operators, for numeric  
     conversions, 442–443  
 unchecked statements, for numeric  
     conversions, 443  
 unsafe keyword, 20  
 user-defined conversions, 458–462  
     constraints on, 458  
     evaluating, 461  
     example of, 459–460  
     example of multistep, 461–462  
 user-defined nullable types, 677–678  
 user-defined types, 38  
 ushort keyword, 20  
 ushort type, 37, 42, 439  
 using alias directive, 284  
 using directive, 182, 283–284, 536  
 using keyword, 20  
 using namespace directive, 283  
 using statement, 262–266  
     example of, 264–266  
     multiple resources in, 265  
     nesting of, 265  
     using resource with, 263

## V

ValidOn property, 658–659  
 value keyword, 20  
 value parameters, 83–85, 122–123, 127, 151,  
     408  
 Value property, 593, 674, 677–678  
 value types, 41–42  
     categorizing C# types, 42  
     structs are, 319  
 <value> tag, 683  
 values, of variables, 45, 153  
 var keyword, 20, 71, 351, 473, 540, 544  
 Var1 parameter, 147  
 var1 variable, 72, 436  
 var2 variable, 43, 72, 436  
 variables, 43–45  
     declaring, 43–44  
         automatic initialization, 44  
         initializers for, 44  
         multiple, 45  
     in for loop, scope of, 255  
     using value of, 45  
 VB (Visual Basic), 2  
 Ver field, 657  
 vertical tab character, 206  
 virtual keyword, 20, 191  
 virtual methods, 170–172  
 virtual modifier, 143, 170–171, 191  
 virtual Print method, 170  
 visibility, and nested types, 686–688  
 Visual Basic (VB), 2  
 void Action1<in T>(T p) delegate, 498  
 void F<in T>(T p) delegate, 499  
 void keyword, 20, 159  
 void methods, and return values for  
     methods, 78–79  
 void type, 76, 122, 151, 159, 384, 401  
 volatile keyword, 20

## W

wait-until-done pattern, for BeginInvoke  
     and EndInvoke delegate  
     methods, 616  
 WebMethod attribute, 650  
 where clause  
     for constraints on generics, 479  
     for LINQ, 556  
 where keyword, 20, 479  
 Where method, 543  
 Where operator, 567  
 while keyword, 20  
 while loop, 250, 258  
 while statement, 74

whitespace, 21  
Windows Presentation Foundation (WPF)  
    program, 610, 612  
WorkerReportsProgress property, 604–605  
WorkerSupportsCancellation property, 604–  
    605  
WPF (Windows Presentation Foundation)  
    program, 610–612  
Write class, 23  
WriteLine class, 24  
WriteLine method, 69, 283, 339, 579, 594,  
    667  
WriteLine statement, 77, 79, 228, 303, 359,  
    381, 387, 540, 560, 594  
write-only properties, 128

## X

X class, 116, 119  
x variable, 241, 387  
XAttribute class, 578  
XComment node, 578, 590  
XDeclaration node, 578, 590  
Xdocument class, 581  
XDocument node, 578

XDocumentType node, 578  
 XElement class, 578, 581  
 XElement node, 578, 586–587  
 XElement type, 581  
 XML, LINQ to, 575–594  
    basics of, 576–577  
    classes for, 578  
    creating tree, 580  
    and markup languages, 575  
    using queries with, 592  
    using values from tree, 581–589  
    working with documents, 579  
 XComment node, 590  
 XDeclaration node, 590  
 XProcessingInstruction node, 590–591  
 XML tags, comments using, 683  
 XNode class, 578  
 XProcessingInstruction node, 578, 590–591

## Y, Z

yield break statement, 525  
yield keyword, 20  
yield return statement, 524–525





